

OLIN

PA

6237

Z5

R74

1910a

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 1924 074 466 735



Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

<http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924074466735>



JULIUS CAESAR.

The Roberts and Rolfe Latin Series

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-IV

AND SELECTIONS FROM V-VII

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

JOHN C. ROLFE, PH.D.

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

AND

ARTHUR W. ROBERTS, PH.D.

HEAD OF THE CLASSICAL DEPARTMENT IN THE
BROOKLINE HIGH SCHOOL

NEW YORK

CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

1910



A.249187
COPYRIGHT, 1910, BY
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

PREFACE

IN preparing this book the editors have tried not to lose sight of the fact that Caesar is commonly put into the hands of young students, immediately after finishing the Beginner's Book, with or without the preliminary reading of a few chapters of easier Latin. They believe that during the second year of Latin study the pupil should gain the ability to read and to translate more readily, and that he should add to the vocabulary which he may fairly be expected to have acquired during the first year. They believe thoroughly in learning the meanings of words, but they have left the details to the teacher. They would urge that the pupils be taught to *read the Latin* correctly and readily, not so much for its own sake, as because it is a most valuable aid to correct translation. The long vowels have, therefore, been marked throughout the Text and Vocabulary. At this stage, too, the pupil should learn to translate into good idiomatic English.

During the second year the pupil should extend his knowledge of Latin syntax, but he should not be expected to master the entire subject. For their views on that subject the editors would refer to the Note at the beginning of the Grammatical Introduction (p. xxxix). This has been prepared in part on account of the large number of Grammars now in use, which makes it necessary to include in the Notes a great number of references, or to make an arbitrary choice; and, in part, to

indicate approximately the amount of grammar which the editors believe it wise to attempt to teach during the second year of Latin study.

In deference to the usual custom, the Introduction contains an account of the Roman Art of War, which, although brief, will be sufficient, it is hoped, to meet the needs of the young student of Caesar. The editors believe that too much time should not be given to this subject, but that the main object of the work of the second year should be *to learn to read and to translate Latin*. Anything which can be done in addition to this to increase the student's interest in the subject is most desirable; but the principal aim should not be lost sight of.

The Vocabulary has been carefully and independently made on the basis of Meusel's *Lexicon*, and as a means of fixing the meanings of words in the mind the English derivatives have been given in many cases; see the Note at the beginning of the Vocabulary. Some of these English words may not be among the most familiar, but it will do the student no harm to add to his acquaintance with his native tongue, as well as to his Latin word-list.

In preparing the Notes the editors have relied for the most part on personal experience in the classroom, and they have attempted to give such help as in their opinion a beginner most needs. That they should have repeated some things which have been said by others seems inevitable. Valuable help has occasionally been afforded by the German editions of Kraner, Dittenberger, and Doberenz, and in the Introduction by those of Dinter and Reinhard. Many of the illustrations and plans are taken from Reinhard; others from Rich's

Dictionary of Antiquities. The standard historians, particularly Merivale, have been freely used in the preparation of the Life of Caesar.

For the benefit of those who are able to read more than the traditional four books, or who wish to substitute other parts of the Gallic War for a part of these, selections from the last three books have been made. These have been prepared especially for translation at sight.

JOHN C. ROLFE,
ARTHUR W. ROBERTS.

NOTE

A COMPLETE bibliography of literature relating to Julius Caesar seems undesirable in this place. The editors, therefore, content themselves with a very short list in the hope that pupils will actually read the books contained in it. They will find that it greatly increases their interest in the Gallic campaigns and the writer of them to become acquainted with what others have written of him and of them. The books should be readily found in any good library.

Caesar. Oman's Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic. London, 1902.

Caesar. W. W. Fowler. A volume in the Heroes of the Nations' Series. New York and London, 1892.

Caesar. Plutarch's Lives. Vol. IV of Clough's edition of Dryden's Translation. Boston, 1881.

Caesar. Froude, J. A. New York, 1879 and 1881.

Caesar. T. A. Dodge (Col. U.S.A.) in Great Captains' Series. Boston and New York, 1892.

The size of Colonel Dodge's book may deter pupils from attempting the whole of it, but some of its chapters are to be heartily recommended by themselves. Of particular value and interest are the chapters on Caesar's Method (23), The Man and the Soldier (44), and A Comparison of Alexander, Hannibal, and Caesar (45). The pupil will also do well to become acquainted

with the parts of Mommsen's and Merivale's Histories of Rome relating to Caesar.

All teachers of Caesar will certainly wish to acquaint themselves with the large but entertaining volumes by T. Rice Holmes, entitled:

(1) Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.

(2) Ancient Britain and the Invasion of Julius Caesar.

The appendices of these volumes will surely attract and hold the close attention of any student of Caesar.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

	PAGE
1. LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR	i
2. THE ROMAN ARMY IN CAESAR'S TIME	x
3. THE GAULS	xxxiii
4. THE GRAMMAR OF CAESAR	xxxix

I. GENERAL RULES

Subject (§ 80), Predicate (81), Appositives (82), Agreement (83-85)	xl
--	----

II. SYNTAX OF NOUNS

1. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE	xlii
----------------------------------	------

Object (86), Subject of Infinitive (87), Two
Accusatives (88-90), Duration of Time and
Extent of Space (91), Place to Which (92-94)

2. The Genitive	xliv
---------------------------	------

General (95), Possessive (96), Subjective
(97), Objective (98), Partitive (99), Ap-
positional (100), Quality (101-103), With
Adjectives (104), With Verbs (105)

3. The Dative	xlviii
-------------------------	--------

Indirect Object (106-107), In the Passive
(108), Reference (109), Possession (110),
Separation (111), Agency (112), Service
(113), With Adjectives (114)

4. The Ablative	li
---------------------------	----

Separation (115), Agency (116), Comparison
(117-118), Means (119), Price (120), With
Certain Verbs (121), Cause (122), Manner

	PAGE
(123), Accompaniment (124), Degree of Difference (125), Attendant Circumstances (126), Accordance (127), Quality (128), Specification (129), Absolute (130)	
5. Relations of Place (131-136)	lvii
6. Relations of Time (137-139)	lix
7. Dates (140)	lx
The Vocative (141)	lxi
III. PREPOSITIONS	lxi
With the Ablative (142), With Ablative and Accusative (143), With the Accusative (144)	
IV. ADJECTIVES	lxvii
Varieties (145), Agreement (146), Special Uses (147-152)	
V. PRONOUNS	lxx
Personal (153), Reflexive (154-155), Intensive (156-157), Relative (158), Indefinite (159)	
VI. VERBS	
Impersonal Use (160)	lxxii
1. Tenses	
Force of the Tenses (161-169)	lxxii
Sequence of Tenses (170-173)	lxxv
2. The Independent Subjunctive (174)	lxxvii
3. The Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses	
a. Purpose Clauses (175-177)	lxxvii
b. Result Clauses (178)	lxxviii
c. Characteristic Clauses (179)	lxxix
d. Temporal Clauses	
Postquam, etc. (180), Dum (181-183), Priusquam (184), Cum (185)	lxxix
e. Causal Clauses (186-188)	lxxxii
f. Conditional Sentences (189-191)	lxxxiii
g. Concessive and Adversative Clauses (192-194)	lxxxiv

	PAGE
h. Relative Clauses (195)	lxxxv
i. Substantive Clauses	lxxxv
General (196), Quod = "as to" (197), Indirect Question (198), "Purpose" (199), "Result" (200), Quominus (201), Quin (202), With Verbs of Fearing (203)	
4. Indirect Discourse	lxxxviii
General Rules (204-208), Conditional Sentences (209), Implied Indirect Dis- course (210)	
Subjunctive by Attraction (211) . . .	xc
5. The Imperative (212)	xc
6. The Infinitive	xc
As Subject and Object (213), Historical (214)	
7. The Participle	xcii
Tenses (215-216), Special Uses (217-218)	
8. Gerund and Gerundive (219-222) . . .	xciv
9. Supine (223-224)	xcv
VII. FIGURES OF RHETORIC AND GRAMMAR . . .	xcvi
Hendiadys (225), Litotes (226), Asyndeton (227)	

TEXT

1. Books I-IV	1
2. Selections for Sight-reading (Books V-VII) . . .	114
NOTES	183

VOCABULARY

MAPS AND PLANS

	PAGE
Gaul in the Time of Caesar	<i>opposite</i> 1
Campaign Map for the Year 58 B.C.	2
Battle between Caesar and the Helvetians	19
Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus	43
Campaign Map for the Years 57, 55, and 54 B.C.	47
Battle on the Axona	50
Battle on the Sabis	59
Siege of the Fortress of the Aduatuci	64
Campaign against the Veneti	78
The Siege of Alesia	164
Caesar's Fortifications at Alesia	167
Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine	328

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus	38
Caesar before the Druids	151
Caesar's Triumphal Entry into Rome	vii
Coins	74
Gallic Collar of Gold	xxxiv
Gallic War Trumpets	. xxxv
Julius Caesar	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Julius Caesar	70
Roman Coin	74
Roman Military Antiquities:	
<i>Aries simplex</i>	xxx
<i>Ballista</i>	xxxii
Beak (<i>rostrum</i>)	305
<i>Bucinator</i>	xxviii
Camp	xxv
Camp	xxvii
<i>Catapulta</i>	xxxii
Centurion	xiii
Chariot (<i>essedum</i>)	340
Cloak (<i>sagum</i>)	xix
Cuirass (<i>lorica</i>)	xv
<i>Falx muralis</i>	307
<i>Gubernator</i>	303
Helmet	xv
<i>Imperator</i>	xii
Javelin (<i>pilum</i>)	xvi
Legionary Soldier	xv
Light-armed Soldier	xvii
Marching Order	xxii
<i>Plutei</i>	xxxi
Shield (<i>scutum</i>)	xvi

	PAGE
Siege Works	xxx
Slinger (<i>funditor</i>)	xviii
Soldier on the March	xx
Soldier's Pack (<i>sarcina</i>)	xx
Standards (<i>signa</i>)	xxiii
Sword (<i>gladius</i>)	xvi
<i>Testudo</i>	xxix
<i>Testudo arietaria</i>	xxix
<i>Tragula amentata</i>	xvii
<i>Triplex acies</i>	xxi
Tower (<i>turris ambulatoria</i>)	xxx
Tower (<i>turris in nave excitata</i>)	68
Transport (<i>navis oneraria</i>)	90
<i>Vinea</i>	xxxii
War Galley (<i>navis longa</i>)	302
Yard (<i>antenna</i>)	306
Yoke (<i>iugum</i>)	341

INTRODUCTION

LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

1. Rome, which is reported by tradition to have been founded by Romulus in the year 753 B.C., to have expelled Tarquin the Proud, the last of its kings, in 510 B.C., and to have established a government under the direction of magistrates called consuls, maintained a republic from that time on until the beginning of the empire under Augustus Caesar. This republic, however, was certainly not at all times a government by the people, and in the time of Julius Caesar had practically become an oligarchy, in which, though the forms of a republic still continued, the real power was in the hands of a few men, to whom the magistrates were largely or wholly subservient.

2. Of these oligarchs Julius Caesar was the one to whom fortune or native ability and far-sightedness in political matters, or perhaps all three combined, gave the sole mastery of the state. Though he retained this power but for a short time and fell by the hands of assassins, still so strong was the hold he had secured on the hearts of his countrymen, and so firmly had he impressed upon them the habit of obedience to the control of one man, that the formal establishment of an empire to replace the worn-out republic became a much easier task for his kinsman Augustus.

3. As is natural, men have not agreed about Julius Caesar. Some choose to attribute to him an almost superhuman intelligence, which, even in early youth, enabled him to see the inevitable fate of the Roman republic, and to govern his own conduct and shape the events of his times in such a way, that he arrived at the goal of his ambition in perfect accordance with his own preconceived plan. Others believe that he had no thought of advancing beyond those who had preceded him, but that the course of events determined for him his political career, and at last put within his reach the chief power, which he was not slow to grasp.

4. Whichever of these views we prefer to accept, we must look upon Caesar's campaigns in Gaul as contributing very largely to the final outcome. These gave him political prominence at Rome, well advertised as he was by his own descriptions of his campaigns (the *Commentaries*), afforded him military prestige, and furnished him with a body of devoted veterans, whose training had been gained in fighting Rome's most determined western foes, veterans to whom their commander was their country. Besides all this, the spoil which he won and the power he possessed of bestowing desirable positions upon influential Romans, or upon their sons and connections, gave him opportunities of placating opponents and winning friends; all of which he turned to good account in securing the coveted prize when the opportune break in friendly relations between himself and Pompey occurred.

5. Gaius Julius Caesar was born of noble parentage, probably at Rome, in the year 100 B.C. (or, according to some, in 102). Thus he was six years younger than the great Roman orator Cicero, who alone surpassed

him as a speaker and advocate; six years younger, too, than Pompey, who was to be his great military rival and political opponent. Caesar belonged to one of the few remaining noble or patrician houses, but for all that he early in life became favorably inclined towards the popular or democratic party, the party of the people. If this was due to marvellous foresight on his part, we must suppose him to have perceived that the people were quite ready to accept a single ruler and master from whom they were likely to receive what they wished for; but that the nobles, on the other hand, did not wish to have their own power lessened by the accession to absolute rule of one of their own number. Others find the explanation of Caesar's friendliness for the people's interests in the fact that he married the daughter of Cinna, the great popular leader who had been the colleague of Marius in the consulship. Sulla, the dictator and chief representative of the aristocratic faction, greatly displeased at this marriage, commanded Caesar to divorce his wife. This he refused to do, and in consequence was persecuted by Sulla and well-nigh lost his life.

6. Perhaps we may find in Caesar's connection with Marius a still stronger reason for his affiliation with the party of the people. Marius had gained the greatest military renown, and was the favorite of the Roman populace. Though of plebeian origin, he had won the consulship, had defeated Jugurtha, the African prince, who had been more than a match for other Roman leaders, and had been reëlected to the consulship for a number of years. This successive reëlection (contrary to law and precedent) was due to the great terror inspired in the Romans by the Cimbri and Teutones, who had overrun

the greater part of Europe and defeated Roman armies, and so Marius, Rome's greatest general, was kept in office until he met and destroyed these two tribes in 102 and 101 B.C. Marius had married an aunt of Caesar, and it is not impossible that the young boy's imagination was fired by hearing of his uncle's successes against these fierce Gallic tribes and that he became possessed of a longing to complete the subjugation of Gaul to Rome which his uncle had begun. Caesar's admiration for Marius, the representative of the popular party, may have been chiefly responsible for his original leaning towards the same party, his marriage with Cinna's daughter may have strengthened it, and his own experiences with Sulla may have determined his subsequent attitude.

7. His course once chosen, Caesar never wavered. He sought to ingratiate himself with the people in every way and made himself their favorite. Trained by the best teachers of oratory of his time, he became the rival of Cicero and the other leaders of the day in the forum. When aedile, he impoverished himself, to an extent hitherto unknown even at Rome, in his efforts to delight the people with the public shows and games he gave for their amusement. His debts grew enormously, until there was no alternative for him but success or ruin. So desperate was his condition financially and such the feeling towards him personally at Rome of many of the nobles, that he was thought to be really the mainspring of Catiline's conspiracy. When, as praetor, he sought to substitute a milder punishment for the proposition of Silanus (the consul-elect) that the conspirators be put to death, and suggested that they be kept under guard in various cities of Italy, he appeared as the supporter of the law for the violation of which Cicero afterwards

was exiled. And yet Cato's pointed suggestion of his connection with the conspiracy, amounting almost to an accusation, might have cost Caesar his life had not Cicero personally protected him with his consular power.

8. As propraetor Caesar was so admirable an administrator that he was enabled to pay off his tremendous accumulation of debt, and gain fortune for himself, while having his first experience in a military command. Some years prior to this, he had advocated the claims of Pompey to the extraordinary power which the tribune Gabinus proposed to confer upon him by the so-called Gabinian law, which gave Pompey supreme command for three years over the entire Mediterranean and its shores for fifty miles inland. He had also supported the tribune Manilius, who, a short time later, while Pompey was still possessed of the powers conferred by the Gabinian law, wished to give him the command of the entire east and of the war with Mithradates. Of his attitude towards these measures it can only be said that Caesar well knew that his hour was not yet come, that he would only weaken his own growing influence if he opposed Pompey at this time, and that such extraordinary power placed in the hands of one man was a spectacle with which he wished the Romans to become familiar. Pompey, too, great and popular as he was after his military successes in the east, needed the support which Caesar could give him in securing the ratification of his acts in Asia, and it was at about this time, through Caesar's influence, that Pompey was brought into friendly relations with Crassus, the representative of the money power at Rome, and that the agreement was brought about which has taken the name in history of the "First Triumvirate."

9. This private understanding, for it was no more than that in the eye of the law, despite its name, was effected in the year 60 B.C. In the middle of this year Caesar had voluntarily left his proconsulate in Further Spain before a successor arrived, and returned to Rome as a candidate for the consulship. He had also demanded the reward of a triumph for his military successes in Spain; but since he could not enter the city before receiving it, his opponents in the city compelled him to choose between sacrificing his rights as a candidate for a triumph and his chance for the consulship; for it was required of each candidate for the consulship that he present himself in the forum before the people on three stated occasions. His enemies were disappointed in their expectations. Instead of accepting the triumph, Caesar at once relinquished all thought of that, and came to the forum to advance his claims to the consulship. He secured the office, and, after a struggle with his colleague Bibulus, whose election had been secured by the nobles, attained complete mastery of affairs. He won the affections of the people by his shows and gifts, and they, dissatisfied with the senate's intentions for his proconsular government, offered him for five years the united government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum. Then the senate added to this extraordinary command the government of Transalpine Gaul also, probably because they knew that the people would add this to his original province if they did not. Thus Caesar had at last secured a commission which rivalled those conferred upon Pompey by the Gabinian and Manilian laws.

10. The influence of Caesar was sufficient to hold together Pompey and Crassus, though jealousies arose

during the years of his first appointment to Gaul. He brought about their election as consuls in 55 B.C. and, through the tribune Trebonius, the assignment for the five years following, of Pompey to Spain, and of Crassus to Syria. In return for this his own governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum was extended for a second period of five years. The death of Julia, whom Pompey had married, and who was beloved by both father and husband, and the fate of Crassus, who led an expedition against the Parthians and lost his own life in the rout of his army, removed two ties between Pompey and Caesar which had promoted the friendly adjustment of differences. Once separated, there could be but one



CAESAR'S TRIUMPHAL ENTRY INTO ROME.

outcome, one or the other must be supreme in the state. The civil war followed, the downfall of Pompey and his party, and Pompey's death by assassination in Egypt, whither he had fled.

11. Caesar then defeated the remnants of the sena-

torial party in Egypt, in Africa, and in Spain, and was often in the most critical extremity. It is maintained by some that his character suffered by his connection with foreigners, that he was much more inclined to be a despot, and that he alienated the favor of the people by his assumption of oriental ways. Whatever the truth about this may be, the great reforms he undoubtedly planned could not be carried out, for he was assassinated in the Senate-house on the Ides of March, 44 B.C., by a number of conspirators of noble rank led by Brutus, the nephew of Cato, and by C. Cassius.

12. The relation which the subjugation of Gaul bears to Caesar's whole career is thus seen to be of the utmost importance. We must read the history of these campaigns keeping in mind the importance to Caesar of a faithful, efficient army whose allegiance to their commander was superior even to their patriotism. The history of his campaigns, told by himself and read widely or reported at Rome, had much to do with keeping their favorite in the eyes of the Roman populace during his absence. The "thanksgiving" festivities granted or held at Rome in honor of his victories still further enhanced his favor in the eyes of the people, while the immense spoil served to win him friends among the higher class, who thereby attached themselves to his fortunes and jealously guarded his interests at Rome, doubtless under direction from Caesar's camp in Gaul.

13. Although his campaigns in Germany and in Britain did not contribute much, if anything, to the wealth or power of Rome, they had an indirect result which added largely to Caesar's fame. They opened up two absolutely new fields with which Roman cupidity and ambition might busy themselves, and though the first

commander did not accomplish much in the way of permanent occupation or subjugation, still his was the glory of discovery, and the unknown possibilities of the new lands added perhaps a greater prestige to his name, and wider influence to his authority at Rome than even his victories over the Gauls, the traditional foes and terror of the Romans. As Cicero in a well-known passage tells us, other Roman generals had at times kept back the hordes of Gauls from invading Italy, and Marius had crushed two tribes bent on invasion. Yet even Marius had not ventured to follow the Gauls to their homes, but had remained content with this amount of achievement. Caesar had made it unnecessary that Rome should depend upon the Alps as a natural boundary and barrier against her dreaded foes.

14. It was in the spring of the year 58 B.C. that Caesar entered Gallia Transalpina. He tells the story of the seven campaigns which followed in the seven books of his Commentaries; an eighth book (commentary) was added, written by A. Hirtius, one of his lieutenants. The story is told as if Caesar the historian were entirely distinct from Caesar the general, whose exploits he is describing. His task was a most difficult one, in which he was often in imminent danger of failure. His enemies at Rome were at all times active to embarrass him, and but for the very arbitrariness with which he increased his legions in defiance of Roman law and precedent, he would hardly have succeeded. Without his devoted army, or divested of the robes of office, his life would have been sacrificed to his enemies' jealousy and hatred. The story of the civil war, the steps by which he was gradually brought to leave his province and march upon Rome, has no direct connection with the

Commentaries, but should be carefully read, as well as the history of affairs within the city during Caesar's Gallic campaigns, by all who wish to have a clear, comprehensive view of the character and position of Caesar, and to understand the relation of these Gallic campaigns to his career.

THE ROMAN ARMY IN CAESAR'S TIME

15. There is an evident struggle among modern nations in times of peace, to avail themselves of inventions or discoveries, in the hope that when employed in war these will give them an advantage over rival nations. This struggle affords us the necessary clue to the successes of the Romans in overcoming peoples who were certainly no less brave than themselves, were often their superiors physically, and who apparently made war their chief occupation. We know, for example, that in the early days of the republic the Gauls once took and burned Rome. Caesar afterwards used the spoils won from the Gallic nation to enlarge the forum and otherwise beautify the city. As his campaigning went on, he recruited his army very largely from Gaul, and of the army with which he marched upon Rome perhaps the majority were not of Italian birth and had never seen the city. He had, to be sure, acted very independently in Gaul, not consulting the senate with reference to raising or recruiting his legions, and conferring Roman citizenship even upon a whole legion at once. We see, then, that it was the equipment of their army, the discipline of the Romans, and the art of war as practised by them which had such far-reaching results, and not any unusual physical prowess or superior valor which enabled them

to overcome all opponents. As briefly as possible let us examine into this.

THE ARMY AND ITS SUBDIVISIONS

16. The **Roman legion** originally meant nothing more than army, conscription, or levy; that is, a number of troops called out for a definite purpose at a single time. In the earliest times its strength lay in cavalry, each member of which provided his own horse and equipment. But at a later period, and throughout Caesar's time, the cavalry, furnished entirely by subject states, consisted chiefly of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards, while the Romans fought on foot with the exception of the officers.

17. At its highest figure the legion reached perhaps 6000 men in number. This number, by subdivision into the component parts of a legion, gives us 100 men for the **century** (cf. *centum*, *hundred*). There were ten **cohorts** in a legion, of 600 men each; three **maniples** in a cohort, of 200 men each; two **ordines** or **centuries** in a maniple, of 100 men each. As a matter of fact, however, the number 6000 was seldom reached, and 3600 may be assumed as the standard. This gives by subdivision 360 men for the cohort, 120 for the maniple, 60 for the century. It may be noted that while the term "centurion" is in constant use by Caesar in describing the commanders of the tactical units of the legion, he practically never employs the term "centuria" for the body of men, but uses "ordo" instead.

18. The number of **cavalry** attached to each legion amounted to 300. This consisted of allies, as has been said, and had its own native leaders, but was also under

the superior command of a Roman officer, a **praefectus equitum**. This division, called an **ala**, was subdivided into ten **turmae**, squadrons, and each of these again into three **decuriae**.

19. The officers. Next to the commanding officer of the army (**imperator**) stood his **legati**, his aids or ad-



IMPERATOR.

jutants. Generally there were not more than three of these, but Caesar had ten in Gaul. They were in charge of divisions of the army in battle, were always responsible to the general, who had all credit for their successes, as indeed he had to bear all the blame for their failures. Though his wishes were generally followed, the nomination of the legates and the determination of their number rested with the senate. They were sometimes despatched upon independent operations, and towards the end of the republic might receive the honor of a triumph.

20. Each general had with him one **quaestor**, a regular state official elected for one year. He looked after the maintenance and pay of the soldiers, the valuation and sale of booty and prisoners, and financial matters generally. Sometimes he served as a military officer.

21. There were also officers known as **military tribunes** (**tribuni militum**), six in each legion, each of

whom commanded the legion for two months. All of them at the end of the republic were of the equestrian order and elected by the people, but frequently named by the general himself. Caesar selected his own, and chiefly for political reasons. Hence he had little regard for their services in war, but increased his own influence at Rome by favors of this sort, appointing the sons or other relatives and friends of influential men. The command of the legions in battle was assigned to the **legati** by Caesar instead of to the tribunes.

22. There were also **praefects**, originating in the **praefecti sociorum**, but continued when there were no longer any Italian federated contingents in the Roman army. These were used for any service whatsoever by the general, to command auxiliary troops, or any divisions of his army.

23. The most important of the officers, though the lowest in rank, were the **centurions**. These corresponded to our non-commissioned officers in that they rose from the ranks, and could ordinarily never hope to rise any higher.* Still, as there were sixty of them in each legion, and their rank varied from the lowest (who was probably the centurion of the second ordo of the third manipule of



CENTURION.

* This is of course not altogether true of our army.

the tenth cohort) to the highest (who was the centurion of the first ordo of the first maniple of the first cohort), while between these extremes there were fifty-eight grades of promotion, they might easily pass many campaigns before reaching their goal, which was the chief centurionship. When a centurion reached this point, he was called **primus pilus**, **primipilus**, or **primi pili centurio**.

24. How the promotion took place is a matter of some disagreement, which it is not worth while entering into here. It seems probable that the centurions, ten in each legion, who were in command of cohorts, formed a superior grade among the centurions; these (the **centuriones primorum ordinum**) alone among the centurions were ever summoned to the council of war. (*B. G.* 1, 41.)

25. **The evocati.** Certain of the soldiers were treated with peculiar consideration and exempted from many of the duties of the camp, such as building entrenchments, sentry duty, and the like, and besides received higher pay than the common soldiers. These were the **evocati**, men who had served the full time demanded by the state, and who were prevailed upon by their former general, or by such inducements as have been mentioned, to take the field again. It cannot be supposed that the presence of each **evocatus** was due to the personal solicitation of the general, for the numbers of these were often very large. They were said to stand on an equal footing with the centurions in pay and rank. They either fought in one body under command of a **praefectus evocatorum**, or scattered through the legions. When whole legions or cohorts remained in service beyond the stipulated time, they were called not **evocati**,

but **veterani**. This term **veterani** is often used loosely to describe legions of men who could no longer be termed **tirones**, which was the name applied to raw recruits.



A LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

26. The equipment of the soldier for defence. In Caesar's time this consisted of the helmet, cuirass, and shield.

27. For the earlier helmet, which was of bronze and later of iron, was substituted a lighter form (*galea*) for the legionary soldier, while the heavier (*cassis*) was retained for the cavalry. It was worn only in battle, and on the march was carried on the breast, suspended from the neck. It



HELMET.

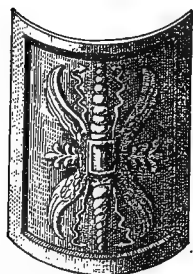
was often surmounted by a crest.

28. The cuirass (*lorica*) was originally made of leathern straps (*lora*), and seems to have been worn even by the common soldier in Caesar's army; it had an iron plate nine inches square, to protect the breast. There were also several more elaborate kinds, one made of iron rings, *lorica sarta*, another covered with scales of



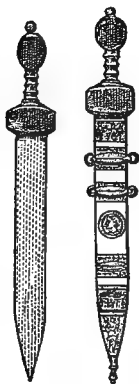
CUIRRASS, *lorica*.

metal, the *lorica squamata*, and another made of massive plates of metal which were bound together with hinges and clasps, *lorica segmentata*.



SHIELD, *scutum*.

29. The shield (*scutum*) took the place of an earlier round shield. It was oblong, not flat, but cylindrically curved, made of boards covered with leather, with a metal rim above and below, while in the middle of it was a rounded boss of iron (*umbo*) terminating in a point; this boss served to turn aside spears or other missiles, and in close fighting might serve as an offensive weapon in itself. The shield was ornamented in various ways, and was provided with a cover which of course was removed when the shield was in use.



SWORD, *gladius*.

30. **Offensive weapons.** These were two for the legionary soldier: a sword and a javelin.

31. The sword (*gladius*) was short, perhaps two feet long, straight, had two edges, and was an instrument suited to thrusting, but not to cutting. It was worn usually in the girdle, but on the right side, not on the left, as with us. This was owing



THE JAVELIN,
pilum.

to the presence of the shield on the left arm, which would naturally impede somewhat the drawing of the sword if it were hung on that side.

32. The **javelin** (**pilum**) was chiefly a weapon for hurling. It had a wooden shaft four and a half feet long, with an iron head embedded in the wood of the



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER, *levis armaturae*.



TRAGULA AMENTATA.

shaft just far enough to made the total length of the missile (the wooden shaft and the projecting iron head) six and three-fourths feet. This iron point was of soft iron, so that when it was hurled into a shield or cuirass, it would bend and interfere with the wearer's movements, and could not easily be withdrawn or cast back. Many of these have been found

in the neighborhood of the ancient Alesia (modern Alise St. Reine).

33. The light-armed troops (*velites*) carried several light javelins for casting, provided with a strap (*amentum*), by the help of which they could be hurled with greater force. They also carried a sword and a small round shield (*parma*). However, we have no mention of Roman *velites* after the war with Jugurtha, and so we are to assume that all light-armed (*levis armaturae*)

troops mentioned in Caesar were auxiliary troops furnished by allied tribes, kings, and provinces.

34. The auxiliary troops (*auxilia*). In most countries where the Romans carried on war a division of their army was furnished from the non-Roman residents; also contingents were often supplied by allied kings and peoples. These usually fought in their national way and wore their own style of armor, but were sometimes disciplined in the Roman fashion. They formed the light-armed divisions of the Roman armies,



SLINGER, *funditor*.

the Romans furnishing the heavy-armed legionaries. The most important of these auxiliary troops were slingers (*funditores*) and archers (*sagittarii*), the slingers hurling stones or pointed bullets of lead. The most

famous of the archers came from Crete and the best slingers from the Balearic islands.

35. The name **alarii** was early given to these auxiliary troops because they were placed upon the wings, but the same name was continued later whatever their position or service.

36. **Clothing of the Roman soldier.** It seems to us hardly credible that the **toga** was once worn in war as well as in peace by the Romans. However, it was very early discarded for the much more suitable **sagum** or, as it is called in *B. G. V.*, 42, **sagulum**. This was open in front, reached only to the knee, and was clasped at the shoulder by a pin or buckle. The soldier wore a **tunic** (*tunica*) under this, and a **girdle** (*cingulum*) over the **tunic**. The **tunic** was a



CLOAK, *sagum*.

sleeveless shirt of wool. The **sagum** was for cold or wet weather, like the overcoat to-day, and it was laid aside in battle. The soldier also wore either **sandals** (*calcei*) or boots (*caligae*) reaching halfway to the knee.

37. **The baggage of the Romans.**—This consisted of two parts: first the heavy baggage, called the **impedimenta**, or baggage train, which was carried on wagons

or pack-animals. This consisted largely of tents, engines of war, and the like.

38. The other part, that which did most to make the life of a Roman soldier burdensome, was his personal pack. This was called *sarcina*. It needs no more than a consideration of the weight and bulk of this burden to make clear to us the



SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH.

use of the terms *impeditus* and *expeditus* applied to the legions, and to understand why a legion in heavy marching trim was almost incapable of resistance. If a battle seemed imminent, the packs were taken off and collected in one place. They were left in camp if the army marched out to battle. Thus the dependence of the army upon its camp is most evident.

39. The soldier's pack (*sarcina*) consisted of a supply of wheat sufficient to last for two weeks or longer,

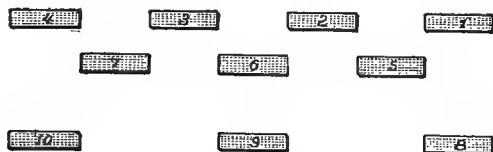


SOLDIER'S PACK, *sarcina*.

several stakes, a saw, spade, axe, and cooking utensils. To enable the men to carry them more easily, Marius had introduced the custom of binding these (*vasa* and *cibaria*) in a bundle (*sarcina*) to a pole, or to one of the stakes carried over the right shoulder. In his left hand the soldier must carry his offensive weapons, his shield hanging from his left arm, and his helmet over his breast. The weight of his pack often ran up to 45 pounds (our weight).

40. **The battle and the battle-order.** — If a choice of position were possible, the Romans would select a side hill sloping toward the enemies' position. If the latter could be induced to make the attack, so much the better, as that would draw them toward the Roman position. The Romans depended chiefly upon the weight and force of their charge to break the enemies' line, and a short run down hill before hurling the *pila* contributed much to the effectiveness of this. When the enemies' line was thus broken or at least made to falter, the Romans drew their swords and leaped upon their foes with the utmost fierceness, after which the enemy seldom rallied.

41. The earlier line of battle seems to have been a solid phalanx eight rows deep. Later the favorite line



TRIPLEX ACIES.

was called the **triplex acies**. It is not agreed just what this means. It has long been thought to be an arrangement of the ten cohorts of a legion in such a way that

four occupied the first line, leaving spaces between each two equal to the breadth of a cohort. The next three cohorts occupied the second line, standing just behind these open spaces. Three more cohorts formed the third line, somewhat similarly placed with reference to the second line. In case of the defeat or weariness of the first line, it was thought that the second charged through the intervals. The third line served as a reserve for the second.

42. According to others, the **triplex acies** was an army with three divisions, a right, left, and centre; a **duplex acies** was one with a right and left wing, and a **simplex acies** consisted of one body of troops.

43. The **marching order**. Ordinarily each legion marched in simple column followed by its baggage

III. Manip.	II. Manip.	I. Manip.
I. Cent.	I. Cent.	I. Cent.
II. Cent.	II. Cent.	II. Cent.

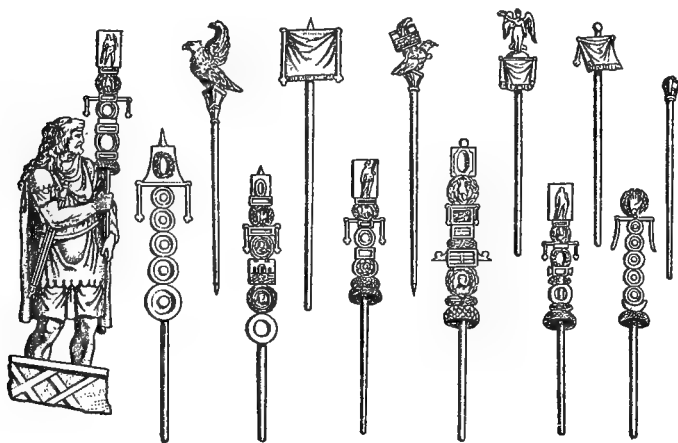
THE MARCHING ORDER.

train. The cavalry would be drawn up on the sides or in the rear. But when the army approached an enemy, such interruptions of the marching column by the baggage of single legions left many vantage-points for attack, and it was more usual for several legions to march in advance, in battle order (**expeditae**), followed by the entire baggage train of the army, with the remaining legions in the rear. With a column marching on either side of the baggage train, it was not difficult to assume an attitude of defence if attacked, by forming the so-called **orbis**, presenting an unbroken line from all sides (similar to a hollow square), and surrounding the baggage train.

44. **Exploratores; speculatores**. In each army there were bodies of troops called **exploratores**, for the most part bands of cavalry, who swept through a country to

effect a recognizance. These must not be confounded with the *speculatores*, who were individuals employed as spies, or scouts.

45. The standards (*signa*). The legionary standard (*signum legionis*) was established by Marius in his second consulship and continued in use thereafter. It consisted of an eagle with outspread wings upon a



STANDARDS, *signa*.

wooden lance, holding in his claws thunderbolts of silver, or even of gold. The bearers (*aquiliferi*) were in the habit of wearing bearskins over their helmets and armor, and were selected by the centurions from among the strongest and the bravest of the soldiers.

46. There was no standard of the cohort. Within the cohort, however, there were three standards, one for each manipulus. In fact, it is the tradition that the name *manipulus* itself is derived from the earliest *field-sign*, a handful of hay. Later they used poles with fixed

insignia, figures of animals, chiefly. Still later came javelins with a **manus** at the point, a suggestion of **manipulus**, and metal devices below.

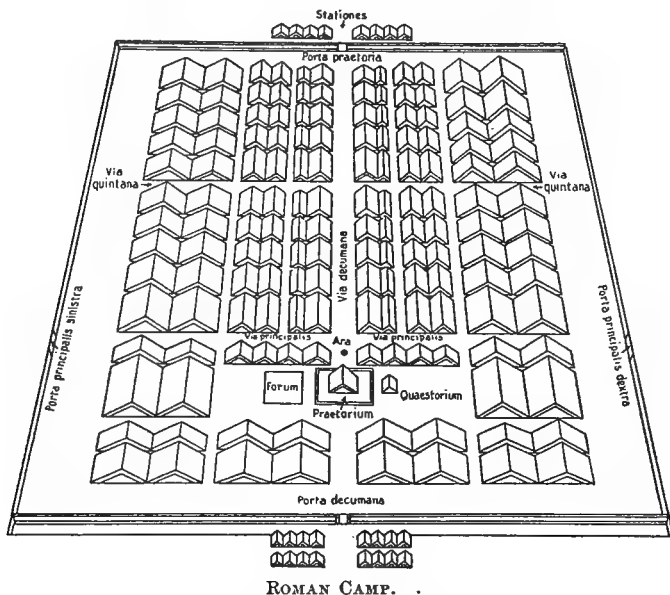
47. The **vexilla** were flags consisting of square pieces of cloth, used for different purposes. They were of different colors, were fastened to the crosspiece of a pole, and served sometimes as standards for the **turmae** of cavalry and for the **auxilia**. If divisions of a legion were sent off on special service, they were provided with special **vexilla**, as the **signa** remained with the legion. As a signal for battle a large red **vexillum** was placed upon the general's tent.

48. The **aquilae** or **signa legionum** were carried by the **aquiliferi** in the first cohorts of the legions. In camp they were kept near the general's tent, in a spot looked upon as sacred and as an asylum. In peace they were kept in the **aerarium**, in charge of the quaestors.

49. The standards were regarded with peculiar veneration, as something holy. A standard-bearer who abandoned a standard, or lost it through his own fault, was put to death, and loss of the standard was a disgrace to the whole legion. To incite the troops to desperate valor, the standard was at times carried forward, or even thrown into the ranks of the enemy or within a rampart. No risk was too great for the men to take in order to recover it.

50. Many expressions are used including the word **signa** to describe movements of the legion: *e.g.* **signa inferre**, to attack; **signa promovere** or **proferre**, to advance the entire line; **signa convellere**, **efferre**, **tollere**, to break up camp; **signa referre**, to retreat; **signa conferre**, to fight, engage hand to hand; **signa statuere**, to halt; **signa convertere**, to wheel about.

51. **The Roman camp.** The importance of its camp to a Roman army can hardly be overestimated. Never even for a single night did an army venture to spend the night unprotected by a rampart and ditch. The amount of labor this required of the Roman soldier was tremendous. No matter how fatiguing his long



day's march had been, he must do his share of the work of preparation of the camp for the night. Here the packs must be left under guard when the army moved out to battle. In this the army might successfully resist any assault, unless the odds against them were overwhelming. It is interesting then to examine the general plan of a Roman camp without going into minute details.

52. The camp was usually square, placed if possible on the side of a gently sloping hill. It was the intention that the **porta praetoria**, placed in the middle of the front towards the enemy, should be the lowest portion of the camp; that the **porta decumana**, directly across from this at the rear, should be the camp's highest point. A street (called **via decumana**) 50 feet wide connected these. Nearly midway ran a cross street, the principal street of the camp, 100 feet wide, dividing the camp into two parts, and ending in two gates, **porta principalis dextra** and **sinistra** (the street was called **via principalis**). The whole inner part of the camp was separated from the wall by an open space perhaps 200 feet wide, which served to protect the men from the shots of an enemy; here also large bodies of troops could march, baggage wagons be placed, and the like. The wall itself consisted of a rampart, a mound of earth, most of the material for which was furnished from a trench just in front of it. The normal breadth and depth of this trench is said to have been twelve by nine feet. As the breadth of the trench was the more important feature and the depth may be assumed to have always stood in a fixed proportion to this, we may infer that whenever only one dimension of the trench is given, the width is meant.

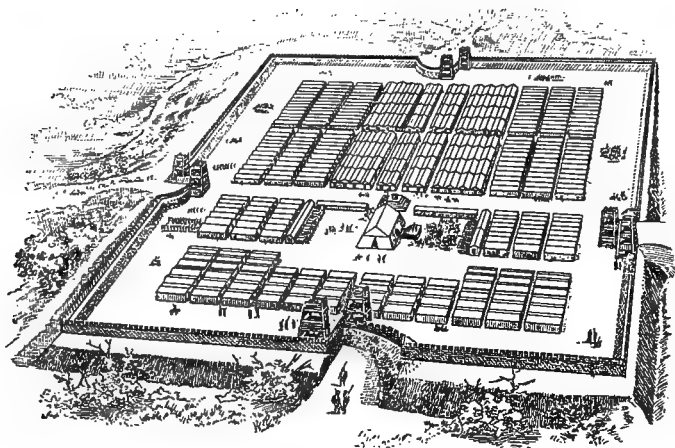
53. The outer slope of the wall was covered with turf; or branches of trees bound together, or bushes. Palisades were often set up on the wall, and sometimes wooden towers.

54. The tents (**pelles**, **tentoria**, **tabernacula**) were made, for the most part, of leather. Ten men usually slept together in one, and were called **contubernales**.

55. The gates of a camp were simply openings, never

closed except temporarily during an attack. They were defended by short intrenchments in the shape of a quarter circle swinging (viewed from without) toward the left, so that an attacking body of troops would be obliged to expose its unprotected right side to the defenders in forcing an entrance.

56. Between the front of the camp and the *via prin-*



ROMAN CAMP.

cipalis ran the *via quintana*, which, parallel to the *via principalis*, divided the space intervening between it and the front of the camp into two equal parts. Smaller streets separated from one another the smaller quadrangular spaces occupied by the tents.

57. On the *via principalis*, nearly at the point where the *decumana maxima* (a street 50 feet wide running from the *porta praetoria* to *porta decumana*, interrupted only by the *praetorium*) reached it, began the space known as the *praetorium*, containing the tent of the

commander, itself often termed the **praetorium**, also a **tribunal** made of earth and covered with turf, an **ara**, and the **auguratorium**. On one side of the **praetorium** was the **forum**, where the assemblies (**contiones**) of soldiers were convened. On the other side was the official headquarters of the quaestor, the **quaestorium**. To the space between these two places and the sides of the camp the body-guard of the commander was assigned. Just in front of the **praetorium**, **quaestorium**, and **forum**, and bordering directly upon the **via principalis**, were the tents of the military tribunes.



BUCINATOR.

58. There were of course some differences between summer and winter camps, but perhaps the most important was the substitution in the latter of regular wooden huts in place of tents, to insure greater comfort and protection against the weather.

59. Usually one or two cohorts as outposts against the enemy stood before the gates of the camp in **stationē**. **Stationes** were entire divisions, **vigiliae** were night posts consisting of four men each, as the night was divided into four watches of (approximately) three hours each, from sunset until sunrise.

As the hours varied in length according to the season of the year, so the watches must have been longer or shorter. **Vigilia** is used to

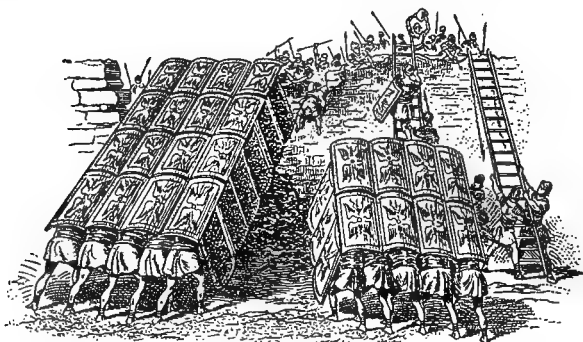
designate time, *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, etc. A *bucinator* gave the signal for the ending of a *vigilia*.

60. *Custodes* were watchmen put in charge of some particular object; a *praesidium* was a detachment sent to occupy a place, as a city or fort; or an escort. The place occupied was also called *praesidium*.

61. *Sieges and siege works.* The Romans were skilful and painstaking in siege operations, and the labor involved was prodigious. In case a place could not be taken directly by assault, by filling up the trenches and breaking down the gates, a second mode of attack consisted of blockading; this was employed when the place was strongly fortified but not well provided with provisions. A third method (formal

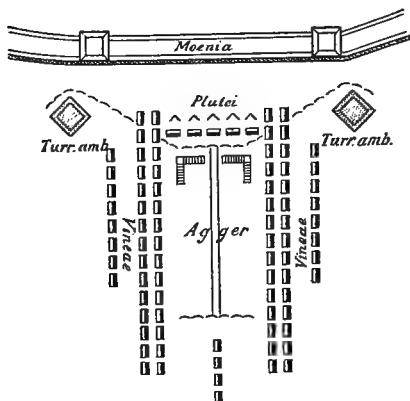


TESTUDO ARIETARIA.



TESTUDO.

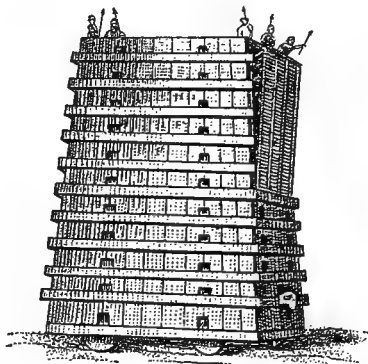
assault through siege-works) was resorted to when a town was strongly fortified and well provisioned.



SIEGE WORKS.

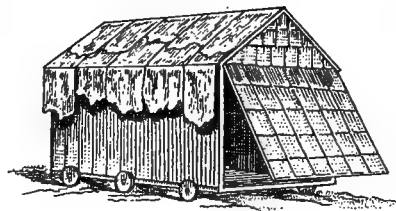
basket-wood, and timbers. It was liable to be set on fire because of these timbers. There were towers either upon the agger or at either side of it, several stories in height, often with a battering-ram (aries) in the lower story, and the upper occupied by artillery. The towers were supplied with bridges to drop upon the wall and provide a passage for an attacking party. The mound (agger) itself was usually built of the same height as the wall,

62. The chief element in the last method of attack was the agger. This was a huge mound begun at some distance (not less than 400 or 500 feet, out of reach of the enemy's missiles) and gradually advanced to the wall. It was built of earth,

MOVABLE TOWER, *turre ambulatoria*.

ARIES SIMPLEX.

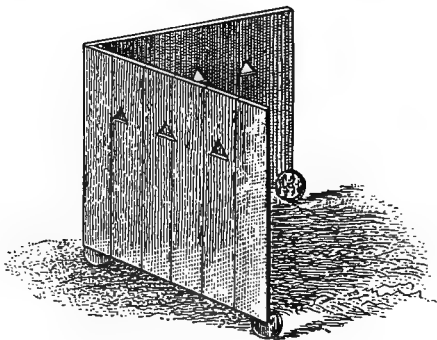
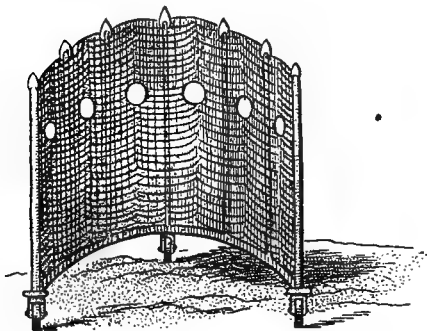
that the assailants might be on the same level as the defenders. The towers had to be protected from fire by skins which were hung over them and by other coverings.



VINEA.

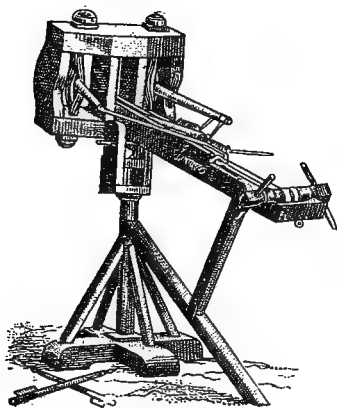
The movable towers were called *turres ambulatoriae*.

63. The workmen had to be protected during the



PLUTEI.

building of the agger, first by stout movable sheds called *musculi*, under cover of which the ground was levelled. Then the material for the agger was brought through rows of sheds called *vineae*, open at either end, much more roomy (16 to 20 ft. long, 8 ft. high, 7 ft. wide) than the *musculi* and less strongly built. They, too, were covered with hides to protect them against fire.

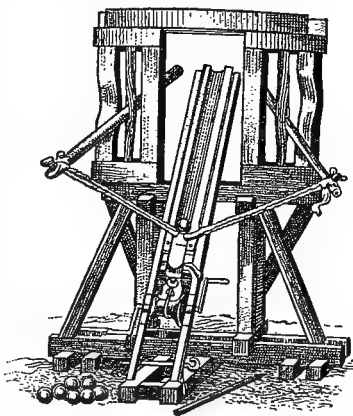


CATAPULTA.

64. Besides these shelters there were large movable shields on wheels (*plutei*), set up in front of the operations upon the agger, and meant to protect archers and slingers, who discharged their missiles from this cover and were ready to frustrate, by a sortie, any attempt of the besieged to interrupt the operation of building. The turrets

ambulatoriae were usually placed at or near either end of this line of light-armed troops.

65. *Tormenta*, or heavy artillery. The Roman artillery under different names consisted of a number of huge machines of the crossbow variety provided with strong elastic cords of animals' hair. Some (called *catapultae* or *scorpiones*) hurled arrows, and their missiles flew in an almost horizontal direction. Others, called *ballistae*, usually cast stones, but occasionally beams, in



BALLISTA.

a curve of forty-five degrees. They were seldom used in the field before imperial times, but were constantly employed in attacking or defending strong places.

THE GAULS

66. It has been said that Alexander the Great of Macedon would never have felt the need of new worlds to conquer had chance or fate led the direction of his campaigns westward instead of eastward. A more obstinate foe than any he encountered in the east he would have found within the limits of the western part of the Grecian peninsula. Thus many are inclined to rate more highly the victories of Caesar's army over the Gauls in the west than those gained by Pompey's over the eastern nations. They claim that this earlier training ground had much to do with the result of the civil war between these two commanders; for, leaving out of consideration the comparative ability of the two generals, Caesar's forces, though inferior in numbers, had most of them been trained in a more serious school of war.

67. Caesar's achievement in subjugating Gaul was certainly a great one, for the Romans' traditional fear of the Gauls had to be overcome before success against them could be hoped for. This terror was due to the fact that the Gauls had once really burned Rome, something which no other enemy, not even Hannibal the Carthaginian, had ever succeeded in doing, and was also due partly to the fact that they were a nation of much greater physical power, of larger stature, and of more formidable appearance than the Italian race.

68. How completely this fear of the Gauls dominated the minds of the Romans appears from this. After Caesar's successes in Gaul, when all knew that the country had yielded to Rome's power, it needed only the mere report that Caesar intended to march upon Rome to spread through the city a wild terror. From his long residence among the Gauls the Romans imagined that he had become quite as brutal as they, and that his occupancy of the city was as much to be dreaded as that of the Gauls themselves.



GALLIC COLLAR OF
GOLD.

69. The Romans themselves admitted that the valor of the Gauls in pitched battles was equal to their own. But the quality of stubborn endurance, which was always characteristic of the Romans, was lacking in them. To this was due much of their weakness. Furthermore, at the outset the Gauls were far inferior to the Romans in the art and in the equipments of war. Their quickness in imitation, however, enabled them to learn much of the Roman method of fighting as the years of struggle went on. But more than all other causes their lack of union among themselves contributed to the Roman success. Caesar cleverly turned to his own account the jealousies between members of the same tribes, and rivalry for leadership among the tribes themselves.

70. In almost every state, clan, or family there were two parties (see selections from VI, ch. 11 ff.). Caesar usually identified himself with the portion of the family which was "out of office," placed it in power through his support, and so secured for himself in every state a body of adherents.

71. The Romans were not the only invaders of the country. In much the same way the Germans had succeeded in getting a foothold there. One of the two chief factions of Gaul had invited Ariovistus and his Germans to help them against the other. In consequence they had been forced to give him lands for his followers and had later come to be completely under his influence. Diviciacus, an Aeduan chief, had visited Rome and sought for help. The Romans, at the motion of Caesar himself, had put him off, and had sent words of friendship to Ariovistus, naming him "king" and "friend," and offering him gifts. The reason is obvious. Word had come that one of the Gallic tribes, the Helvetii, was about to march through that part of southern Gaul upon which Rome had imposed her authority, calling it the "Province." Caesar wished to meet his foes separately, and the more pressing danger was enough for the present. The march of the Helvetii must be stopped. Ariovistus might be faced later. Thus strategy on the Romans' part and lack of unity of purpose among the Gauls combined to bring about the overthrow of the latter. It was impossible to rouse in them a strong national feeling, one which would make them ready to devote themselves or their property to the general welfare. Had it been possible to secure this union and spirit of self-sacrifice among them, Vercingetorix would surely have worsted the Romans. His personal patriotism and his ability as a leader deserved success, but the national weakness made all his efforts futile.



GALLIC WAR TRUMPETS. COIN OF DECIMUS BRUTUS.

72. Very briefly let us touch upon the first points of connection between the Gauls and the Romans and bring the story down to the time of Caesar's appointment in 58 B.C., the year following his consulship, to the proconsular government of Gaul.

73. Back in the fourth century of her existence Rome had been taken by the Gauls under Brennus and burned. At that time the Gauls were the most dreaded nation in Europe, and the disgrace of this destruction rankled in the minds of the Romans so much, and their fears of the Gauls became so great, that they are said to have kept a sum of money in the capitol which was to be used only in case the Gauls should once more invade Italy. They looked upon the anniversary of the day on which had occurred their terrible defeat at the Allia River as one of evil omen.

74. In order to cope with these larger and fiercer enemies from the north, the Romans were obliged to improve their fighting implements. Camillus is said to have introduced the use of metal in strengthening the shield and helmet, and a longer pike for thrusting, as well as hurling. Thus equipped, they were more ready to interfere in the affairs of Gaul as soon as matters within their own part of the Italian peninsula were well in hand; for it must be remembered that the Italy of to-day includes one of the Gallic provinces of the Romans—Gallia Cisalpina.

75. On the southern shore of Gaul the Greeks had settled and established the flourishing colony of Massilia, the modern Marseilles. This colony had a difficult task to maintain itself in the face of hostility of the neighboring tribes. Under such conditions other states hired mercenary troops, but the Massilians de-

pended for their support almost entirely upon the friendship of the Romans. They themselves established numerous colonies along the coast of Gaul, and this close relation with their ally Rome was of mutual advantage. The most available of the Alpine passes was near them, and a hold upon this for future convenience could not but be desired by the Romans. In defending the Massilians the Romans gradually came to subjugate all the territory bounded by the Massilian holdings on the coast, the Alps, and the Rhone. Next, by a continual process of interference and absorption, they came to dominate the Salluvii and Allobroges, who lived in modern Savoy, and other tribes. At last the title of "The Province" was employed for this whole territory, a name which has been perpetuated in the modern French appellation "Provence." Later, Roman commanders crossed the Rhone and pushed this acquisition of territory as far as the Pyrenees, founding at Narbo Martius (the modern Narbonne) a Roman colony to maintain the Roman supremacy. The importance of Massilia as a trading centre was lessened by the growth of this new colony, from which, in later times, the whole province took its distinguishing name, Gallia Narbonensis.

76. Shortly after this the Cimbri and Teutones swept over Gaul, overcoming all except the Belgae, who successfully resisted them. One of the divisions of the Helvetii joined these tribes, and with them defeated a Roman army and compelled it to pass under the yoke. The Romans were vanquished in other battles also, but the Gauls, without entering Italy, moved away into Spain.

77. It was during this period of terror at Rome that

Marius was made consul for three successive years, since the Romans looked upon him as their greatest general, and wished to be sure of his leadership against these Gallic enemies whenever the attack should come. He justified this confidence by first annihilating the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and then the Cimbri at Vercellae, in 101 B.C., associating himself in command with the other consul, Catulus.

78. At the time of the Catilinarian conspiracy the terror of a new Gallic war entered into the minds of the Romans. The Allobroges had sent an embassy to Rome to complain of the oppressive treatment which they received from Roman officials. The conspirators attempted to draw them into the conspiracy, but without success, though the people hearing of the attempt were much alarmed. The ambassadors then betrayed the conspirators indirectly to Cicero and greatly helped in their downfall. The Romans, quite characteristically, denied the Gauls' claims for relief, and the next year overcame them in an ineffectual attempt at rebellion. Meantime the rivalry between the Arverni and the Sequani, on the one hand, and the Aedui on the other, who of all the Gallic tribes were always the closest friends of the Romans, led to the invitation into Gaul of Ariovistus, the Suabian leader, with his horde of Germans. Then followed the defeat, first of the Aedui, and their dependents, and after that the subjection of the Sequani to their own ally Ariovistus.

79. Then it was that Diviciacus, the Aeduan chief, visited Rome and spent a year there. He was a Druid, representing the religion which prevailed in Gaul and Britain at this time, and learned in all the wisdom of his sect. Caesar is reported to have become very

intimate with him, and to this intimacy we must ascribe much of Caesar's knowledge of the people he was afterwards to overpower and subjugate. This old Druid became the companion and confidant of Caesar in his Gallic campaigns, and we are compelled to believe that the fidelity which he displayed to the interests of Caesar and the Romans was based upon a sincere belief that his people would be better off under Roman rule than if left to themselves. But, as we have seen, owing to the movement of the Helvetii the Romans were fearful of another Gallic uprising; and so, in 59 B.C., Diviciacus was refused help against Ariovistus, whom they chose rather to honor. In this way, for the present, they were willing to treat this German who had made subjects of their own Gallic allies.

This then is the condition of affairs in Gaul when Caesar began his proconsular command in the year 58 B.C.

THE GRAMMAR OF CAESAR

NOTE.— While reading Caesar the student should not be expected to master all the details of Latin syntax. He should add to the knowledge that he has gained in this subject during his first year an acquaintance with the constructions most common in Caesar's *Gallic War*, or the portion of that work which he reads, leaving further details for his last two years in the high school.

Accordingly, no attempt has been made to present an exhaustive treatment of Caesar's syntax, but only the more usual constructions have been included. Others are explained in the Notes, with or without references to the Grammars.

An effort has been made to make the rules as simple as possible, without undue attention to exceptional and special uses, with which the student may familiarize himself at a later stage in his reading. The editors have been somewhat conservative in the retention of familiar terms such as Partitive Genitive and the like.

I. GENERAL RULES

80. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case. A. 339¹; B. 166; G. 203; H. 387; H.B. 335; W. 289.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts. 1. 1.

81. A predicate noun, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is in the Nominative case. A. 284; B. 168; G. 211; H. 393; H.B. 319, II; W. 290.

Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus, that canton was called Tigurinus.

1. 12. *Cuius pater . . . a senatu . . . amicus appellatus est, whose father was called a friend by the senate.* 1. 3.

82. A noun or pronoun which describes another, and denotes the same person or thing, is called an appositive. An appositive is put in the same case as the word which it describes. A. 282; B. 169, 1 and 2; G. 321; H. 393; H.B. 319, I; W. 291.

Boios . . . socios sibi adsciscunt, they unite the Boii to themselves as allies. 1. 5.

Persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, he persuades Casticus, the son of Catamantaloedis, the Sequanian. 1. 3.

Convocatis eorum principibus, in his Diviciaco et Lisco, having called together their chiefs, among them Diviciacus and Liscus. 1. 16.

83. An appositive to the subject is in the Nominative case.

Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, the Ambarri, kinsmen and blood relations of the Aeduans. 1. 11.

84. The case of a relative pronoun is determined by its construction within its own clause. It agrees

¹ A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; G. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; H. = Harkness; H.B. = Hale-Buck; W. = West.

with its antecedent in gender, person, and number. A. 305; B. 250; G. 614; H. 396; H.B. 322; W. 299.

Constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, they determined to get together the things which had to do with their departure. 1. 3.

Numerus eorum qui arma ferre possent, the number of those who were able to bear arms. 1. 29.

α. The relative sometimes agrees with a predicate nominative, instead of with its antecedent.

Ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, to sieze Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani. 1. 38.

85. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. A. 316; B. 254, 1; G. 211; H. 388; H.B. 328, 1; W. 296.

Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, the Helvetians attempt to do that which they had resolved on. 1. 5.

In compound forms of the verb the participle agrees with the subject also in gender and in case. A. 316, N.; B. 254, 2; G. 211; H. 388, 1; H.B. 328, 2; W. 297, 4.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts. 1. 1.

NOTE. — When there are two subjects, the verb is commonly in the plural, but in some cases a singular verb is used. A collective noun regularly takes a singular verb, but a plural verb may be used.

Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est, the daughter of, Orgetorix and also one of his sons was taken. 1. 26.

Gallōs a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit, the Marne and Seine separate the Gauls from the Belgians. 1. 1.

Civitates persuasit ut . . . exirent, he persuaded the state (i.e. the citizens) to go forth. 1. 2.

II. SYNTAX OF NOUNS

1. *The Accusative Case*

86. The direct object of a verb is in the Accusative case. A. 387; B. 172 and 173; H. 404; G. 330; H.B. 390; W. 308. The object may be (a) The Person or Thing Affected, or (b) The Result Produced by the action of the verb.

(a) *Quarum unam partem incolunt Belgae, one part of which the Belgians inhabit.* 1. 1.

(b) *Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, Caesar levied two new legions in hither Gaul.* 2. 2.

NOTE.—Some intransitive verbs become transitive when compounded with a preposition, and some verbs which are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin. A. 388, *a* and *b*; B. 175, *a* and *b*; H. 405, 1 and 406; G. 330, *r.* and 331; H.B. 391, 1 and 2; W. 309 and 311.

Hanc (sc. paludem) si nostri transirent hostes expectabant, the enemy were waiting to see whether our men would cross this. 2. 9.

Liscus . . . quod antea tacuerat proponit, Liscus disclosed that about which he had previously kept silent. 1. 17.

87. The subject of an infinitive is in the Accusative case. A. 397, *e*; B. 184; H. 415; G. 343, 2; H.B. 398; W. 322.

Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, that the Helvetions had been so trained by their elders. 1. 14.

Eas res iactare nolebat, he did not wish these matters to be discussed. 1. 18.

NOTE.—For the subject of an historical infinitive, see 214.

88. Many verbs meaning *make, choose, call, show*, and the like take two Accusatives of the same person or

thing. A. 393; B. 177, 1; H. 410; G. 340; H.B. 392; W. 317.

Magistratui praeerat *quem vergobretum* appellant Aedui, *he held the office which the Helvetians call vergobretus.* 1. 16.

89. Some verbs, meaning *ask, demand*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing. A. 396; B. 178; H. 411; G. 339; H.B. 393; W. 318.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitare, *meanwhile Caesar daily demanded the grain from the Aeduans.* 1. 16.

90. Transitive verbs sometimes take a second Accusative when compounded with *trans*. A. 395; B. 179; G. 331; H. 413; H.B. 386; W. 320.

Certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, *he was informed that the Helvetians had already led three-quarters of their forces across that river.* 1. 12.

NOTE. — One of the objects is retained in the passive, while the other becomes the subject.

Reperiebat Belgas Rhenum traductos (esse), *he learned that the Belgians had been led across the Rhine.* (Dir. Disc., Belgae Rhenum traducti sunt.) 2. 4.

91. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are denoted by the Accusative. A. 423 and 425; B. 181; H. 417; G. 335 and 336; H.B. 387, I and II; W. 324.

Cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, *whose father had been king among the Sequanians for many years.* 1. 3.
Nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, *having broken their journey during no part of the night.* 1. 26.

NOTE. — The Accusative of Extent is sometimes used adverbially. A. 397; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; G. 334; H.B. 387, III; W. 316.

Cum equitatu *nihil* possent, *since they are not at all strong in cavalry.* 2. 17.

Esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, *that there were some whose influence with the commons was very strong.* 1. 17.

92. Place to Which is usually denoted by the Accusative with the preposition *ad*, *in*, or *sub*. A. 426, 2; B. 182, 2; H. 418; G. 337, R. 1; H.B. 385; W. 325, 1.

In fines Vocontiorum die septimo pervenit, *he arrived in the territories of the Vocontii on the seventh day.* 1. 10.

Ad fines Belgarum pervenit, *he arrived at the frontier of the Belgians.* 2. 2.

Ipsi . . . sub primam nostram aciem successerunt, *they themselves advanced up to our van.* 1. 24.

93. But the Accusative of Limit of Motion, without a preposition, is used with names of towns and with *domum*, meaning *home*. A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1; H. 418 and 419; G. 337; H.B. 385, *b*; W. 325, 2.

Se Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, *that he had gone to Rome to the senate, to ask for help.* 1. 31.

Eorum qui domum redierunt, *of those who returned home.* 1. 29.

94. Motion to the vicinity of a town is indicated by the Accusative with the preposition *ad*. A. 428, *a*; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; G. 337, 4; H.B. 385, *a*; W. 325, 1.

Ad Genavam pervenit, *he came to the neighborhood of Geneva.* 1, 7.

2. The Genitive

95. A noun or pronoun which limits another, and does not denote the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive. A. 342; B. 195; H. 439; G. 360; H.B. 339; W. 347.

To this general rule the student may apply for the present all the uses of the Genitive not included in §§ 96-103.

Postridie eius diei, the day following that day. 1. 23.

Honoris Diviciaci causa, for the sake of doing honor to Diviciacus.
2. 15.

Aliquem locum medium utriusque, some place midway between each.
1. 34.

Angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, the narrowness of the roads and the great size of the forests. 1. 39.

96. The Possessive Genitive denotes possession or ownership. A. 343; B. 198; H. 439; G. 362; H.B. 339; W. 353.

Qui ipsorum lingua Celtae appellantur, who in their own language are called Celts. 1. 1.

Ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt, they themselves wage war in their territories. 1. 1.

97. The Subjective Genitive denotes the person who acts or feels. A. 343, N. 1; B. 199; H. 440, 1; G. 363, 1; H.B. 344; W. 350.

Esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, that there were some whose influence with the commons was very strong. 1. 17.

Militum concursu . . . repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt, driven back by the coming of the soldiers, they gave up this attempt.
1. 8.

98. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling. It is not always translated into English with "of." A. 347; B. 200; H. 440, 2; G. 363, 2; H.B. 354; W. 351.

Regni cupiditate inductus, led by desire for royal power. 1. 2.

Uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam tenerent, that they should retain the memory of their old-time valor. 2. 21.

NOTE.—The difference between the subjective and the objective genitive may be seen in the following clause, in which both are used: *pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani, on account of the ancient wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians (subjective) on the Roman people (objective).* 1. 30.

99. A Genitive signifying the whole may be used to limit a word indicating a part. This is ordinarily called the Partitive Genitive. A. 346; B. 201; H. 441; G. 367; H.B. 346; W. 355.

Eorum una pars initium capit a flumine Rhodano, one part of these begins at the river Rhone. 1. 1.

Hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, the most distinguished man of the province of Gaul. 1. 53.

Quantum loci acies . . . occupare poterat, as much room as an army could occupy (literally, "as much of place as"). 2. 8.

Satis esse causae arbitrabatur, he thought there was sufficient (of) reason. 1. 19.

100. A Genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive (see § 82) and is then called an Appositional Genitive. A. 343, *d*; B. 202; H. 440, 4; G. 361; H.B. 341; W. 348.

Triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, he drew up a triple line (consisting of) four veteran legions. 1. 24.

Equitatum ad numerum quattuor milium, horsemen to the number of four thousand. 1. 15.

NOTE.—The genitives in §§ 99 and 100 are sometimes confounded. In the former, the Partitive Genitive, the genitive denotes the Whole, of which a Part is taken; in the latter, the Appositional Genitive, the genitive and the noun which it limits denote the same thing.

101. The Genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Characteristic or Quality of a person or thing. A. 345; B. 203; H. 440, 3; G. 365; H.B. 355; W. 354.

Esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis, that the men were savage and of great valor. 2. 15.

Levis armaturae pedites, light-armed soldiers. 2. 24.

102. When the Genitive of Quality denotes a measure of distance or time, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Measure. A. 345, *a*; B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H.B. 355; W. 354.

Murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim . . . perducit, he constructs a wall to the height of sixteen feet. 1. 8.

Cum tridui viam processisset, when he had gone three days' march (tridui = trium dierum). 1. 38.

103. When the Genitive of Quality denotes indefinite value, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Value. A. 417; B. 203, 3; G. 379; H. 440, 3; H.B. 356; W. 361.

Tanti (sc. preti) eius apud se gratiam ostendit, he showed him that his influence with him was with so much (literally, "was of so great value"). 1. 20.

NOTE.—Many of the above varieties of the genitive may be used in the predicate. There is no genitive known as the Predicate Genitive, but we may have a Predicate Genitive of Possession, etc.

104. The Genitive is used with adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness*, and the opposites of these. A. 349, *a*; B. 204; H. 451, 1; G. 374; H.B. 354; W. 352.

Qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, who was considered most skilled in military science. 1. 21.

Cupidum novarum rerum, desirous of revolution. 1. 18.

105. The Genitive is sometimes used with verbs meaning *remember* and *forget* (*memini, reminiscor*, and

obliviscor). A. 350; B. 206; H. 454; G. 376; H.B. 350; W. 364.

Reminisceretur . . . veteris incommodi populi Romani, let him bear in mind the ancient disaster to the Roman people. 1. 13.

Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, if he were willing to forget the ancient insult. 1. 14.

a. Interest is also followed by the Genitive.

Docet quantopere rei publicae intersit, he shows how greatly it is for the interest of the commonwealth. 2. 5.

3. The Dative

106. The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative case. A. 361; B. 187; G. 345; H. 424; H.B. 365; W. 326.

Reliqui sese fugae mandarunt, the rest gave themselves up to flight. 1. 12.

Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, he persuaded them of this (literally, "this to them") the more easily. 1. 2.

107. The Dative of the indirect object is also used.

a. With many verbs of special meanings, such as favor, help, injure, please, displease, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like. A. 367; B. 187, II; G. 346; H. 426, 1 and 2; H.B. 362; W. 330.

Omnes fere finitimos . . . suae virtuti invidere, that almost all their neighbors envied their valor. 2. 31.

Ut victis ac summotis resisterent, that they might resist those who were beaten and driven off (the field). 1. 25.

b. With many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con- (com-), in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super, and circum. A. 370; B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429; H.B. 376; W. 332.

Cum virtute omnibus praestarent, *since they surpassed all in valor.*
1. 2.

Uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, *that they might make war on all Gaul.* 1. 30.

NOTE.—Observe that not all of the verbs under 107, *a* and *b*, govern a dative; for example, Helvetii *reliquos Gallos* virtute praecedunt, *the Helvetians surpass all the rest in valor.* 1. 1; qui cum eum in itinere convenissent, *when they had met him on the road.* 1. 27. Those which govern the dative must be learned by observation and experience.

108. Verbs which govern a Dative can be used only impersonally in the passive. A. 372; B. 187, II, *b*; G. 346, R. 1; H. 426, 3; H.B. 364, 2; W. 331.

His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur . . . non poterat, these could not be persuaded to remain longer. 2. 10.

Quibus rebus quam maturrine occurrendum (esse) putabat, he thought that these difficulties ought to be met as soon as possible.
1. 33.

109. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement or action refers or to whom it is of interest.¹ A. 376; B. 188; G. 352; H. 425, 2; H.B. 366; W. 335.

Docebat quam veteres et quam iustae causae necessitudinis *ipsis* cum Helvetiis intercederent, *he pointed out what old and what legitimate causes for friendship existed between them* (the Romans) and the Helvetians (literally, “for them with the Helvetians”). 1. 43.

Si *sibi* purgati esse vellent, *if they wished to be free from guilt in his eyes* (literally, “with reference to him”). 1. 28.

a. The Dative of Reference is sometimes about equivalent to a Possessive Genitive. A. 377; B. 188, 1, *N.*; G. 350, 1; H. 425, 4, *N.*; H.B. 374.

¹ Hence it is sometimes called the Dative of Interest.

Sese omnes flentes *Caesari* ad pedes praeceperunt, *all in tears threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* 1. 31.

110. The Dative may be used with the verb *sum* to denote the Possessor. A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H.B. 374; W. 340.

Demonstrant *sibi* nihil esse reliqui, *they show him that they have nothing left* (literally, "nothing is to them of remainder"). 1. 11.
Qui dicerent *sibi* esse in animo, *to say that they have in mind.* 1. 7.

111. The Dative of Separation is used with compounds of *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *ad*, and *dis*-, usually of persons only. A. 381; B. 188, 2. *d*; G. 347, R. 5; H. 427; H.B. 371; W. 337.

Omnibus equis *Gallis* equitibus detractis, *having taken away all their horses from the Gallic cavalry.* 1. 42.
Scuto a novissimis *uni militi* detracto, *having taken a shield from one of the soldiers in the rear.* 2. 25.
Hostibus spes potiundi oppidi discessit, *the hope of getting possession of the town departed from the enemy.* 2. 7.

112. The Dative of Agency is used regularly with the Second Periphrastic Conjugation. A. 374, and *a*; B. 189; G. 354; H. 431; H.B. 373; W. 339.

Caesar non expectandum *sibi* statuit, *Caesar decided that he must not wait* (more literally, "that it must not be waited by him"). 1. 11.
Omnibus *Gallis* idem esse faciendum, *that all the Gauls would have to do the same thing* (more literally, "that the same thing would have to be done by all the Gauls"). 1. 31.

113. The Dative of Service or Purpose is used to denote the end or purpose towards which an action is directed, or for which something exists. A. 382; B. 191; G. 356; H. 433; H.B. 360; W. 342 and 343.

Ut aliquem locum *colloquio* deligeret, *that he should choose some place for a conference.* 1. 34.

Haec sibi esse *curae*, *that these things were his care* (literally, "were for a care to him"). 1. 40.

NOTE.—The Dative of Purpose is sometimes used with another dative, as in the second example, when the construction is often called that of the Two Datives; sometimes without another dative, as in the first example. When it is used with *esse*, it is equivalent in force to a predicate nominative or accusative.

114. Many adjectives meaning *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, fit*, and the like take the Dative. A. 384; B. 192, 1 and 2; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H.B. 362; W. 333.

Proximi sunt *Germanis*, *they are nearest to the Germans.* 1. 1.

Fecerunt ut consimilis *fugae* *protectio* videretur, *they made their departure seem very like a flight.* 2. 11.

Secundiore equitum *proelio nostris*, *the cavalry battle being more favorable to our men.* 2. 9.

Qui locum idoneum *castris* deligant, *who were to select a place fit for a camp.* 2. 17.

4. The Ablative

115. The Ablative of Separation is used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition. A. 400–402; B. 214; G. 390, 1 and 2; H. 462 and 463; H.B. 408; W. 374–377.

Ubi murus *defensoribus* nudatus est, *when the wall was stripped of defenders.* 2. 6.

Satis habebat . . . *hostem rapinis* . . . prohibere, *he considered it sufficient to keep the enemy from plundering.* 1. 15.

Ab *oppidis* vim *hostium* prohibere, *to keep the violence of the enemy from their towns.* 1. 11.

Qui fines *Sequanorum ab Helvetiis* dividit, *which separates the territories of the Sequani from the Helvetians.* 1. 8.

NOTE.—Whether a preposition is to be used or not must be learned mainly by observation. Verbs of *freeing, depriving, and*

lacking, and the corresponding adjectives, regularly omit the preposition. Of verbs meaning to *keep from*, *remove*, *withdraw*, some take the preposition, and others omit it, the same verb often having both constructions (as in the second and third examples). Other verbs of separation usually take the ablative with a preposition. The preposition is very commonly used of *persons*.

For the Ablative of Place from Which, see 134 and 135.

116. The Agent, or doer of an action, is expressed by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. A. 405; B. 216; G. 401; H. 468; H.B. 406, 1; W. 379.

Si obsides *ab eis* sibi dentur, *if hostages should be given him by them.* 1. 14.

Cuius pater *a senatu* populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, *whose father had been called friend by the senate of the Roman people.* 1. 3.

NOTE. — For the Dative of Agency, see 112.

117. An Ablative translated by *than* is often used with a comparative and called the Ablative of Comparison. A. 406; B. 217, 1; G. 398; H. 471; H.B. 416; W. 380.

Eo cum celerius *omni opinione* venisset, *when he had come to that place more quickly than any one expected* (literally, "more quickly than all expectation"). 2. 3.

Quae castra . . . *amplius milibus* passuum octo in latitudinem patebant, *this camp extended more than eight miles in width.* 2. 7.

118. *Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used with the force of *plus quam*, *minus quam*, etc., instead of being followed by the Ablative of Comparison. A. 407, *c*; B. 217, 3; G. 296, *R.* 4; H. 471, 4; H.B. 416, *d*; W. 382.

Ut *milium* *amplius* quinquaginta circuitu . . . exercitum duceret, *that he might lead his army by a detour of more than fifty miles.* 1. 41. (*Milium* is Genitive of Measure; see 102.)

Reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius *pedum* MDC, *the remaining space, which is not more than 1600 feet*. 1. 38. (*Pedum* is Genitive of Measure, used predicatively; see 102 and 103, Note.)

NOTE.— Sometimes, however, the Ablative of Comparison is used: Non amplius *quinis* aut *senis milibus* passuum. 1. 15.

119. The Ablative is used to express the Means by which, or the Instrument with which, an action is accomplished. A. 409; B. 218; G. 401; H. 476; H.B. 423; W. 386.

Una pars continetur *Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus* Belgarum, *one division is bounded by the Garonne River, the Ocean, and the territories of the Belgians*. 1. 1.

Id Helvetii *ratibus ac lintribus junctis* transibant, *this the Helvetii were trying to cross by a bridge of rafts and boats* (literally, “by rafts and by boats joined together”). 1. 12.

NOTE.— The Ablative of Means or Instrument is very common in Latin and is used in many cases where a different construction (i.e. a different preposition) is used in English. For instance:—

Frumento quod navibus subvexerat, *the grain which he had brought in ships* (literally, “by ships”). 1. 16.

Fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, *they contend with the Germans in almost daily battles*. 1. 1.

Ut magis virtute contenderent quam *dolo* aut *insidiis* niterentur, *that they rather fought with valor than relied on treachery and ambuscades* (literally, “strove by means of treachery”). 1. 13.

Superioribus victoriis freti, *relying on their former victories* (literally, “supported by”). 3. 21.

120. Price is expressed by the Ablative. A. 416; B. 225; G. 404; H. 478; H.B. 427; W. 395.

Portoria . . . parvo pretio redempta habere, *that he had bought up the custom-house duties at a low price*. 1. 18.

Uti . . . Germani mercede arcesserentur, *that the Germans were hired as mercenaries* (lit., “were summoned by a price”). 1. 31.

121. The deponents *utor*, *use*, *fruo*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vescor*, *eat*, and their compounds, take the Ablative. A. 410; B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477; H.B. 429; W. 387.

Eo . . . frumento uti minus poterat, he was not able to use that grain. 1. 16.

Impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt, our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. 1. 26.

122. The Ablative of Cause gives the cause or reason for an action. A. 404; B. 219; G. 408; H. 475; H.B. 444; W. 384.

Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, as for their boasting so arrogantly on account of their victory. 1. 14.

Qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis rebus imperiis studebant, who on account of the changeableness and fickleness of their character were desirous of a revolution. 2. 1.

NOTE.—Cause is also expressed by the ablative with *ex*; for example, *quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, that men might feel the deeper grief in consequence of a change of fortune* (literally, “of affairs”). 1. 14.

123. The Ablative, regularly with *cum*, is used to express the Manner of an action, like an adverb. *Cum* may be omitted when the ablative has an adjective modifier. A. 412; B. 220; G. 399; H. 473, 3; H.B. 445; W. 390.

Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, Diviciacus embracing Caesar with many tears (i.e. tearfully). 1. 20.

Incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, with wonderful speed they rushed down to the river (i.e. very swiftly). 2. 19.

124. The Ablative of Accompaniment is ordinarily used with the preposition *cum*, but in military expressions the ablative alone may be used, when it is modi-

fied by an adjective. A. 413; B. 222; G. 392; H. 473, 1 and 474; H.B. 418 and 420; W. 392.

In ulteriorem Galliam . . . cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit, *he hastened to march into Farther Gaul with these five legions.* 1. 10.

Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis, *Caesar sent forward the cavalry and followed with all his forces.* 2. 19.

125. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with comparatives and words implying comparison, including expressions of distance. A. 414; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479; H.B. 424; W. 393.

Quod paucis ante mensibus Harudum milia hominum XXIII ad eum venissent, *because a few months before twenty-four thousand of the Harudes had come to him (literally, "before by a few months").* 1. 31.

Hic locus aequo fere spatio a castris utriusque aberat, *this place was about an equal distance away from the camp of each (literally, "was distant by an equal space").* 1. 43.

126. The Ablative is used to indicate the Attendant Circumstances of an action or situation. B. 221; H. 473, 3; H.B. 422; W. 391.

Qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant, *who were less easily able to accomplish this under our rule.* 2. 1.

Equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt, *the cavalry of Ariovistus took their position at an equal distance (away).* 1. 43.

127. The Ablative is used to denote that in Accordance with which anything is done. A. 418, a; B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475; H.B. 414; W. 391.

Negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, *he says that he cannot in accordance with the custom and the usual procedure of the Roman people give any one a passage through the province.* 1. 8.

Consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat, according to his custom Caesar was leading six legions in light marching order. 2. 19.

128. A noun in the ablative, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Quality or Characteristic. A. 415 ; B. 224 ; G. 400 ; H. 473, 2 ; H.B. 443 ; W. 394.

Homines inimico animo, men of hostile disposition. 1. 7.

Quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, because they did not yet seem well disposed towards the Roman people (literally, "seem of good mind," the predicate use of the construction). 1. 6.

129. The Ablative of Specification is used with verbs and adjectives to denote the respect in which anything is done or exists. A. 418 ; B. 226 ; G. 397 ; H. 480 ; H.B. 441 ; W. 396.

Quod . . . civitas . . . hominum multitudine praestabat, because the state excelled in population (literally, "in the number of its men"). 2. 15.

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt, all these differ from one another in language, institutions, and laws. 1. 1.

130. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, accompanied by a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in the same case, may be loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the Ablative Absolute.

The Ablative Absolute is generally the equivalent of a clause expressing time, condition, cause, means, or other attendant circumstances, and should be translated by such a clause. A. 419 and 420 ; B. 227, also 1 and 2 ; G. 409 and 410 ; H. 489 ; H.B. 421 ; W. 397-399.

TIME.—Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, when that work was finished, he set guards. 1. 8.

CONDITION.—Quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo, because if he bid, no one dared to bid against him. 1. 18.

OPPOSITION or "CONCESSION." — Propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem *paucis defendentibus* (oppidum) expugnare non potuit, *on account of the breadth of the ditch and the height of the wall he was unable to take the town, though the defenders were few.* 2. 12.

MEANS. — Ut *aequato omnium periculo* spem fugae tolleret, *that by making the danger of all equal he might take away the hope of flight.* 1. 25.

MANNER. — *Incitato equo* se hostibus obtulit, *he rushed upon the enemy with his horse at full speed.* 4. 12.

5. Relations of Place

NOTE. — For Place to Which, see 92 and 93.

131. Place Where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the prepositions *in* and *sub*. A. 426, 3; B. 228; G. 385; H. 483; H.B. 433; W. 401.

Factum (periculum) *etiam nuper in Italia*, *a test had also been made recently in Italy.* 1. 40.

Qui principatum in civitate obtinebat, *who held the chief place in the state.* 1. 3.

132. The preposition is omitted with the general designations of place, *loco*, *locis*, and *parte*, and with other words when they are modified by *totus*. A. 429, 1 and 2; B. 228, *b*; G. 388; H. 485, 2; H.B. 436 and *a*; W. 402, 2.

Qui . . . alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt, *who join battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavorable place.* 1. 15.

Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur, *wills were signed and sealed generally in the whole camp.* 1. 39.

a. Also in some idiomatic expressions, such as *memoria tenere*, "to hold in memory," *castris se tenere*, "to keep oneself in one's camp," where the idea of Means (119, NOTE) is perhaps present, as well as that of Place.

133. Names of towns express Place Where by the Locative. "At home" is also expressed by the Locative form *domi*.

The Locative has in the singular of the first and second declensions the same form as the Genitive; elsewhere the same form as the Ablative. A. 427, 3 and footnote; B. 228, *a* and 232; G. 386; H. 483; H.B. 449; W. 402, 1 and 403.

Quod proelium Admagetobriae factum sit, a battle which was fought at Admagetobria. 1. 31.

Romae dierum viginti supplicatio redditur, at Rome a thanksgiving of twenty days was kept. 7. 90.

Cum ipse gratia plurimum domi . . . posset, when he himself had great power at home. 1. 20.

134. Place From Which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition *ab*, *de*, or *ex*. A. 426, 1; B. 229; G. 390; H. 461; H.B. 409; W. 404.

Qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, who had come as messengers from Iccius. 2. 7.

Castra ex eo loco movent, they move their camp from that place. 1. 15.

Ut de finibus suis exirent, that they should go out from their territories. 1. 2.

135. The preposition is omitted with names of towns, with *domo*, "from home," and sometimes with other words, especially when governed by verbs compounded with *ab*, *ex*, or *de*. A. 427, 1; B. 229, 1; G. 390, 2 and 391; H. 462; H.B. 451; W. 405.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent, there were only two routes by which they could go forth from home. 1. 6.

Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, the Germans led their troops from the camp. 1. 51.

136. Motion *from the vicinity of a town* is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition (cf. 94).

Ab Ocelo . . . in fines Vocontiorum pervenit, he came from the neighborhood of Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii. 1. 10.

6. Expressions of Time

NOTE.—For the Accusative of Duration of Time see 91.

137. Duration of Time is occasionally denoted by the Ablative. A. 424, 6; B. 231, 1; G. 393, R. 2; H. 417, 2; H.B. 440.

Ea tota nocte continenter ierunt, they continued to march all that night. 1. 26.

Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, all this time (literally, "all these days") Ariovistus kept his army in camp. 1. 48.

NOTE.—The Ablative of Duration of Time and that of Time When do not differ greatly in some cases. See *omni tempore*, p. 8, l. 5, and the note. In the first example *continenter* shows that we have the former.

138. Time When or At Which is denoted by the Ablative. A. 423; B. 230; G. 393; H. 486; H.B. 439; W. 406.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent, the following day they move their camp from that place. 1. 15.

Qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat, who had been the leader of the Helvetians at the time of the war with Cassius. 1. 13.

139. Time Within Which is denoted by the Ablative. A. 423; B. 231; G. 393; H. 487; H.B. 439; W. 407.

Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, a test of that foe had been made within the memory of our fathers. 1. 40.
Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit, within about fifteen days he came to the country of the Belgians. 2. 2.

7. *Dates*

A. 631; B. 371 and 372; G. p. 491 f.; H. 754 and 755; H.B. 660-671; W. 715-720.

140. The Romans designated each year by the names of the consuls for that year. The days of the month were reckoned backward from three points, the *Kalends* (*Kalendae*), *Nones* (*Nōnae*), and *Ides* (*Īdūs*). The *Kalends* were the *first* day of every month. The *Nones* were the *fifth* and the *Ides* the *thirteenth*, except in March, May, July, and October, when they were the *seventh* and *fifteenth*, respectively. The names of the months were adjectives, agreeing with *Kalendae*, *Nōnae*, and *Idus*. They are as follows: Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis (later Iūlius), Sextilis (later Augustus), September, October, November, December.

The day before the points in the month from which time was reckoned was *prīdie Kalendās*, *prīdie Nōnās*, or *prīdiē Īdūs*; but the day before that was called not the second day before the *Kalends*, etc., but the third (*ante diem tertium Kalendās Iānuāriās*), because the Romans counted the day from which they began to reckon. Thus, in December the *Kalends* of January counted one day, the 31st of December a second (*prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās*), and the 30th of December was the *third* day before the *Kalends*.

Therefore, in order to turn Roman dates into English, when a day before the *Kalends* is given, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number; when a day before the *Nones* or *Ides* is given, add one to the day on which the *Nones* or *Ides* fall, and subtract the given number. In the

time of Caesar's Gallic War, March, May, July, and October had 31 days and the rest 29.

For example :

ante diem V. Kal. April., L. Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus,
on the 28th of March ($31 + 2 - 5$), 55 B.C. 1. 6.

The expression *ante diem V. Kalendas Aprilis*, although the usual form, is not strictly grammatical. *Die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilis*, 'on the fifth day before the Kalends of April,' became by attraction *ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*, where *Kalendas* is governed by *ante diem quintum* as if by a preposition.

The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours, which of course differed in length at different seasons of the year, designated as *hōra prīma*, *secunda*, etc. The night was divided into twelve hours from sunset to sunrise (*prīma hōra noctis*, etc.) and also into four watches (*vigilia prīma*, etc.).

141. The Vocative is the case of direct address. A. 340; B. 171; G. 201, 1, R. 1; H. 402; H.B. 400; W. 307.

Desilite, commilitones, leap down, fellow-soldiers. 4. 25.

III. PREPOSITIONS

A. 220-221; B. 141-143; G. 416-418; H. 420 and 490; H.B. 455-458; W. 241-245.

142. The following prepositions govern the Ablative only: *ab* (*ā*), *cum*, *de*, *ex* (*ē*), *prae*, *prō*, *sine*.

1. (*a*) *Ab* is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion from*, *separation*, *source*, and *distance*, literally and figuratively.

Ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit, he led his army from (the country of) the Allobroges into (that of) the

Segusiavi. 1. 10. *A Sequanis impetrat, he obtains from the Sequani.* 1. 9. *Oppidum vacuum a defensoribus, a town empty of defenders.* 2. 12. *Milia passuum tria ab eorum castris, three miles from their camp.*

(b) **Ab** is used to denote *the point of view from which, with the force of place where.*

A Sequanis et Helvetiis, on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians.

1. 1. *Ab latere aperto, on the open flank.* 1. 25. *A dextro cornu, on the right wing.* 1. 52.

(c) **Ab** with the Ablative is used in expressions of time in the sense of *from . . . (on)* and *after.*

Ab hora quarta . . . ad solis occasum, from the fourth hour until sunset. 3. 15. *A pueris, from boyhood.* 4. 1. *A decimae legionis cohortatione, after encouraging the tenth legion.* 2. 25.

(d) For **ab** with the Ablative of Agent see 116.

2. (a) **Cum** denotes *accompaniment, association, and intercourse* (friendly and unfriendly).

Dies quam constituerat cum legatis, the time that he had agreed on with the envoys. 1. 8. *Cum equitatu . . . proelium committunt, they join battle with the cavalry.* 1. 15. *Unum imperium . . . cum ipsis, one (and the same) government with themselves.* 2. 3.

NOTE. — With the personal and relative pronouns *cum* regularly follows its case and forms a single word with it. *Quibuscum.* 1. 1.

(b) For **cum** with the Ablative of Accompaniment see 124; with the Ablative of Manner, 123.

3. (a) **De** denotes motion *down from* or *from.*

De navibus desiliendum . . . erat, they had to jump down from the ships. 4. 24. *De agris demigrare, to move out from their towns.* 4. 19.

(b) **De** has the meaning *about, concerning, or with respect to.*

De re publica agere, to confer about the commonweal. 1. 34. *De populo Romano meritis, deserved of (i.e. with respect to) the Roman people.* 1. 11. *De eius adventu certiores facti, informed of (i.e. concerning) his arrival.* 1. 7.

(c) **De** with the Ablative is used in expressions of *time when*.

De media nocte, at midnight. 2. 7. *De tertia vigilia, in the third watch.* 1. 12.

(d) **De** with the Ablative denotes *cause* and *manner*, and sometimes has the force of a partitive genitive.

Qua de causa . . . , for which reason. 1. 1. *De improvviso, unexpectedly.* 2. 3. *Pauci de nostris, a few of our men.* 1. 15.

4. (a) **Ex** (e) is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion out of* or *from*, *separation*, and *source*, literally and figuratively.

Tres (legiones) ex hibernis educit, he leads three legions out of winter quarters. 1. 10. *Ex captivis comperit, he found out from captives.* 1. 22. *Sororem ex matre . . . , his sister on his mother's side (from his mother).* 1. 18.

(b) **Ex** denotes *the point of view from which* with the force of *place where*; cf. 1 (b).

Una ex parte, on one side. 1. 2. *Ex vinculis causam dicere, to plead his cause in bonds.* 1. 4.

(c) **Ex** with the Ablative is used in expressions of *time from . . . (on) and after*.

Dies . . . ex eo die quintus, the fifth day after that day. 1. 42. *Ex eo tempore fuga comparata . . . , having prepared for flight from that time on.* 4. 18.

(d) **Ex** with the Ablative may denote *cause*, *accordance*, *manner*, or *respect*, and *material*, and may be equivalent to a partitive genitive.

Ex eo . . . , on that account. 1. 20. *Ex communi consensu, with (i.e. in accordance with) the common consent.* 1. 30. *Magna ex parte, in a great measure.* 1. 16. *Naves factae ex robore, ships made of oak.* 3. 13. *Unus e filiis, one of his sons.* 1. 26.

5. *Prae* means *compared with*.

Prae magnitudine corporum suorum, in comparison with the great size of their own bodies. 2. 30.

6. (a) *Pro* means *before*, in place.

Pro portis castrorum, before the gates of the camp. 4. 32.

(b) *Pro* means *for* (= on behalf of, instead of, on account of, in return for, as, as if, considering).

Pro his, in their behalf. 2. 14. *Pro velis, for sails.* 3. 13. *Quod non vidisset pro viso renuntiasset, had reported as seen that which he had not seen.* 1. 22. *Pro maximis . . . officiis, in return for very great services.* 1. 43. *Pro multitudine hominum, considering the size of their population.* 1. 2.

7. *Sine* means *without*.

Sine . . . iniuria, without (doing) damage. 1. 9. *Sine causa, without cause.* 1. 14.

143. *In* and *sub* govern the Ablative or the Accusative, with a difference of meaning.

1. (a) *In* with the Accusative is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion to* or *towards*, literally and figuratively.

In Italiam, into Italy. 1. 10. *Proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam, the shortest road into Farther Gaul.* 1. 10. *In deditionem accipere, to receive into surrender.* 1. 28. *In ipsum Caesarem . . . incidit, he fell in with Caesar himself.* 1. 53.

(b) *In* with the Accusative is used in some expressions where there is no idea of motion in English.

In altitudinem pedum sedecim, of sixteen feet in height. 1. 8. *In longitudinem, in length.* 1. 2.

(c) **In** with the Accusative means *against, towards, in regard to* (of feeling or effort).

Spatium pila in hostes coniciendi, room for hurling their pikes against the enemy. 1. 52. *Bono animo in populum Romanum, kindly disposed toward the Roman people.* 1. 6.

(d) **In** with the Accusative denotes time, with the meaning *until* or *for*.

Rem in hiemem producere, to protract the campaign until winter.

4. 30. *In tertium annum, for the third year* (from date). 1. 3.

In reliquum tempus, for the future. 1. 20.

(e) **In** with the Ablative denotes time, with the meaning *in* or *during*.

In consulatu suo, in his consulship. 1. 35. *In itinere, during the march.* 1. 3.

(f) **In** with the Ablative denotes the place where (see 131), figuratively as well as literally.

In conspectu exercitus nostri, in the sight of our army. 1. 11.

(g) **In** with the Ablative may mean *among*. It may also denote cause, circumstances, manner, or respect.

In his fuit Ariovistus, among these was Ariovistus. 1. 53. *In tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum, shameful, when the Roman people were so powerful.* 1. 33. *In occulto, secretly.* 1. 32.

2. (a) **Sub** with the Accusative denotes motion *up to* or *so as to come under* a place.

Exercitum sub iugum miserat, he had sent the army under the yoke.

1. 12. *Sub primam nostram aciem, up to our van.* 1. 24.

(b) **Sub** with the Accusative denotes time, with the meaning *towards* or *about*.

Sub vesperum, towards evening. 2. 33. *Sub occasum solis, at about sunset.* 2. 11.

(c) **Sub** with the Ablative denotes rest *under* or at the foot of, literally or figuratively.

Sub monte, at the foot of a mountain. 1. 21. Sub illorum ditione, under their sway. 1. 31.

144. All the prepositions not mentioned in 142 and 143 govern the Accusative only. Namely, **Ad**, **Adversus**, **Apud**, **Ante**, **Circum**, **Cis**, **Ob**, **Per**, **Post**, **Prope** (**Propius**), **Secundum**, **Trans**, and those ending in -a and -ter (**Circiter**, **Citra**, **Contra**, **Extra**, **Inter**, **Intra**, **Praeter**, **Propter**, **Supra**, **Ultra**).

1. (a) **Ad** denotes motion *to* or *towards* (see 92), figuratively as well as literally.

Cum *ad* has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, when to these suspicions undoubted facts were added. 1. 19. *Ad salutem* contendere, to hasten to (a place of) safety. 3. 3. *Paratus ad dimicandum*, prepared for fighting. 2. 21.

(b) **Ad** denotes rest *at* or *near* a place.

Ad Genavam, at Geneva. 1. 7. *Ad Hispaniam*, near Spain. 1. 1.

(c) **Ad** with expressions of number means *up to* or *about*.

Ad numerum quattuor milium, to the number of four thousand. 1. 15. *Numero ad duodecim*, about twelve in number. 1. 5.

(d) **Ad** denotes time with the meaning *until* or *up to*.

Ad multam noctem, until late at night. 1. 26. *Ad hoc tempus*, up to the present time. 2. 17.

(e) **Ad** with the Accusative may mean *according to* or *in respect to*.

Ad altitudinem fluminis, according to the depth of the river. 4. 17. *Ad celeritatem*, in respect to speed. 2. 26.

2. **Inter** means *between, among, within*, and is used of place and of time.

Unum (iter erat) *inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum*, one route was between the Jura Mountains and the river Rhone. 1. 6.
 Quod tempus *inter eos* committendi proeli convenerat, which time had been agreed on among them for joining battle. 2. 19.
 Qui *inter annos quattuordecim* tectum non subissent, who had not been under a roof within twenty years.

3. (a) **Per** denotes motion *through* or *over*.

Per fines Aeduorum, through the lands of the Aeduans. 1. 12.
Se per munitiones deicere, to throw themselves over the fortifications. 3. 26. *Per temonem*, along the pole. 4. 33.

(b) **Per** means *through* (= with the help or agency of, by means of, on account of), *with respect to*.

Per exploratores . . . certior factus, informed through scouts. 1. 12. *Per vim*, by force. 1. 14. *Per se*, so far as he was concerned. 1. 41. *Per anni tempus*, on account of the time of year. 3. 9.

4. For the meanings of **adversus**, **ante**, **apud**, **circiter**, **circum**, **cis**, **citra**, **extra**, **infra**, **intra**, **ob**, **post**, **propter**, **secundum**, **supra**, **trans**, and **ultra**, see the VOCABULARY.

IV. ADJECTIVES

145. An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case. Adjectives may be attributive, appositive, or predicate. The first modify nouns directly; the second are joined to nouns in the manner of an appositive (see 82); the last modify a noun through the medium of a verb, usually *esse*. A. 286 and 285, 1; B. 233, 2 and 234; G. 289; H. 383, 2 and 3 and 394; H.B. 320, I, II, and III; W. 293.

Equitatum omnem . . . praemittit, he sends forward all the cavalry. (Attributive adjective.) 1. 15.

Helvetii continentur . . . monte Iura altissimo, the Helvetians are bounded by the Jura Mountain, of great height. (Appositive adjective.) 1. 2.

Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, of all these the Belgians are the bravest. (Predicate adjective.) 1. 1.

146. An Attributive Adjective which modifies two or more nouns usually agrees in gender and number with the nearest. A. 286, *a*; B. 235, A, 1 and B, 1; G. 290; H. 395, 1; H.B. 323; W. 294, 1 and 295.

Non eadem alacritate ac studio . . . utebantur, they did not show the same eagerness and zeal. 4. 24.

Vir et consili magni et virtutis, a man of great judgment and valor. 3. 5.

147. In Latin an adjective is often used where the English employs an adverb. A. 290; B. 239; G. 325, R. 6; H. 497, 1; H.B. 245; W. 412.

Qui creatur annuus, who is elected annually. 1. 16.

Praecipites fugae sese mandarunt, they gave themselves up headlong to flight. 2. 24.

148. Adjectives meaning *first* and *last* are used adverbially with the force shown in the following examples. A. 290; B. 241, 2; G. 325, R. 6; H. 497, 3; H.B. 243; W. 417.

Ea princeps poenas persolvit, this (state) was the first to pay the penalty. 1. 12.

Legiones sex, quae primae venerant, six legions which had been the first to come. 2. 19.

149. Some adjectives, mostly superlatives, may be used to denote a part of an object. A. 293; B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H. 497, 4; H.B. 244; W. 416.

Cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, when the top of the mountain was held by Labienus. 1. 22.

Ad extremas fossas castella constituit, at the ends of the ditch he placed redoubts. 2. 8.

150. The Comparative and the Superlative of adjectives and adverbs are often translated by *too*, *rather*, *very*, etc., instead of by *more* and *most*. A. 291, *a*, *b*, and *c*; B. 240, 1 and 2; H. 498; H.B. 241, 1; W. 414.

Cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, having followed the (enemy's) rear too eagerly. 1. 15.

Flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, by the river Rhine (which is) very broad and very deep. 1. 2.

151. *Quam* with the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. A. 291, *C*; B. 240, 3; G. 303; H. 159, 2; H.B. 241, 4; W. 414, 4.

Quam maximum numerum, as great a number as possible. 1. 3.

NOTE.—The full form occurs in 1. 7, *quam maximis potest itineribus, by the longest possible marches.*

152. Adjectives may be used as nouns in two ways:—

a. The meaning of the noun is determined by the gender of the adjective. A. 288; B. 236–238; G. 204, and notes; H. 494 and 495; H.B. 249–252; W. 409.

Legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, they send to him as envoys the noblest men of the state. 1. 7.

Qui dicerent se suaque omnia in fidem . . . populi Romani permittere, to say that they intrusted themselves and all their possessions ("things") to the protection of the Roman people. 2. 3.

b. The meaning of the noun is determined by some word understood, with which the adjective agrees.

Caesar eius dextram (sc. manum) prendit, Caesar grasps his right hand. 1. 20.

Multa in ea genera *ferarum* (sc. *bestiarum*) nasci constat, *it is well known that many kinds of wild animals are born there.* 6. 25.

NOTE. — Conversely, a noun may be used as an adjective.
Victoribus Sequanis, *to the victorious Sequani.* 1. 31.

V. PRONOUNS

153. The Personal Pronoun is omitted when it is the subject of a finite verb, unless it is emphatic for some reason. A. 295, *a*; B. 242, 1; G. 304; H. 500; H.B. 257; W. 419.

Is . . coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, *he made a conspiracy of the nobles.* 1. 2.

Ego certe meum rei publicae . . officium praestitero, *I at any rate will do my duty to the state.* 4. 25.

154. The Reflexive Pronoun *se* and the corresponding adjective *suus* in principal clauses refer to the subject of the main verb. A. 299; B. 244, 1, I; G. 309; H. 503; H.B. 262, 1; W. 421, 1.

Se in castra receperunt, *they returned ("betook themselves") to camp.* 2. 11.

Caesar *suas* copias in proximum collem subducit, *Caesar led his troops to the nearest hill.* 1. 22.

155. *Se* and *suus* in dependent sentences may refer to the subject of the verb of the dependent sentence (direct reflexive) or to the subject of the principal sentence (indirect reflexive).

Tribunos militum monuit, ut . . . *sese* legiones coniungerent, *he directed the tribunes of the soldiers that the legions should join themselves together* (direct reflexive). 2. 26.

His uti conquirerent . . . *si sibi* purgati esse vellent, imperavit, *he ordered these to hunt them up, if they wished to be free from blame in his eyes* (indirect reflexive). 1. 28.

NOTE. — The various uses of *se* and *suus* are illustrated in the following sentence.

(Ariovistus dixit) quod *sibi* Caesar denuntiaret *se* Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem *secum* sine *sua* pernicie contendisse, (Ariovistus said) *that with regard to Caesar's threatening him that he would not neglect the wrongs done to the Aeduans, no one had contended with him without being destroyed.*
1. 36.

Sibi refers to the subject of the main verb of saying which introduces the indirect discourse (indirect reflexive); *se* refers back to the subject of *denuntiaret* (indirect reflexive); *secum* refers to the same person as *sibi* (indirect reflexive); while *sua* refers to the subject (*neminem*) of its own clause (direct reflexive).

156. The Intensive *ipse* is used to emphasize the word with which it agrees, or as an emphatic pronoun. A. 298, *d*; B. 249, 1; G. 311; H. 509; H.B. 267; W. 428.

Ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt, *they themselves carry on war in their own territories.* 1. 1.

a. *Ipse* is very often translated by another word than "self."

In *ipsis* fluminis ripis proeliabantur, *they were fighting right on the banks of the river.* 2. 23.

157. *Ipse* is sometimes used as an Indirect Reflexive (see 155), when two reflexives are needed, or when *se* or *suus* would not be clear. A. 300, *b*; B. 249, 3; G. 660, 5; H. 509, 6; H.B. 263.

Cur de *sua* virtute aut de *ipsius* diligentia desperarent, *why should they despair of their own valor or of his care?* 1. 40.
Erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi *ipsius* copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, *he had been commanded by Caesar not to join battle, unless his (Caesar's) forces should be seen near the camp of the enemy.* 1. 22.

For the construction of the Relative Pronoun, see 84.

158. The Relative at the beginning of a sentence is often best translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun. A. 308, *f*; B. 251, 6; G. 610, R. 1; H. 510; H.B. 284, 8; W. 304, 2.

Quod ubi Caesar rescivit, when Caesar learned this. 1. 28.

Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, the sum total of all these things was. 1. 29.

a. Sometimes the Relative serves as a connective with the preceding sentence and should be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun with a conjunction.

Qui si iuvisset, for if they should aid them. 1. 26.

159. The Indefinite Pronoun *quisque* is used idiomatically with superlatives to indicate a class. A. 313, *b*; B. 252, 5, *c*; G. 318, 2; H. 515, 2; H.B. 278, 2, *b*.

Nobilissimi cuiusque liberi, the children of all the most distinguished men. 1. 31.

Antiquissimum quodque tempus, priority of time (the earliest time in each case). 1. 45.

VI. VERBS

NOTE.—For the agreement of verbs, see 85 and the Note.

160. Verbs are sometimes used impersonally, with or without a clause as subject. A. 207 and 208; B. 138; G. 208; H. 302; H.B. 287; W. 233.

Rogare ut . . . id sibi facere liceat, they asked that it might be allowed them to do this. 1. 7. (The subject of *liceat* is the clause *id facere*.)

Ita . . . diu et acriter pugnatum est, thus the battle raged long and fiercely (literally, "it was fought"). 1. 26.

1. Tenses

NOTE.—Each tense expresses two things: the *period* of the action, whether present, past, or future; and the *stage* of the action, whether going on, completed, or undefined.

161. The Present Tense is used of an action going on in the present, or of a general truth. A. 465; B. 259; G. 227; H. 532, 1 and 2; H.B. 468, 1 and 1, *b*; W. 445 and 446, 1.

Hi omnes lingua institutis legibus inter se differunt, all these differ from one another in language, customs, and laws. 1. 1.
Omnes homines libertati student, all men desire liberty. 3. 10.

162. The Historical Present may be used in narration to refer to past events. A. 469; B. 259, 3; G. 229; H. 532, 3; H.B. 491, 1; W. 447, 1.

Dicit montem . . . ab hostibus teneri, he said that the mountain was held by the enemy. 1. 22.

Legatos ad eum mittunt. Cuius legationes Divico princeps fuit, they sent envoys to him. Of this embassy Divico was the head. 1. 13.

NOTE. — Except in vivid narration the Historical Present is usually translated into English by a past tense.

163. The Imperfect may denote an action going on, or repeated, in past time. A. 470; B. 260, 1 and 2; G. 231; H. 534, 1 and 3; H.B. 468, 2; W. 448.

Qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat, who at that time was holding the chief place in the state. 1. 3.

Quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, because they had heaped up the carts as a rampart and were hurling weapons at our men as they came up. 1. 26.

a. It is not always desirable to use the progressive form in English.

164. The Imperfect may be used of an act undefined in past time, especially in descriptions. Here it is to be translated, not by the progressive form, but as a simple past. A. 471, *a*; B. 260, 1, *a*; G. 231; H. 534, 2; W. 449, 5.

Id natura loci sic muniebatur, *this was so strengthened by its situation.* 1. 38.

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, *the Allobroges, who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone.* 1. 11.

165. The Future is used of an act going on, or undefined in future time. A. 472; B. 257; G. 242; H. 536; H.B. 468, 3; W. 450.

NOTE. — Sometimes the first periphrastic conjugation is used, instead of the simple future, or as a past future.

Frumentum omne, praeter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, *they burned all the grain except what they were going to carry with them.* 1. 5.

166. The Perfect Indefinite denotes an act undefined in the past. A. 473; B. 262, B; G. 239; H. 537, 2; H.B. 468, 4, *a*; W. 452, 2.

Is ita cum Caesare egit, *he argued as follows with Caesar.* 1. 13.

Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, *Caesar avenged not only wrongs done to the state but also personal ones.* 1. 12.

NOTE. — The Perfect Definite is sometimes called the Historical Perfect.

NOTE. — On account of the meaning of the verbs, the perfects *odi*, *memini*, *novi*, and *consuevi* have the force of presents. Thus *novi* means “I have learned,” and hence “I know.”

167. The Perfect Definite is like the English Present Perfect, and is used of an action completed in present time. A. 473; B. 262, A; G. 239; H. 537, 1; H.B. 468, 4; W. 452, 1.

Ita uti supra demonstravimus, *as we have shown above.* 2. 1.

168. The Pluperfect Indicative, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act completed in the past. A. 477; B. 263; G. 241; H. 539; H.B. 468, 5; W. 457.

Quod ante *tacuerat* proponit, *he revealed that about which he had previously kept silent.* 1. 17.

Hic pagus . . L. Cassium consulem *interfecerat*, (the inhabitants of) *this canton had killed the consul Lucius Cassius.* 1. 12.

NOTE. — The Pluperfects *noveram*, *memineram*, *oderam*, and *consequerem* have the force of a simple past. See 166, second note.

169. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed in the future. It is sometimes used in Latin where the English less exactly employs a future or a present. A. 478 and N. ; B. 264 and a ; G. 244 and 2 ; H. 540 and 2 ; H.B. 468, 6 and 494 ; W. 459.

NOTE. — Except in 4. 25, where the Fut. Perf. has the force of an emphatic Future (see NOTES), this tense occurs only in Ind. Disc. where it is changed to a Perf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

170. The tenses are divided into Primary (or Principal) and Secondary (or Historical) tenses, the former denoting present or future action, and the latter past action.

The Primary and Secondary tenses of the Indicative and of the Subjunctive are as follows:—

INDICATIVE PRIMARY	SUBJUNCTIVE PRIMARY
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Present</i> (used of incomplete or future action).
<i>Future.</i>	
<i>Perfect Definite</i> (translated with "have").	<i>Perfect</i> (used of completed or previous action).
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
INDICATIVE SECONDARY	SUBJUNCTIVE SECONDARY
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Imperfect</i> (used of incomplete or future action).
<i>Perfect Indefinite</i> (translated by a simple past).	<i>Pluperfect</i> (used of completed or previous action).
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
A. 482 ; B. 267, 1 ; G. 225 ; H. 198 ; H.B. 476, ftn. 2 ; W. 161.	

171. In dependent clauses in the Subjunctive primary tenses regularly follow primary tenses and secondary tenses follow secondary tenses. A. 483; B. 267, 2; G. 509; H. 543 and 544; H.B. 476; W. 462.

PRIMARY TENSES	
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
quaero, <i>I ask</i> . ¹	quid faciat, <i>what he is doing or will do</i> ² (present or future, incomplete action).
quaeram, <i>I shall ask</i> .	
quaesivi, <i>I have asked</i> .	quid fecerit, <i>what he did or has done</i> (past or completed action).
quaesivero, <i>I shall have asked</i> .	
SECONDARY TENSES	
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
quaerebam, <i>I asked or was asking</i> .	quid faceret, <i>what he was doing or would do</i> ³ (present or future incomplete action).
quaesivi, <i>I asked</i> .	
quaesiveram, <i>I had asked</i> .	quid fecisset, <i>what he had done</i> (past or completed action).

172. The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as a secondary tense, or after a secondary tense. A. 485, *b*; B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H.B. 478; W. 469.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut ad galeas induendas . . . tempus defuerit, *so short was the time, that they had no time to put on their helmets.* 2. 21.

Cum ab hora septima ad vespertum pugnatum sit, adversum hostem videre nemo potuit, *although the battle lasted from the seventh hour until evening, no one could see one of the enemy in retreat.* 1. 26.

¹ The Historical Present (162) may be followed either by a Primary or by a Secondary tense.

² To express "what he will do," *quid factururus sit* is often used instead of *quid faciat*.

³ To express "what he would do," *quid factururus esset* is often used instead of *quid faceret*.

173. In Indirect Discourse (see 204) Caesar frequently uses primary tenses of the subjunctive after a past verb of saying for vividness or for variety. Sometimes the regular sequence of tenses is observed in the same speech.

Ariovistus *respondit* . . . quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam *traducat*, id se sui muniendi . . . facere; eius rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non *venerit* et quod bellum non *intulerit* sed *defenderit* . . . quid sibi *vellet*? cur in suas possessiones *veniret*. 1. 44.

2. The Independent Subjunctive

174. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the first person plural in exhortations. The negative is *ne*. A. 439; B. 274; G. 263, 1; H. 559, 1; H.B. 501, 2; W. 482.

In consilio capiendo omnem Galliam *respiciamus*, in forming our plans let us have regard to the whole of Gaul. 7. 77.

NOTE.—Other uses of the Independent Subjunctive are few in number and are found only in indirect discourse.

3. Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses

a. Purpose Clauses

175. Clauses of Purpose, or Final Clauses, are introduced by *ut* (*uti*), *ne*, and *quo*, and take the subjunctive. A. 531, 1; B. 282, 1; G. 545, 1 and 3; H. 568; H.B. 502, 2; W. 506.

Legatos ad Dumnorigem . . . mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis *impetrarent*, they sent envoys to Dumnorix, that through his intercession they might obtain their request from the Sequani. 1. 9.

Ibi tormenta collocavit, ne hostes suos circumvenire *possent*, he placed his artillery there, that the enemy might not be able to surround his troops. 2. 8.

176. With comparatives *quo* is usually used instead of *ut*. A. 531, 2, *a*; B. 282, 1, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H.B. 502, 2, *b*; W. 507.

Præsidia disponit . . . quo facilius . . . prohibere possit, he stations garrisons, that he may be able the more easily to prevent them. 1. 8.

177. A Relative Pronoun, equivalent to *ut is, ut ii*, etc., or a relative adverb, is often used with the Subjunctive to express purpose. A. 531, 2; B. 282, 2; G. 545, 1; H. 590; H.B. 502, 2; W. 586.

Omnem equitatem, qui (= ut ii) novissimum agmen moraretur, præmisit, he sent all the cavalry ahead, to delay the rear (of the enemy). 2. 11.

Diem dicunt, qua die (= ut ea die) . . . omnes conveniant, they appoint a time at which all were to assemble. 1. 6.

NOTE.—Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund, or gerundive (219), or by the supine (223); but never by the infinitive (as in English).

NOTE.—For substantive clauses of Purpose see 199.

b. Result Clauses

178. Clauses of Result are introduced by *ut* and *ut non*, and take the subjunctive. The main clause often, but not always, contains a word meaning “so” or “such” (*tantus, talis, tot, tam, is*, etc.). A. 537; B. 284; G. 552; H. 570; H.B. 513, 4; 519, 3; 521, 2; W. 527 and 528.

Id natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, this was so strengthened by its situation, that it offered a great opportunity for prolonging the war. 1. 38.

A superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile in trorsus perspicì posset, wooded on the upper part, so that it could not easily be seen into (i.e. “so thickly wooded that it could not,” etc.). 2. 18.

c. *Characteristic Clauses*

179. A relative clause which is used to express a quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined is called a Clause of Characteristic, and is put in the Subjunctive. A. 535, *a* and *b*; B. 283, 1 and 2; G. 631, 1 and 2; H. 591, 1 and 5; H.B. 521, 1 and *a*; W. 587 and 588, 2.

Characteristic clauses are especially common after expressions of existence and non-existence (*est qui, sunt qui, etc.*), and after *unus* and *solus*.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent,
there were only two routes by which they could leave their home.
1. 6.

Unum se esse . . . qui adduci non potuerit ut iuraret, that he was
the only one who could not be induced to take an oath. 1. 31.
(*Potuerit* would be subjunctive in the direct discourse.)

d. *Temporal Clauses*

180. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ut*, *ubi*, and *simul ac* (*atque*) take the Indicative, usually the perfect. A. 543; B. 287, 1; G. 561; H. 602; H.B. 557; W. 530 and 531.

Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides . . . poposcit, after Caesar
came there he demanded hostages. 1. 27.

*Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum
mittunt,* after the Helvetians had been informed¹ of his arrival,
they sent envoys to him. 1. 7.

NOTE. — Observe the various meanings and uses of *ut*: with the subjunctive in final and result clauses, meaning “in order that” or “so that”; in temporal clauses with the perfect indicative, meaning “when”; and in clauses with the indicative, meaning “as.”

¹ In English the past perfect is often used in such clauses. In Latin the perfect is the rule.

Ut arbitrantur Helvetii, *as the Helvetians think*. 1. 4.

With the indicative it means "when" or "as"; with the subjunctive, "in order that" or "so that."

181. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, "while,"¹ take the Historical Present of the Indicative. A. 556; B. 293, I; G. 570; H. 604, 1; H.B. 559; W. 533 and 447 (1).

Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem moratur . . . timor omnem exercitum occupavit, while he was delaying a few days near Vesontio, fear seized the entire army. 1. 39.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, while this was going on in the conference, it was announced to Caesar. 1. 46.

182. Temporal Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*, "as long as," take the Indicative.²

Ipsē . . . quoad potuit, fortissime restitit, he himself resisted vigorously, as long as he could. 4. 12.

Dum longius aberant Galli, plus multitudinē telorum proficiēbant, as long as the Gauls were some distance away, they accomplished more with their flood of javelins. 7. 82.

183. Temporal Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*, "until," usually denote anticipation or expectancy, and take the Subjunctive. A. 553; B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H.B. 507, 5; W. 533.

¹ In such cases the time represented by the verb of the main clause and that represented by the verb of the *dum*-clause are *not of equal extent*, but the action denoted by the verb of the main clause takes place *at some time during* the time denoted by the verb of the *dum*-clause.

² In such cases the time denoted by the verb of the main clause and that denoted by the verb of the temporal clause are *of equal extent* (cf. Note on 181). The same tense is usually used in both the main clause and in the *dum*- (*quoad*-) clause. A. 555; B. 293, II; G. 569; H. 603, I; H.B. 550; W. 533.

Ut spatium intercederet, dum milites *convenirent*, legatis respondit, *that a space (of time) might intervene, until the soldiers should assemble (i.e. for the soldiers to assemble), he replied to the envoys, etc.* 1. 7.

Expectare vero, dum hostium copiae *augerentur* . . . summae dementiae esse iudicabat, *but to wait until the forces of the enemy should be increased, he thought would be (an act) of the greatest folly.* 4. 13.

184. Temporal Clauses introduced by *Priusquam* take the Indicative to denote an actual fact, the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectancy. A. 551, *a*, *b*, *c*; B. 291 and 292; G. 574 and 577; H. 605; H.B. 507, 4 and 550, *b*; W. 534.

Nec prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum . . . *per-venerunt, and they did not cease to flee, until they came to the river Rhine.* 1. 53.

Caesar priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga *reciperent*, in fines SueSSIONUM . . . exercitum duxit, *Caesar led his army into the lands of the SueSSIONES before the enemy could recover from their panic flight.* 2. 12.

185. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*, "when," take the Indicative to denote the *time when* an action takes place, and the Subjunctive to denote the *circumstances under which* an action takes place.

With the *imperfect and pluperfect tenses* the Subjunctive is almost always used; *with the other tenses* the Indicative. A. 545 and 546; B. 288; G. 579, I and II; H. 600; H.B. Index under *cum*-clauses; W. 536.

Fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos *prohibent*, aut . . . , *they contend in almost daily battles with the Germans, either keeping them out of their territories, or . . .* 1. 12. (The *cum*-clause is here *explanatory*.)

Hic pagus unus, cum domo *exisset* . . . L. Cassium consulem

interfecerat, *this one canton, having left its home, had caused the death of the consul Lucius Cassius.* 1.

NOTE. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative are rare. See Notes on 1. 40 and 3. 14.

Cum-causal and *cum*-concessive, translated by “since” and “although,” always take the Subjunctive (see 186 and 192).

e. Causal Clauses

186. *Cum*-causal takes the Subjunctive. A. 549; B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 598; H.B. 525; W. 542.

Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se . . . in montem receperunt, since they were no longer able to resist the attacks of our troops, the one division retreated to the mountain. 1. 26.

Praesertim cum . . . eorum precibus adductus bellum suscepit . . . multo etiam gravius . . . queritur, especially since he undertook the war led by their entreaties, he complained the more bitterly. 1. 16.

187. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod* and *quoniam* take the Indicative, unless the reason is given as that of some other person than the speaker or writer, or unless a verb of saying is implied, in which case the Subjunctive is used. A. 540 and *a*; B. 286, 1; G. 540 and 541; H. 588; H.B. 555 and *a*; W. 544–546.

Dumnorix . . . Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians, because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix from that state. 1. 9.

*Multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur, he complains the more bitterly because he has been deserted by them.*¹ 1. 16.

¹ Caesar often writes of himself as if he were another person (see 14). The Subjunctive is one of implied Indirect Discourse (see 210).

188. Relative Clauses denoting *cause* take the Subjunctive. A. 535, *e*; B. 283, 3; G. 633 and 634; H. 592 and 593, 2; H.B. 523; W. 586, 4 and 7.

Cotta qui *cogitasset* haec posse accidere . . . nulla in re communi salutem deerat, *Cotta, since he had thought that this might happen, did everything possible for the safety of all.* 5. 33.

f. Conditional Sentences

189. In Conditional Sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed positively (or vividly), any tense of the Indicative may be used in either the condition or the conclusion. A. 515 and 516, 1; B. 302; G. 595; H. 574; H.B. 579; W. 553.

Si qui ex reliquis *excellit* dignitate, *succedit*, if any one of the rest is superior in rank, he succeeds. 6. 13.

Si quando . . . suis fortunis desperare *coeperant* . . . sua deportabant omnia, if ever they had begun to despair of their fortunes, they carried away all their goods. 3. 12.

190. Conditional sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed less positively (or vividly), take the present or perfect Subjunctive in the condition, and the present Subjunctive in the conclusion.¹ A. 516, 2; B. 303; G. 596; H. 576; H.B. 580; W. 555.

Si qui ex reliquis *excellat* dignitate, *succedat*, if any one of the rest should be superior in rank, he would succeed.

191. Conditions and conclusions contrary to fact take the imperfect Subjunctive to denote present time and the pluperfect Subjunctive to denote past time.¹ A. 517; B. 304; G. 597; H. 579; H.B. 581; W. 557.

¹ These occur in Caesar only in Indirect Discourse (see 209).

Si qui ex reliquiis *excelleret dignitate, succederet, if any one of the rest were superior in rank, he would succeed.*

Si qui ex ceteris superior fuisset dignitate, *successisset, if any one of the rest had been superior in rank, he would have succeeded.*

g. Concessive and Adversative Clauses

192. *Cum* concessive or adversative takes the Subjunctive. A. 549; B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598; H.B. 525; W. 572.

Hos cum Suebi . . . finibus expellere non *potuissent*, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, *although the Suebi had been unable to drive them out of their territories, yet they made them their dependents.* 4. 3.

Quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites *haberen*t, the number of these was five thousand, while they themselves had not more than 800 horsemen. 4. 12.

193. Concessive Clauses introduced by *etsi* (*tametsi*) take the same moods and tenses as conditional sentences. A. 527, *c*; B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585 and 586; H.B. 582, 8; W. 572.

In his locis . . . *etsi* . . . *maturae sunt hiemes*, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, *although the winters are early in these regions, nevertheless he hastened to set out to Britain.* 4. 20.

Caesar *etsi* idem . . . fore *videbat*, tamen . . . legiones in acie pro castris constituit, *although Caesar saw that the same thing would happen, nevertheless he drew up the legions in line of battle before the camp.* 4. 35.

194. Relative Clauses denoting Concession take the Subjunctive. See 188.

Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies milites in castris *continuisset*, septimo die quinque cohortes frumentatum mittit, *although Cicero had kept the soldiers in camp on all the previous days, on the seventh he sent five cohorts to forage.* 6. 36.

h. Relative Clauses

195. Relative Clauses are regularly in the Indicative. G. 624; H. 589, 1; H.B. 543; W. 585.

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se . . . recipiunt, the Allobroges, who had villages and possessions across the Rhone, fled. 1. 11.

In fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt, he came into the territories of the Ambiani, who surrendered themselves and all their goods without delay. 2. 15.

NOTE. — Relative clauses of purpose (177), characteristic (179), cause (188), and concession (194) are put in the subjunctive.

i. Substantive Clauses

196. Substantive Clauses are used like nouns, as the subject and object of verbs and in some other constructions. They are in the Indicative except as mentioned below. A. 561; B. 294; H.B. 238; W. 498.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Diviciaci fidem . . . cognoverat, to all these things one fact was opposed, namely, that he knew the loyalty of Diviciacus. 1. 19.

Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod . . . non poterant, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle, that they were not able, etc. 1. 25.

197. *Quod* introducing a substantive clause sometimes means *as to the fact that, as to*. The mood is the Indicative. A. 572, *a*; B. 299, 1; G. 525, 2; H. 588, 3, *N.*; H.B. 552, 2; W. 549.

Quod rem Caesari enuntiaret, as to his reporting the matter to Caesar. 1. 17. (The subjunctive is due to Indirect Discourse.)

198. Indirect Questions are substantive clauses. They are introduced by interrogative words, and sometimes by *si*, “whether,” and take the Subjunctive.

A. 573 and 574; B. 300, 1; G. 467; H. 649, II; H.B. 537, b; W. 590.

Eius rei quae causa esset miratus, *wondering what was the cause of that thing.* 1. 32.

Qualis esset natura montis . . . qui cognoscerent misit, *he sent men to find out what the nature of the mountain was.* 1. 21.

Si perumpere possent conati, *having tried (to see) whether they could break through.* 1. 8.

a. Double indirect questions are introduced by *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member, and by *an* in the second. "Or not" is translated by *necne*.

Ut . . . intellegere posset *utrum* apud eos pudor . . . *an* timor valeret, *that he might know whether shame or fear would prevail with them.* 1. 40.

Ut declararent *utrum* proelium committi ex usu esset *necne*, *that they should declare whether it was advantageous for battle to be joined or not.* 1. 50.

199. Verbs meaning *to ask, demand, persuade, advise, command*, are followed by object clauses in the Subjunctive, usually introduced by *ut* and *ne*. A. 563; B. 295; G. 546; H. 564; H.B. 502, 3; W. 512.

(Orgetorix) civitati persuasit, *ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent*, *Orgetorix persuaded the state to go forth from its territories with all its forces.* 1. 2.

Caesar . . . suis imperavit, *ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent*, *Caesar ordered his men not to throw back any weapon at all at the enemy.* 1. 46.

NOTE. — *Iubeo*, "order," *veto*, "forbid," and *cupio*, "desire," take the infinitive with subject accusative. See 2. 13.

200. Substantive Clauses resembling result clauses are used as the subject and object of certain verbs, and as appositives. They are introduced by *ut* (negative *ut . . . non*) and take the Subjunctive. A. 568; B. 297; G. 553, 1 and 4; H. 571; H.B. 521, 3; W. 521.

His rebus fiebat, *ut* minus late *ragarentur*, it happened on account of these things that they roamed less widely. 1. 2.

Obsides *uti* inter sese *dent* perficit, he brought it about that they exchanged hostages. 1. 9.

Futurum *ut* reliquae contra consistere non *auderent*, (*that*) it would come to pass that the remaining nations would not dare to oppose. 2. 17.

NOTE. — In some cases the idea of result has been entirely lost, as in *poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur*, the law required that the punishment of being burned to death should follow. 1. 4.

201. Substantive clauses in the subjunctive, introduced by *quominus*, are used as the objects of verbs meaning *hinder, prevent, refuse*, etc. A. 558, *b*; B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H.B. 502, 3, *b*; W. 507.

Neque recusaturos *quominus* perpetuo sub illorum dicione . . . *essent*, and that they would not refuse to be forever under their sway. 1. 31.

Naves vento tenebantur, *quominus* in eundem portum venire *possent*, the ships were prevented by the wind from being able to come to the same harbor. 4. 22.

202. Substantive clauses in the Subjunctive, introduced by *quin*, are used with verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty, when these are negated. A. 558; B. 298; G. 556; H. 594, II; H.B. 521, 3; W. 575.

Neque abest suspicio . . . *quin* ipse sibi mortem consciverit, and the suspicion is not lacking that he committed suicide. 1. 4.

Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit *quin* ad eos *proficisceretur*, then truly he thought that there ought to be no doubt about setting out against them. 2. 2.

203. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, "that not" and *ne*, "that" (or "lest"). A. 564; B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567; H.B. 502, 4; W. 516.

Nam *ne* eius supplicio Diviciaci animum *offenderet* verebatur, *for he feared that by punishing him he might offend the mind of Diviciacus.* 1. 19.

Rem frumentariam, *ut* satis commode supportari *posset*, *timere dicebant, they said that they feared that supplies could not be brought there readily.* 1. 39.

NOTE.—The introductory words *ut* and *ne* are chosen rather with reference to the *desire* of the subject of the verb of fearing than with reference to his fear. Thus in the first example Caesar did *not* desire to offend the mind of Diviciacus, but feared that he might do so; in the second they desired that supplies be brought, but feared that they could not.

4. Indirect Discourse

204. In Indirect Discourse principal declarative sentences are put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The tenses of the infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the verb of saying, thinking, or knowing which introduces the Indirect Discourse. A. 580 and 584; B. 314 and 317; G. 650 and 653; H. 642 and 644; H.B. 591 and 593; W. 599 and 608.

Angustos *se* fines *habere* arbitrabantur, *they thought that they had narrow limits.* 1. 2. Direct discourse: angustos fines habemus.

(Dixit) *se* (eos) eodem loco quo Helvetios *habiturum*, *he said that he would hold them in the same estimation as (he did) the Helvetians.* 1. 26. Direct discourse: eodem loco vos quo Helvetios habebo.

Cum *id . . . illum* uno die *fecisse* intellegerent, *when they knew that he had done that in one day.* 1. 13. Direct discourse: *id ille* uno die fecit.

205. Imperative sentences in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Se-

quence of Tenses (171). A. 588; B. 316; G. 652; H. 642, 4; H.B. 538; W. 599 and 602.

(Dixit) cum vellet, *congrederetur*, he said that he might fight when he wished. 1. 36. Direct discourse: cum vis, *congrederere*.

(Dixit) uterque cum equitatu *veniret*, he said that each was to come with his cavalry. 1. 42. Direct discourse: uterque cum equitatu *veniamus*.

206. Real questions in Indirect Discourse are usually put in the Subjunctive. Rhetorical questions, asked merely for effect, are put in the infinitive with subject accusative. A. 586; B. 315, 1 and 2; G. 651; H. 642 and 2; H.B. 537 and 591, *a*; W. 601 and 603.

Ariovistus respondit: Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones *veniret*, *Ariovistus answered: What did he want? Why did he come into his dominions?* 1. 44.

Num etiam recentium iniuriarum . . . *memoriam deponere posse*, could he lay aside the recollection of the recent wrongs also. 1. 14. .

207. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive if they are not already in that mood. The tense is determined by that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses (171-173). A. 580 and 585; B. 314 and 318; G. 650 and 654; H. 643 and 644; H.B. 534, 2 and 535; W. 605 and 608.

Sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii *commemorassent*, *memoria teneret*, he felt less hesitation, because he remembered those things which the Helvetian envoys had related. 1. 14. Direct discourse: Mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas . . . *commemoraverunt*, *memoria teneo*.

Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum *valeat*, qui privatim plus *possint* quam ipsi magistratus, that there are some whose influence with the commons is very great, who as

private individuals have more power than the magistrates themselves. 1. 17. Direct discourse: Sunt nonnulli, quorum . . . valet, qui . . . possunt.

208. Subordinate clauses which are not thought of as a part of the Indirect Discourse are in the Indicative. A. 583; B. 314, 3; G. 655, 2; H. 643, 1; H.B. 535, d; W. 607.

Cum id quod ipsi diebus viginti . . . *confecerant*, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, *since they knew that he had crossed the river in one day (a thing which it had taken them twenty days to do).* 1. 13.

Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia, *they thought that the Condrusi, Eburones, Caeroesi, and Paemani, who are called by the single name Germans, (would furnish) about 40,000.*

209. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse follow the general rules, the condition becoming subjunctive, if it is not already in that mood, and the conclusion being put in the infinitive with subject accusative.

But conditions contrary to fact retain the past tenses of the subjunctive even after a primary tense, and in the conclusion take the future infinitive with *fuisse*. A. 589; B. 319-322; G. 656-659; H. 646-648; H.B. 534, 1, b and 536; W. 613-619.

(Dixit) si id ita *fecisset*, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam amicitiam . . . cum eo *futurum*, *he said that if he did this, there would be lasting friendship with him on the part of himself and the Roman people.* Direct Discourse: si id feceris (fut. perf.), . . . perpetua amicitia erit.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis *faceret*, in eam partem *ituros* Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar *constituisset*, *if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go where Caesar should establish them.* Direct Discourse: si pacem . . . facient . . . ibunt . . . constituerit (fut. perf.). 1. 13.

Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse, *that if he wanted anything from Caesar, he would have come to him.* Direct Discourse: si quid opus esset, venissem. 1. 31.

210. The Subjunctive is used in clauses in which Indirect Discourse is implied. A. 592; B. 323; G. 662; H. 652; H.B. 535, 1, a. W. 620.

Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent polliciti flagitare, *Caesar demanded of the Aeduans the grain which (as he reminded them) they had promised.* 1. 16.

Aciem instructam habuit, ut si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset, *he kept his army drawn up, that if Ariovistus wished to fight a battle, the opportunity might not be lacking.* 1. 48. Caesar's thought was, si Ariovistus proelio contendere volet (velit), ei potestas non deerit.

211. A dependent clause attached to a subjunctive or infinitive clause, and forming an essential part of it, may be put in the Subjunctive by Attraction. A. 593; B. 324, 1 and 2; G. 663; H. 652; H.B. 539; W. 620.

Uti commeatu qui ex Sequanis supportaretur Caesarem intercluderet, *that he might cut off Caesar from the supplies which were coming from the Sequani.* 1. 48.

Dat negotium Senonibus . . . uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant, *he gives instructions to the Senones to find out what is going on in their country.* 2. 2.

5. THE IMPERATIVE

212. The Imperative is used in commands or exhortations.

Desilite, commilitones, *leap down, fellow-soldiers.* 4. 25. A. 448; B. 281; G. 266; H. 560; H.B. 496; W. 495.

6. THE INFINITIVE

NOTE. — The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a noun it may have an adjective in agreement; as a verb, it may govern cases, has

tense and voice, and may be modified by adverbs. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the main verb.

For the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse see 204.

213. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject or object of a verb or as an appositive.¹ A. 452; B. 327, 328, 330, and 331; G. 422 and 423; H. 609; H.B. 585-587; W. 622-625.

Commodissimum visum est mittere, it seemed most convenient to send. 1. 47.

Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt, according to their custom they forced Orgetorix to plead his cause from bonds. 1. 4.

Paulatim Germanos assuescere Rhenum transire . . . periculosum videbat, he saw that for the Germans gradually to become accustomed to crossing the Rhine would be dangerous. 1. 33.

214. The Historical Infinitive, with its subject in the Nominative, is sometimes used in narration instead of a past tense of the Indicative. A. 463; B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H.B. 595; W. 631, 1.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitare, meanwhile Caesar every day asked the Aeduans for the grain. 1. 16.

Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia permanere, the Sequani made no reply, but remained in the same sorrowful silence. 1. 32.

7. THE PARTICIPLE

NOTE. — The participle is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it agrees with the noun which it limits; as a verb it governs cases, has tense and voice, and may be modified by an adverb.

215. The tenses of the participle denote time, present, past, or future, to that of the main verb. A. 489; B. 336; G. 282; H. 640; H.B. 600; W. 646.

¹ When the infinitive is used as the object of auxiliary verbs without a subject accusative, it is sometimes called the Complementary Infinitive.

Cum flentes pacem petissent, *when they had asked for peace, weeping.* 1. 27.

Timore perterriti Romani discedunt, *the Romans withdrew because they had been frightened.* 1. 23.

NOTE.—As is seen in the second example, the context often gives to the participle an idea of time, cause, condition, concession, and the like.

216. The Future Passive participle denotes capability or necessity, and is commonly used with the verb *sum*. A. 500; B. 337, 7; G. 283; H. 640; H.B. 600, 3; W. 646.

Acies erat instruenda, *the line of battle had to be drawn up.* 2. 20.
Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur, *Ariovistus had taken on himself such arrogance that he seemed unbearable.* 1. 33.

NOTE.—The Latin has no present passive participle, and no perfect active participle, except in the case of deponent verbs. With other verbs the ideas expressed in English by these participles must be expressed in Latin by the Ablative Absolute (130), or by a clause introduced by a conjunction (*dum, cum*, etc.).

NOTE.—The perfect participles of deponent verbs are usually active in meaning, but they sometimes have a passive meaning.

Depopulatis agris, *since their fields had been devastated.* 1. 11.
Legiones sex opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt, *six legiones, after the work had been measured off, began to fortify the camp.* 2. 19.

217. The Perfect Passive participle sometimes contains the leading idea of its phrase and is translated by a verbal noun. So also the future passive participle when used as the Gerundive. A. 497; B. 337, 5; H. 636, 4; H.B. 608, 2.

Iniuria retentorum equitum Romanorum, *the wrong of detaining the Roman knights.* 3. 10.

218. The Perfect Passive participle with *habere* is often nearly equivalent to a pluperfect, but lays stress rather on *the existing state of affairs* than on the action of the verb. A. 497, *b*; B. 337, 7; G. 238; II. 640, 2; H.B. 605, 5.

Portoria redempta habere, that he had the duties bought up. 1. 18.

Quem ex omni provincia . . . coactum habebat, which he had collected from the whole province (lit. "had, collected"), 1. 15.

8. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

NOTE. — The Gerundive is the future passive participle when it contains the leading idea in its phrase (see 217). The Gerund is a verbal noun. The Gerund and Gerundive are found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

219. The Gerund is used in the genitive to limit a noun or adjective, in the accusative with *ad*, when it often denotes purpose, and in the ablative. A. 504, 506 and 507; B. 338, 1, 3, 4; G. 428, 430, and 431; H. 626, 628, and 629; H.B. 612; W. 639.

Homines bellandi cupidi, men desirous of making war. 1. 2.

In locum iniquum progredi pugnandi causa, to advance into an unfavorable place for the purpose of fighting. 2. 10.

Constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, they resolved to get ready the things that had to do with their departing. 1. 3.

Respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum, he replied that he would take time for deliberating. 1. 7.

Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, Caesar also found out on inquiring. 1. 18.

NOTE. — Observe the second example. *Causa* is used both with the gerund and with the gerundive to denote purpose, with the meaning 'for the sake of' or 'for the purpose of.'

220. Instead of the Gerund governing a noun, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is commonly

used, especially after a preposition. A. 503; B. 339; G. 427; H. 623; H.B. 613; W. 640.

Data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, if given the opportunity of making a march through the province. 1. 7.

Cupiditas belli gerendi, the desire of making war. 1. 41.

Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda, more ready for encountering all dangers. 1. 5.

Ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, those things which tend to making their minds effeminate. 1. 1.

De expugnando oppido spem, the hope of capturing the town. 2. 10.

Ne in quaerendis suis (signis) pugnandi tempus dimitteret, lest in seeking his own standard he should lose time for fighting. 2. 21.

221. The genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri*, which were originally neuter singular, are used in the gerundive construction without reference to gender or number.

Neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt, and they leave the enemy no opportunity of collecting themselves. 3. 6.

222. The Gerundive in agreement with the object is used with *do, curo*, and some other verbs, with the value of an object clause, or to express purpose. A. 500, 4; B. 337, 7, *b*, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H.B. 612, III; W. 644, 2.

Quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, because he had caused an exchange of hostages between them. 1. 19.

Pottem in Arari faciendum curat, he caused a bridge to be built over the Arar. 1. 13.

9. THE SUPINE

NOTE.—The Supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular.

223. The Supine in *-um* is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion. A. 509; B. 340, 1; G. 435; H. 633; H.B. 618; W. 654.

Aedui . . . legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. *rogatum auxilium, the Aeduians send envoys to Caesar to ask for help.* 1. 11.

Legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt, *envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.* 1. 30.

NOTE. — Sometimes the supine in *-um* is used with other verbs if motion is implied. Sororem et propinquas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse = *he had sent his sister and other female relatives to other states, to be married.* 1. 18.

224. The Supine in *-u* is used with adjectives as an Ablative of Specification. It is best translated by an infinitive. A. 510; B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635; H.B. 619; W. 655.

Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, *he proves to them that to accomplish their attempts is an easy thing to do.* 1. 3.

Optimum factu esse duxerunt . . . frumento . . . nostros prohibere, *they considered that the best thing to do was to keep our men from grain.* 4. 30.

VII. FIGURES OF RHETORIC AND GRAMMAR

225. Hendiadys is the expression of one idea through two nouns connected by a conjunction. A. 640; B. 374, 4; G. 698; H. 751, 3, N. 1; H.B. 631, 5; W. 740.

In eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, *(that) he was visiting upon them every kind of cruelty.* 1. 31.

See also the second example under *Litotes*.

226. Litotes asserts a thing with emphasis by denying the opposite. A. 641; B. 375, 1; G. 700; H. 752, 8; H.B. 632, 1; W. 740.

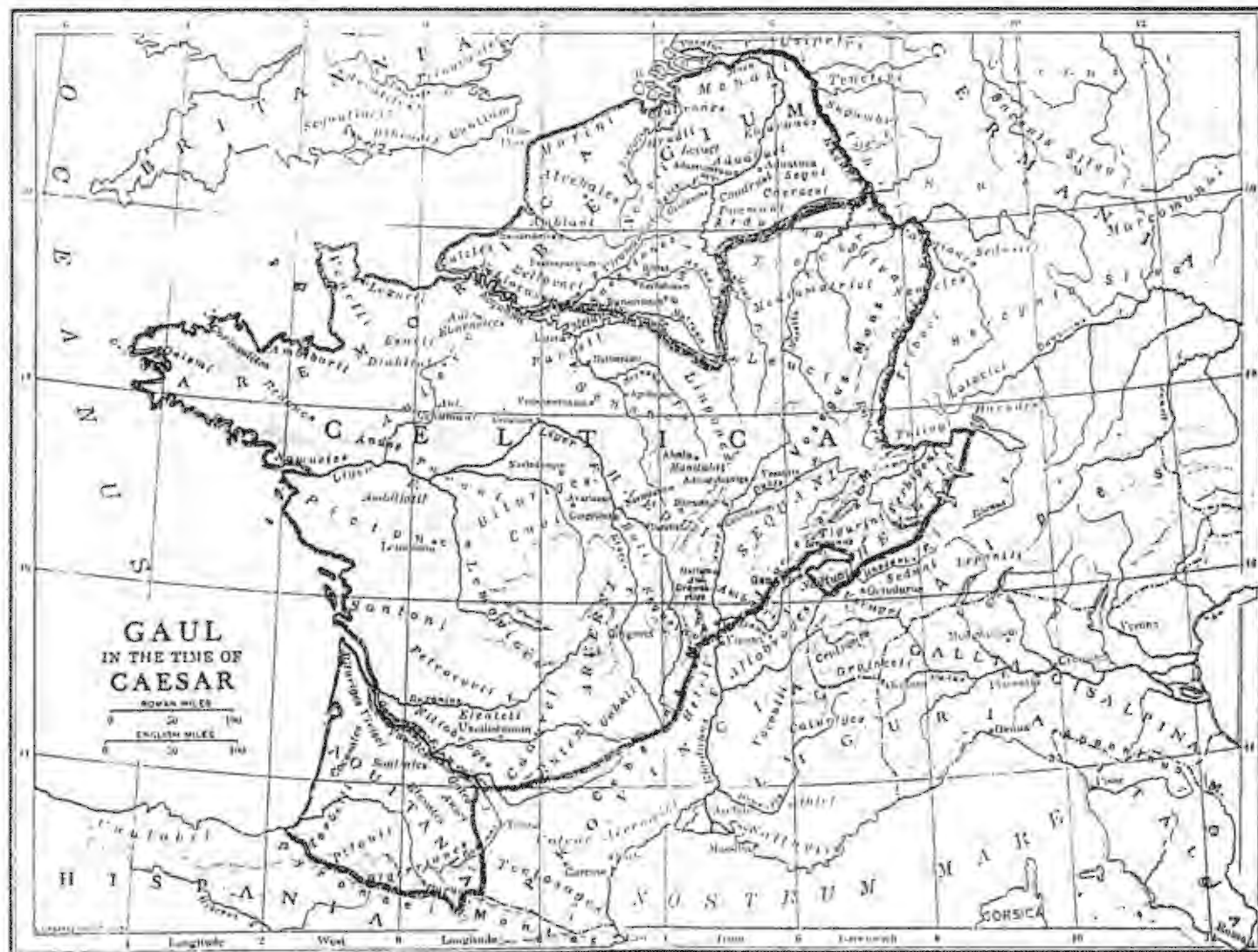
Non irridicule quidam ex militibus dixit, *one of the soldiers said very wittily.* 1. 42.

Non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum reliquisse, *(that) they had left home with the greatest hope of great rewards.* 1. 41.

227. Asyndeton is the omission of the conjunction between words, phrases, or clauses. A. 640; B. 346; G. 473, R.; H. 657, 6; H.B. 305, 1, *a*; W. 740.

Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruxit, *Caesar led his troops to the nearest hill (and) drew them up in line of battle.* 1. 22.

L. Piso A. Gabinio consulibus, *in the consulship of Lucius Piso (and) Aulus Gabinius.* 1. 6.



CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

I. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS, 58 B.C.

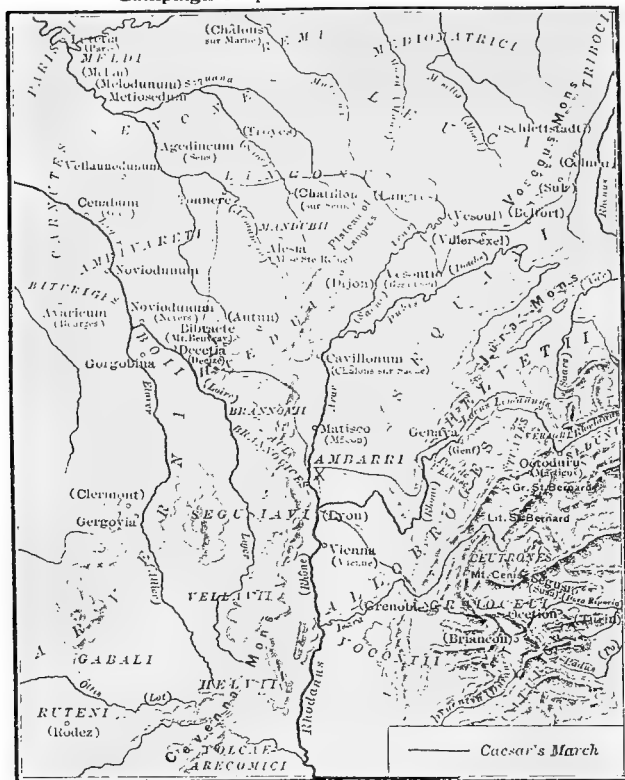
The Divisions and Peoples of Gaul. Superiority of the Belgae and the Helvetii.

1. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitanis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit.

Horum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte provinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eos mercatōres saepe conveniunt atque ea quae ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvētii quoque reliquos Gallōs virtute praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eorum una pars, quam Gallōs obtinere dictum est, initium capit ā flumine Rhodanō; continetur Garumnā flumine, Oceanō, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ā Sēquanis et Helvētis flumen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriun-

Campaign Map for the Year 58 B.C.



tur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitania ā Garumnā flumine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs. 5

The Helvetians, dissatisfied with the extent of their territories, are persuaded by Orgetorix to migrate.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus 10 praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germaniis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī 15 est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte 20 hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrabantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant. 25

They make their preparations. Orgetorix plans to make himself their king.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum

numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.

Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et
10 ā senātū populi Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitate obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuā-
15 det eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, prop-
tereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum
Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis
20 rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat.

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac fir-
missimōs populōs tōtius Galliae imperiō sēsē potiri posse spērant.

The plot is detected. Orgetorix escapes trial, but is found dead, probably by his own hand.

25 4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur.

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdi-
30 cium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem,

undique coëgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs 5 magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōnseiverit.

The Helvetians continue their preparations. They persuade some of their neighbors to join them.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. 10 Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrun, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perī- 15 cula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs suis, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns 20 Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricū trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

Having a choice of two routes, they decide to go by way of the Allobroges and the Roman Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, 25 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per

prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

5 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs
10 eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. April., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva, to oppose them. They send envoys to him, but he puts them off.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam
15 nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad
20 Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgatiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō
25 maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub
30 iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque

hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum ; sī quid 5 vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

Caesar at last denies the request of the Helvetians. They try in vain to cross the Rhine against his will.

++++

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Hēlvetiis dividit, milia passuum 10 decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et 15 lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētīi eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliū vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō 20 flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Through Dumnorix they get permission to march through the country of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. 25 His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne

apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obīdēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trāseant.

Foreseeing danger to the province, Caesar marches against the Helvetians.

10 10. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs
15 bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitīmōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae
20 circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
25 Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontīōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetians devastate the territories of the Aeduians and their neighbors, who appeal to Caesar for help.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium : ita sē omnī tempore 5 dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtē abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.

Eōdem tempore quō Aeduī, Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt 10 sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possesiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectan- 15 dum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsumptis in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

The Helvetians try to cross the Arar. Caesar surprises them, and destroys one division of their army.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incredibīlī lēnitātē, ita¹ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. 20 Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad 25 eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus magnam partem

eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar bridges the Arar and pursues the enemy. They send envoys who speak threateningly and boastfully.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum 15 ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrāt atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbūs xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis 20 Dīvicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque 25 esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ii quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, 30 nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret aut

ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam 5 prōderet.

Caesar rebukes them for their presumption, and foretells their destruction. He offers terms of peace, which are rejected.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius 10 iniūriæ sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.

Quod sī veteris contumēliæ oblivīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam 15 per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriā dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum 20 rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs 25 dē iniūriīs, quās ipsis sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Diviciō respondit: ita Helvētīōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint; 30

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*The Helvetians continue their march, closely followed by Caesar.
They harass the Romans.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor 5 milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.
- 10 Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in præsentiā hostem rapī-
- 15 nīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

*The Aeduans fail to supply the grain which they had promised.
Caesar rebukes them.*

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod 20 essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus 25 subvexerat, proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiām in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, 10 multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus tells him of a faction of the nobles which is opposed to the Romans.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat propōnit: esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā 15 atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant; praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reli- 20 quā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam 25 causam, quamdiū potuerit, tacuisse.

*Caesar suspects that Dumnorix is the chief of this faction.
Liscus admits that he is.*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus prae-

sentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius.

- 5 Eadem sēcūrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vērā: ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, 10 proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs 15 largiter posse; atque huius potēntiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātře et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse.

- 20 Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summanī in spem per 25 Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

- Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, 30 initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eorum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

*Caesar wishes to punish Dumnorix, but first consults his brother,
whom he does not wish to offend.*

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam īnscentibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, sum-
mam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, tem-
perantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciāci
animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quic-
quam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdi-
ānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum,
prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui sum-
mam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur;
simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō
Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae
sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque
hortātur ut sine offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā
cognitā statuatur vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

*Induced by Diviciacus, Caesar contents himself with warning Dum-
norix, but sets spies over him.*

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem com-
plexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem
statueret: scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō
plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse
grātiā plurimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille mini-
mum propter adulescentiam posset, per sē crēvisset;

quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grā-
tiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur. Sēsē
tamen et amorē fraternō et existimātiōne vulgī com-
movērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,
5 cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nē-
minem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā
ex rē futurum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret,
Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem
10 orandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit,
utī et rei pūblīcae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius
voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē
vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit;
quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, propōnit;
15 monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet;
praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dum-
norigī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur,
scīre possit.

Caesar plans an attack on the enemy from two sides at once.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus
20 hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsiūs
castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in
circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent mīsīt. Renūntiā-
tum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum,
lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis
25 ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis
ascendere iubet; quid suī consilī sit, ostendit.

Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant
ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et
30 in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum
explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The blunder of a scout makes it necessary to give up the plan. The march continues.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō ten-
 ērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et
 quīngentis passibus abesset neque, ut postea ex captivīs
 comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus
 esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit 5
 montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus
 tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognō-
 visse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem sub-
 dūcit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium 10
 committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra
 vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus
 fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque
 abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar
 cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra 15
 mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn
 vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē quō cōn-
 suērat intervāllō hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab
 eōrum castris castra pōnit.

*Caesar turns aside to Bibracte on account of the scarcity of provisions.
 The Helvetians follow him.*

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum super- 20
 erat, cum exercitui frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod
 ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiō-
 sissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei
 frūmentariae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Hel-
 vētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum
 Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiatur. Helvētii seu quod timōre
 perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō

magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive cō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere 5 coepērunt.

Caesar occupies a hill. The Helvetians defeat his cavalry and prepare to storm his position.

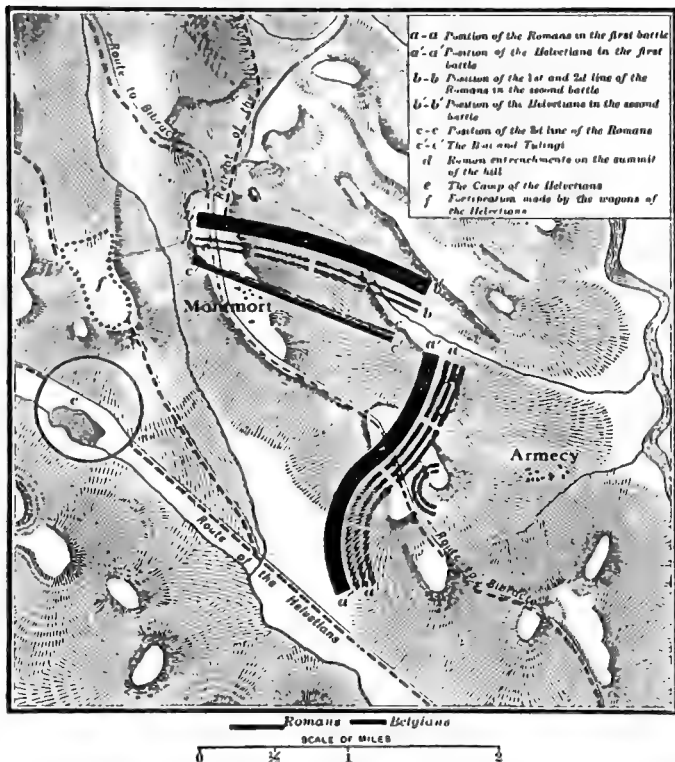
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterā-
10 nārū ; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri iussit.
- 15 Hēlvētii cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Romans repulse the enemy, but the Boii and Tulingi attack Caesar's flank. The Helvetians return, and the Romans are assailed on both sides.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū
20 remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat
25 impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflex-

isset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

Battle between Caesar and the Helvetians



Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod s mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum, cō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter quīndecim

agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressi circumvenire, et id cōspicātī Helvētiū, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre
5 coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac summōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

*After a sharp fight the Romans are victorious and capture the camp.
Caesar sets out in pursuit of the enemy.*

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn
10 possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,
15 propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn-nūlli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant.

Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque
20 nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia centum et trīgintā superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum
25 et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūtiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō
30 intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians surrender. Six thousand men of one canton try to escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārū- 5 ērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia sex eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs sup- 10 pliciō afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar punishes the fugitives. He orders the Gauls to return home, but allows the Aeduans to receive the Boii.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs 20 in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. 25

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs

finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, 5 quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

The numbers of the enemy before and after the battle.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus 10 domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent et item sēparatim puerī, senēs mulierēque.

Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milia XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; 15 ex his quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia trecenta sexāgintā octō. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium centum et decem.

II. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS, 58 B.C.

Caesar receives congratulations from the Gauls. They ask for a conference with him.

20 30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō 25 rēpetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex usū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidissee, proptereā quod eo consilio flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suas Helvētiī reliquissent, ut tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque

potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligere, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuosissimum iūdicassent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiarias habērent.

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret; sēsē habere quāsdam rēs, quās ex communi cōsensu ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iurandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt. 10

The Gauls complain of the oppression of Arionistus, and ask for Caesar's help against him.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, idem princīpēs civitātum quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcretō dē suā omniumque salūte cūm eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et labō- 15 rāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīvičiācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum 20 tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallō- 25 rum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum.

Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsōs accē- 30

5 pisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem
 equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque
 frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitīō
 atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent,
 10 coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvītātis,
 et iūre iūrāndō cīvītatem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs
 repetītūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrā-
 tūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum
 diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omni
 15 cīvītate Aeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret
 aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex
 cīvītate profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxi-
 lium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque
 obsidibus tenērētur.

15 Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs
 accidissee, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum,
 in eōrum finibus cōsēdissee tertiamque partem agrī
 Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvissee
 et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iūbēret,
 20 proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia
 hominū vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnissee, quibus
 locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs
 annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque
 omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim
 25 cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō,
 neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā compa-
 randam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō
 vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, su-
 30 perbē et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque
 liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque
 ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius
 facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerā-

rium; nōn posse sē eius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, ex-5 periantur.

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicijū sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōnine populī Rōmānī 10 dēterrere posse nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

The unhappy lot of the Sequani, who had received Ariovistus into their territories.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. 15 Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārū rerū facere quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanere. 20

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Dīviciācus Aeduius respondit: hōc esse miserīorem et graviorem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod solī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre auderent; ab-25 sentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omniā in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī. 30

Caesar promises to intercede with Ariovistus. He thinks his power dangerous to the Roman interests in Gaul.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factū-
 5 rum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putārēt; in primīs quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germā-
 10 nōrum tenērī eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrabātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde
 20 in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmperat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar proposes a conference. Ariovistus declines in insolent language.

25 34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere.

Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

Caesar thereupon makes demands, offering friendship if they are accepted, and threatening war in case they are refused.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum 10 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō, rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc, sibi populūque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus, gravārētur neque dē com- 15 mūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deīnde obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illi ha- 20 bērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs liceret; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populūque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn 25 impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus senātus cēnuisset utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum,

Ariovistus rejects Caesar's proposals and defies him.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent, eīs quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīri. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armis congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiārīos esse factōs. Magnam
10 Caesarem iniūriam facerē, quī suō adventū vectīgālīa sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent,
15 longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.

Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī
20 inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

The Aeduans and the Treveri also complain of the aggressions of the Germans. Caesar sets out against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Naşuam et Cimberium frātrēs,

Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

The importance of the town of Vesontio for both parties. Caesar gets possession of it.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. 10

Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbatur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis, 15 ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtū oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum MDC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem 20 efficit et cum oppidō coniungit.

Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

The reports about the size and valor of the Germans create a panic in Caesar's army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frūmentariae commeātusque causā morātur, ex percōntātiōne 25 nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant

(saepenumero sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quīdem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitū occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

5 Hīc primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte dis-
10 cedere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserāban-
15 tur. Vulgō tōtis castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn
20 sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri
25 iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar upbraids his officers for their lack of confidence. He ridicules their fears, and declares that he will go on.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōsiliū adhibītis centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod,
30 aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcerentur, sibi

quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulatīs atque aequitatē condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum.

Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsiūs diligentiā dēspērarent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quae ā nobīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum haberet in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepenumērō Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāssent; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitate bellī defatigātis Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum

aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore
5 iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam inno-
10 centiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset
15 ūtrum apud eōs pudor atque officiū an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequatur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibiue eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem
20 cōfidēbat maximē.

The soldiers apologize to Caesar. He continues his march against Ariovistus.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendī innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum
25 iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā belli suum
30 iūdicium, sed imperatōris esse existimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, 5 ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum quattuor et vīginti abesse.

Ariovistus proposes a conference, stipulating that he and Caesar be attended only by horsemen. Caesar agrees, but substitutes the tenth legion for his Gallic cavalry.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod antea dē colloquiō postulasset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque 10 id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod antea petentī dēnegasset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat prō suis tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs 15 suis postulātis fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret.

Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe ultrō citrōque cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē, nē per insidiās ab eō cir- 20 cumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitatū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs 25 equitibus detrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs milites legiōnis decimae, cui maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret.

Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

Caesar accuses Ariovistus of ingratitude to the Romans. He shows his own obligation to protect the Aeduans.

5 43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōstituit; item equitēs
10 Ariovisti parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx
15 appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et ā Rōmānis prō magnis hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā
20 ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōsulata quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae prīncipiātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuetūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit
25 esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī attulis-
30 sent, id eis ēripī quis patī posset?

Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat : nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret ; obsidēs redderet ; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur. 5

Ariovistus claims priority in Gaul. He demands that Caesar leave, threatening him and appealing to his private interests.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caēsarīs pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit : trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliquisse ; sēdēs habēre in 10 Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērint.

Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse 15 ac contrā sē castra habuisse ; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre ; sī pāce ūti velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. 20

Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittatur et dēditiciū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetierit. 25

Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugndae causā facere ; eius rei testimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. 30

Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs vēnerit? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concedī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum, ut 10 nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogūm proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Aeduī sēcum et cū Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarē amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā 15 habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum.

Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē 20 ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et liberā possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādīdisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remunerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō 25 eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

Caesar repeats that the Romans must defend their allies. He claims prior rights in Gaul.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: neque suam neque populi Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse 30 Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse

Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset.

Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

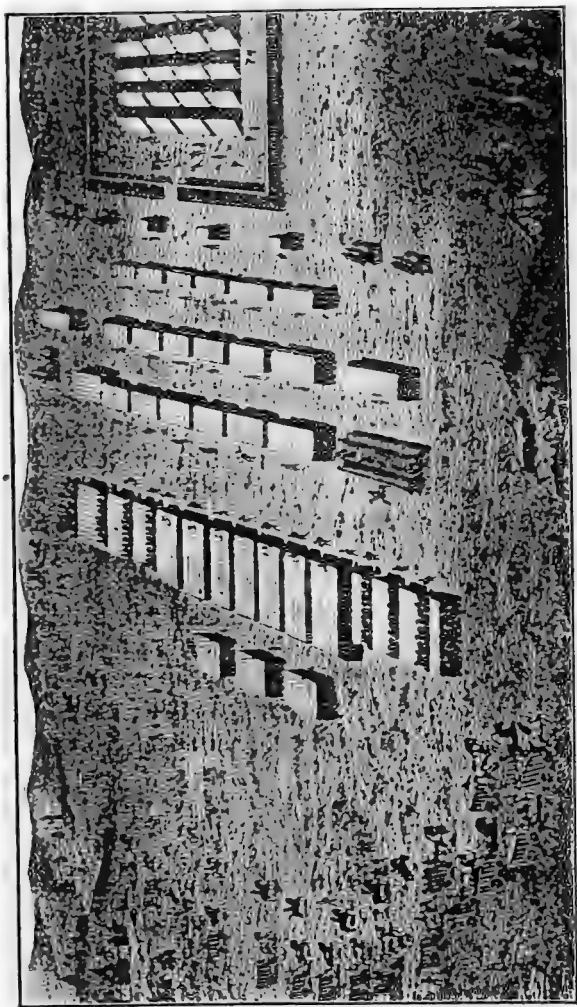
The German cavalry make a treacherous attack. Cæsar withdraws without retaliating.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiatum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et 10 ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlectae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committen- 15 dum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīci posset eōs ā sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs.

Posteāquam in vulgus militum ēlātum est, quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcis- 20 sent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercitū iniectum est.

Caesar declines another conference. He sends envoys to Ariovistus, who throws them into chains.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit : Velle sē dē hīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque 25 perfectae essent agere cum eō ; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa



BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

nōn est, et eō magis quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ex suis sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum exīstimābat.

5

Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitatē dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbatur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbatur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, 10 exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus declines a general engagement and tries to cut off Caesar's supplies. His cavalry and their tactics.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsilio, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castris suās 25 cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitū castris continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc 30

erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum
mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac
fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae
salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliis versāban-
5 tur. Ad cōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat
dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī, graviōre vulnere acceptō,
equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius
prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat
hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubis sublevātī equō-
10 rum cursum adaequārent.

*Caesar fortifies and garrisons a second camp beyond that of the
Germans.*

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē
diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō
in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs
ab hīs castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici
15 instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam
aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit.

Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dic-
tum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia
expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae
20 cōpiā nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent.
Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs
hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mū-
nītis castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxi-
liōrum, quattuor reliquās legiōnēs in castra maiōra
25 redūxit.

*Ariovistus fights with a part of his forces, but puts off a decisive battle
until the new moon.*

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs
utrisque cōpiās suās edūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus

castris prōgressus, aciem instrūxit hostibusque pugnandi potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēnum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsīt. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multis et illātis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuetūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

15

At last the Germans are compelled to fight. Their preparations.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīque castris quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, omnēs ālāriōs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriis ūteretur; ipse triplīcī instrūctā acie ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.

Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castris edūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscētēs passis manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

30

Valor of the Roman soldiers. The prompt action of P. Crassus saves the right wing from disaster.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefecit, uti eōs testēs suae virtutis haberet; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium
5 commisit. Ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fecerunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrerunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilis comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuetūdine suā phalange
10 factā impetūs gladiōrum excēperunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalangem insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerarent.

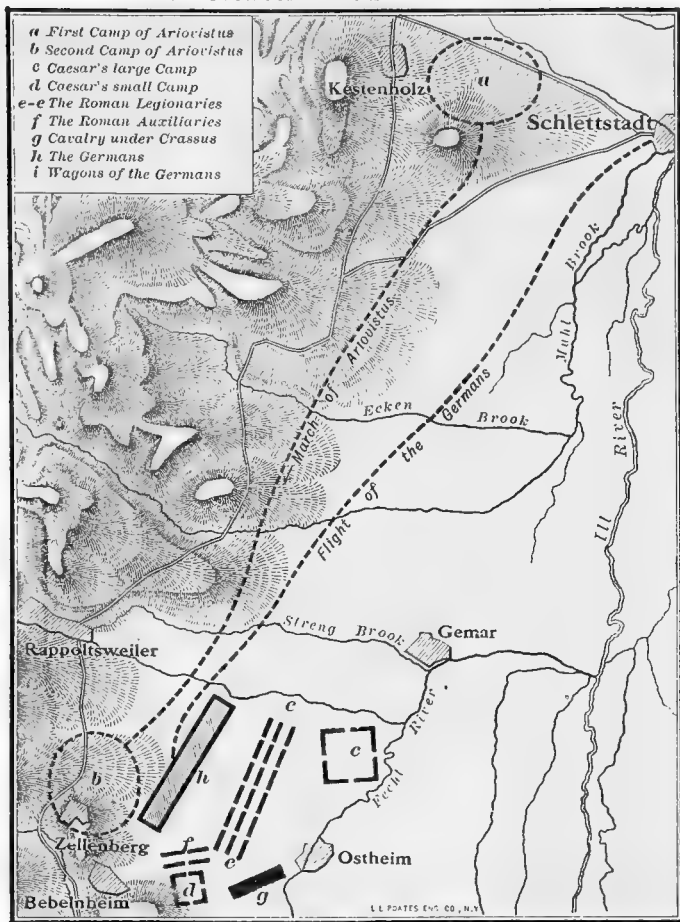
Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum
15 animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitatūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt.

The Germans are utterly defeated, and suffer great loss. Caesar recovers his envoys.

20 53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnerunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi
25 salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātā ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfecērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne,

Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus



Romans

SCALE OF MILES

0 1/2 1 2

Helvetians

quam domō sēcum ēdūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātře missam; utraque in eā fugā periit; duae filiae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

- 5 C. Valerius Procillus cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitatū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae
10 Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Hic sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, utrum ignī statim necārē-
15 tur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

On their way home many of the Suebi are slain by the Ubii. Caesar returns to Hither Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; 20 quōs Ubīi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecūtī magnum ex hīs numerum occidērunt.

Caesar, unā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernis
25 Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK II

I. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIANS, 57 B.C.

The Belgians, fearing the Romans and instigated by the Gauls, form a league against Caesar.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
5 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Coniūrandī hās esse causās : primum quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūceretur; deinde quod ā nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī
10 nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; \\\\ ā nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad conducendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant
15 vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar enrolls new legions and sets out at once against the Belgians.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium
20 lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus

reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hi cōstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō 5 dubitandum nōn existimāvit quā ad eōs proficisceretur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The Remi join the Romans; they report an alliance between the Germans and the Belgians.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis 10 sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecomborium, prīmōs cīvitātis suae, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgis reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum omnīnō coniūrāsse, 15 parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessīōnēs quī 20 dem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint quā cum hīs cōnsentirent.

The history of the Belgians. The number of troops furnished by the different tribes.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaque 25 in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiebat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, solōs-

[illegible]

PUTER L&S CO., INC.

que esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omni Galliā
vexatā, Teutonōs, Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi
prohibuerint; quā ex re fieri utī eārum rerum memoriā
magnam sibi auctōritatem magnōsque spīritus in re
5 militārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī
dicēbant, propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitati-
busque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in
commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus
10 sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et
virtūte et auctōritate et hominum numerō valēre; hōs
posse cōficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō
numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā tōtiusque bellī imperium
sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs
15 lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs
fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius
Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum
regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit;
nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam
20 prūdētiāque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte
dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia
armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs, quī maximē
ferī inter ipsōs habeantur, longissimēque absint; quīn-
decim milia Atrebātēs, Ambianōs decem milia, Mori-
25 nōs XXV milia, Menapiōs VII milia, Caletōs X milia,
Vellocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem
et novem milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Pae-
manōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī
ad XL milia.

*Caesar sends Diviciacus to lay waste the land of the Bellovaci. He
himself encamps across the river Axona.*

30 5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne
prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire principum-

que liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantopere rei pūblicae commūnisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs popularī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab 10 eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ā Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et 15 commeātūs ā Rēmīs reliquīsque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat.

In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

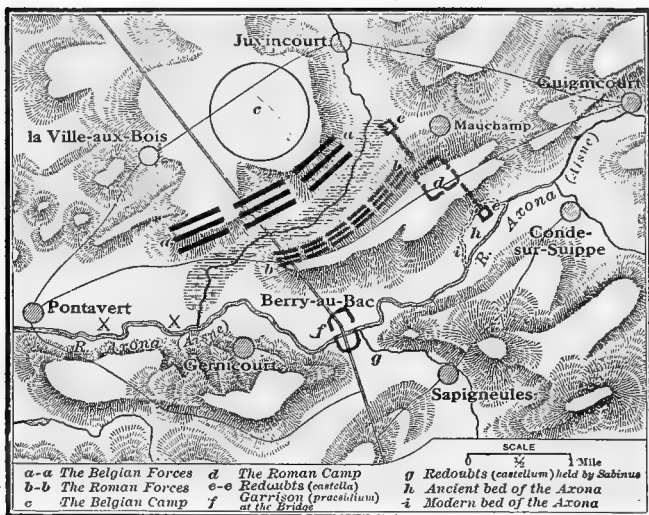
The Belgians attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, who appeal to Caesar.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō 25 est haec: ubi, circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus, undique in mūrūm lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt mūrūmque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla con- 30 icerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.

Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi 5 summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Battle on the Axona (Aisne)

~~~~~ Romans    ■■■■ Belgians



*Caesar sends help. The Belgians raise the siege and encamp near Caesar.*

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittariōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit. Quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium 10 prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus

vīcis aedificiīsque quō adīre poterant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābatur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant. 5

*Caesar, after testing the enemy's strength, prepares for battle.*

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābatur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō 10 castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in 15 frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redibat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi- 20 tūdine poterant, ā lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. 25 Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant.

*The battle is put off. The Belgians try to cross the Axona.*

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret,

ut impedītōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

- 5 Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque  
10 interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

*Caesar prevents the enemy from crossing the river. They decide to return home.*

10. Caesar certior factus ā Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque  
15 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum cōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs quī trānsi-  
20 erant equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

- Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō  
25 convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur.  
30 tur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec

quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Beilovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

*The Romans inflict heavy losses on the retreating Belgians.*

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum 5 strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod 10 quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit; T. 15 Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.

Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti, magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum 20 sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus, omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfecērunt quantum fuit 25 diēi spatium; sub occāsumque sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

*Caesar captures Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender to him.*

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī

proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ā dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnitīs vineās agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit.

Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad  
10 oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

15 13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs civitātis, atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent atque ab eō  
20 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre nec contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppi-  
25 dum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt.

*Diviciacus intercedes with Caesar in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit  
30 verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ā suis prīncipibus,

quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs  
omnēs indignitatēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab  
Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse.  
Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent  
quantam calamitātem cīvitatī intulissent, in Britanniam  
profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam  
prō his Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentīā ac mānsuetūdine in  
eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem  
apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis  
atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōn-10  
suērint.

*Caesar spares the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The Nervii defy him ;  
their characteristics.*

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā  
sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit,  
et quod erat cīvitas magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte  
atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs 15  
obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armīs  
ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum  
pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidē-  
runt.

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā 20  
mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: nū-  
lum aditū esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil pati vinī  
reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium in-  
ferri, quod eis rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et  
remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs mag- 25  
naeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs  
Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patri-  
amque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque  
lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis accep-  
tūrōs.

*Caesar learns that the Nervii and their allies are awaiting his arrival across the Sabis.*

16 Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius milia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum  
5 exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromandūis, finitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in  
10 eum locum conīēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

*The Nervii learn about Caesar's marching order from spies. They plan to attack him.*

17 Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesa-  
15 rem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnerunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercē-  
20 dere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptīs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

25 Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervīī antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finiti-

mōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātis et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, 5 sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāvērunt.

*The Roman camp. The enemy form an ambushade in the woods.*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs delēgerant: collis ā summō aequālīter declīvis ad 10 flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in 15 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

*The Nervii suddenly attack the Romans while they are fortifying their camp.*

19. Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat 20 ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiō- 25 que impedimentis erant.

Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commisē-



runt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs recipe-  
rent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent,  
neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca  
aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īnsequi auderent, interim  
5 legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra  
mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in  
silvīs abditī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs  
committendī proeli convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem  
10 ordīnēsque cōstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant,  
subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in  
nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbā-  
tīs, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut  
paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in  
15 manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērētur. Eādem autem  
celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī  
in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

*Caesar's personal efforts and the discipline of the legions prevent a  
panic.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxil-  
lum prōpōnendū, signum tubā dandū, ab opere  
20 revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī  
causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, militēs  
cohortandī, signum dandū. Quārum rērū magnam  
partem temporis brevitas et incursus hostium impediē-  
bat.

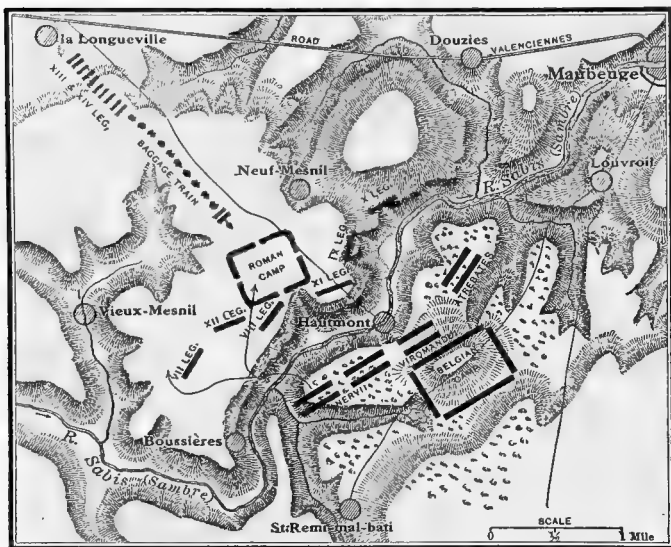
25 Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia  
atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exer-  
citātī, quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi  
praescribere quam ab aliis docēri poterant, et quod ab  
opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar  
30 discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

*The Romans hastily prepare for battle.*

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, et ad

### Battle on the Sabis (Sambre)



— Romans — Belgians

legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adigi posset, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit.

*was not far off from which a spear could be thrown*

Temporis <sup>sub</sup> tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican-  
 dum animus, ut nōn modo ad insignia  
 accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtis-  
 que tegimenta, dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam-  
 5 quisque ab opere in partem casū <sup>evenit</sup> devēnit, quaeque prima  
 signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis  
 pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

*Difficulties of the situation.*

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectus-  
 que collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris  
 10 ratiō atque ordō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs  
<sup>Sort</sup> aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent saepibusque dēn-  
 sissimis, ut ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus  
 impedirētur, neque <sup>certa subsidia</sup> collocārī nec quid in  
 quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia  
 15 imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum  
 inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The battle goes on with different results in different parts of the field.*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā  
 parte aciē cōstitierant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitū-  
 dine exanimātōs vulneribūsq̄ confectōs Atrebātēs  
 20 (nam eis ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre  
 in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī  
 gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfecērunt.  
 (Ipsi trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in  
 locum inīquum prōgressi rūsus <sup>resistentes</sup> hostēs,  
 25 redintegrātō proelio, in fugam cōiēcērunt. Item aliā  
 in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva,  
 prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex  
 loco superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proēliābantur.

At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte

*in populo haurit tota res posita*  
 nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, 5 pars summum castrōrum locum pētere coepit.

*Rout of the Roman cavalry. The Treveri return home and report Caesar's defeat.*

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam 10 in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ā decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdisent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, 15 quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā civitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum 20 multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdisent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris 25 impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

*The Romans are hard pressed. Caesar's personal valor turns the tide.*

25. Caesar ā decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in

ūnum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs  
mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit,  
quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signi-  
ferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium  
5 omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis,  
in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō,  
multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sus-  
tinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs  
ā novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre;  
10 hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs inter-  
mittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in  
angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod sum-  
mitti posset; scūtō ā novissimis ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō,  
quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem  
15 prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātis reli-  
quōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa inferre et manipulōs  
laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūti possent. Cuius  
adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum  
prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in ex-  
20 trēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hos-  
tium impetus tardātus est.

*Labienus sends the tenth legion to Caesar's help.*

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā  
cōnstitērat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs  
mīlitum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniunge-  
25 rent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō  
cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē  
āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere  
ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō  
30 agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūn-  
tiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibz cōn-

spiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

*The Nervii, in spite of valiant fighting, are completely defeated.*

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locis pugnae sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberent ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animī magnitudō redēgerat.

*The Nervii sue for peace and are treated leniently. Their losses.*

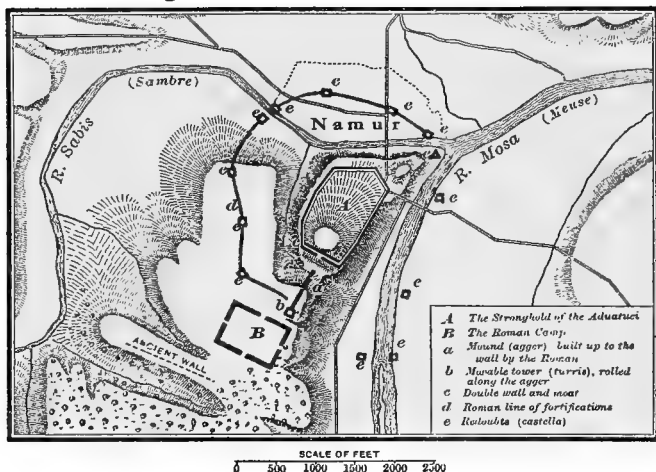
28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō maiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, om-

nium qui supererant cōsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitatīs calamitatē ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*The Aduatuci collect all their forces into one stronghold. Their history.*

- 10 29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprà scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervīis venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā

### Siege of the Fortress of the Aduatuci



ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsētīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus

in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. 5

Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, cūstōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. Hī 10 post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

*They intrench themselves and laugh at the Roman siege works.*

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex 15 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum duodecim in circuitū quīndecim milium passuum crēbrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sese continēbant.

Ubi vineīs āctis aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōn- 20 stituī vidērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suōrum 25 brevitas nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōfiderent?

*When they see the tower advance, they offer to surrender, but wish to keep their arms.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs



ad Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia  
5 eōrum potestātī permittēre dīxērunt. Unum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā elēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre, ā quibus  
10 sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

*Caesar refuses. They surrender a large part of their arms.*

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: sē magis cōsuētū-  
15 dine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrū ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque impērātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī  
20 iniūriam īferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs illi sē quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum  
25 adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

*They make a sally, but are defeated. Caesar sells them into slavery.*

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus

iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, 5 quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus signi-10 ficatiōne factā ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad 15 hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refractis portis, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est 20 mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

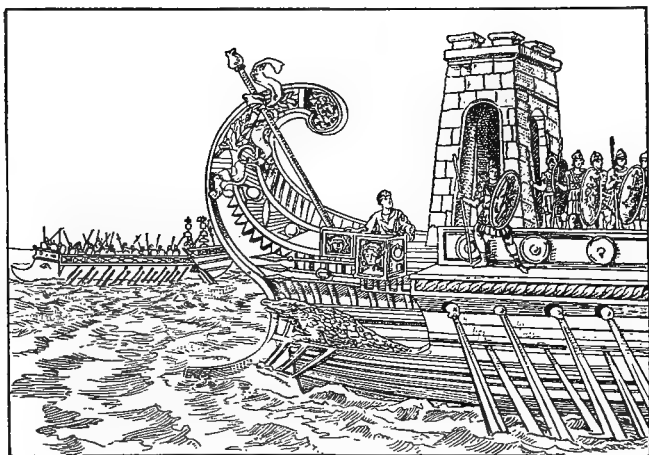
## II. THE CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

*Publius Crassus announces the submission of the maritime states.*

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs 25 eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmāni esse redāctās.

*Envoys are sent to Caesar from all sides. He goes into winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed by the senate.*

35. Hīs rēbūs gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās  
 5 pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant ubi bellum  
 10 gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, in Italiam pro-  
 fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.



TOWER (*turrem in nave excitata*).





JULIUS CAESAR.

## BOOK III

### I. PERILOUS EXPERIENCE OF GALBA AMONG THE ALPINE TRIBES, LAST PART OF 57 B.C.

*Galba, sent by Caesar with a legion among the Alpine tribes, determines  
to winter at Octodurus.*

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Varagrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, 5 quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hie-mandī causā collocāret.

Galba secundīs aliquot proeliis factīs castellisque 10 complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, 15 nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

*The Gauls abandon the town altogether; with allies they prepare to attack Galba; their reasons.*

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmentumque eō com̄portārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque quī  
5 impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctis cohortibus duābus et com-  
10 plūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī existimā-  
15 bant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ā sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

*Galba, though surprised, and advised to retreat, decides to resist.*

20 3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōsiliō celeriter con-  
25 vocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentini periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsus itineri-

bus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae huius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut, impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōsiliō interim rei ēven-  
tum experīri et castra dēfendere.

*The Gauls attack, and owing to their numbers have the advantage.*

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōstituissent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter repūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, 15 aliū integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī, ubi cōstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

20

*The situation grows desperate. The Romans prepare for a sally.*

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sex-  
tius Baculus, prīmī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbā accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem



salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiōres facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labore reficerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

*The Gauls, taken by surprise, are defeated; Galba retreats.*

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-  
 10 mūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs  
 15 quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōsiliō vēnisse  
 20 meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs  
 25 perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.



## II. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS AGAINST THE VENETI, 56 B.C.

*Gaul at peace. Crassus, among the Andes, seeks for a larger food supply.*

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est.

Eius belli haec fuit causa: P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitīmās cīvitatēs frūmentī commeātūsque petendī causā dīmīsīt; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Veneti seize his messengers; the states of the sea-coast unite against the Romans.*

8. Huius est cīvitatīs longē amplissima auctōritās. omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērū nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī, paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs fere quī eō mari ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs.

Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sili atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī ad-

ducti — ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina cōsilia — eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suos principēs inter se cōiūrant nihil nisi commūni cōsiliō āctūrōs eundemque  
 5 omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre, quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint.

Omni ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam per-  
 10 ductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: si velit suos recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

*Both sides prepare for war. The Veneti rely chiefly on their superior skill in naval warfare. The peculiar situation of their towns.*

9. Quibus de rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex  
 15 prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item civitātēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in se facinus admīsissent  
 20 intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sāctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ā se et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē quod multum  
 25 nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigatiōnem impeditam propter īncientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud se morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā  
 30 opiniōnem acciderent, tamen se plūrimum nāvibus

posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque aper-  
tissimō Oceanō perspiciebant. 5

His initīs cōsiliūs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambianōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, 10 Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

*Pride and necessity alike force Caesar to undertake this difficult war.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, 15 rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitatū coniūrātiō, imprīmīs nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem 20 hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitatēs cōspirārent, partien- dum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

*Fear of a general uprising in Gaul. D. Brutus in charge of the fleet; Caesar with the land forces.*

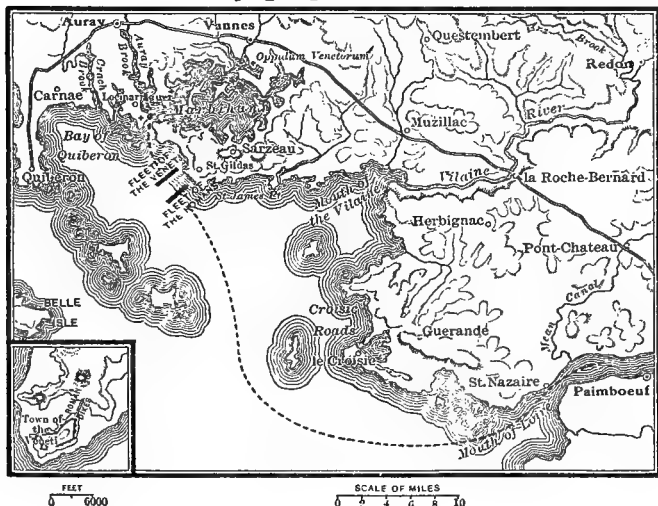
11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic 25 mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiō-

nāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, 5 Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulescentem classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. 10 Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

*The towns difficult for the Romans to reach, easy for the Veneti to retreat from if necessary.*

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque

Campaign against the Veneti



pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflicterentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnatiō impediēbatur; ac sī quandō, magnitudine operis forte 5 superātī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātis, suīs fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus 10 isdem opportunitatibus loci dēfendēbant.

Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestatibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullīs portibus difficultās nāvigandī. 15

*The ships of the Veneti more strongly built, more fitted to stand the buffeting of the storms and damage from the shoals.*

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārū nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcēssum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōborē ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōfixa clāvis ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancōrae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtāeque 25 tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter linī inopiam atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. 30

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae  
5 rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādē dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs  
10 cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*The Roman fleet arrives. Brutus by a clever stratagem renders part of the enemy's fleet unmanageable.*

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium  
15 fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque eīs nocēri posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque  
20 satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocēri nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū  
25 ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae affīxaeque longuriis nōn absimili  
30 fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās

ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō prae-rumpēbantur. Quibus abscī-sīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēripe-<sup>5</sup> rētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī milītēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat 10 propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

*Utter defeat of the Veneti.*

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnis, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, milītēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātīs 15 complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negō-<sup>20</sup> tium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsūm pugnārētur.

*The Veneti surrender everything. Their punishment.*

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae 25 maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat ūnum in locum coēgerant; quibus āmis-



sīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suae omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reli-  
 5 quum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub coronā vēdidit.

### III. CAMPAIGN OF TITURIUS AGAINST THE VENELLI

*Sabinus, encamped among the Venelli, attacked by Gauls under Viridovix. He gives them the impression of cowardice.*

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx  
 10 ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitatū quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli  
 15 esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre revocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenē-  
 20 bat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem  
 25 timōris praebeuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī

summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitātē aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existimābat.

*He outwits the Gauls with the help of a pretended deserter.*

18. Hāc cōfirmātā ōpīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris<sup>10</sup> exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsīōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra irī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur: 15  
superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibariōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex<sup>20</sup> conciliō dīmīttunt quam ab hīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

25

*The attack of the enemy turned into a rout by the Romans.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulatim ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique pervēnē-

runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs viribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī, paucōs quī ex  
10 fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt.

Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar est certior factus, civitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus,  
15 sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perfrendās mēns eōrum est.

#### IV. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA

*Crassus in Aquitania. Attacked on the march by the Sotiates.*

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae est, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne hominum tertia  
20 pars Galliae aestimanda, cum intellegeret in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissis prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā,  
25 auxiliīs equitatūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus,

nōminātim ēvocātis in Sōtiātum fīnes exercitum intrōdūxit.

Cuius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiis coāctis equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commisērunt; 5 deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

*Crassus defeats them and captures their chief town.*

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs 10 superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscēntulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum 15 magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātum oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod 20 multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt) ubi diligentīā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellexērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.

25

*The chief with many followers attempts to escape, is beaten back.*

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā

commodis unā cum eis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unā ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam qui, 5 eō interfecto cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusaret, — cum his Adiatunnus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab eā parte munitiōnis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti eadem deditiōnis condiōne uteretur a Crasso impetravit.

*Other tribes, even some from Spain, trained in Roman methods by Sertorius, combine against Crassus.*

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et naturā loci et manū munitum paucis diebus quibus eō ventum erat expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoqueversus dimittere, 15 coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae; inde auxilia ducēque arcessuntur. Quorum adventū magnā cum auctoritate et magnā hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Ducēs vero ii deliguntur qui unā cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, 20 commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frumentum commeatumque sibi 30 supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunc-

tandum exīstimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōsiliū delātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

*Crassus wishes to fight at once; the enemy adopt a policy of delay.  
The Romans attack the enemy.*

24. Primā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs 5 cōsili caperent exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicatūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō sine 10 ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiores animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ā ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne 15 timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōres ad pugnandum effēcissent atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

*The attack unsuccessful at first. Word brought of an easier point of attack.*

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis 20 coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque depellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium praeberent; cum item ab hostibus 25 cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs cir-

cumitis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādē esse diligentīā ā decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

*The enemy attacked in the rear. A bloody rout follows.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut magnīs  
5 praemiis pollicitātiōibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri  
vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis eīs  
cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relictāe intritae ā  
labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex  
hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis menti-  
10 busque ad pugnam intentis celeriter ad eās quās dixi-  
mus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutis prius  
in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidēri,  
aut quid rei generētur cognōsci posset.

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō, nostrī redinte-  
15 grātis vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere  
cōsuevit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique  
circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūni-  
tiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.  
Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex  
20 milium L. numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque  
convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā  
nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*Aquitania submits to the Romans.*

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē  
Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō  
25 fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Taru-  
sātes, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs,  
Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōn-  
fisae, quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

## V. CAESAR'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI

*Caesar marches against the Menapii and Morini. They surprise him.*

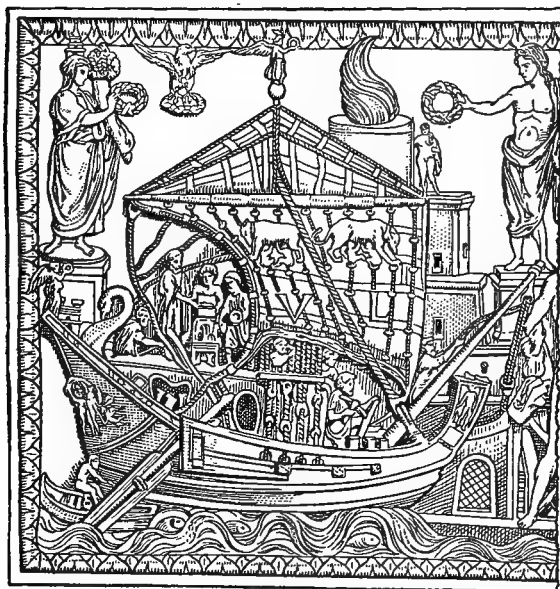
28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiique supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī 5 longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum 10 Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus inter- 15 factīs, longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

*Caesar pursues them through the forests. Storms end the campaign.*

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ā latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam 20 quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs 25 cōsecūtae utī opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus milites con-



tinērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitatibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernis  
5 collocāvit.



TRANSPORT (*Navis Oneraria*).

## BOOK IV

### I. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE USIPITES AND TENCTERI, 55 B.C.

*German tribes, driven by the Suevi, cross the Rhine. Customs of the Suevi.*

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencteri magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt; nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ā Suēbīs .com-5 plūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bel-10 landī causā suis ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur.

Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque 15 longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae — quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disci-20 plinā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faci-

unt,—et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

*Their dislike for traffic; skill in horsemanship; avoidance of wine.*

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēdant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, 10 quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed, quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac 15 bus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire 20 audent. Vinum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmīnārī arbitrantur.

*Their peculiar pride. Suevi and Ubii compared.*

3. Pūblicē maximam putant<sup>1</sup> esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī 25 magnum numerum cīvītātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter milia passuum c agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alterā partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit cīvītās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ii paulō, quamquam

sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēque redēgērunt.

*The Usipites and Tencteri, unable to force a passage of the Rhine, resort to a ruse. Its success.*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprà dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis 10 locis Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex eīs aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant, et cis 15 Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstodiās Menapiōrum possent, rēvertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēs- 20 que simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressi rursus revertērunt atque, omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs inopināntēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōres factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. 25 Hīs interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

*The fickleness of the Gauls. Their way of securing information.*

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūtiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti dē suminis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

*Caesar with the army. The Germans, invited by the Gauls, advance further into the country.*

15 6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ā nōnnūllis civitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs  
20 utī ā Rhēnō discēderent; omnia quae postulāssent, ā sē fore parāta.

Quā spē adducti Germāni lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

*Caesar's advance. German ambassadors boastfully offer friendship and demand lands.*

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum 5 inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laccessantur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vērunt invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; si suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse 10 eis ūtilēs esse amīcōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint ; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint ; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēmīnem, quem nōn superāre possint.

15

*The Germans bidden to settle among the Ubii.*

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis : sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent ; neque vērū esse quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae 20 praesertim multitūdīnī sine iniūriā possint ; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant ; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

*They vainly seek to delay the Roman advance.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē 25 dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs ; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē

id quidem Caesar ā sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam ; hōs exspectārī equitēs  
 5 atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

*Description of the course of the Meuse and of the Rhine.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit.  
 10 Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur ; et ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quā-  
 15 rum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Again a three days' delay is sought. Caesar refuses.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII  
 20 milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur ; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi-  
 25 ut potestatem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī ; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrاندō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant ; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrā-

bātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad praefec- 5 tōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

*A cavalry engagement. Mutual devotion of Piso and his brother.*

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē- 10 runt, quōrum erat V mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod īī quī frūmen- tandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtīs erat ab 15 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus eis resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perter- ritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in 20 cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur III et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplis- 25 simō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitate suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō 30 sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.



*Caesar's reasons for battle. The German elders detained in his camp.*

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium 5 cōpiāe augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

10 Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et quae-  
stōre communicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū  
15 adhibītīs, ad eum in castra vērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridīe commisissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrarent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī  
20 iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

*Caesar surprises the German camp.*

14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam  
25 quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritate adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem ēducere an castra dēfendere an fugā salutem

petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī pristinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

*Complete rout of the Germans. Those in Caesar's camp prefer to remain.*

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs 10 interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen prae-  
cipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne, vī flūminis 15 oppressī periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castrīs retinuerat dis-  
cēdendī potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque 20 Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

## II. CAESAR'S INVASION OF GERMANY

*Caesar, urged by the Ubii, plans to cross the Rhine.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum 25 illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam

facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rebus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et  
5 Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frū-  
mentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō in-  
terfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs  
Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eis coniūnxerat. Ad  
quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs  
10 quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent,  
respondērunt: populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fi-  
nīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn  
aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut  
potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

15 Ubī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem  
lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēceraut, obsidēs dederant,  
magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod gravi-  
ter ā Suēbis premerentur; vel sī id facere occupātiō-  
nibus rei pūblīcae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum  
20 trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī tem-  
poris satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opī-  
niōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō  
proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs,  
utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populi Rōmānī tūti esse pos-  
25 sent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum  
exercitum pollicēbantur.

*He builds a bridge.*

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhē-  
num trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque  
satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi  
30 Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa  
difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātītū-

dinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat.

Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallō pedum duorum inter se iungēbat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat festucisque adēgerat, — non sublicae modō dērectē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigatē, ut secundum naturam fluminis prōcumberent, — his item contraria duō ad eundem modum iuncta intervallō pedum quadragēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque 15 fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudō atque ea rerum natura ut, quō maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hōc artius illigata tenērentur. Haec dērectā materiā iniectā contexēbantur ac longu-20 riis cratibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniunctae vim fluminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive navēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur neu ponti nocērent.

*He enters the territory of the Sugambri, who have fled.*

18. Diēbus decem quibus materia coepta erat compartari, omnī opere effectō exercitus traducitur. Caesar 30 ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relicto, in

finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus  
cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque  
amīcitiā petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque  
ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō  
5 pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus  
eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habē-  
bant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāve-  
rant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdidierant.

*He reaches the Ubii. The Suevi await his attack, but he withdraws  
and cuts down the bridge.*

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus,  
10 omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentisque suc-  
cīsīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque eīs auxilium  
suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs  
cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquam per explōrātōrēs pontem  
fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūtiōs  
15 in omnēs partēs dīmisisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,  
liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, at-  
que omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum con-  
venīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum  
eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hic Rōmānōrum adven-  
20 tum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod  
ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōfectīs quā-  
rum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut  
Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur,  
ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns  
25 Rhēnum cōsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitā-  
tem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pon-  
temque rescidit.

## III. CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN

*Caesar plans a short invasion of Britain. The Gallic traders know little of that country.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsu fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī haberent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs, reperire poterat.

*A scout sent ahead; ships gathered. Commius returns to Britain with ambassadors sent to Caesar.*

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestate ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, iubet convenire.

Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs, 5 liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctō-  
10 ritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitatēs hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeritē eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāve  
15 ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

*The Morini submit to Caesar. Troops sent among the Menapii.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum  
20 lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidissee arbitrātus, quod neque  
25 post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, magnum eīs numerum ob-  
sidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit.  
30 Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis, quot satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod

praetereā nāvium longārū habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs |  
 praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerā-  
 riae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuū VIII  
 ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre  
 possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exerci- 5  
 tum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgā-  
 tīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus  
 ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; P. Sul-  
 picium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis  
 esse arbitrābatur portum tenēre iussit. 10

*The start for Britain. An unfavorable landing place.*

23. His cōstitutīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvī-  
 gandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit  
 equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs  
 cōnscondere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō  
 tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter 15  
 quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi  
 in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās  
 cōnspectit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita mon-  
 tibus angustīs mare continēbatur, utī ex locīs superiōri-  
 bus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum 20  
 nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs  
 eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum convocātīs, et  
 quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet osten-  
 dit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut mari- 25  
 timae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem  
 mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs  
 ab eīs administrārentur. His dimissīs et ventum et  
 aestum unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et  
 sublātīs ancorīs, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō 30  
 prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.



*Difficulties of landing. Advantages of Britons in combat.*

24. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, prae  
missō equitatū et essedariis, quō plērumque genere in  
proeliis uti cōsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs  
nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa  
5 difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in  
altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis  
locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armō-  
rum oppressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in  
fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum;  
10 cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi,  
omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter  
tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus  
rēbus nostrī perterriti atque huius omnīnō generis pug-  
nae imperiti nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō, quō in  
15 pedestribus uti proeliis cōsuērunt, utēbantur.

*The Roman war galleys and engines of the greatest assistance. The  
valor of a standard bearer.*

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās,  
quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad  
ūsū expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerariis nāvibus  
et rēmīs incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui,  
20 atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac  
summovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsui nostris fuit.  
Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō  
genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac  
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

25 Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter  
altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat  
obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret,  
“Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam  
hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque

imperātōri officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāve prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

*Fierce fighting. The enemy, at first successful, routed. A landing effected.*

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācritur. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, 10 magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ā latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. 15

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārū nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque 20 eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*Ambassadors come, bringing Commius. Peace made.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā 25 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare

in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs orātōris modō Caesaris mandata dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce eius rei  
5 culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ā sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque  
10 imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvītātēque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*Ships carrying cavalry overtaken by a storm when near Britain.*

15 28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprà dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta  
20 tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus  
25 complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*Many vessels at anchor wrecked or severely damaged by a storm.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit,

nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus<sup>5</sup> nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtīlēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent et omnia deerant quae ad<sup>10</sup> reficiendās eās erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

*The Britons plan rebellion.*

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collo-<sup>15</sup> cūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis deesse intellexerent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīone<sup>20</sup> factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castris discēdere et suōs<sup>25</sup> clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

*Caesar, suspicious of them, collects a large food-supply and repairs most of the ships.*

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum, et ex eō quod

obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbatur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

*One legion attacked while foraging. Caesar comes to its relief.*

10 32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābatur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī qui prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant  
15 Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās  
20 in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod  
25 omni ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucis interfectis reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul  
30 equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

*Methods and skill of the Britons in chariot-fighting.*

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurī-5 gae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant utī, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditū ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne 10 efficiunt utī in dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

*Caesar returns safely to camp.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs tempore oppor-15 tūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō con-20 tinuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs re- dūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. In-25 terim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt pau- citātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandi facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt. 30

*He defeats the enemy before the camp.*

35. Caesar etsi idem quod superioriibus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat — ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde  
10 omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

*Peace made again. Caesar sails back to Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis  
15 nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eis onerariae duae  
20 eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā delātae sunt.

#### IV. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI AND MENAPII

*Soldiers from two ships attacked by the Morini. The latter defeated.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat,

spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex 5 castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit.

Interim nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōn-10 spectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

*Labienuſ subdues the Morini. The country of the Menapii laid waste. Winter quarters established.*

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs 15 palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perugiō superiōre annō erant ūsi) omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succīs, aedificiis 20 incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitatēs ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex 25 litteris Caesaris diērum XX supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK V

### I. CAESAR'S SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

Chapters 1-7. Caesar again plans to invade Britain, and has a large number of ships built during the winter season. He determines to take to Britain with him a number of Gallic chiefs as hostages for their tribes. One of these men, Dumnorix the Aeduan, resists this and is slain by Caesar's orders.

*The start made from Portus Itius. The large number of ships alarms the Britons, who leave the shore undefended.*

8. His rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur<sup>1</sup> et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōsiliumque prō tempore  
5 et prō rē<sup>2</sup> caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō<sup>3</sup> prōvectus mediā circīter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius<sup>4</sup> dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā  
10 Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs

<sup>1</sup> tueretur : for its meaning compare its participle, tutus, commonly used as an adjective.

<sup>2</sup> pro tempore et pro re : i.e. as the time and situation required. See 142, 6, b. References like this are to the Introduction.

<sup>3</sup> Africo : sc. (vento), southwest wind. Africo is really an adjective.

<sup>4</sup> longius : too far, i.e. the tide carried Caesar too far to the eastward, beyond the point where the coast turned to the north.

commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum<sup>1</sup> superiore aestate cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs<sup>2</sup> laudanda, quī vectōriīs<sup>3</sup> gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunť. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō<sup>4</sup> ferē tempore; neque in cō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs<sup>5</sup> privātisque, 10 quās suī quisque commodī<sup>6</sup> causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiora loca abdiderant.

*Caesar lands his army, leaves a guard for the ships, and marches inland. He engages with the enemy, who flee unpursued.*

9. Caesar, expositō<sup>7</sup> exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium 15 cōpiae cōnsēdissent cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litōre molli<sup>8</sup> atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium prae-20 fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiore nostrōs

<sup>1</sup> *egressum*: *landing-place*; a substantive, not a participle.

<sup>2</sup> *virtus*, *pluck*.

<sup>3</sup> *vectoriīs*: cf. *veho*, *carry*. These ships are contrasted with the *naves longae*, the war galleys.

<sup>4</sup> *meridiano*: an adjective derived from *medius* and *dies*.

<sup>5</sup> *annotinīs*, *of the year before*.

<sup>6</sup> *commodum*, -i, u., *advantage, convenience*.

<sup>7</sup> *exposito*, *landed*. Participle of *expono*, *land*.

<sup>8</sup> *mollis*: i.e. *sandy*, without rocks.

prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī<sup>1</sup> bellī causā, ut vidēbātur, iam ante praeparāverant; nam 5 crēbris arboribus succīs omnēs introitus<sup>2</sup> erant praeclūsī.<sup>3</sup> Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant<sup>4</sup> nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēperunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt 10 paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et<sup>5</sup> quod loci nātūrā ignorābat, et<sup>5</sup> quod, magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*The next day word comes of a great disaster to his ships.*

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripartitō<sup>6</sup> milites equi- 15 tēsque in expeditiōnem<sup>7</sup> mīsīt, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī<sup>8</sup> essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs 20 afflētās atque in litus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent<sup>9</sup> neque nautae gubernātōrēsque

<sup>1</sup> domestici: civil, among themselves.

<sup>2</sup> introitus: a noun derived from intro, in, within, and eo, go.

<sup>3</sup> praecclusi: participle of a compound verb, from claudo, close.

<sup>4</sup> ex silvis rari propugnabunt: fought, i.e. (cast weapons) in small parties protected by the woods.

<sup>5</sup> et . . . et: not only . . . but also.

<sup>6</sup> tripartito: an adverb derived from tres and pars.

<sup>7</sup> in expeditiōnem: i.e. on a rapid march, lightly equipped.

<sup>8</sup> extremi: in all probability this refers to the rear of the enemy, though some would like to have it signify the last of the troops sent in pursuit, showing how short a distance they must have travelled when word came of the disaster.

<sup>9</sup> sustinerent: held; used intransitively.

vīm tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū<sup>1</sup> nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

*Returning, he has all ships drawn up on shore, a wall built to protect them.*

*Cassivellaunus now in command of Britons.*

11. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere dēsistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis cognōverat<sup>5</sup> cōram<sup>2</sup> perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs<sup>3</sup> dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit, eīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum, nāvēs insti-<sup>10</sup> tuat.<sup>4</sup> Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs sub-  
dūcī et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. 15

Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis eādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis cīvitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitatibus continentia<sup>5</sup> bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Britannī<sup>25</sup> hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

<sup>1</sup> concursu: colliding.

<sup>3</sup> fabros, carpenters.

<sup>2</sup> coram, with his own eyes.

<sup>4</sup> instituat: the same as aedificet.

<sup>5</sup> continentia: from the adjective continens, constant.

*The inhabitants of Britain, their origin and customs.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum<sup>1</sup> dicunt<sup>2</sup>; maritima pars ab eis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgio trāsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eis nōminibus cīvitātum 5 appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnita multitudō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō<sup>3</sup> aureō aut tāleis<sup>4</sup> ferreis ad 10 certum pondus exāminātis.<sup>5</sup> Nāscitur ibi plumbum<sup>6</sup> album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria<sup>7</sup> cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum<sup>8</sup> atque abietem.<sup>9</sup> Leporem<sup>10</sup> et gallinam<sup>11</sup> et 15 ānserem<sup>12</sup> gustāre<sup>13</sup> fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

*The shape and size of the island.*

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est 20 ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,<sup>14</sup> ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum

<sup>1</sup> proditum: sc. esse; *it has been handed down (by tradition).*

<sup>2</sup> dicunt: its subject is the indefinite "they."

<sup>3</sup> nummus, -i, m., money.

<sup>4</sup> talea, -ae, f., rod.

<sup>5</sup> examinatis, tested.

<sup>6</sup> plumbum, -i, n., lead; plumbum album (white lead), tin.

<sup>7</sup> materia, -ae, f., timber.

<sup>8</sup> fagus, -i, f., beech.

<sup>11</sup> gallina, -ae, f., hen.

<sup>9</sup> abies, -etis, f., fir.

<sup>12</sup> anser, -eris, m., goose.

<sup>10</sup> lepus, -oris, m., hare.

<sup>13</sup> gusto, -are, etc., taste.

<sup>14</sup> quo . . . appelluntur: where (whither) . . . land.

vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō<sup>1</sup> minor, ut exīstīmātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque<sup>2</sup> ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū<sup>3</sup> est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs<sup>5</sup> praetereā minōrēs subiectae<sup>4</sup> īnsulae exīstīmāntur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam<sup>5</sup> esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus<sup>6</sup> reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs<sup>7</sup> breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. 10 Huius est longitudinō lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō, dcc mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum dccc in longitudinem esse exīstīmātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in 15 circuitū viciēs centum mīlium passuum.

*Superiority of the people of Kent. Habits of the interior tribes.*

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt,<sup>8</sup> sed lacte<sup>9</sup> et carne<sup>10</sup> 20 vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Bri-

<sup>1</sup> dimidium, -i, n., *half*.

<sup>2</sup> atque, *as*; this means that Ireland was thought to be just as far from Britain as Gaul was.

<sup>3</sup> In hoc medio cursu, *halfway across*.

<sup>4</sup> subiectae: *i.e. near by* (lying close at hand).

<sup>5</sup> brumam: *i.e. brevissimam diem*, used here for *winter*.

<sup>6</sup> percontatio, -onis, f., *inquiry*.

<sup>7</sup> ex aqua mensuris: the Romans had an arrangement (called the clepsydra) for measuring time by using water in much the same way as we use sand in the hour-glass.

<sup>8</sup> sero, serere, sevi, satum, *sow, plant*.

<sup>9</sup> lac, lactis, n., *milk*.

<sup>10</sup> caro, carnis, f., *flesh, meat*.

tannī vitrō<sup>1</sup> inficiunt,<sup>2</sup> quod cacruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc<sup>3</sup> horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū.

*A daring attack upon the Romans.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriūque<sup>4</sup> ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen  
5 ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius īsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suis āmīsērunt. At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis  
10 ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castris collocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his primis legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō<sup>5</sup> intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pugnae per-  
15 teritis nostris per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs<sup>6</sup> recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Labe- rius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illi plūribus summissis cohortibus repelluntur.

*Disadvantages of the Romans in encounters with the Britons.*

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis  
20 omnium ac prō castris dīmicārētur,<sup>7</sup> intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequi cēdentēs<sup>8</sup> possent neque ā signis discēdere audē-

<sup>1</sup> vitrum, -i, u., woad, a blue vegetable dye, used by the Britons to stain themselves.

<sup>2</sup> inficiunt, stain.

<sup>3</sup> hoc, by reason of this (i.e. the dyeing).

<sup>4</sup> essedarii, fighters from chariots.

<sup>6</sup> incolumis, -e, unharmed.

<sup>5</sup> perexiguo, very narrow.

<sup>7</sup> dimico, -are, etc., fight.

<sup>8</sup> cedentes, participle of cedo, retreat, used substantively as the object of īnsequi.

rent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum periculō dīmicāre, propterea quod illi etiam cōsultō<sup>1</sup> plērūque cēderent et, cum paulum ā legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent,<sup>2</sup> ex essedīs dēsiliērent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēdentibus et insequentibus pār atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc ut<sup>3</sup> numquam cōferti<sup>4</sup> sed rārī magnisque intervāllis proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositas habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps<sup>5</sup> exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfati-10 gātis succēderent.

*Three legions are attacked when foraging. The Romans defeat and pursue the Britons.*

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius<sup>6</sup> quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem 15 equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic uti ā signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.<sup>7</sup> Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad<sup>8</sup> subsidiō cōfisi<sup>9</sup> equitēs, cum 20 post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facul-

<sup>1</sup> consulto, adv., intentionally, purposely.

<sup>2</sup> removissent, had drawn off.

<sup>3</sup> Accedebat huc ut, It was added to this that; freely, furthermore.

<sup>4</sup> conferti: opposed in meaning to rari which immediately follows.

<sup>5</sup> deinceps, in turn, by relays.

<sup>6</sup> lenius, less fiercely.

<sup>7</sup> legiōnibusque non absisterent: i.e. they were now bold enough to attempt battle even with the strongest troops of the Romans, not merely with the cavalry and the foragers.

<sup>8</sup> quoad, means the same as dum.

<sup>9</sup> confisi: from confido, confidere, confisus. semi-deponent, trust.



tātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus<sup>1</sup> quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contēdērunt.

! *Caesar crosses the Thames in spite of the resistance of the Britons.*

5 18. Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, transīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium  
10 īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus<sup>2</sup> praefixis-  
que<sup>3</sup> mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae<sup>3</sup> sudēs flūmine<sup>4</sup> tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs per-  
fugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs  
subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō impetū  
15 milītēs iērunt, cum<sup>5</sup> capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut  
hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn  
possent rīpāsque dīmitterent<sup>6</sup> ac sē fugae mandārent.

*The enemy are troublesome in small skirmishes. Plundering is difficult for Romans.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs<sup>6</sup> ampliōribus cōpiīs, 20 milibus circiter IV essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impe-

<sup>1</sup> protinus, immediately.

<sup>2</sup> sudis, -is, f., stake.

<sup>3</sup> praefixis, and dēfixae, both from figo, figere, fix, set; the compound with prae has reference to those stakes set in the edge of the bank, and that with de to those set in the bed of the stream.

<sup>4</sup> flumine: Caesar is thought to have crossed the Thames between Kingston and Brentford, eight or ten miles southwest of London.

<sup>5</sup> cum, although.

<sup>6</sup> dimitto, send away; leave, abandon. Note the different meanings.

dītis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmītisque<sup>1</sup> essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat<sup>2</sup> et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū<sup>2</sup> lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum<sup>3</sup> in agrīs vāstandīs incendiis<sup>4</sup>que faciendis hostibus nocērētur<sup>4</sup> quantum in 10 labōre atque itinere<sup>5</sup> legiōnārii militēs efficere poterant.

*Caesar makes terms with the Trinobantes.*

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvītās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus<sup>6</sup> ad eum in continentem vēnerat — cuius pater in eā cīvītātē rēgnū obtinuerat<sup>15</sup> interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,<sup>7</sup> — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvītātē mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercitū Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

<sup>1</sup> semita, -ae, f., path.

<sup>2</sup> hoc metu: for metu huius rei.

<sup>3</sup> tantum, (only) so much.

<sup>4</sup> noceretur, harm was done; impersonal, as always in the passive.

<sup>5</sup> labore atque itinere: laborious marches; only his heavy-armed soldiers could safely engage in pillage, and they of course could not march far, nor do the work easily.

<sup>6</sup> fidem secutus, seeking for the protection.

<sup>7</sup> vitaverat: vito, avoid, has no connection with vita, life, or vivo, live.

*The other Britons submit. A stronghold of Cassivellaunus is taken.*

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum iniuriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab eīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassi-  
 5 vellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās<sup>1</sup> vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur  
 10 cum legiōnibus; locum repperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi eiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris  
 15 repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

*Failure of an attack upon the naval camp. Cassivellaunus asks for and is allowed terms of peace.*

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix,  
 20 Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque eīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō<sup>2</sup> adorian<sup>3</sup> atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs  
 25 incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentīs<sup>4</sup> acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitatū, lēgātōs

<sup>1</sup> *imeditas, tangled, dense.*

<sup>2</sup> *de improviso, suddenly.*

<sup>3</sup> *adorior, -iri, adortus, attack.*

<sup>4</sup> *detrimentum, -i, u., defeat, reverse.*

per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditionē ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs<sup>1</sup> Galliae mōtūs neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahi<sup>2</sup> posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs<sup>3</sup> vectigālis<sup>4</sup> populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōstituit; interdicīt<sup>5</sup> atque imperat<sup>6</sup> Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

*Caesar by making two voyages carries his army back to Gaul.*

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductīs,<sup>7</sup> quod et captī-10 vōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus<sup>8</sup> exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae milītēs 15 portāret dēsiderārētur<sup>9</sup> at ex eis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs expositīs militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū 20 Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, neces-sariō angustius<sup>10</sup> milītēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquil-

<sup>1</sup> repentinus, -a, -um, sudden.

<sup>2</sup> extraho, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, draw out, waste.

<sup>3</sup> in annos singulos, each year.

<sup>4</sup> vectigal, vectigalis, n. tribute; a partitive genitive depending on quid.

<sup>5</sup> interdico, forbid.

<sup>6</sup> interdicīt atque imperat: equivalent to one emphatic verb, i.e. expressly commands.

<sup>7</sup> deductis, launched.

<sup>8</sup> commeatus, -us, m., trip, voyage.

<sup>9</sup> desidero, -are, etc., lose.

<sup>10</sup> angustius: i.e. more closely than usual.

litāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

\* \* \* \* \*

## II. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX, CHIEF OF THE EBURONES.

He is successful by strategy against Titurius, but he fails against Cicero.

*The Gauls, after an unsuccessful attack upon the camp of Cotta and Titurius Sabinus, demand a conference.*

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum  
5 est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum  
est ab Ambiorige<sup>1</sup> et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad finēs  
rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent<sup>2</sup> frūmen-  
tumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trē-  
verī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt<sup>3</sup> subitōque  
10 oppressis lignātōribus<sup>4</sup> magnā manū ad castra oppu-  
gnanda vēērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent  
vāllumque ascendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs  
equitibus ēmissis equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent,  
dēsperātā rē<sup>5</sup> hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.  
15 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī<sup>6</sup> aliquī<sup>7</sup> ex nostrīs  
ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē quae dē rē com-  
mūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui  
posse spērārent.

<sup>1</sup> Ambiorige: the king of the Eburones, among whom Cotta and Sabinus had their winter quarters.

<sup>2</sup> praesto esse, *be at hand, meet.*

<sup>3</sup> concitaverunt: cf. the English *excite*.

<sup>4</sup> lignatoribus: cf. *lignum, wood, firewood.*

<sup>5</sup> desperata re, *hopeless of success.*

<sup>6</sup> uti, (*asking*) that, etc.

<sup>7</sup> aliqui: used as a substantive here for *aliquis*.

*Ambiorix, first acknowledging his obligations to Caesar, says that he was forced by his league with other Gallic tribes to make this attack. He pretends that there is to be an uprising of all the Gauls on this day and professes his willingness for the Romans to escape to Cicero or to Labienus.*

27. Mittitur ad eōs C. Arpineius eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locutus est: 5

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum eī cōfiterī debēre,<sup>1</sup> quod eius operā stīpendiō<sup>2</sup> liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere cōsuēssset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē 10 in servitūte et catēnis<sup>3</sup> tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdictiō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis, suaque esse eius modi imperia<sup>4</sup> ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō<sup>5</sup> quam ipse in multitudinem. 15

Civitātī porrō<sup>6</sup> hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrūm coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adēo sit imperitus rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne 20 cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sese . . . confiteri debere, he admitted that he owed. Notice that confiteri is not a complementary infinitive with debere, but is itself the verb of the principal clause.

<sup>2</sup> stipendium, -i, n., tribute.

<sup>3</sup> catena, -ae, f., chain.

<sup>4</sup> imperia, authority, lit., his commands.

<sup>5</sup> multitudo, people; i.e. those whose ruler he appeared to be.

<sup>6</sup> porro, furthermore.

<sup>7</sup> omnibus . . . hibernis, for attacking, etc.; dat. of the gerundive to express purpose, instead of the usual ad and acc.

hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alteri legiōnī subsidio venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā<sup>1</sup> commūni libertate cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

- 5 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte<sup>2</sup> satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem<sup>3</sup> offici<sup>4</sup> prō<sup>5</sup> beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō<sup>5</sup> hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam<sup>6</sup> Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore biduō.
- 10 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium,<sup>7</sup> velintne prius quam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis militēs aut ad Cicerōnem<sup>8</sup> aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē pollicēri et iure iurandō cōfirmāre tutum sē iter per suos
- 15 finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernis levētur,<sup>9</sup> et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

*The Romans hold a council. Cotta advocates defending the camp.*

28. Arpineius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea

<sup>1</sup> recuperanda, winning back.

<sup>2</sup> pro pietate, to show his loyalty to his country; on the score of patriotism. <sup>3</sup> habere rationem, take account of, pay heed to.

<sup>4</sup> officium, -i, n., duty.

<sup>5</sup> pro (beneficiis), in return for; but pro (hospitio) just following is like pro (pietate) above.

<sup>6</sup> conductam: participle of conduco, bring together, with mercede understood, i.e. hired.

<sup>7</sup> Ipsorum esse consilium, The question for them to determine was, etc., lit., the deliberation of themselves was.

<sup>8</sup> ad Cicerōnem: observe that Ambiorix does not promise safe arrival for the Romans at either of these camps. See just below: tutum iter per suos fines. He would protect them only in his own territory. Certainly the Romans might well hesitate if they believed that Cicero and Labienus also were to be attacked the same day.

<sup>9</sup> levo, -are, etc., lighten; relieve.

dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt magnaue inter eōs existit<sup>5</sup> contrōversia. L. Aurunculeius complūrēque tribūnī militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvis cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinēri posse mūnītis hibernis docēbant; rem<sup>10</sup> esse testimoniō, quod primū hostium impetum multis ultrō vulneribus illātis fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frumentariā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis hibernis et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius<sup>1</sup> aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summis rēbus<sup>15</sup> capere cōsiliū?

*Titurius is for retreat. "The Germans would soon join the Gauls. To retreat was safe; to stay meant famine."*

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō<sup>2</sup> factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctis Germānis convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem<sup>3</sup> sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque<sup>20</sup> aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā cum contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse.<sup>4</sup> Sēsē nōn

<sup>1</sup> quid esse levius: a question implying its own answer, subjunctive in the direct, but infinitive in the indirect discourse; 206.

<sup>2</sup> sero, too late.

<sup>3</sup> Caesarem: subject accusative of profectum (esse) depending upon se arbitrari.

<sup>4</sup> venturos esse: we should expect here venturos fuisse, as this represents the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in the direct discourse (venirent). 209. See A. & G. 589, note 3.



hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānis dolōri Ariovistī mortem et superiorēs nostrās victōriās; ardēre<sup>1</sup> Galliam tot contumēliis<sup>2</sup> acceptis sub populī Rōmānī imperiū redactam, 5 superiorē gloriā rei militāris extinctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuaderet sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi cōsiliū descendisse?<sup>3</sup> Suam sententiam in utramque partem<sup>4</sup> esse tūtam: si nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; 10 si Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentiret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam<sup>5</sup> salutē. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentirent cōsiliū quem habere<sup>6</sup> exitum?<sup>7</sup> in quō si nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne<sup>8</sup> famēs esset timenda.

*Cotta remains firm. Titurius holds him responsible for possible future disaster.*

15 30. Hāc in utramque partem<sup>9</sup> disputatiōne habitā cum ā Cottā primisque ordinibus<sup>10</sup> acriter resisterētur, “Vincite,” inquit, “sī ita vultis,” Sabīnus, et id clāriore vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; “neque is sum,” inquit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear: 20 hī sapient;<sup>11</sup> sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent;<sup>12</sup> quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē<sup>13</sup> cum

<sup>1</sup> ardere, was in a blaze, i.e. was infuriated.

<sup>2</sup> contumelia, -ae, f., insult, affront. <sup>3</sup> descendisse, had resorted.

<sup>4</sup> in utramque partem, in either event.

<sup>5</sup> esse in . . . positam, depended on.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 129, ftn. 1.

<sup>7</sup> exitum, outcome.

<sup>8</sup> longinqua obsidione, through a prolonged siege.

<sup>9</sup> in utramque partem, on either side.

<sup>10</sup> primis ordinibus: here used for the chief centurions.

<sup>11</sup> sapient: from sapio, -ere, cf. sapientia.

<sup>12</sup> abs (for ab) te rationem reposcent, they will call you to account, lit., will demand an accounting from you.

<sup>13</sup> perendino die, in two days' time.

proximīs hibernīs coniūcti commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant,<sup>1</sup> nōn rēiecti et relēgati<sup>2</sup> longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant.”

*A general appeal is made to both to agree. Cotta yields. Noisy preparations and a disorderly start.*

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs;<sup>3</sup> superat 10 sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs.

Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs<sup>4</sup> reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circūspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō<sup>5</sup> hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē<sup>6</sup> nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum<sup>7</sup> nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amicissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentis.

20

*The Romans are entrapped in a valley by the enemy.*

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis

<sup>1</sup> communem . . . casum sustineant, bear (meet) the common fortune of war.    <sup>2</sup> relegati, banished.    <sup>3</sup> dat manus, i.e. yields.

<sup>4</sup> consumitur vigiliis, is passed without sleep.

<sup>5</sup> instrumento, equipment.

<sup>6</sup> Omnia excogitantur quare, etc.: apparently we are to understand that omnia refers to all this that they were doing; going without sleep, etc., was calculated to make the Romans incapable of successful resistance in the camp or out of it.

<sup>7</sup> ut quibus esset persuasum, like men who were convinced that, etc.

insidiis bipertitō<sup>1</sup> in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō  
 ā milibus passuum circiter duobus, Rōmānōrum adventum  
 expectābant; et cum sē<sup>3</sup> maior pars agminis in magnam  
 convallem<sup>2</sup> dēmisisset,<sup>3</sup> ex utrāque parte eius vallis  
 5 subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs  
 prohibēre ascēnsū atque iniquissimō nostris locō proe-  
 lium committere coepērunt.

*Titurius is dismayed, Cotta self-possessed. The baggage is abandoned. Confusion of the Romans.*

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset,  
 trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec  
 10 tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidē-  
 rentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōsuēvit quī in  
 ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta,  
 quī cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob  
 eam causam profectionis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē  
 15 commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque  
 militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praes-  
 tābat.<sup>4</sup> Cum propter longitudinem agminis nōn facile  
 per sē omnia obīre<sup>5</sup> et quid quōque locō faciendum esset,  
 prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedimenta  
 20 relinquerent atque in orbem<sup>6</sup> cōsisterent. Quod cōn-  
 silium, etsi in eiusmodi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est,  
 tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostris militibus  
 spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit,  
 quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspēratiōne id factum  
 25 vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat,  
 ut vulgō militēs ā signis discēderent, quaeque quisque

<sup>1</sup> bipertito: an adverb from bi-, two, and pars. Cf. tripertito, p. 116, ft. 6.

<sup>2</sup> convallem, for vallem.

<sup>3</sup> se demisisset, had descended, had marched down.

<sup>4</sup> praestabat, performed.

<sup>5</sup> obīre, attend to.

<sup>6</sup> orbis, -is, n. circle. See Introd. 43, description of a hollow square.

eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clamōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

*Strategy of the barbarians.*

34. At barbaris cōsiliū<sup>1</sup> nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūtiārī iussērunt nē quis<sup>2</sup> ā locō discēderet; illōrum esse<sup>3</sup> praedam atque illis reservārī, 5 quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde<sup>4</sup> omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugnandī parēs. Nostri tametsi ā duce et ā fortunā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab 10 eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūtiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant; — levitāte armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse, — rūsus 15 sē ad signa recipientēs insequantur.

*The desperate valor of the Romans is unavailing. Cotta wounded.*

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaeipiam<sup>5</sup> cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vëlōcissimē refugiebant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ā latere apertō tēla 20 recipere. Rūsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressi reverti coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquebātur

<sup>1</sup> consilium, shrewdness, strategy.

<sup>2</sup> ne quis, that no one.

<sup>3</sup> illorum esse, etc. (telling them that): a statement placed between the command "ne quis discederet" and the exhortation following "existimarent." What then was the original form of each of these clauses in direct discourse? 204, 205.

<sup>4</sup> proinde, therefore.

<sup>5</sup> quaeipiam, any.

neque ā tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnfertī<sup>1</sup> vitāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflctātī, multis vulneribus acceptis resistēbant, et magnā parte diēi cōnsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pug-  
 5 nārētur, nihil quod ipsis<sup>2</sup> esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,<sup>3</sup> quī superiōre annō primum pilum dūxerat,<sup>4</sup> virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur<sup>5</sup> trāgulā<sup>6</sup> traicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō sub-  
 10 venit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs<sup>7</sup> fundā vulnerātur.

*Titurius is assured by Ambiorix of his personal safety. Cotta stays with his men.*

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgē suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpre-  
 15 tem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitudīne impetrārī posse quod ad militum salūtem pertineat; ipsi vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem  
 20 interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō<sup>8</sup> commūnicat,<sup>9</sup> sī videātur pugnā ut excēdant<sup>10</sup> et cum Ambiorīge unā colloquantur: spērāre sē<sup>11</sup> ab eō dē suā ac militum

<sup>1</sup> conferti, nominative plural, cf. p. 18, l. 16.

<sup>2</sup> ipsis: ablative governed by indignum.

<sup>3</sup> Equivalent to a genitive modifying femur; 109, a.

<sup>4</sup> primum pilum duxerat, had been chief centurion of the legion.

<sup>5</sup> femur, femoris, n., thigh.

<sup>6</sup> tragula, -ae, f., dart.

<sup>7</sup> in adversum os, squarely in the face.

<sup>8</sup> saucius, -a, -um, wounded.

<sup>9</sup> communicat, consults.

<sup>10</sup> si videatur ut: supply asking from communicat; (asking) whether he agrees (it seems best to him) to their leaving, etc.

<sup>11</sup> sperare se: se, subject accusative.

salūte impetrārī posse.<sup>1</sup> Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

*Sabinus is slain during a conference. Cotta dies fighting. The other Romans kill themselves.*

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, 5 iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō<sup>2</sup> ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulātīm circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum<sup>3</sup> tollunt, 10 impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse 15 prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus 20 gestis certiōrem faciunt.

*Ambiorix goes among the Aduatuci and Nervii.*

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim in Aduatucōs proficiscitur. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque concitātis posterō diē in Nervios pervenit, hortaturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs 25 prō eis quās accēperint iniūriis occāsiōnem dīmittant;

<sup>1</sup> *impetrari posse*: used impersonally.

<sup>2</sup> *consulto*: an adverb.

<sup>3</sup> *ululatum*: a word imitating the sound, like English "howl."

dēmōnstrat nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuādet.

*Large forces attack Cicerō's winter-quarters.*

39. Itaque cōnfestim quam maximās manūs possunt  
5 cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna<sup>1</sup> advolant,  
nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic  
quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī militēs,  
quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessis-  
sent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His  
10 circumventīs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostri  
celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscedunt.

*Cicerō's despatches fail to reach Caesar. Incessant labor and energy  
of Cicerō and his men.*

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne  
litterae, magnīs prōpositis<sup>2</sup> praemiis sī pertulissent;<sup>3</sup>  
obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex  
15 māteriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs  
admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae  
deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō  
diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant,  
fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē  
20 resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.  
Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur;  
nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quietis datur.  
Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt  
noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus

<sup>1</sup> ad Cicerōnis hiberna: the location of this camp is disputed. Probably it was near the Sambre river in the country south of Brussels.

<sup>2</sup> prōpositis: propono, proponere, proposui, propositum, offer.

<sup>3</sup> pertulissent, deliver (of a letter). The subject "they," meaning the messengers, must of course be supplied from litterae mittuntur.

mūrālium<sup>1</sup> pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur,<sup>2</sup> pinnae<sup>3</sup> lōricaeque<sup>4</sup> ex crātibus attextuntur.<sup>5</sup> Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine<sup>6</sup> esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus<sup>7</sup> sibi parcere scōgerētur.

*A conference with the Nervii. The fate of Sabinus is told. Cicero will not treat with them.*

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorū, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffidant; 15 sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō<sup>8</sup> ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere<sup>9</sup> cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē incolumibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad 20 haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiціōnem;

<sup>1</sup> muralium: from muralis, cf. murus. They were heavier than the ordinary pilum.

<sup>2</sup> contabulantur, are built up.

<sup>3</sup> pinna, -ae, f., parapet.

<sup>4</sup> lorica, -ae, f., breastwork.

<sup>5</sup> attexo, attexere, attexui, attextum, weave on.

<sup>6</sup> valetudine, health. An ablative of quality. 128.

<sup>7</sup> concursu ac vocibus, by the gathering of the soldiers and by their appeals.

<sup>8</sup> hoc esse in . . . animo, he felt this way toward, etc., ablative of quality; lit. was of this (such a) mind, etc.

<sup>9</sup> inveterascere, become established.



sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtore<sup>1</sup> ūtantur  
lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius  
iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

*The Roman camp is closely hemmed in by the Nervii with a wall  
and trench.*

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā  
5 pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annō-  
rum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cognōverant et quōsdam dē  
exercitū nacti captivōs ab his docēbantur; sed nullā  
ferrāmentōrum cōpiā<sup>2</sup> quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea,  
gladiis caespitēs<sup>3</sup> circumcidere, manibus sagulisque<sup>4</sup>  
10 terram exhaurire<sup>5</sup> cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē  
hominum multitudō cognōsci potuit; nam minus hōris  
tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem per-  
fēcērunt. Reliquisque diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem  
vālli, falcēs testudinēsque, quās iīdem captivi docue-  
15 rant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

*The weapons of the Gauls set fire to the huts and baggage of the  
Romans. The latter, sorely beset, resist bravely.*

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō  
ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs<sup>6</sup> fundis et fervefacta  
iacula in casās,<sup>7</sup> quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis<sup>8</sup> erant  
tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem compre-  
20 hendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum cas-  
trōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> adiutore, helper.

<sup>2</sup> nulla ferramentorum copia, owing to the lack of iron tools.

<sup>3</sup> caespites, -um, m., sods (of turf).      <sup>4</sup> sagulum, -i, n., cloak.

<sup>5</sup> exhaurire, lit. drain off, draw off; choose some translation more  
suited to the context.

<sup>6</sup> ferventes fusiles ex argilla glandes, hot balls of soft clay.

<sup>7</sup> casa, -ae, f., hut.

<sup>8</sup> stramentum, -i, n., straw.

<sup>9</sup> sic uti: i.e. quasi.

partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdīnēsq̄e agere et scālīs<sup>1</sup> vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitudine premerentur suaeque omnia impedimenta atque 5 omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen 10 hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant<sup>2</sup> recessumque<sup>3</sup> primīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis 15 centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus<sup>4</sup> coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est. 20

*Two rival centurions exhibit great valor. Each saves the other's life and neither can claim superior courage.*

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam primīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et I. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter<sup>5</sup> alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summis simultātibus<sup>6</sup> contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum 25

<sup>1</sup> scala, -ae, f., ladder.

<sup>2</sup> se . . . constipaverant, *had crowded in*; observe mood, and translate ut accordingly. <sup>3</sup> recessum, *a chance to withdraw*.

<sup>4</sup> lapis, lapidis, m., stone.

<sup>5</sup> uter, utra, utrum, interrog. adj., *which of two*.

<sup>6</sup> simultas, -atis, f., rivalry, jealousy.

ācerimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum probandae virtūtis tuae exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit.” Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, 5 quaeque hostium pars cōnfertissima est vīsa irrupit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur.

Mediocrī spatiō relīctō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem traicit; quō 10 percussō<sup>1</sup> exanimātōque hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī<sup>2</sup> et verūtum<sup>3</sup> in balteō<sup>4</sup> dēfigitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam<sup>5</sup> et gladium ēducere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque 15 hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō comminus rem gerit atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius 20 īnstāt, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit.<sup>6</sup> Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō<sup>7</sup> incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt.

Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque 25 versāvit<sup>8</sup> ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salūtique esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

<sup>1</sup> percutio, percutere, percussi, percussum. *strike through, pierce.*

<sup>2</sup> Dat. for gen., 109, a.

<sup>4</sup> balteus, -i, m., *belt.*

<sup>3</sup> verutum, -i, n., *javelin.*

<sup>5</sup> vagina, -ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

<sup>6</sup> in locum deiectus inferiore concidit, *as the ground sloped he lost his footing and fell.* How is it to be translated literally?

<sup>7</sup> Nom. pl. masculine, *both.*

<sup>8</sup> utrumque versavit, *attended first one and then the other.*

*Caesar learns of the peril of Cicero.*

45. Quantō<sup>1</sup> erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitatem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō<sup>1</sup> crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum s militum cum cruciātū necābatur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat.<sup>2</sup> Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās 10 ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus<sup>3</sup> ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

*He endeavors to gather three legions.*

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, 15 cuius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei 20 pūblicae commodō<sup>4</sup> possit facere, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat expectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

<sup>1</sup> Quanto . . . tanto: translate closely with the comparatives: *The more . . . the less.* 125.

<sup>2</sup> praestiterat, *had kept*; i.e. had remained faithful in spite of Caesar's hard plight.

<sup>3</sup> versatus, *moving about.*

<sup>4</sup> rei publicae commodo, *without detriment to the state's interests*; lit. in accordance with the advantage of the state. 127.

*Crassus is left with the baggage. Fabius joins Caesar. Labienus remains to face the rebellious Treveri.*

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs 5 cīvitatū, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīni et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad 10 eum Trēverōrum cōpiāe vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victoriā efferri<sup>1</sup> scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrū esset; rem 15 gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit, docet omnēs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia passuum longē ā suis castrīs cōnsēdisse.

*Cicero is informed of Caesar's nearness by a message flung into the camp.*

48. Caesar, cōsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne<sup>2</sup> trium legiōnum dēiectus<sup>2</sup> ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com- 20 mūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviorū finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam 25 dēferat.

<sup>1</sup> efferri, to be elated, jubilant over.

<sup>2</sup> opinione . . . dēiectus, disappointed in his expectation.

Hanc Graecis cōscriptam litteris<sup>1</sup> mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum<sup>2</sup> dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litteris scribit sē cum legiōnibus pro-<sup>5</sup>fectum celeriter affore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostris bīduō<sup>3</sup> animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur; dēmta<sup>4</sup> ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille per-<sup>10</sup>lētam<sup>5</sup> in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī<sup>6</sup> incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

*The Gauls turn from Cicero and face Caesar. Informed of this, he encamps and awaits their attack.*

49. Galli, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relin-<sup>15</sup>quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus, repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in<sup>20</sup> litteris hostēs ā sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā noctē Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā

<sup>1</sup> Graecis . . . litteris: perhaps not in the Greek language, but with Latin words written in Greek characters. Cf. the records of the Helvetii in Book I, ch. 29.

<sup>2</sup> amentum, -i, n., *'strap, thong* (of a spear). See 33.

<sup>3</sup> See 137.

<sup>4</sup> dempta: demo, demere, dempsi, demptum, *take away*.

<sup>5</sup> perlectam, *read through* (perlego, -ere).

<sup>6</sup> fumus, -i, m., *smoke*.

movet castra, et circiter milia passuum IV prōgressus  
trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspiciā-  
tur. Erat magnī periculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs iniquō locō  
dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cice-  
5 rōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritātē<sup>1</sup>  
existimābat; cōnsēdit et quam aequissimō potest locō  
castra commūnit, atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē,  
vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nūllis cum impedi-  
mentis, tamen angustis viarum<sup>2</sup> quam maximē potest  
10 contrahit, eō cōsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem  
hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs  
partēs dimissis explōrat<sup>3</sup> quō commodissimē itinere  
vallem trānsire possit.

*Skirmishes take place. The Roman cavalry purposely retreats. Fear  
is feigned in the camp.*

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam  
15 factis, utriūque sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod  
ampliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectā-  
bant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in  
suum locum ēlicere<sup>4</sup> posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris  
proeliō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explō-  
20 rātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque  
trānsīret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra  
accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit.  
Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere  
iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō  
25 mūniri portāsque obstrui atque in hīs administrandis  
rēbus quam maximē concursari et cum simulatiōne agi  
timōris iubet.

<sup>1</sup> remittendum de celeritate: i.e. *lessen his speed*.

<sup>2</sup> angustis viarum, by narrowing the streets (i.e. those of the camp which had a fixed width). Introd. 52, 55.

<sup>3</sup> explorat, he searches to find. <sup>4</sup> elicere, to lure over, draw over.

*The Gauls are drawn into a disadvantageous position. The Romans, suddenly opening the gates, attack and vanquish them.*

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque<sup>1</sup> circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis 5 Gallus seu quis Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem<sup>2</sup> portīs singulis ōrdinibus caespitum,<sup>3</sup> quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, 10 aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptione factā equitatūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret<sup>4</sup> nēmō, magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.<sup>5</sup> 15

*Caesar joins Cicero, praises the brave defence, says that the overthrow of Sabinus is avenged.*

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdesque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrimentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolūmibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur; 20 prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus

<sup>1</sup> praeco, -onis, m., *herald*.

<sup>2</sup> in speciem, *for show (only)*. The gateways were not in reality thoroughly blocked.

<sup>3</sup> caespes, -itis, cf. p. 138, fn. 3.

<sup>4</sup> resisteret: the meaning here is *stop*, merely, as the addition of pugnandi causa shows.

<sup>5</sup> exuo, -uere, exui, exutum, *deprive*.



iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtutem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōsōlātur et cōfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum  
10 docet, quod,<sup>1</sup> beneficiō deōrum immortalīum et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitiae neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

<sup>1</sup> quod . . . relinquatur: translate the ablative absolute *expiato incommodo* (which gives the reason for *neque . . . longior dolor relinquatur*) as if it read *incommodum expiatum sit et*, etc., *had been avenged (made amends for) and (so)*.

## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

### A COMPARISON OF THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND OF THE GERMANS

*Party strife among the Gauls.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum<sup>1</sup> perventum est, nōn aliēnum<sup>2</sup> esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus, et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōponere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdicio habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa<sup>3</sup> omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.

Idque eius rei causā antīquitus<sup>4</sup> institūtum vidētur, 10 nē quis ex plēbe cōtrā potentiōrem auxili egēret;<sup>5</sup> suos enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suos habet auctōritatem. Haec eadem ratio<sup>6</sup> est in summā tōtius Galliae; 15 namque omnēs civitatēs in partēs dīvisae sunt duās.

<sup>1</sup> ad hunc locum, to this point (in the narrative).

<sup>2</sup> alienum, out of place.

<sup>3</sup> summa (a noun), the final decision in all matters.

<sup>4</sup> antiquitus: an adverb from antiquus.

<sup>5</sup> egeo, -ere, need, want.

<sup>6</sup> ratio, condition, state of affairs.

*The Sequani obtain leadership in Gaul through the Germans. Caesar's arrival gives first place to the Aedui, and second to the Remi.*

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae,<sup>1</sup> Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs<sup>2</sup> pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs, atque omnī nōbilitate Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē  
10 trādūcerent obsidēsque ab eis prīncipum filiōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nīhil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent.

15/ Quā necessitate adductus Diviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus imperfectā rē<sup>3</sup> redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs<sup>1</sup> restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod hī quī sē ad eōrum  
20 amicitiam aggregāverant<sup>4</sup> meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmiserant.

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant ; quōs quod adae-  
25 quāre<sup>5</sup> apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur,<sup>6</sup> iī quī

<sup>1</sup> clientelae, *dependencies*, referring to the states subject to them.

<sup>2</sup> iactura, ae, f. (iacio), *sacrifice*.

<sup>3</sup> imperfecta re: abl. abs., *without accomplishing his purpose*.

<sup>4</sup> aggrego (cf. grex), *join*.

<sup>5</sup> adaequare . . . gratia, *to stand equally high in Caesar's favor*; lit., *to equal (the Aedui) in favor with Caesar*.

<sup>6</sup> 160; the subject is quos . . . adaequare.

propter veterēs inimicitias nullō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.<sup>1</sup> Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur ; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

*Condition of the common people in Gaul. The power of the Druids.*

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs<sup>2</sup> paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōsiliō. Plērīque, cum aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus<sup>3</sup> in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis<sup>3</sup> in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.<sup>4</sup>

15

Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant,<sup>5</sup> religiōnēs interpretantur;<sup>6</sup> ad eōs magnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplinae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt, et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditātē,<sup>7</sup> dē fīnibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,<sup>8</sup> sac-

<sup>1</sup> se . . . dicabant, offered themselves as dependents ; lit., in dependency.

<sup>2</sup> plebes, the common people ; a collective noun in the singular, whence the singular verb, habetur.

<sup>3</sup> quibus . . . dominis : 110.

<sup>4</sup> equitum, knights.

<sup>5</sup> procurant (from cura), take care of.

<sup>6</sup> religiōnes interpretantur, explain religious matters, such as the various rites and ceremonies in particular cases, the interpretation of omens, and the like.

<sup>7</sup> hereditas, -tatis, f., inheritance.

<sup>8</sup> stetit, abide by ; lit., stand by.

rificiis interdiciunt.<sup>1</sup> Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima.

Quibus<sup>2</sup> est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac sceleratorum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum  
5 sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritatem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī  
10 quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; nōnnumquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc  
15 omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque pārent.

Disciplīna<sup>3</sup> in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta ēsse exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō<sup>4</sup> discendī causā  
20 proficīscuntur.

*The privileges of the Druids; their training and beliefs.*

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, militiae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitatem. Tantīs excitātī prae-  
miīs et suā sponte multī in disciplinam<sup>5</sup> conveniunt et  
25 ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

<sup>1</sup> sacrificiis interdiciunt, exclude him from sacrifices; i.e. excommunicate him. The full form is ei (dat.) sacrificiis (abl. of separation) interdiciunt.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote 1.

<sup>3</sup> Disciplīna, the system (of training), of the Druids.

<sup>4</sup> illo: adverb (cf. eo), to that place, thither, i.e., to Britain.

<sup>5</sup> in disciplinam, for a course of training; cf. footnote 3 above.



CAESAR BEFORE THE DRUIDS.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere<sup>1</sup> dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī vicēnōs<sup>2</sup> in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, publicīs privātisque ratiōnibus,<sup>3</sup> Graecis litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs <sup>causis</sup> insti-  
tuisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litterīs cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre,<sup>4</sup> quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum diligētiā in perdiscendō ac memoriā re-  
mittant.

In primīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre<sup>5</sup> animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus<sup>6</sup> atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi<sup>7</sup> ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

*The Knights.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus<sup>8</sup> atque aliquod bellum incīdit, quod ante Caesaris adventum ferē quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent, omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs<sup>8</sup> clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> ediscere, learn by heart. Note the force of *e-* and *per-*, in l. 9.

<sup>2</sup> vicenos: the distributive corresponding to viginti.

<sup>3</sup> rationibus, accounts; cf. Book I, chap. 29 (p. 22, l. 9).

<sup>4</sup> studere, give attention to, train.

<sup>5</sup> interire: note the infin., and be careful in translating it; persuade is equivalent to teach or prove.

<sup>6</sup> sideribus, the heavenly bodies; the word is more comprehensive than stella.

<sup>7</sup> mundi, the universe.

<sup>8</sup> ambactus, -i, m., retainer, dependent.

*Human sacrifices among the Gauls.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus,<sup>1</sup> atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis<sup>2</sup> quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant<sup>3</sup> aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque<sup>4</sup> ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddatur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen<sup>5</sup> placārī arbitrantur, publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia.

Alii immāni magnitudine simulācra<sup>6</sup> habent, quōrum contexta viminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēns circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō<sup>7</sup> aut lātrociniō<sup>8</sup> aut aliquā noxiā<sup>9</sup> sint comprehēnsi, grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, 15 etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

*The gods of the Gauls.*

17. Deum<sup>10</sup> maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs<sup>11</sup> pecūniae mercātūrāsque<sup>12</sup> habēre vim maxi- 20

<sup>1</sup> religionibus, to religious affairs.

<sup>2</sup> morbus, -i, m., disease.

<sup>3</sup> immolo, -are, sacrifice, immolate.

<sup>4</sup> administer, -tri, m., assistant, helper.

<sup>5</sup> numen, -inis (nuo, nod), n., power.

<sup>6</sup> simulacrum, -i (cf. similis), n., likeness, image. These were great cages of wickerwork (contexta viminibus), made in the shape of the human figure.

<sup>7</sup> furtum, -i, n., theft.

<sup>8</sup> latrocinium, -i, n., brigandage.

<sup>9</sup> noxia, -ae (cf. noceo), f., crime.

<sup>10</sup> deum: another form for deorum.

<sup>11</sup> quaestus, -us, m., a noun derived from quaero.

<sup>12</sup> mercatura, -ae f., cf. mercator.



mam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentes habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbos dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Mārtē bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plerumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in unum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstructos tumulos locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta<sup>1</sup> apud sē occultāre aut posita<sup>2</sup> tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

*The Gallic method of reckoning time. Relations of father and son.*

18. Galli sē omnēs ā Dīte<sup>3</sup> patre prōgnātōs prae-  
dicant idque ā druidibus prōditum<sup>4</sup> dīcunt. Ob eam  
causam<sup>5</sup> spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed  
noctium finiunt; diēs natales et mēnsium et annōrum  
initia sic observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur.<sup>6</sup>

In reliquīs vītae institutis hōc ferē ā reliquīs diffe-  
runt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut munus  
militiae sustinere possint, palam ad sē adire nōn pati-  
untur filiumque puerili aetate in publicō in cōspectū  
patris assistere<sup>7</sup> turpe dūcunt.

<sup>1</sup> capta: used as a substantive, *things captured, booty*; 152, a.

<sup>2</sup> posita: used as a substantive, *things set aside*, as offerings to the gods.

<sup>3</sup> Dis, Ditis, m., *Dis*, god of the underworld, also called Pluto.

<sup>4</sup> prōditum: sc. *esse*.

<sup>5</sup> ob eam causam: i.e. because they believe themselves sprung from the god of darkness.

<sup>6</sup> ut noctem diēs subsequatur: i.e. the night comes before the day; for example, the new year begins on New Year's eve, etc.

<sup>7</sup> assistere, to appear.

*The relations of husband and wife. Funerals.*

19. Virī quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis<sup>1</sup> nōmine accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonīs, aestimatiōne factā, cum dōtibus communicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque<sup>2</sup> servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus 5 superiorum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitāe necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illūstriore locō nātus decēssit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum<sup>3</sup> 10 quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,<sup>4</sup> ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās<sup>5</sup> interficiunt.

Fūnera<sup>6</sup> sunt prō cultū<sup>7</sup> Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque, quae vivīs cordī<sup>8</sup> fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc<sup>15</sup> memoriā<sup>9</sup> servī et clientēs quōs ab eis<sup>10</sup> dilēctos esse cōstābat, iūstis fūneribus cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

*Their regulation of gossip about public affairs.*

20. Quae civitātēs commodius<sup>11</sup> suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sāctum,<sup>12</sup> sī

<sup>1</sup> dos, dotis, f., dowry. Pecunias includes not only money, but also property of all kinds. <sup>2</sup> fructus, -us, m., income; lit., fruit.

<sup>3</sup> in servilem modum: i.e. with torture, since slaves were always examined in that way.

<sup>4</sup> Sc. aliquid; freely, if they are found guilty.

<sup>5</sup> excruciatas: sc. eas, referring to uxōribus.

<sup>6</sup> funus, -eris, n., funeral.

<sup>7</sup> pro cultu, considering the (degree of) civilization.

<sup>8</sup> cordi, dear; lit., for a heart; 113.

<sup>9</sup> supra hanc memoriā: before our time; i.e. before the time covered by the memory of men still living.

<sup>10</sup> eis: refers to vivis above.

<sup>11</sup> commodius: almost with the force of a superlative, to best advantage.

<sup>12</sup> sanctum (part. of sancio), enacted.

quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat neve<sup>1</sup> cum quō<sup>2</sup> aliō communicet, quod saepe hominēs<sup>3</sup> temerariōs atque imperitōs falsīs rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli<sup>5</sup> et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium cāpere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt<sup>4</sup> occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū<sup>5</sup> iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdūnt. Dē rē pūblicā<sup>6</sup> nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

*The contrasting customs of the Germans; their gods.*

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt.  
 10 Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvinīs praesint,  
 neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs  
 dūcunt, quōs cernunt<sup>7</sup> et quōrum apertē opibus iuvā-  
 tur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā  
 quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque  
 15 in studiīs rēi militāris cōsistit; a parvis<sup>8</sup> labōrī ac  
 dūritiae student.

*Their assignment of land, and the reasons for their system.*

22. Agrīcultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum  
 victūs<sup>9</sup> in lacte, cāseō,<sup>10</sup> carne<sup>11</sup> cōsistit. Neque quis-  
 quam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed  
 20 magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus,

<sup>1</sup> neve: the negative corresponding to uti, and that they should not.

<sup>2</sup> cum quo alio, with any one else, a meaning usual with quo after si, nisi, ne, and num.

<sup>3</sup> homines: subject of terreri, depending on the impers. cognitum est. It may be translated personally, men . . . have been known to be terrified.

<sup>4</sup> quae visa sunt: sc. occultanda, what (it) has seemed best (to conceal).

<sup>5</sup> ex usu, advantageous; lit., in accordance with advantage, 142, 4, d.

<sup>6</sup> re publica, public affairs.

<sup>7</sup> cerno, -ere, see.

<sup>8</sup> a parvis, from childhood. Parvis is used as a noun; lit., from small (children).

<sup>9</sup> victus, -us, m., a noun from vivo.

<sup>10</sup> caseum, -i, n., cheese.

<sup>11</sup> carne: see p. 119, ftn. 10.

cognātiōnibus hominum,<sup>1</sup> quique ūnā coiērent,<sup>2</sup> quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō<sup>3</sup> trānsire cōgunt.

Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuetūdine capti studium bellī gerendi agricultūrā<sup>4</sup> 5 commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possēssiōnibus expellant; nē accuratius<sup>5</sup> ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitate<sup>6</sup> 10 plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

*The surroundings of their communities. Their magistrates and chiefs.  
Their hospitality.*

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus solitūdines habere. Hōc propriū<sup>7</sup> virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audere cōsistere; simul hōc<sup>8</sup> sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī ei bellō praesint, 20 ut<sup>9</sup> vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> gentibus, cognationibus hominum, clans and families. Asyndeton; see 227. <sup>2</sup> quique una coierunt: i.e. their clients and dependents.

<sup>3</sup> alio: adverb (cf. *eo and illo*), to another place.

<sup>4</sup> agricultura: 119; we say "exchange for."

<sup>5</sup> accuratius: comparative of an adverb connected with *cūra*.

<sup>6</sup> animi aequitate, contentment: cf. Eng. equanimity.

<sup>7</sup> proprium, characteristic, i.e. a sign of. Cf. Book IV, chap. 3 (p. 92, lines 24 ff). <sup>8</sup> hoc: ablative of cause.

<sup>9</sup> ut . . . habeant, having, or who shall have; lit., to have.

<sup>10</sup> minuunt: cf. *minus*.

Lātrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe<sup>1</sup> minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis<sup>2</sup> ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint profiteantur,<sup>3</sup> cōsurgunt ii quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūti nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum<sup>4</sup> postea fidēs dērogātur.<sup>5</sup>

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent, sāctōs habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque communīcātur.

*Former superiority of the Gauls to the Germans; how it was lost.*

15 **24.** Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca circum Hercyniam silvam,<sup>6</sup> quam Eratostheni<sup>7</sup> et 20 quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse vidēō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.

<sup>1</sup> dēsidia, -ae, f., idleness, sloth.

<sup>2</sup> quis, any one, a meaning usually found only after si, nisi, ne, and num; cf. p. 156, footnote 2.

<sup>3</sup> profiteantur, should volunteer, standing for the imperative or jussive subjunctive of the dir. disc. For the Sequence of Tenses, see 173.

<sup>4</sup> omnium rerum, in all matters; 99.

<sup>5</sup> derogo, -are, take away, deny.

<sup>6</sup> Hercynian silvam: a large forest of southern Germany.

<sup>7</sup> Eratostheni: a Greek philosopher and geographer, born in 276 B.C.

Nunc, quoniam in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā<sup>1</sup> ante Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largitur,<sup>2</sup> paulatim assuefacti<sup>3</sup> superārī multisque<sup>5</sup> victi<sup>3</sup> proeliis nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis<sup>4</sup> virtūte comparant.

*The Hercynian forest and its wonderful animals. The vast size of the forest.*

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter expeditō<sup>5</sup> patet; nō enim aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvē-10 runt.<sup>6</sup> Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque fluminis Dānuvī regiōne<sup>7</sup> pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus<sup>8</sup> diversis ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque<sup>15</sup> quisquam est huius Germāniae<sup>9</sup> quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferarū<sup>10</sup> nāscī cōstat, quae reliquis in locis

<sup>1</sup> qua, as; lit., in which.

<sup>2</sup> largitur, give, agreeing in number with one of the two subjects. See 85, note.

<sup>3</sup> assuefacti . . . victi: participles agreeing with ipsi, which refers to the Gauls.

<sup>4</sup> illis: i.e. the Germans.

<sup>5</sup> expedito, for a light traveller; lit., for one unincumbered. Dative of Reference; 109.

<sup>6</sup> neque . . . noverunt: i.e. they do not measure journeys by miles, but by the time required to make them.

<sup>7</sup> recta . . . regione, parallel with the Danube River; lit., in the direct line of.

<sup>8</sup> sinistrorsus: adverb from sinister, left, and vorsus = versus.

<sup>9</sup> huius Germaniae, this (part of) Germany, i.e. the western part.

<sup>10</sup> ferarum (sc. bestiarum), wild beasts. See 145, b.

vīsa nōn sint, ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

*The reindeer.*

26. Est bōs cervī<sup>1</sup> figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius<sup>2</sup> magisque dērēctum hīs, quae nobīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae<sup>3</sup> rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

*The elk.*

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs<sup>4</sup> figūra et varietās<sup>5</sup> pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt<sup>6</sup> mutilaeque<sup>7</sup> sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs<sup>8</sup> articulisque<sup>8</sup> habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō afflictāe cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre<sup>9</sup> possunt. Hīs<sup>10</sup> sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; <sup>11</sup> ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiīs cum est animadversum ā vērātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ā rādīcibus

<sup>1</sup> cervus, -i, m., stag.

<sup>2</sup> excelsius, quite long; lit., quite high. For the translation of the comparative, see 150.

<sup>3</sup> palma, -ae, f., palm of the hand, with the fingers outspread.

<sup>4</sup> capra, -ae, f., she-goat.

<sup>5</sup> varietas: here means mottled, mottled appearance.

<sup>6</sup> paulo antecēdunt: i.e. they are a little larger than the animal just described, the bos cervi figura, or reindeer.

<sup>7</sup> mutilae, broken (cf. Eng. mutilated), referring to the stumpy appearance of the horns.

<sup>8</sup> nodus, -i, m., node, the swelling about the joints of an animal; articulus, -i, m., joint.

<sup>9</sup> sublevo, -are, help. Sese is governed both by erigere and by sublevare.

<sup>10</sup> his: 110.

<sup>11</sup> cubile, -is, n., bed, sleeping place.

subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs cārum stantium<sup>1</sup> relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuetūdine reclināverunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

*The wild bull.*

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūri appellantur. 5 Hi sunt magnitudīne paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī.<sup>2</sup> Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vėlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferac quam cōspexerunt parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveīs<sup>3</sup> captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant<sup>4</sup> adulēscētēs atque hōc genere 10 vēnatiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis in publicū cornibus quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri<sup>5</sup> nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrō-15 rum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ā labris<sup>6</sup> argentō circumclūdunt<sup>7</sup> atque in amplissimis epulis<sup>8</sup> prō pōculis<sup>9</sup> ūtuntur.

<sup>1</sup> ut summa . . . relinquatur, so that they look very much as if they were standing firmly; lit., so that the greatest appearance of those (i.e. trees) standing (firmly) is left.

<sup>2</sup> 128; tauri takes the place of a limiting adjective.

<sup>3</sup> fovea, -ae, f., pit, pitfall.

<sup>4</sup> duro, -are, verb from durus.

<sup>5</sup> mansuefacio, -facere, make tame, tame.

<sup>6</sup> a labris, at the lips or edges; a is used as in a dextra, etc. (See 142, 1, b.)

<sup>7</sup> circumclūdunt: a compound of claudio.

<sup>8</sup> epulae, -arum, f. pl., banquet.

<sup>9</sup> poculum, -i, n., drinking-cup.



## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VII

### THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

*In the year 52 B. C. the Gauls made a last effort to recover their independence. Under the lead of Vercingetorix, they burned their towns and stores of provisions, and laid waste their country in the hope of starving out the Romans. Caesar was reduced to great straits, but after a vain attempt on the fortress of Gergovia he finally defeated Vercingetorix in a great cavalry battle and forced him to take refuge in the fortified town of Alesia.*

*Caesar lays siege to the town.*

68. Fugātō omni equitātū, Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut<sup>1</sup> prō castris collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūci et sē  
5 subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem dēductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūsus hostēs quantum<sup>2</sup> diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū  
10 perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvallāre<sup>3</sup> instituit.

*The situation of Alesia. Extent of Caesar's siege works.*

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidē-

<sup>1</sup> ut, just as.

<sup>2</sup> quantum : = tantum spati, quantum, as far as.

<sup>3</sup> circumvallare : a verb formed from circum and vallum.

rētur; cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant.<sup>1</sup> Ante oppidum plānitīēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitudinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitudinis fastigiō<sup>2</sup> oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam<sup>3</sup> sex in altitudinem pedum praedūxerant.

Eius mūnitiōnis, quae ā Rōmānīs instituēbātur, circuitus ūndecim mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra oppor-10 tūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitori-15 bus<sup>4</sup> ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

*The Romans, aided by the Germans, win a cavalry battle.*

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plā-15 nitiē quam intermissam collibus<sup>5</sup> tria mīlia passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Prae-20 sidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs<sup>6</sup> animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portīs relictīs<sup>7</sup> coartantur.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> subluo, -ere, wash.

<sup>2</sup> fastigium, fastigi, n., ridge; pari altitudinis fastigio, a ridge of equal height, for parīs altitudinis fastigio.

<sup>3</sup> maceria, -ae, f., wall.

<sup>4</sup> excubitor, -toris, m., watchman, sentinel.

<sup>5</sup> intermissum collibus, between the hills; lit., left by the hills, which surrounded the town except for a plain three miles wide. See chap. 69 (p. 163, l. 2).

<sup>6</sup> 109, a.

<sup>7</sup> angustioribus portīs relictis, since the gates left in the wall were rather narrow; 130.

<sup>8</sup> coarto, -are, crowd together.



Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūrōs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōnnūllī, relictīs equīs, fossam trānsīre et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōstituerat, prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant, perturbantur<sup>5</sup> Gallī; venīrī<sup>1</sup> ad sē cōfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōnnūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt. 10

*Vercingetorix sends his cavalry for help. He prepares for a siege.*

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ā Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ā sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs<sup>15</sup> merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum<sup>2</sup> dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta<sup>3</sup> LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra<sup>4</sup> dēmōnstrat. 20

Ratiōne initā sē exigue<sup>5</sup> diērum xxx habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī<sup>6</sup> posse parcendō. His datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> venīrī: used impersonally (160) and with future force; freely, *that an attack would be made*.

<sup>2</sup> in cruciātum, *for torture*; cf. in disciplinam, p. 150, fn. 5.

<sup>3</sup> delecta: agrees with milia, but may be translated as if it were delectorum, agreeing with hominum.

<sup>4</sup> interitura: sc. esse; the subject is milia.

<sup>5</sup> exigue (adv. from exiguus), *barely*.

<sup>6</sup> tolerari, *be held out*; with posse, *it would be possible to hold out*.

<sup>7</sup> qua . . . intermissum: i.e. where there was a gap in our works, since they were not yet finished.

secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet, capitis<sup>1</sup> poenam eis qui nōn pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsa, viritim<sup>2</sup> distribuit, frūmentum 5 parcē et paulātīm mētiri instituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recipit. His rationibus<sup>3</sup> auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre.

*Caesar constructs a double line of works, in front and in the rear of his army.*

72. Quibus rēbus coghitīs ex perfugīs et capti-  
10 vīs, Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum<sup>4</sup> tantundem patēret, quantum summa labra<sup>5</sup> distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset  
15 necessariō spatium complexus nec facile tōtū opus coronā<sup>6</sup> mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs hostium multitūdō advolāret aut interdiū<sup>7</sup> tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere posset.

20 Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās eādē altitudīne perdūxit; quārum interiōrem<sup>8</sup> campēstribus ac dēmissis locis aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum

<sup>1</sup> capitis, head, life; with poenam = capital punishment, punishment by death (loss of life).

<sup>2</sup> viritim (adv. from vir), man by man, to each man.

<sup>3</sup> his rationibus, by these methods, in this way.

<sup>4</sup> solum, bottom.

<sup>5</sup> labra: cf. p. 161, fn. 6.

<sup>6</sup> corona, a continuous line; lit., a crown or ring.

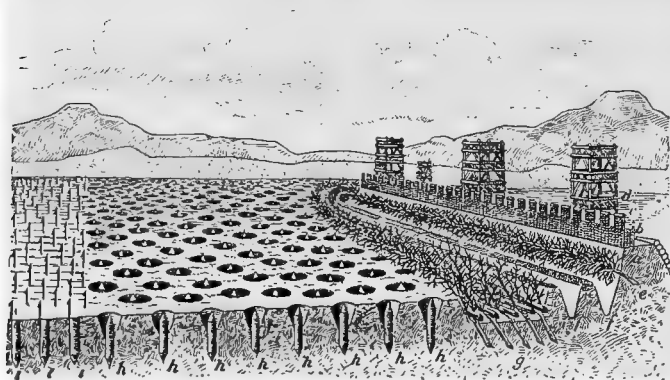
<sup>7</sup> interdiu: contrasted with noctu; cf. Book I, chap. 8 (p. 7, l. 21).

<sup>8</sup> interiorem: sc. fossam.

extrūxit. Huic lōricam<sup>1</sup> pinnāsque<sup>2</sup> adiēcit grandibus cervīs<sup>3</sup> ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum<sup>4</sup> atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

*Caesar strengthens his fortifications on the side towards Alesia.*

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī<sup>5</sup> et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS AT ALESIA.

- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| a. Vallum (rampart).    | f. Fossae (ditches). |
| b. Lorica (breastwork). | g. Cippi (stakes).   |
| c. Pinnae (parapet).    | h. Lilia ("lilies"). |
| d. Turres (towers).     | i. Stimuli (goats).  |
| e. Cervi ("stags").     |                      |

cōpiis, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōnumquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur.

<sup>1</sup> lorica: see p. 137, ftn. 4.

<sup>2</sup> pinnae: see p. 137, ftn. 3.

<sup>3</sup> cervis, branches of trees; lit., stags, from their resemblance to the horns of that animal.

<sup>4</sup> ad commissuras pluteorum, at the junction of the fortifications (including the lorica and the pinnae) and the rampart (mound).

Quārē ad haec rūsus operā addendum<sup>1</sup> Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs<sup>2</sup> ac praeacūtīs<sup>3</sup> cacūminibus<sup>4</sup> perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmissi et ab infimō revincti, nē revelli possent, ā rāmīs ēminēbant.<sup>4</sup>

Quīnī erant ordinēs, coniūcti inter sē atque complicati; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimis vallis induēbant.<sup>5</sup> Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs obliquis ordinibus in quīncūncem<sup>6</sup> dispositis scrobēs<sup>7</sup> in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigiō.<sup>8</sup> Hūc teretēs<sup>9</sup> stīpitēs feminis<sup>10</sup> crassitudine, ā summō praeacūtī et praeūsti, dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitis quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; sinuul cōfirmandi et stabiliendī causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur;<sup>11</sup> reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultis<sup>12</sup> integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ordinēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex simili-

<sup>1</sup> Sc. esse; 160.

<sup>2</sup> delibratis: part. of a verb, delibro, from *de* and *liber*, bark (of a tree).

<sup>3</sup> cacumen, -inis, n., top.

<sup>4</sup> a ramis eminebant, projected with the branches (only), the rest being underground.

<sup>5</sup> se . . . induebat, impaled himself on.

<sup>6</sup> in quincuncem: like the five-spot on dice,  $\cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot$ . Obliquis . . . dispositis may be translated, which were arranged in diagonal parallel lines.

<sup>7</sup> scrobis, scrobis, m. and f., pit.

<sup>8</sup> angustiore . . . fastigio; i.e. narrower at the top than at the bottom, lit., with a slope (growing) narrower towards the bottom.

<sup>9</sup> teres, -etis, smooth.

<sup>10</sup> feminis: another form of the genitive of femur; see p. 134, fn. 5.

<sup>11</sup> singuli . . . exculcabantur, they were packed in with earth to the depth of a foot each; more lit., one foot (of) each at the bottom was trodden down with earth,

<sup>12</sup> virgultum, -i, n., brushwood.

tūdine flōris lilium<sup>1</sup> appellābant. Ante haec tāleae<sup>2</sup> pedem longae, ferreīs hāmīs<sup>3</sup> infixīs, tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs, omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs<sup>4</sup> nōminābant.

*He strengthens them also on the outside.*

74. His rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit<sup>5</sup> aequissimās prō<sup>6</sup> locī nātūrā, quattuordecim milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūitiōnēs, diversās<sup>6</sup> ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs<sup>10</sup> ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum<sup>7</sup> iubet.

*The Gauls collect reñforcements.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī, conciliō principum indictō, nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed<sup>15</sup> certum numerum cuique cīvitati imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere<sup>8</sup> suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent.

Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovicibus, milia xxxv;<sup>20</sup> parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūr-cīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse

<sup>1</sup> lilium, lili, n., *lily*.

<sup>2</sup> taleae: see p. 118, ft. 4; here the reference is to *bars* of wood.

<sup>3</sup> hamus, -i, m., *hook*.

<sup>4</sup> stimulus, -i, m., *goad*.

<sup>5</sup> pro for the meaning see p. 155, ft. 7.

<sup>6</sup> diversas, in the opposite direction.

<sup>7</sup> habere convectum, to get together and keep; lit., to have, brought together. 218.

<sup>8</sup> discernere, to distinguish from the others.



cōsuērunt ; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna milia ; Bellovacīs x ; totidem Lemovicibus ; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs ; sēna Andibus, Ambianīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitobrogibus ; v milia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs ; totidem Atrebatibus ; III Vellocassīs ; Aulercīs Eburovicibus III ; Rauracīs et Boiīs bīna ; XXX milia ūniversīs cīvitatibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae ap-  
 10 pellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō <sup>1</sup> cum Rōmānīs bellum esse gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtem-  
 15 perātūrōs ; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō <sup>2</sup> eius hospitio duo milia ūnā <sup>3</sup> mīsērunt.

*The Gauls organize, and set out for Alesia, full of confidence.*

76. Huius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar ; quibus ille prō meritīs cīvitatē eius im-  
 20 mūnem <sup>4</sup> esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī <sup>5</sup> Morinōs attribuerat. Tamen tanta ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae <sup>6</sup> et pristināe bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amicitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et  
 25 opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum milibus octō et peditum circiter CCL, haec <sup>7</sup> in Aeduō-

<sup>1</sup> arbitrio : sc. suo, *independently* ; lit., *under their own direction*.

<sup>2</sup> pro, *out of consideration for*.

<sup>4</sup> immunem, *free from taxes*.

<sup>3</sup> una, adv., *with him*.

<sup>5</sup> ipsi : i.e. to Commius.

<sup>6</sup> libertatis vindicandae : gen. depending on consensio. We should say, "in declaring their independence."

<sup>7</sup> haec, *these (troops)*, referring strictly to milia.

rum finibus recēnsēbantur,<sup>1</sup> numerusque inibātur,<sup>2</sup> praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgīs, summa imperi trāditur. Hīs dēlecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō 5 bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pugnārētur, foris<sup>3</sup> tantae 10 cōpiaae equitatūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

*The Gauls in Alesia despair. Critognotus advises resistance to the bitter end.*

77. At iī qui Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsumptō omnī frūmentō, insciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coactō dē exitū suārum fortunārum cōsultābant. Ac 15 variis dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent,<sup>4</sup> ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōratiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam<sup>5</sup> crudelitātem.

Hic, summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus 20 auctoritātis, “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sententia dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> recensebantur, were reviewed.

<sup>2</sup> numerus inibatur, they were numbered.

<sup>3</sup> foris, and without the town. For the asyndeton, see 227.

<sup>4</sup> dum vires suppeterent, while they still had strength; lit., while strength held out. The subj. is due to the ind. disc. implied in censebat.

<sup>5</sup> nefarius, -a, -um (cf. nefas), abominable.

<sup>6</sup> cum his . . . res sit, let me address myself to those; lit., let my business be with those.

quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsensū pristinae residere<sup>1</sup> virtūtis memoria videtur. Animī est ista<sup>2</sup> mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, 5 facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem — tantum apud mē dignitās potest<sup>3</sup> — sī nūllam praeterquam vitāe nostrae iactūrā<sup>4</sup> fieri vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium 10 concitāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis cōsanguineisque nostris animī<sup>5</sup> fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum pericūlum neglēx- 15 ērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritatē vestrā aut animī imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

An quod ad diem, nōn vērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in 20 illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne<sup>6</sup> causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaepitō,<sup>7</sup> his ūtiminī testibus<sup>8</sup> appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei<sup>9</sup> timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

<sup>1</sup> *resideo, -ere, remain, be left.*

<sup>2</sup> *ista, that (characteristic) of yours; ista is for istud, attracted to the gender of the predicate noun mollitia. Ista is the pronoun of the second person, that of yours, with a touch of contempt.*

<sup>3</sup> *tantum . . . potest, so much influence (with me) has their position; i.e. that of those who urge that course.* <sup>4</sup> *iactura: see p. 148, fn. 2.*

<sup>5</sup> *animī: partitive gen. with quid, what do you think will be the feeling?*

<sup>6</sup> *animine: animi and -ne, the interr. particle. Animi causa means for amusement, for fun; lit., for the sake of (gratifying) their feelings.*

<sup>7</sup> *praesaepio, -ire, block.*

<sup>8</sup> *his . . . testibus: i.e. the Romans.*

<sup>9</sup> *cuius rei timore, since on account of their fear of this thing, i.e. the coming of the Gauls.*

Quid ergo mei cōsili est? Facere quod nostri maiōres nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fecerunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac simili<sup>1</sup> inopiā subacti eōrum corporibus,<sup>2</sup> quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāverunt neque sē hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum<sup>3</sup> nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui<sup>4</sup> et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicārem. Nam quid illi<sup>5</sup> simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulatā Galliā Cimbri magnāque illātā calamitatē finibus quidem nostris aliquandō<sup>6</sup> excesserunt atque aliās terrās petiverunt; iura, lēgēs, agrōs, libertatem nobis reliquerunt. Rōmāni vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti, quōs<sup>7</sup> famā nōbiles potentēque bellō cognōverunt, hōrum in agris civitatibusque cōsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim unquam aliā condiciōne bella gesserunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquis natiōibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redacta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, securibus<sup>8</sup> subiecta, perpetuā premitur servitute." 20/

*The Gauls force the non-combatants to leave the town. The Romans refuse to receive them.*

78. Sententiis dictis, cōstituunt ut ii quī valetudine<sup>9</sup> aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant,

<sup>1</sup> simili: i.e. similar to what the people of Alesia were now suffering.

<sup>2</sup> corporibus: i.e. by (eating) their bodies.

<sup>3</sup> cuius rei exemplum, a precedent for such conduct; more lit., for this thing.

<sup>4</sup> institui: sc. id, = exemplum, for it to be established.

<sup>5</sup> quid illi simile bello fuit, what resemblance had that war (with the Cimbri and Teutones) to this in which they were now engaged.

<sup>6</sup> aliquando, after a time, finally.

<sup>7</sup> quos: the antecedent is horum, below.

<sup>8</sup> securibus, to the authority (of the Romans), since the fasces and axes were the emblems of power.

<sup>9</sup> valetudine, health; here, ill health.

atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem.

- 5 Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō cūstōdiis recipi prohibēbat.

*The reēforcements arrive and the besieged prepare for a sortie.*

- 10 79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitatū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam,  
15 quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt.

Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus<sup>1</sup> in campum. Concurrunt<sup>2</sup> his auxiliis vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs  
20 atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsidunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere<sup>3</sup> explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

*The Gauls make a desperate attack on Caesar's works, but are repulsed.*

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem<sup>4</sup> mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque

<sup>1</sup> despectus, a view, from a height on the land below.

<sup>2</sup> concurrunt, they flock together, referring to the Gauls in the town.

<sup>3</sup> aggere: i.e. with the earth from the mound.

<sup>4</sup> ad utramque partem: i.e. at both the inner and the outer fortifications.

locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum<sup>1</sup> expectābant.

Gallī inter equitēs rarōs<sup>2</sup> sagittariōs expeditōsque<sup>5</sup> levis armātūrae interiēceraut, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premi vidērent, ex omnibus 10 partibus et ii quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et ii quī ad auxiliū convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū<sup>3</sup> suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad 15 virtūtem excitābat.

Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī unā in parte cōfertiis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque propulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittariī circumventī interfectīque 20 sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdētēs<sup>4</sup> ūsque ad castra īsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At ii quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

*The Gauls make a second attack. The besieged prepare to help them.*

81. Unō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō 25 crātium, scālārum,<sup>5</sup> harpagōnum<sup>6</sup> numerō effectō mediā

<sup>1</sup> *proventum, the progress (from provenio).*

<sup>2</sup> *raros, here and there, scattered among the horsemen.*

<sup>3</sup> *ululatus*: see p. 135, footnote 3.

<sup>4</sup> *cedentes, acc., them (the Gauls) in their retreat.*

<sup>5</sup> *scalarum*: see p. 139, footnote 1.

<sup>6</sup> *harpago, -gonis, m., grappling-iron, hook, for tearing down the Roman fortifications.*

nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī, ad campestrēs<sup>1</sup> mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō proturbāre reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre.

Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēducit.<sup>2</sup> Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus<sup>3</sup> sudibusque,<sup>4</sup> quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus<sup>5</sup> Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs summittēbant.

*The attacking force is repulsed before the besieged can render any assistance.*

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum proficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē ipsī stimulis<sup>6</sup> inopināntēs induēbant<sup>7</sup> aut in scrobēs<sup>8</sup> dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilis mūrālibus<sup>9</sup> interibant. Multis

<sup>1</sup> *campestres, in the plain*, referring to the part of the fortifications between the hills; see p. 163, l. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *educit*: sc. suos, implied in suis.

<sup>3</sup> *fundis librilibus*, slings for throwing stones weighing a pound.

<sup>4</sup> *sudibus*: see p. 122, ft. 2.

<sup>5</sup> *glandibus*, bullets of lead, hurled from slings.

<sup>6</sup> *stimulis*: see p. 169, footnote 4.

<sup>7</sup> *se . . . induēbant*: see p. 168, footnote 5.

<sup>8</sup> *scrobes*: see p. 168, footnote 7.

<sup>9</sup> *pilis muralibus*: much larger than the ordinary *pilum* and used in defending walls.

undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ā latere apertō ex superiōribus castris<sup>1</sup> ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēperunt. At interiōrēs dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās 5 expleant, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandis morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquarent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertuntur.

*The Gauls then plan an attack on a weak point in the Roman works.*

83. Bis magnō cum detrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant cōsulant; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex hīs 10 superiōrum castrōrum<sup>1</sup> sitūs mūnitiōnēque cognoscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumpectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariō paene iniquō<sup>2</sup> locō et lēniter declivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. 15 Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.<sup>3</sup>

Cognitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque 20 pactō<sup>4</sup> agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub 25 lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militesque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs

<sup>1</sup> superioribus castris: the part of the Roman camp on the hills, in distinction from the *campestres munitiones*, p. 178, l. 3.

<sup>2</sup> paene iniquo, *not wholly favorable*; lit., *almost unfavorable*.

<sup>3</sup> obtinebant, *were holding*; note the tense.

<sup>4</sup> quid quoque pacto, *what and how* (in what manner).



appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprà dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs<sup>1</sup> accēdere et reliquae cōpiaae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

*Vercingetorix makes a sally from the town and there is fighting on all sides.*

5 84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs,<sup>2</sup> falcēs reliquaque quae ēruptionis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae<sup>3</sup> minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc  
10 concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinētur<sup>4</sup> nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum<sup>5</sup> in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt  
15 vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

*Both armies fight valiantly. The Romans are hard pressed.*

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus summittit.<sup>6</sup> Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat:<sup>7</sup> Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint  
20 mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant.

<sup>1</sup> *campestres munitiones*: see p. 176, fn. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *musculus*, -i, m., *shed*, *mantlet*.

<sup>3</sup> *quae . . . pars . . . huc*: equivalent to *ad eam partem, quae*.

<sup>4</sup> *distinetur*, *is divided, distracted*: i.e. the fortifications are so extensive that it is difficult to meet the many attacks at different points.

<sup>5</sup> *periculum suum, their (escape from) danger*.

<sup>6</sup> *summittit*, used intransitively, *aids, helps*.

<sup>7</sup> *convenit*, impersonal, *it is fitting*. The subject is *contendi*.

Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs<sup>1</sup> labōrātur, quō Ver-  
cassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum<sup>2</sup>  
locī ad dēclivitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmen-  
tum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt;  
dēfatigātis invicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūni-  
versis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis  
et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec  
iam arma nostris nec virēs suppetunt.

*Caesar sends Labienus to the rescue and encourages his men.*

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum co-  
hortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī<sup>10</sup>  
sustinere nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne<sup>3</sup>  
pugnet; id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs,  
cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum  
dīmiciatiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet  
cōsistere.

15

Interiōrēs dēspērātis campestribus locis propter mag-  
nitūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta ex ascēnsū<sup>4</sup>  
temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multi-  
tūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant,  
aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac20  
lōricam<sup>5</sup> rescindunt.

<sup>1</sup> ad superiores munitiones: see p. 177, ftm. 1.

<sup>2</sup> iniquum . . . momentum: lit., the unfavorable inclination of the ground to steepness has great influence; i.e. the sloping ground, which made the position of the camp unfavorable to the Romans (see chap. 83, p. 177, l. 14), had a great influence on the result of the contest.

<sup>3</sup> deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnet, he should lead away his troops (to another part of the works) and make a sally; i.e. Labienus is to act on the defensive as long as possible, and when this can no longer be done, to make an attack on the enemy from another point.

<sup>4</sup> ex ascensu temptant, try to scale; more lit., try by an ascent; i.e. the enemy, finding the fortifications in the valley too strong, try the part on higher ground.

<sup>5</sup> lorica: see p. 167, footnote 1.

*Caesar repulses the enemy and goes to the help of Labienus.*

87. Mittit primō Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō  
5 quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet.

Labiēnus postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim  
10 hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā XI cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

*The Gauls are defeated with great loss. Those outside of the town take flight.*

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītus cognitō, quō  
15 insignī<sup>1</sup> in proeliis ūtī cōsuēverat, turmisque<sup>2</sup> equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequi iusserat, ut<sup>3</sup> dē locis superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa<sup>4</sup> cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus  
20 clāmor. Nostri, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux

<sup>1</sup> quo insigni . consueverat, since he was wont to wear a conspicuous dress in battle; more lit., which (referring to vestitus) conspicuous he was wont to wear.

<sup>2</sup> turma, -ae, f., troop or squad of cavalry.

<sup>3</sup> ut: causal. The situation of Alesia gave a view of all the surrounding country and of all the siege works of the Romans.

<sup>4</sup> haec declivia et convexa, these descending slopes. Hendiadys; see 225.

et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt.

Cōspicātī ex oppidō<sup>1</sup> caedem et fugam suōrum dēspē-  
rātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prō-  
tinus hāc rē audītā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod  
nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent  
dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlēri potuissent. Dē  
mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōn-  
sequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur,  
reliqui ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

*Alesia capitulates and Vercingetorix is surrendered to the Romans.*

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id  
bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārū necessitātum, sed com-  
mūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit for-  
tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu  
morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint.  
Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma  
trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris  
cōnsēdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, 20  
arma prōiciuntur.<sup>2</sup> Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs,  
sī per eōs civitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs  
tōtī exercitui capita<sup>3</sup> singula praedae nōmine<sup>4</sup> distribuit.

*Caesar quarters his legions in various parts of Gaul. A thanksgiving  
is decreed at Rome.*

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectis, in Aeduōs proficiscitur;  
civitatem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae

<sup>1</sup> Conspicati ex oppido: = ii qui in oppido erant conspicati.

<sup>2</sup> proiciuntur, are thrown down (from the walls of the town).

<sup>3</sup> capita, individuals; see p. 22, l. 12.

<sup>4</sup> praedae nomine, as booty; lit., in the name of booty.

imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum  
numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Cap-  
tīvōrum circiter xx milia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.  
T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē-  
5 quanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum  
attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basi-  
lum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam  
ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antis-  
tium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs,  
10 C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiō-  
nibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium  
Cabillōnī<sup>1</sup> et Maticōne<sup>1</sup> in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei frū-  
mentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōn-  
stituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognītīs, Rōmae  
15 diērum xx supplicātiō redditur.

<sup>1</sup> Names of towns; see 133.

## NOTES<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For abbreviations see the list preceding the VOCABULARY. The references in black-faced type (*e.g.*, 199) are to the Introduction. Those from 80-227 take the place of the usual references to the Grammars and should be looked up with care, unless the construction is already familiar. Owing to the historical matter given in the Introd. (1-14 and 66-79), the Notes are mainly grammatical and explanatory of the meaning of the Text. The literal translations are intended merely to make the construction clear, and not for actual use.

### BOOK I

#### I. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS

**Page 1. Line 1.** CHAPTER I. *Gallia . . . omnis: Gaul taken as a whole; i.e.*, there are three grand divisions of the country known as *Gallia*. Caesar, however, uses *Gallia* here not in its broadest sense, but in that of *Gallia Ulterior*, including neither Cisalpine Gaul nor the Roman Province.—*Est . . . divisa: is divided.* Not the perfect tense, but *divisa* is the perf. part. used as a predicate adjective (145).—*partes tres: this is the usual order in Caesar, although in Latin generally the cardinal numerals precede the word which they govern.*

1. 1-3. *quarum . . . appellantur: as is frequently the case, both in English and in Latin, this sentence is shortened by the omission of words which would otherwise occur more than once. For the construction of the sentence it is necessary to supply the missing words, which may be inferred from those which are expressed.* The antecedent of the relative is omitted, but it may be supplied from the form of the relative (84). Thus the complete sentence would read: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres quarum unam (partem) incolunt Belgae, aliam (partem incolunt)*

Aquitani, tertiam (*partem incolunt ii*) qui ipsorum *lingua* Celtæ, nostra (*lingua*) Galli appellantur. An understanding of the principle on which missing words are supplied is of the utmost importance. For the case of *quarum* see 99.

1. 3. *ipsorum lingua*: in their own language; for the case of *lingua* see 119 and the note; for that of *ipsorum*, which is equivalent to an emphatic *sua*, 96. The Gauls of course did not speak Latin, like the Romans, but Celtic, a language descended from the same parent speech as Greek and Latin. Celtic still survives in Welsh and in Scotch and Irish Gaelic.

1. 4. *lingua, institutis, legibus*: in translating we should insert *and* between the last two words, but in Latin the conjunction is often omitted in such groups of words, or the form *linguis et institutis et legibus* is used. For the case see 129. — *inter se*: from one another; lit., among themselves. Do not translate literally when the English idiom differs from the Latin. The literal translation, however, shows the relations of the words to one another, and must in all cases be understood thoroughly before a free translation is attempted.

1. 6. *dividit*: the verb agrees with one of the two subjects, instead of with both, since the Seine and its tributary the Marne are thought of as one boundary. The fact too that *dividit* serves also as the predicate to *Garumna* undoubtedly influenced the agreement. See 85 and the Note.

1. 7. *Horum omnium*: see 99 and cf. *quarum* in l. 1, above. *propterea quod*: it is not necessary to translate *propterea*.

1. 8. *a cultu atque humanitate*: from the civilization and refinement; for the case see 115 and the Note. We might translate *refined civilization* (see 225). — *provinciae*: the Roman province of Gaul, commonly called merely the Province; see the map of Gaul (opp. p. 1) and 75.

1. 9. *minimeque*: *minime* modifies *sæpe*, and the two words may be translated *very seldom* by the common figure of speech known as *litotes*; see 226. Note the emphatic position of *minime*. This is the second reason given for the superiority of the Belgians; translate *and because*, etc. — *eos*: do not connect this word, which refers to *Belgæ*, with *mercatores*, which is nominative.

1. 10. *ad effeminandos animas*: the gerundive construction, depending on *pertinent*; see 220.

1. 11. *proximique*: the third reason (see note on *minimeque*, l. 9); translate *and because*, as above. — *Germanis*: 114.

1. 12. *quibuscum* = *cum quibus*. The prep. *cum* is frequently appended to personal and relative pronouns. — *Qua de causa*: *and for this reason*; for the translation of the relative see 158, a. Note the order; the relative pronoun is regularly the first word in its clause.

1. 13. *Helvetii quoque*: *the Helvetians also*, as well as the *Belgae*. — *virtute*: see 129 and cf. *lingua*, etc., in l. 4, above.

1. 14. *quod*: *namely because*, a fuller explanation of *qua de causa*, which refers back to *quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt*. — *fere cotidianis proeliis*: *in almost daily battles*; see 119 and the Note. Since the phrase is equivalent to “continuously,” it might be referred to 123. It must be remembered that these grammatical categories shade into one another, and that occasionally one word contains more than one grammatical idea.

1. 15. *cum . . . prohibent . . . gerunt*: *either repelling . . . or waging*. The clause is explanatory of *cotidianis proeliis contendunt*, and *cum* should not be translated “when”; see 185. The subject of *prohibent* is *ii* understood, referring to the *Helvetii*.

1. 16. *finibus*: see 115 and the Note.

1. 17. *Eorum*: referring to the same peoples as *horum omnium* in line 7. Caesar returns to the subject after his digression about the valor of the *Belgae* and the *Helvetii*. Although *eorum* refers to the *inhabitants* of the country, it may better be translated, in connection with *una pars*, by *one part of this territory*. — *quam . . . dictum est*: *which it has been stated that the Gauls occupy, or which, as has been said, belongs to the Gauls*. In English the personal construction is more common in such cases; in Latin, the impersonal. The clause *quam Gallos obtinere* is the subject of *dictum est*; see 213 and 160.

1. 18. *initium capit a*: *begins at*; lit., *takes its beginning from*. — *continetur*: *it is bounded*.

1. 19. *flumine, Oceano, finibus*: for the omission of the conjunction see note on *lingua, institutis, legibus*, l. 4, above.



— *attingit*: *it reaches or extends to*. — *a Sequanis et Helvetiis*: *on the side of the Sequani*, etc. That is, in the part of Gaul occupied by the Sequanians and Helvetians. Note that *a* here does not mean "from"; see 142, 1, *b*.

1. 20. *vergit ad septentriones*: *it faces towards the north*; *i.e.*, the general trend of the country is towards the north. For the literal meaning of *septentriones* see VOCABULARY.

1. 21. *ab . oriuntur*: *begin at the remotest boundaries of Gaul*, said with reference to the Roman Province. Observe the order in *ab . . . finibus*. It is common to insert a limiting gen. between the adj. and its noun.

Page 3. 2. *spectant in*: *face towards*; see note on *vergit*, p. 1, l. 20, above.

3. 4. *ad*: *near*; see 144, 1, *b*.

3. 7. CHAPTER 2. *Orgetorix*: note the emphatic position of the word and the emphasis given to *nobilissimus* and *ditissimus* by the word order. — *M. Messala consulibus*: *abl. abs.* (130), giving the year when the conspiracy took place; see 140. Messala and Piso were consuls in 61 B.C. Observe that in such expressions the conj. is sometimes omitted in Latin between the names of the two consuls.

3. 8. *regni*: *for royal power*; 98. — *cupiditate*: 119. If *inductus* had been omitted, we should have an *abl. of cause* (122). — *nobilitatis*: *of the nobility, i.e.*, of the nobles or leading men of the state of the Helvetii; see 100 and the Note.

3. 9. *civitati*: indirect object of *persuasit*, the direct object being the substantive clause *ut . . . exirent*; see 106.

3. 10. *exirent*: plural because *civitati* is a collective noun, = *civibus*; see 85, Note. For the mood see 199, and for the tense, 171. — *perfacile esse . . . potiri*: *saying that it was very easy to get possession*. *Esse* is the infin. in ind. disc. (204), the verb of saying being implied in *persuasit*. Note the intensive force of *per-* in *perfacile* and the gender of the word, which modifies *potiri* as a pred. adj. (145). *Potiri* is the subject of *esse*; see 213. — *cum praestarent*: 186. — *virtute*: 129; cf. *lingua*, etc., p. 1, l. 4, above. — *omnibus*: 107, *b*.

3. 11. *totius Galliae imperio*: *the rule over all Gaul*; for the

case of *Galliae* cf. *regni*, l. 8, above; for that of *imperio*, see 121.

3. 12. *Id . . . persuasit*: *he persuaded them the more easily to do this*; lit., *he persuaded this (ut de finibus suis exirent) to them the more easily*. *hoc*: abl. of cause (122), looking forward to the clause *quod . . . continentur*; cf. *propterea quod*, p. 1, l. 7 and *qua de causa quod*, p. 1, l. 12. — *eis*: for the case cf. *civitati*, l. 9. — *quod . . . continentur*: 187; for the meaning see p. 1, l. 18.

3. 13. *una ex parte*: *on one side*; cf. the meaning of *a* in *a Sequanis*, p. 1, l. 19, and see 142, 4, b. — *flumine Rheno*: for the grammatical construction sc. *Helvetii continentur*. It is no more necessary to the thought than the equivalent is in English.

3. 14. *latissimo atque altissimo*: the adjectives are in appositional relation to *flumine Rheno*, *the river Rhine (which is) very broad and very deep*; see 145. For the meaning of the superlatives see 150. *qui*: agrees with *Rheno*, instead of with *flumine*. — *a Germanis*: cf. *ab Aquitanis*, p. 1, l. 5.

3. 15. *altera ex parte*: *on a second side*; see note on *una ex parte*, l. 13. — *altissimo*: *of great height*. The adjective is used like *latissimo* and *altissimo* in l. 14.

3. 16. *tertia*: sc. *ex parte*. — *lacu . . . Rhodano*: sc. *Helvetii continentur*, and see the note on *flumine Rheno* in l. 13.

3. 17. *qui*: see note on *qui* in l. 14.

3. 19. *His rebus*: *i.e.*, the circumstances mentioned in the preceding sentence. For the case see 122. — *ut . . . vagarentur . . . possent*: substantive clauses, subjects of *iebat*; for the mood see 200. — *minus . . . minus*: these words have a negative force; cf. *minime saepe*, p. 1, l. 9.

3. 20. *finitimis*: for the case cf. *omnibus*, l. 10 and the note. — *qua ex parte*: *and for this reason*. Notice that the phrase has the same force as *qua de causa*, p. 1, l. 12, and not one corresponding to that of *una ex parte* in l. 13. For the trans. of the rel. see 158, a.

3. 21. *homines*: *since they were men*, etc., lit., *being men*. *Homines* is in apposition with the subject of *afficiebantur*; see 82. — *bellandi*: gen. of the gerund, governed by the adj. *cupidi*; see 220.

3. 22. *Pro multitudine hominum*: considering their large population; for the lit. meaning of *pro* see 142, 6, b. — *gloria . . fortitudinis*: "their reputation in war and for bravery"; i.e., their reputation for bravery in war, by the figure called hendiadys; see 225. On the genitives see 95.

3. 23. *se . . habere*: that they had; see 204.

3. 24. *qui . . . patebant*: and these (territories) in fact extended only (158, a). As is shown by the mood of *patebant*, this clause is not a part of the ind. disc. introduced by *arbitrabantur*, but is a comment made by Caesar; see 208. — *in longitudinem*: to correspond with our Eng. expression "in length" we should expect the abl. with *in*. We seem to have a combination of "extended 240 miles in length" and "extended to a length of 240 miles." See 143, 1, b. — *milia . . CCXL: 91. — passuum*: with *milia*; 99. A thousand paces is about equivalent to a mile, and may be so translated. The Roman mile was shorter than ours, being about 4851 feet, instead of 5280.

3. 25. *CLXXX*: the actual distance is nearer eighty miles. Mistakes in writing numerals are frequently made in copying manuscripts, and it is not unlikely that Caesar wrote *LXXX*.

3. 26. *CHAPTER 3. auctoritate*: the prestige, given by his position and his wealth; see ll. 9 fol. — *permoti*: strongly influenced. For the force of *per-* cf. *perfacile*, l. 10.

3. 27. *constituerunt*: sc. *Helvetii*. — *ea quae . . pertinent*: such things as (in their opinion) were necessary; 210. — *proficiscendum*: gerund governed by *ad*; see 219.

3. 28. *comparare*: the infin. is the object of *constituerunt*; see 213 and cf. *potiri* in l. 11. — *quam maximum*: as great . . . as possible; 151.

Page 4. 1-2. *ut . . . suppeteret*: 175.

4. 4. *Ad eas res conficiendas*: gerundive construction; see 220. — *biennium*: a period of two years, equivalent to *duos annos*. *sibi*: 109; may be omitted in translating. — *duxerunt*: they considered.

4. 5. *in tertium annum*: for the third year (from that time). The acc. because the date is looked forward to. — *profectionem*: equivalent in meaning to *proficiscendum* (p. 3, l. 27). *lege*: by

*law*; see 119. — **confirmant**: historical pres.; see 162. The same is true of the following present tenses.

4. 6. **sibi**: upon himself; 106.

4. 7. **persuadet**: see note on *confirmant*, l. 5.

4. 8. **Castico**: indirect object of *persuadet*, the direct object being the substantive clause *ut . . . occuparet* below; cf., *civitati persuasit ut exirent*, p. 3, l. 9. — **filio**, **Sequano**: 82.

4. 9. **in Sequanis**: among the *Sequani*. — **multos annos**: 91. — **obtinerat**: had held. Do not be misled by the corresponding Eng. word.

4. 10. **populi Romani**: this phrase may be taken both with *a senatu* and with *amicus*, had been called by their senate a friend of the Roman people; note its position between *senatu* and *amicus*. — **amicus appellatus erat**: a formal token of regard and confidence conferred by a vote of the Roman Senate; for the construction of *amicus* see 89 and Note on 90.

4. 11. **occuparet**: for the mood see 199. The historical present may be followed either by a primary or by a secondary tense; 171, fn. 1.

4. 12. **habuerat**: the mood shows that this is not a part of the *ut*-clause, but a comment of Caesar's; see note on *patebant*, p. 3, l. 24. — **Dumnorigi**: note the case of the word. On what does it depend? Read the sentence carefully through to the end in Latin before attempting to translate it, noting the forms of the words and their relation to one another.

4. 13. **obtinebat**: observe the tense, and for the meaning see note on *obtinerat*, l. 9.

4. 14. **maxime . . . acceptus**: the superlative, instead of "acceptissimus." Do not unite *acceptus* and *erat* into a tense-form; cf. *divisa est*, p. 1, l. 1. — **plebi**: governed by *acceptus*; 114. Note the position of the word. — **idem**: the same thing; i.e., *regnum in sua civitate occupare*.

4. 15. **in matrimonium**: in marriage; observe that in Latin the acc. is used with *in*, the idea being that of a transfer into the married state.

4. 16. **Perfacile**: note the force of *per-*; see p. 3, l. 10, above. — **factu**: the supine in -u; 224. It is not necessary to the thought

and need not be translated; cf. *perfacile esse . . . potiri*, p. 3, l. 10. — *conata perficere*: 213 and the preceding note. As a noun *perficere* is the subject of *esse*, and is modified by the adj. *perfacile*; as a verb it has an object *conata*. For the force of *per-* in *perficere* see VOCABULARY. — *propterea quod*: see note on p. 1, l. 7.

4. 17. *ipse*: i.e., Orgetorix. — *civitatis*: a good example of an objective genitive (governed by *imperium*); see 98. — *obtenturus esset*: *was going to occupy*. The future idea is expressed more clearly than it would have been by *obtineret*; see 171, fn. 2. For the mood see 207.

4. 18. *non esse dubium*: 204. *Dubium* is a predicate adj. (145), modifying the substantive clause *quin . . . possent*. — *quin . . . possent*: for the mood see 202. — *totius Galliae*: 99. — *plurimum possent*: *were the most powerful people*; lit., *were able most*; see 91, Note.

4. 19. *se . . . suis . . . suo*: note the emphasis given by the repetition of the reflexives. Orgetorix promises to do most of the work himself.

4. 20. *conciliaturum*: sc. *esse*, which is frequently omitted by Caesar. — *confirmat*: do not translate by the corresponding Eng. word; see VOCABULARY.

4. 21. *inter se . . . dant*: *they exchange*, or *they give one another*; see note on *inter se*, p. 1, l. 4. — *fidem et ius iurandum*: *a pledge confirmed by oath*; lit., *a pledge and an oath*. See note on *gloria belli*, etc., p. 3, l. 22.

4. 22. *regno occupato*: abl. abs., giving the attendant circumstances of *sese potiri posse sperant*; *having made themselves kings* (in their respective states): 130.

4. 23. *totius Galliae*: this phrase does double duty; it modifies *populos* and *imperio*, *through its three strongest peoples they hope to gain dominion over the whole of Gaul*. Cf. *a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat*, in line 10, and note the position of *totius Galliae*. For the case of *totius Galliae* see 98. — *imperio*: 121.

4. 25. CHAPTER 3. *Ea res*: i.e., the fact that Orgetorix was conspiring. The meaning of *res* differs greatly according to the context. Here it may be translated *plot*, or *conspiracy*. — *est*:

to be taken with *nuntiata*. — *per indicium*: we should say *through informers* or *spies*, instead of “*through information*,” as in Latin. — *Moribus suis*: *according to their custom*; 127.

4. 26. *ex vinculis*: we should say *in chains*. The Romans from a different point of view said “*from chains*.” Cf. *a Sequanis*, p. 1, l. 19, and similar expressions, and see 142, 4, b.

4. 27. *damnatum*: *in case he was condemned*. The participle, which agrees with *eum* understood, is equivalent to a conditional clause; see 215, Note. *eum* is the object of *sequi*. — *poenam sequi oportebat*: sc. *eum*; *the law required that the punishment be inflicted on him*; more lit., *it was necessary that the punishment follow him*. *Oportebat* is an impersonal verb (160), having for its subject the infin. *sequi*, with an acc. subject *poenam*; 213. By a similar idiom we speak of punishment *overtaking* the guilty. — *ut igni cremaretur*: *of being burned to death*; lit., *that he be burned to death*; a substantive clause in apposition with *poenam* (200, Note). *Igni* need not be translated.

4. 29. *Die . . . dictionis*: *on the day appointed for* (the) *pleading* (of) *his cause*. Note the gender of *dies*; the word is usually m., but it is sometimes f. in the singular, especially in the sense of a stated or appointed time. *Dictionis* depends on *die* and *causae* on *dictionis*; both may be referred to 98.

4. 30. *familiam*: this included not only his relatives, but also his (and their) slaves and their families. *ad*: modifies *decem milia*; see 144, 1, c.

Page 5. 1. *clientes*: *dependents, retainers*, like those of the feudal system in the Middle Ages.

5. 2. *quorum*: has for its antecedent both *clientes* and *obaeratos*. *habebat . . . conduxit*: note the difference in meaning of the two tenses, the former used of a continued state of things, the latter of a momentary action (164, 166). Do not translate *habebat* by the progressive form. — *eodem*: the adverb; see VOCABULARY. Here it is equivalent to *ad iudicium*.

5. 3. *per eos*: *through their agency, with their help*; 144, 3, b. — *ne causam diceret*: *from pleading his cause*; for the constr. see 175.

5. 4. *Cum . . . conaretur . . . cogere*: *cum*-clauses of at-

tendant circumstances; the exact point of time is not important. See 185. — *rem: act;* see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25.

5. 6. *Orgetorix mortuus est: i.e.,* he was found dead. — *neque abest suspicio:* litotes (226). It may be translated, *and there is good reason to suspect;* cf. *minime sacpe*, p. 1, l. 9.

5. 7. *ut:* in translating observe the mood of the verb; see 180, Note. — *quin . . . consciverit:* *that he took his own life;* note the emphasis of *ipse sibi*. More lit. the meaning is *that he condemned himself to death;* see the VOCAB. under *conscisco*. The clause is equivalent to a substantive in apposition with *suspicio;* for the mood see 202.

5. 9. CHAPTER 5. *nihilo minus: none the less; lit., the less by nothing.* For the case of *nihilo* see 125.

5. 10. *facere:* is perhaps connected both with *constituerat* and with *conantur;* see p. 4, l. 23 and the note. For the construction of *facere* see 213. — *ut . . . exeant:* a substantive clause in apposition with *id;* cf. *quin . . . consciverit* in l. 7. Translate *namely to*, etc. The historical present *conantur* is here followed by a primary tense; cf. *occuparet*, p. 4, l. 11, and the note.

5. 11. *Ubi . . . arbitrati sunt:* *as soon as they thought;* a temporal clause, see 180. The subj. with *cum* would merely give the attendant circumstances of the action, with no emphasis on the idea of time; cf. *cum . . . conaretur*, in l. 4.

5. 12. *numero ad duodecim:* *about twelve in number.* For the meaning of *ad* see 144, l. c, and for the case of *numero*, 129.

5. 14. *praeter quod: = praeter id quod;* cf. *qui . . . appellantur*, p. 1, l. 2, and the note. — *secum: = cum se;* cf. *quibuscum*, p. 1, l. 12, and the note. — *portaturi erant:* *were going to take;* cf. *obtenturus esset*, p. 4, l. 17. — *ut . . . essent:* on account of the comparative we should expect *quo;*; see 176. For the tense see note on *ut . . . exeant*, l. 10.

5. 15. *domum: 93.* The verbal noun *reditionis* has the force of *redeundi*. — *spe sublata:* what does the abl. abs. denote? See 130 and translate accordingly. — *ad . . . subeunda:* the gerundive constr., see 220.

5. 16. *trium mensium:* see 102 and cf. our expression, *three months' supply*. It has been calculated that this would be at

least 8000 tons, requiring for its transportation a line of carts reaching for more than twenty miles. — *molita cibaria*: meal; lit., ground provisions (grain).

5. 17. *domo*: for the constr. see 135.

5. 18. *Rauracis*, etc.: 107. — *finitimis*: 82.

5. 19. *uti* . . . *proficiscantur*: a subst. clause, object of *persuadent*; 199. The position of *uti* shows that *usi* and *oppidis exustis* are parts of the subst. clause. Translate, *they persuade . . . to adopt the same plan, to burn . . . and to set out.*

5. 20. *cum eis*: we should expect *secum* (155), but since *suis* has just been used referring to the Rauraci, etc., *eis* is used to avoid confusion of meaning. Although Latin is better off than English in the matter of personal pronouns, absolute consistency and clearness are not always possible even in Latin.

5. 22. *oppugnant*: = *oppugnaverant*. — *receptos* . . . *adsciscunt*: *they received and joined to themselves as allies*; lit., *they join to themselves as allies, having been received to themselves*. The direct object of *adsciscunt* is *Boios*, while *socios* is a pred. acc.

5. 24. CHAPTER 6. *omnino*: "in all;" i.e., there were only two routes. — *quibus itineribus*: *by which*. Caesar quite often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, but it need not be translated into English.

5. 25. *unum* . . . *alterum*: sc. *iter erat*.

5. 26. *vix qua*: an exception to the usual order (see note on *qua de causa*, p. 1, l. 12), by which *vix* is emphasized. The adv. *qua* takes the place of the rel. pron. *quo* with *iter* as antecedent. — *singuli*: *in single file*; lit., *one by one*, a pred. adj. (145).

5. 27. *ducerentur*: *could be driven*. The clause describes the road; see 179. "Could" is implied in the context.

5. 28. *perpauci*: note the force of *per-* and cf. *perfacile*, p. 3, l. 10. — *prohibere*: *block the way*; or *eos* (= *Helvetios*) may be supplied as the object. — *possent*: 178. — *alterum*: sc. *iter fuit*.

Page 6. 1. *multo*: 125.

6. 2. *propterea quod*: see note on p. 1, l. 7.

6. 3. *nonnullis locis*: note the omission of the prep.; see 132.

6. 5. *Extremum*: said from the Roman point of view, hence



*the farthest to the north.* — *est*: the position is unusual. *Est* would naturally stand before *Genava*.

6. 6. *finibus*: governed by *proximum*; see 114.

6. 7. *Allobrogibus*: governed by *persuasuros* (*esse*), 106, which depends on *existimabant*. With *coacturos* (*esse*) we must supply *eos* (= *Allobroges*), since *cogo* governs the acc. The subst. clause *ut . . . paterentur* serves as the object both of *persuasuros* and *coacturos*; for the mood see 199. *Cogo* more commonly takes an infin., when it is used alone. Note the use of the pronouns in the sentence: *sese* refers to the Helvetians, *suos* to the *Allobroges*, *eos* to the Helvetians. See 154 and 155 and the note on *cum eis*, p. 5, l. 20.

6. 8. *bono animo*: used predicatively; see 128, second example. — *viderentur*: for the mood see 207.

6. 9. *existimabant*: the subject is *ii* (= *Helvetii*). For the tense see 163. Do not translate by the progressive form.

6. 10. *Omnibus . . . comparatis*: determine what is denoted by the abl. abs., and translate accordingly; see 130.

6. 11. *dicunt*: *named*; 162. — *diem, qua die*: for the repetition of *die* cf. *itineraria . . . itineribus*, p. 5, l. 24, and the note. For the gender see note on *die constituta*, p. 4, l. 29, and for the case of *die*, 138.

6. 12. *convenient*: 177. — *Is dies*: note the gender. The word is now used in the general sense. — *a. d. V. Kal. April.*: for *ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*, = March 28. Read 140. The whole phrase is used as an indeclinable noun, the pred. of *erat*. For the constr. of the individual words see 140, fifth paragraph. — *L. Pisone . . . consulibus*: 58 B.C.; 140, beginning.

6. 14. CHAPTER 7. *Caesari cum . . . nuntiatum esset*: begin the trans. with *cum* and note that one or more words in a *cum*-clause often precede *cum*. For the mood see 185 and the note on *cum . . . conaretur*, p. 5, l. 4. The exact time is unimportant. We may translate, *on Caesar's receiving news of this.* — *eos . . . conari*: equivalent to a noun in apposition with *id*; cf. 213. This is a fuller form for *cum nuntiatum esset eos conari*.

6. 15. *facere*: object of *conari*; 213. — *ab urbe*: *i.e.*, *from Rome*, or, more exactly, *from the neighborhood of Rome*. *Caesar*

had just finished his consulship, but had not yet started for his province. As proconsul, holding the *imperium*, or military command, he could not enter the city; see 9.

6. 16. *quam maximis potest*: a fuller form for the usual *quam maximis*; see 151 and the Note. Caesar is fond of these fuller forms; cf. *propterea quod* (p. 1, l. 7), *id nuntiatum esset, eos . . . conari* (l. 14), the repetition of the antecedent of a relative (p. 5, l. 24 and p. 6, l. 11). — *itineribus*: see note on *cotidianis proeliis*, p. 1, l. 14.

6. 17. *ad Genavam*: to the neighborhood of Geneva; cf. *ab urbe*, l. 15 and see 94. How would "to Geneva" be expressed? See 93. — *Provinciae*: indir. object of *imperat*, the direct object being *numerus*; 107, a. — *quam maximum potest*: see note on l. 16.

6. 18. *omnino* . . . *una*: only one; cf. *omnino*, p. 5, l. 24.

6. 19. *pontem . . . rescindi*: that the bridge be destroyed; the infin. with its subject is the object of *iubet* (213 and 199, Note). — *ad Genavam*: near Geneva; 144, 1, b. Note the different meaning of *ad Genavam* in l. 17.

6. 21. *Ubi . . . facti sunt*: when (i.e., as soon as) the Helvetians were informed. See 180 and note on *ubi . . . arbitrati sunt*, p. 5, l. 11.

6. 22. *legatos*: not the object of *mittunt*, but in apposition with *nobilissimos*, which is used as a noun (152, a). Translate accordingly.

6. 23. *principem*: here an adj.

6. 24. *optinebant*: do not translate by the progressive form. — *qui dicerent*: 177. — *sibi esse in animo*: that they intended; more lit., that they had in mind. For the case of *sibi* see 110. The subject of *esse* is *facere*.

6. 26. *haberent*: 207. — *nullum*: note the emphatic position; the emphasis may be given in English by *absolutely no*. — *rogare*: sc. *se*, that they begged. — *voluntate*: with his consent; 126.

6. 27. *liceat*: a subst. clause, object of *rogare*; 200. — *facere*: subject of *liceat*.

6. 28. *memoria*: in memory; for the case see 119, Note. There is also an idea of place; see note on *cotidianis proeliis*, p.

1, l. 14 and 132, *a.* — *tenebat*: the mood shows that this is not part of the ind. disc. Caesar gives the reason as the writer of the narrative, not as the Caesar about whom he is writing; see 208 and 14. — *L. Cassium*: this was in 107 B.C., when the Cimbri and Teutones attempted to invade Italy.

6. 29. *occisum . . . pulsum . . . missum . . . concedendum*: sc. *esse*. — *sub iugum missum*: a humiliation sometimes inflicted on defeated armies. The "yoke" consisted of two spears set upright in the ground with a third bound across them at right angles, low enough down to compel each man to bow his head as he passed through.

6. 30. *concedendum (esse)*: *that permission ought not to be granted*; impersonal (160).

Page 7. 1. *homines*: subject of *temperaturos (esse)*; see 204. — *inimico animo*: 128. — *data facultate*: equivalent to a condition; see 130 and trans. accordingly.

7. 2. *itineris faciendi*: gerundive constr., equivalent in meaning to *iter faciendi*; 220.

7. 4. *quos imperaverat*: *quos* is the direct object of *imperaverat*, *whom he had levied*, not "whom he had ordered (to assemble)," which would require *quibus*; see note on *provinciae*, p. 6, l. 17. — *convenirent*: *should assemble*; 183.

7. 5. *diem*: here means *time*. — *ad deliberandum*: 219. — *si quid vellent*, . . . *reverterentur*: ind. disc., *would* being the verb of a subordinate clause, while *reverterentur* stands for an imperative. The direct form would be, *si quid vobis, revertimini*; see 205 and 207.

7. 6. *ad Id. April.*: for *ad Idus Aprilis*, *on the Ides of April* (April 13); see 140.

7. 7. CHAPTER 8. *legione . . . militibus*: 119.

7. 10. *milia . . . decem novem*: 91.

7. 11. *in altitudinem*: see note on *in longitudinem*, p. 3, l. 24. — *pedum sedecim*: 102; cf. *trium mensium*, p. 5, l. 16.

7. 12. *disponit*: note the force of the prefix; see VOCAB.

7. 13. *communit*: *strongly fortified*, the force of the prefix being intensive. — *quo facilius . . . possit*: 176. — *se invito*: *against his will*; 130. — *transire*: object of *conarentur*.

7. 14. **conarentur**: subjunctive representing Caesar's thought, which might be expressed thus, *si transire conabuntur, prohibebo*; see 210.

7. 15. **ea dies**: note the gender and see note on *die* . . . *ditionis*, p. 4, l. 29.

7. 16. **negat se . . . posse**: transfer the negative to the infin., and translate *said that he could not*. — **more et exemplo**: 127.

7. 17. **ulli**: here used as a subst.; *cuiquam* is more usual. — **per provinciam**: modifies *iter*; cf. *domum reditionis*, p. 5, l. 15.

7. 18. **si . . . conentur**: 209. The direct form might be either *si conabimini* or *si conemini* (less vivid; 190). — **prohibiturum**: sc. *se* as subject and *esse*. For the meaning see note on *prohibere*, p. 5, l. 28.

7. 19. **ea spe**: governed by *deiecti*; 115 and Note. — **navibus . . . factis**: the abl. abs. denotes means; see 130 and trans. accordingly.

7. 20. **alii**: *others*; another *alii* (*some*) is understood before *navibus*. Some attempted to cross by bridges of boats and by rafts, others by the fords. — **minima**: pred. adj.; 145.

7. 21. **si . . . possent**: 198.

7. 22. **et . . . et**: the first *et* connects *operis munitione* with *militum concursu et telis*; the second connects *conkursu* and *telis*.

7. 23. **conatu**: governed by *destiterunt*; 115.

7. 24. CHAPTER 9. **Relinquebatur . . . via**: *there remained only the route*.

7. 25. **Sequanis invitis**: the abl. abs. is equivalent to a condition; trans. accordingly. — **angustias**: see the description of this route in Chap. 6 (p. 5, ll. 24 ff.).

7. 26. **His**: what case? Read the clause through in Latin before attempting to translate it. — **cum . . . possent**: 186; note the position of *cum*, and see note on p. 6, l. 14. — **sua sponte**: *by their own efforts*.

7. 27. **eo deprecatore**: *through his intercession*; the abl. abs. denotes means; see 130.

7. 28. **impetrarent**: here used absolutely, *they might obtain their request*. — **gratia et largitione**: to be taken with *plurimum poterat*; for the case see 122.

Page 8. 1. *Helvetiis*: see 114 and VOCAB. under *amicus*.

8. 2. *ex ea civitate*: i.e., that of the Helvetians. — *in matrimonium duxerat*: *had married*. *Duxit* alone is sometimes used with the same meaning.

8. 3. *regni*: what sort of a genitive? Why? If necessary, see 98. — *novis rebus*: *a revolution*; 107, a.

8. 4. *suo beneficio . . . obstrictas*: *under obligations to him for favors*; lit., *bound by his kindness*.

8. 5. *rem*: *the matter*; see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25.

8. 6. *ut . . . patiantur*: a subst. clause, the object of *impe-trat*; for the mood see 199. — *obsides*: object of *dent*.

8. 7. *uti . . . dent*: a subst. clause, the object of *perficit*; for the mood see 200. — *Sequani . . . Helvetii*: sc. *obsides dant*, *bound themselves by giving hostages*. — *ne . . . prohibeant . . . ut . . . transeant*: *not to prevent . . . to cross*; 175.

8. 10. CHAPTER 10. *renuntiatur*: *word is brought back* (through scouts); note the force of the prefix. — *Helvetii esse in animo*: cf. *sibi esse in animo*, p. 6, l. 24; for the case of *Helvetiis* see 110.

8. 12. *facere*: subject of *esse*, l. 10; 213.

8. 13. *provincia*: i.e., the Roman Province of Gaul; 75. — *si fieret*: 207. In the direct form we might have *si fiet* or *si fiat*; cf. *si conentur*, p. 7, l. 18 and the note.

8. 14. *provinciae*: governed by *periculo* (98). What preposition should be used in translating? — *futurum*: sc. *esse*; 204. — *ut . . . haberet*: *to have*, a subst. clause, subject of *futurum*. For the mood see 200.

8. 15. *populi Romani*: *to the Roman people*; governed by *inimicos* (98), which is here a noun. Cf. *Helvetiis erat amicus*, l. 1, and the note. — *locis*: 114.

8. 16. *finitimos*: *as neighbors*; 145. — *haberet*: sc. *as* subject *ea, it*, referring to *provincia*.

8. 17. *munitiōni*: to determine the constr. of this word, read the sentence through in Latin. If necessary, see 107, b.

8. 18. *magnis itineribus*: *by forced marches* (119). Since this is equivalent to "with great speed," the idea of manner is also present. See note on *cotidianis proeliis*, p. 1, l. 14.

8. 20. *hiemabant*: 163; note that here the progressive form is better.

8. 24. *itinere*: 115.

8. 25. *Compluribus his proeliis pulsus*: interlocked order. *His* is abl. abs. with *pulsus*, while *compluribus* and *proeliis* are to be taken together (119 and the Note). — *ab Ocelo*: note the preposition, and see 136.

8. 26. *citerioris provinciae*: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul. — *extremum*: *farthest*, from Rome: i.e., the *most westerly*. See note on *extremum*, p. 6, l. 5.

8. 27. *ulterioris provinciae*: we should say “in the farther province.” The reference is to the Roman Province; see note on *provincia*, line 13, and the map of Gaul (opp. p. 1).

8. 29. *Hi*: i.e., the Segusiavi. The Allobroges were within the limits of the Province; see Map.

8. 30. *primi*: i.e., the *first people*, after crossing the frontier of the Province.

Page 9. 2. CHAPTER 11. *traduxerant . . . pervenerant . . . populabantur*: note the force of the tenses; 168 and 163.

9. 3. *cum . . . possent*: 186.

9. 5. *rogatum*: to ask; 223. — *se . . . meritis esse*: ind. disc., introduced by the verb of saying implied in *rogatum*. Trans. *saying that they were*, etc. — *omni tempore*: *always*; 137. It may be translated “on every occasion,” which shows the close relation of the abl. of point of time (138) with that of duration of time.

9. 6. *ut . . . debuerint*: for the mood see 178; for the tense, 172. Note the (regular) difference between the English and the Latin idiom as seen in the trans. of *oppida expugnari non debuerint* by “their towns ought not to have been laid waste.”

9. 9. *quo Aedui*: as the Aeduans. With *quo sc. tempore* (138). *Aedui* is the subject of (*Caesarem certiozem*) *faciunt* understood, but it is not necessary to translate these words.

9. 11. *sese . . . prohibere*: *that they could not keep*. “Could” is implied in the context; lit., “did not keep” or “were not keeping”; cf. *ducerentur*, p. 5, l. 27. — *depopulatis agris*: the abl. abs. here denotes cause (130); trans. accordingly.

9. 13. *habebant*: 164. Do not trans. by the progressive form.

—*fuga*: in flight; see 119 and note on *cotidianis proeliis*, p. 1, 1, 14.

9. 14. *agri solum*: the (bare) soil of their country. Note the quantity of *solum* and cf. *solum*. What is the meaning of the latter?

9. 15. *reliqui*: with *nihil*: for the case see 99. We should say *nothing was left*. — *expectandum*: (sc. *esse*) *that he must not wait*; lit., *that it must not be waited by him* (160).

9. 16. *sibi*: 112. — *dum, omnibus fortunis . . . consumptis . . . pervenirent*: equivalent to *dum omnes fortunae consumerentur et pervenirent*; for the mood, which would be the same in the dir. disc., see 183. Cf. *dum convenirent*, p. 7, l. 4.

9. 18. CHAPTER 12. *Arar*: there is a river (called) the *Arar*; 82.

9. 19. *incredibili lenitate*: transferring *ita ut* from the following clause, we may translate, *of such a remarkably smooth current, that*, etc.; for the case of *lenitate* see 128.

9. 20. *in utram partem fluat*: subject of *possit*; 198.

9. 21. *lintribus iunctis*: i.e., by a bridge made of boats; *iunctis* modifies only *lintribus*. — *transibant*: were (in the act of) crossing; 163.

9. 22. *per*: 144, 3, b. — *factus est*: 180. — *tres partes*: three quarters, or three divisions.

9. 23. *flumen*: *duco* by the addition of *tra-* (= *trans-*) becomes capable of governing two accusatives; see 90.

9. 24. *reliquam esse*: were left, describing the state of the *quartam partem*, while *relictam esse* would designate the act, "had been left." — *de tertia vigilia*: in the third watch; see 140, last paragraph.

9. 26. *flumen*: *ierat*, being an intransitive verb, takes but one accusative when compounded with *trans*; cf. *flumen* in line 23, and the note.

Page 10. 1. *in proximas silvas*: we should say "in the nearest woods." The acc. is used in Latin because of the idea of motion in (*se*) *abdiderunt*.

10. 3. *Is pagus*: apparently the Helvetians crossed the river in order by cantons.

10. 4. *divisa est*: see note on *est divisa*, p. 1, l. 1.

10. 5. *cum . . . exisset*: *having gone forth*; see 185. — *domo*: 135. — *memoria*: 139.

10. 6. *interfecerat*: in 107 B.C.; see p. 6, l. 28. — *sub iugum miserat*: see note on *sub iugum missum*, p. 6, l. 29.

10. 7. *casu*: 123. *Cum* is omitted with a few words even when they are not modified by adjectives. — *consilio*: 127.

10. 8. *quae pars . . . ea*: = *ea pars, quae*, a common order in Latin, with which the student should make himself familiar.

10. 9. *princeps*: *was the first to* (148). *Princeps* is here an adjective; cf. p. 6, l. 23.

10. 10. *publicas*: *i.e.*, to the Roman commonwealth; *sc. iniurias*.

10. 12. *legatum*: *i.e.*, L. Piso had been one of the *legati*, who accompanied Cassius; see 19. — *eodem proelio quo*: for the translation of *quo* see note on *quo Aedui*, p. 9, l. 9. For the case see 138, and cf. *bello Cassiano* in line 20, below.

10. 14. CHAPTER 13. *reliquas . . . posset*: before translating the sentence, read it through in Latin and note the relations of the words to one another. Observe that the introductory conjunction is postponed, and see note on *Caesari . . . esset*, p. 6, l. 14.

10. 15. *faciendum curat*: *causes . . . to be built, or has . . . built*; 222.

10. 16. *ita*: *i.e.*, by means of the bridge. — *Helvetii . . . mittunt*: see the first part of the note on line 14.

10. 17. *id*: *a thing*, explained by the clause *ut . . . transirent*. What kind of a clause is this? See 200 and the Note. — *diebus XX*: 139; cf. *memoria* in line 5. — *aegerrime*: (only) *with the greatest difficulty*; 150.

10. 18. *ut . . . transirent*: see note on *id* in line 17 and introduce the trans. by *namely*. — *illum*: *i.e.*, Caesar. As *illum* is stronger than the following *eum*, which also refers to Caesar, and as English has but one pronoun for both, it may be translated by *their opponent* or by *Caesar*. Above all do not translate it by "that one."

10. 20. *bello Cassiano*: *in the war with Cassius* (138); *i.e.*,



the war in which Cassius had been the leader of the Romans. In Latin an adjective is often used where in English we have a prepositional phrase.

10. 22. *ita . . . egit*: *argued as follows*; *egit* is equivalent in meaning to *dixit*, but with the additional idea of making a proposition. The speech which follows contains most of the principles and most of the difficulties of indirect discourse. If it is carefully studied, the student should have little trouble hereafter with *Oratio Obliqua*. The direct form would be about as follows: *si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non possent, noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribuere aut nos despicere. Nos ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute contendamus quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur. Quare noli committere ut is locus ubi constiterimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat. — si . . . faceret*: (saying) *that if the Roman people would make*; in the direct form, “shall make.” For the mood see 207; for the tense, 171. — *pacem*: note the emphatic position.

10. 23. *partem*: *part* of the country, *region*. — *ituros atque . . . futuros*: *sc. esse*; *would go and would remain*, standing for the fut. ind. of the direct form (204).

10. 24. *constituisset atque . . . voluisset*: *should decide and should wish*; 207. The pluperf. tense is due to the Latin idiom which calls for the fut. perf. in the direct form. We should say “where you (Caesar) decide and wish.” The Romans, with a greater regard for the exact relations of time, since the *deciding* and the *expression of the wish* are completed at the time of the *going* and *remaining*, used the fut. perf., “shall have decided, etc.” The subject of *constituisset* and *voluisset* is not *populus Romanus*, but its representative, *Caesar*. *Caesar* is also the subject of *perseveraret*, etc., in what follows.

10. 25. *sin . . . perseveraret*: the construction of this clause

is exactly the same as that of *si . . . faceret* in line 22. The subject, however, is Caesar; in the direct form, "if you persist." — *reminisceretur*: *he must bear in mind*, or *let him bear in mind*; in dir. disc., "remember." The subjunctive here is in a principal clause; 205.

10. 26. *incommodi . . . virtutis*: 105.

10. 28. *Quod*: *because*; the clause is in apposition with *rem* in *ob eam rem* (line 30). — *unum pagum*: see p. 9, ll. 22 ff. — *adortus esset*: in the direct form "you attacked," or with *improviso*, "you surprised"; 207.

10. 29. *transissent*: representing a pluperf. ind. of the direct form. — *possent*: this word would have been subjunctive in the dir. disc.; see 185.

10. 30. *magnopere . . . tribueret*: about equivalent in meaning to *multum tribueret*. *Tribueret* stands for a prohibition (*noli tribuere*); see 205 and cf. *reminisceretur*, l. 25.

Page 11. 1. *ipsos*: used as an indirect reflexive, since *se* would be ambiguous; see 157. *despiceret*: in the same construction as *tribueret* in l. 30. In the direct form we should have a second infin., depending on *noli*; see note on p. 10, l. 30. — *Se . . . didicisse*: *that they had learned*; 204. For "we have learned" of the direct form.

11. 2. *ut . . . contenderent . . . niterentur*: these would be subj. in the direct form, but in the present tense; 178.

11. 3. *insidiis*: governed by *niterentur*; see 119, Note. — *ne committeret*: see note on p. 10, l. 30.

11. 4. *ubi constitissent*: for the fut. perf. of the direct form. The reference is not to the place where the conference was held, but to the place where the Helvetians *should make* their final stand. For the mood see 207; for the tense, the note on *constituisset*, p. 10, l. 24.

11. 5. *caperet . . . proderet*: these verbs would be subj. in the direct form, but in the present tense; 200. — *memoriam*: sc. *eius* (*calamitatis*). The lit. meaning is *perpetuate the memory of it*, not "hand it down to memory."

11. 7. CHAPTER 14. *His*: sc. *legatis*. — *eo*: abl. of cause (122), looking forward to the *quod*-clause; cf. *propterea quod* and similar

expressions. — *sibi . . . dari*: 204. What would the direct form be? — *dubitationis*: 99.

11. 8. *quod . . . commemorassent . . . teneret*: for *quod . . . commemoravistis . . . teneo*; 207.

11. 9. *memoria*: see note on *memoria*, p. 6, l. 28. — *eo gravius ferre, quo minus*: sc. *se, that he was the more indignant, the less*, etc. For the case of *eo* and *quo* see 125.

11. 10. *merito*: 127. — *accidissent*: 207; for a perf. ind. of dir. disc. — *qui si*: for *if they* (i.e., the Roman people); 158, a. *Qui* is singular, but it is best translated by a plural, since its antecedent is the collective noun *populus* (*Romanus*).

11. 11. *iniuriæ*: 104. — *sibi*: to be taken with *consciis*; lit., *conscious to themselves*. It may be omitted in translating. — *fuisset*: the mood and tense would have been the same in the dir. disc., since it was a condition contrary to fact (*si fuisset*). See 191 and 209. — *fuisse*: since this is the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact, we might have expected *futurum fuisse* (209), but *non difficile fuit* is nearly equivalent in meaning to *potuit*, and that verb is frequently found in the indic. in conclusions contrary to fact. — *cavere*: *to be on their guard*; the infin. is used absolutely, i.e., without an object (or indirect object). It is the subject of *fuisse*.

11. 12. *eo deceptum*: sc. *esse* and as subject *eum* (= *populum Romanum*), *they*; see note on *qui si* in line 10. *Eo* is explained by the following *quod*-clause; cf. *eo* in line 7 and the note. — *commissum*: for *quicquam commissum esse*. This is a principal clause in ind. disc. depending on *intellegeret*; that is, we have ind. disc. within the ind. disc. In the direct form of this speech the clause would be unchanged, but in the thought of the Roman people it was *neque quicquam commisimus*.

11. 13. *quare timeret*: *to be afraid about*; more lit., *of such a nature that* (on account of it) *they should fear*. *Quare* is relative, with *quicquam* (understood) as its antecedent; instead of the relative pronoun *quo* the relative adv. is used. For the mood of *timeret* see 179. — *timendum*: sc. *esse* and *sibi*, *that they ought to fear*; more lit., *that it ought to be feared by them*. A principal clause in ind. disc. with *putaret*, of the same form in the speech

of Caesar, but representing *nobis non est timendum* in the thought of the Roman people; see note on *commisum* in line 12.

11. 14. *Quod si: but if.* — *contumeliae*: 105. The reference is to the defeat of Cassius. — *vellet*: a condition contrary to fact, having the same form in the dir. disc., except for the person (*si vellem*); 209. — *num*: expects what answer?

11. 15. *iniuriarum*: on what does this word depend? Read the sentence through. — *quod*: namely, (the fact) *that*. The clauses *quod . . . temptassent* and *quod . . . vexassent* are in apposition with *iniuriarum*; 196. In the direct form the verbs would be indic. — *eo invito*: *against his will*; lit., *he being unwilling*. In the direct form, *me invito*. We might have expected *ipso* as the indirect reflexive (157), but see note on p. 5, l. 20.

11. 17. *posse*: 206. — *Quod . . . gloriarentur*: *that the fact that they boasted*; a subst. clause, subject of *pertinere*, present indic. in the dir. disc.

11. 18. *sua victoria*: 122; referring to the defeat of Cassius.

11. 19. *se . . . intulisse*: ind. disc. within the ind. disc.; cf. line 12. Note that *iniurias tulisse* means “had inflicted injuries” (on the Roman people). — *eodem pertinere*: *was consistent with the rest of their conduct*; more lit., *tended in the same direction*. *Eodem* is an adv.

11. 20. *Consuesse*: = *consuevisse*; *were accustomed*. In the direct form *consuerunt* (*consueverunt*); see 166, second Note. — *quo . . . doleant*: 176. We should expect a secondary tense, as in what precedes, since the ind. disc. is introduced by a secondary tense; but the primary tenses are used from this point to the end of the speech. See 173.

11. 21. *ex commutatione rerum*: namely, from prosperity to adversity; see 143, 4, *d.* — *quos*: the antecedent is *his*, which should be translated before *quos* in connection with the verb on which it depends. What is this verb?

11. 23. *diuturniorem*: for the trans. of the comparative see 150.

11. 24. *Cum*: 192; note the following *tamen*. — *sibi*: *to him* (Caesar), an indirect reflexive, referring not to the subject of its own sentence, but to that of the verb of saying at the beginning;

see 155. — *dentur*: for *dabuntur* of the dir. disc. We might have expected a fut. perf., which is perhaps avoided because of its cumbersome form in the passive.

11. 25. *polliceantur*: for *pollicemini* of dir. disc., though the subj. might have been used by attraction; 211. — *facturos*: sc. *esse* and *eos* as subject. — *intellegat*: subj. in the dir. disc.; see 175. — *Aeduis*: what case and dependent on what verb? Read the sentence through before trying to translate it.

11. 26. *ipsis sociisque*: 107, *b*. — *intulerint*: for *intulisti* of dir. disc.

11. 27. *satisfaciant*: for *satisfacietis*. Here too we might have expected the fut. perf.; see note on *dentur*, l. 24. *Satisfaciant* is perhaps present because of the tense of *dentur*. — *sese . . facturum*: for (*ego*) *vobiscum pacem faciam*.

11. 30. *uti . . consuerint*: 178; for the tense see note on *convesse*, line 20.

Page 12. 3. CHAPTER 15. *die*: 138.

12. 4. *ad numerum*: *to the number*. The use of *ad* is here different from that in *numero ad duodecim*; see p. 5, l. 12, and the note. — *quattuor milium*: 100.

12. 6. *coactum habebat*: nearly = *coegerat*. The emphasis is rather on the *situation* than on the *act*, "which he had, gathered together," instead of "which he had gathered together," but the actual difference is slight. See 218 and cf. *reliquam esse*, p. 9, l. 24, and the note. — *qui videant*: 177. Pres. subj., rather than imperf., because *praemittit* is historical present; but see 171, ft. n. 1.

12. 7. *faciant*: why subjunctive? What sort of a word is *quae*, and to what part of speech is the clause *quas . . . faciant* equivalent? — *Qui*: trans. by *these* or *they*; see 158. — *cupidius*: *too eagerly*; see 150. — *novissimum agmen*: *the rear, the last part of the line of march*; see 149.

12. 8. *alieno loco*: 132. Be careful of the meaning of *alieno*; see VOCAB., if necessary.

12. 9. *de nostris*: *of our men*; lit., *from our men*; 142, 2, *d*.

12. 10. *equitibus*: 119.

12. 11. *propulerant*: note the mood; see 187.

12. 12. *novissimo agmine*: 132; cf. *alieno loco*, line 8. — *proelio*: we should be likely to say in English, “provoke to battle”; see 119, Note.

12. 14. *continebat . . . habebat*: 164. Do not use the progressive form. — in *praesentia*: *at present*; see VOCAB. under *praesentia*. — *rapinis . . . populationibus*: 115.

12. 15. *Ita*: correlative with the following *uti*, in *such a way that*.

12. 16. *dies*: 91.

12. 17. *nostrum primum*: sc. *agmen*, *our van*; lit., *the first part of our line*; see 149. — *amplius*: *more*; used as a noun, subject of *interesset*.

12. 18. *quinis aut senis milibus*: 118, Note. The distributives *quinis* and *senis* are used, instead of *quinque* and *sex*, because the meaning is *five or six miles each day*. — *passuum*: 99; *mille* is used as a subst. in the plural. — *interesset*: 178.

12. 19. CHAPTER 16. *Aeduos frumentum . . . flagitare*: *demanded the grain of the Aeduans*; see 89. On *flagitare* see 214.

12. 20. *essent . . . polliciti*: 210. Ind. disc. is implied in *flagitare*; *he demanded the grain which (he said) had been promised, or which (as he reminded them) had been promised*. — *frigora*: abstract nouns are not commonly used in the plural; *frigora* here means *cold days, cold weather, or cold climate*, as compared with the climate of Italy.

12. 21. *sub septentrionibus*: *in the north*; lit., *under the (constellation of the) Great Bear*.

12. 22. *frumenta*: note the plural, which is always used by Caesar of the grain growing in the fields, while he uses the singular of the threshed grain. It may be translated *crops*.

12. 23. *pabuli*: note the position, the usual one with *ne . . . quidem*.

12. 24. *frumento*: *grain ready for grinding*; see note on *frumenta*, l. 22. What case is the word and why? Read the sentence through carefully and see 121. — *flumine . . . navibus*: 119, Note. We should say “*up the river in ships*.”

12. 25. *subvexerat*: note the force of the prefix, and see the preceding note. — *minus*: here practically equivalent to *non*.

12. 26. *avertent*: see note on *propulerant*, line 11. The Helvetians had turned to the westward.

12. 27. *Diem ex die ducere*: sc. *eum* as the object of *ducere*, referring to Caesar; *put him off day after day*. On *diem* see 91; on the meaning of *ex*, 142, 4, c; on *ducere*, 214. — *conferri dicere*: with the first three infinitives sc. *id* (= *frumentum*) as subject, and see 204; with *dicere* sc. *eos* (= *Aeduos*) and see 214.

Page 13. 1. *Ubi intellexit*: 180. — *diutius*: 150. — *quo die*: *when*; see note on *quibus itineribus*, p. 5, l. 24.

13. 2. *metiri*: each soldier received about half a bushel of grain twice a month; see 39. — *oporteret*: 207. — *eorum*: *i.e.*, of the Aeduans.

13. 4. *in his*: *among these*. — *magistratui*: 107, b. Observe the difference in the English idiom; we speak of *holding* an office.

13. 5. *vergovretum*: a Celtic word, meaning *dispenser of justice*; see note on p. 1, l. 3. For the constr. see 88.

13. 6. *annuus*: 147. — *in suos*: *over his people*; 143, 1, c.

13. 8. *posset*: sc. as subject *frumentum*, and for the mood see 185. *Cum* is translated *when*, but it is the *situation*, not the *time*, which is important.

13. 9. *sublevetur*: subj. because it is the reason not of Caesar the writer, but of Caesar the general, about whom he is writing. See note on *tenebat*, p. 6, l. 28. Note the difference in the tense of *sublevetur* and of *posset*, and see 171, fn. 1. — *magna ex parte*: *in a great measure*; 142, 4, d.

13. 10. *susceperit*: 186.

13. 11. *multo*: 125. — *sit destitutus*: for the mood see note on *sublevetur*, line 9.

13. 13. CHAPTER 17. *quod*: the object of *tacuerat*; 86, Note. The antecedent of *quod* is *id* (understood), referring to the following speech. — *esse nonnullos*: 204. How should the trans. be introduced?

13. 14. *plurimum . . . plus*: equivalent to adverbs; see 91, Note. — *valeat . . . possint*: these verbs would be subj. in the direct form; see 179.

13. 16. *oratione*: *discourse, talk*. — *ne . . . conferant*: *from getting together*; 175.

13. 17. *debeant*: sc. *conferre*. — *praestare*: ind. disc. within the ind. disc., implied in *oratione*; (*declaring that*) *it was better*. *Praestare* stands for an impersonal verb *praestat* of the dir. disc. — *iam* . . . *non*: *no longer*.

13. 19. *quam*: *than*, with the comparative idea implied in *praestare*, = *melius esse*. — *neque dubitare*: sc. *se*, and *that they had no doubt*; lit., *that they did not doubt*. Do not always translate *neque* by “*nor*.”

13. 20. *superaverint*: perf. subj., standing for the fut. perf. indic. of the direct form. See note on p. 10, l. 24. — *una cum*: *along with, together with*. *Una* is an adverb.

13. 21. *Aeduis*: III. — *sint erepturi*: the verb of a subst. clause introduced by *quin* and object of *dubitare*. The periphrastic form is used to express the idea of future time more clearly, *that they were going to take away, or that they intended to take away*. For the mood see 202. — *Ab eisdem*: the *nonnullis* of line 13. Liscus here continues, after quoting the words of the *nonnulli*, beginning with *praestare* in line 17, where see note.

13. 22. *gerantur*: 207.

13. 23. *Quin etiam*: *nay more*.

13. 24. *quod* . . . *coactus enuntiavit*: *with regard to his being compelled to report*; more lit., *with regard to the fact that he had reported, being compelled*; see 197. — *necessariam rem*: *a vital matter*.

13. 25. *id* . . . *fecerit*: i.e., gave this information to Caesar. *Fecerit* would be subj. in dir. disc. Why?

13. 26. CHAPTER 18. *Lisci Dumnorigem*: in reading observe that there is a sense-pause between these two words, although there is no comma.

Page 14. 1. *iactari*: *to be discussed*; more lit., *bandied* (tossed) *about*.

14. 2. *dimittit* . . . *retinet*: 227. — *solo*: sc. *eo*, referring to Liscus. — *ea*: *about the things*; *ea* is the object of *quaerit*, but the English idiom is different.

14. 3. *dicit*: sc. *is*, referring to Liscus.

14. 5. *esse vera*: sc. *ea*, referring to the revelations of Liscus.

14. 6. *ipsum esse Dumnorigem*: *that Dumnorix was the very*



*man*; i.e., the one referred to by Liscus. — *summa audacia*: sc. *hominem*, a man of the greatest daring; 128. — *magna . . . gratia*: note the order of the words; for the case cf. *summa audacia*.

14. 7. *rerum novarum*: 104.

14. 8. *Complures annos*: 91. — *portoria*: the customs duties, exacted at the frontier on goods exported or imported, including also other tolls of various kinds.

14. 9. *vectigalia*: revenues; every kind of income not included in *portoria*. — *parvo pretio*: 120. — *redempta habere*: nearly equivalent to *redimisse*; see note on *coactum habebat*, p. 12, l. 6. The right of collecting the taxes and duties was sold to the highest bidder by the state. The contractor then frequently collected more than was just, in order to enrich himself. The Romans had the same system, and the *publicani*, or tax-collectors, the "publicans" mentioned in the Bible, were generally in ill-repute because of their extortion.

14. 10. *illo licente*: 130. — *audeat*: for the mood see 207; for the tense, 173.

14. 12. *ad largiendum*: for bribery; 219.

14. 14. *domi*: 133.

14. 15. *largiter posse*: equivalent in meaning to *plurimum posse*. In using this expression, which is found nowhere else, it is probable that Caesar is indulging in a word-play on *largiendum* in line 12. The regular form of the adverb would be *large*. — *huius potentiae causa*: for the sake of (establishing and maintaining) this power. For the case of *potentiae* see 98.

14. 16. *nobilissimo*: do not trans. by the corresponding English word; see VOCABULARY.

14. 17. *collocasse*: = *collocavisse*, given in marriage. — *ex Helvetii uxorem*: equivalent to *Helvetiam uxorem*. She was a daughter of Orgetorix. — *sororem ex matre*: his half-sister on his mother's side; i.e., she had the same mother as Dumnorix, but not the same father.

14. 18. *propinquas suas*: note the gender and trans. accordingly. — *nuptum*: 223. The idea is "sent to be married," and hence we have the supine in *-um* and *in* with the acc. In line 16 the idea is "gave in marriage" with the dat. and *in* with the abl.

14. 20. *cupere*: *was kindly disposed towards*. In this sense *cupere*, as well as *favere*, governs a dat.; see 107, a.

14. 21. *odisse*: present in meaning, like *favere* and *cupere*; see 166, second Note. — *etiam*: *also or besides*, in addition to his feeling towards the Helvetians, which in itself would have led him to oppose the Romans. — *suo nomine*: *on his own account*; *odisse . . . nomine* may be translated, *he had besides a feeling of personal hatred*.

14. 22. *adventu*: 119. The word also has an idea of cause (122) and of time (138). See note on *memoria*, p. 6, l. 28.

14. 23. *gratiae atque honoris*: the genitives are equivalent to adjectives, *his former influential and honorable position*; 95. — *sit restitutus*: *was restored*; for the mood see 207. For the tense see note on *audeat* in line 10.

14. 24. *si quid accidat Romanis*: a mild expression for “if the Romans should be defeated and driven from the country”; 190 and 209. — *summam in spem . . . venire*: *he felt very confident of gaining the sovereignty*, stronger than *sperare se . . . regnum obtenturum esse*.

14. 25. *imperio*: 126. The expression is parallel to *si quid accidat Romanis*, the meaning being “if the Romans should become masters of Gaul.”

14. 26. *de ea, quam habeat, gratia*: note the position of the relative clause, which is equivalent to an adj., *his present importance*. What would the mood be in *dir. disc.*?

14. 28. *quod . . . esset factum*: *with regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish that had taken place*; lit., *as to the fact that . . . had taken place*. See 197 and 207.

14. 29. *diebus*: 125.

14. 30. *eius fugae*: *of the flight on that occasion*; lit., *that flight* (98). A more natural arrangement in English would be “that Dumnorix had begun the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish,” etc.

14. 31. *auxilio Caesari*: *to Caesar's help*; 113 and Note.

14. 33. *perterritum*: *panic-stricken*; note the intensive force of *per-*.

Page 15. 2. CHAPTER 19. *certissimae res*: *undoubted facts*.

—*accederent*: were added. The thought is expressed by the active in Latin (see VOCAB.), but by the passive in English. *quod traduxisset*, etc.: subst. clauses in apposition with *res*; for the mood see 207 and note *arbitrabantur* in line 7. Translate *quod* by *that*.

15. 3. *obsides . . dandos curasset*: he had arranged for an exchange of hostages between them, i.e., the Sequani and the Helvetii. For the construction of *dandos* see 222.

15. 4. *iniussu suo et civitatis*: referring to Caesar and the Aeduans. Note that instead of the genitive *sui* the possessive adjective *suo* is used. For the case of *iniussu* see 126.

15. 5. *inscientibus ipsis*: actually without their knowledge, referring to Caesar and the Aeduans. For the trans. of *ipsis* see 156, a.

15. 6. *magistratu Aeduorum*: i.e., Liscus. — *satis esse causae*: *satis* is here a noun, subject of *esse*; for the case of *causae* see 99.

15. 7. *animadverteret . . iuberet*: 198. For the meaning of *in eum animadvertere* see VOCABULARY.

15. 9. *His omnibus rebus*: 107, a; what is the meaning of *repugnabat*? *quod . . cognoverat*: that he knew; a subst. clause in apposition with *unum*. For the tense of *cognoverat* see 166, second Note; for the mood, 196.

15. 10. *summum . . studium*: the great devotion. Do not always translate a Latin superlative by an English one.

15. 12. *ne . . offenderet*: that he might offend; see 203 and the Note.

15. 13. *priusquam . . . conaretur*: 184; the act implied in *conaretur* is merely looked forward to.

15. 14. *cotidianis*: here means *usual*; cf. our expression, "everyday clothes."

15. 16. *principem*: here means merely a prominent man. — *cui*: 107, a; *fidem habebat* is equivalent to a verb meaning *trust*.

15. 17. *omnium rerum*: in all respects; lit., in all matters (98).

15. 18. *ipso*: refers to Diviciacus.

15. 19. *sint dicta . . . dixerit*: see 198. What kind of a pronoun is *quae*?

15. 20. *apud se*: in his presence, referring to Caesar; 157.

15. 21. *ut . . . statuatur . . . iubeat*: 199. — *animi*: 98. — *ipse*: here refers to Caesar. — *causa cognita*: 130; be careful in translating.

15. 24. CHAPTER 20. *ne quid . . . statueret*: *not to pass too severe a sentence*. A subst. clause, object of *obsecrare*; 199.

15. 25. *scire se*: *saying that he knew*; 204. The verb of saying is implied in *obsecrare*. — *illa esse vera*: ind. disc. within the ind. disc.; *illa* refers to the statements made by Liscus and the others. — *nec quemquam*: *and that no one*. The usual form of expression in Latin, instead of *et neminem*. Do not trans. *nec* by “nor”; see note on p. 13, l. 19. — *ex eo*: *from that fact, i.e., illa esse vera*.

15. 26. *ipse*: Diviciacus.

15. 27. *gratia*: 122; note that *gratia* in the first part of the sentence is parallel with *propter adulescentiam* in the second. — *plurimum . . . minimum*: 91, Note. — *ille*: Dumnorix.

15. 28. *posset*: the verb would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 185. — *per se*: an indirect reflexive, referring to Diviciacus; 155.

Page 16. 1. *opibus ac nervis*: 121. — *gratiam*: *his* (Diviciacus') influence. *Suam* after *perniciem* modifies both *gratiam* and *perniciem*. It is an indirect reflexive; see note on *per se*, p. 15, l. 28.

16. 2. *uteretur*: note the tense. — *Sese*: emphatic both in its form and in its position in the sentence.

16. 3. *amore fraterno*: *fraternal affection*; *fraterno* is equivalent to a subjective genitive *fratris*. — *existimatione vulgi*: *public opinion*; *i.e.*, what the people would think. What kind of a genitive?

16. 4. a. *Caesare*: 116; *accidisset* has practically the force of a passive, *if too severe a sentence should be passed upon him by Caesar*; cf. *accederent*, p. 15, l. 2. — *accidisset*: representing a fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. *Si quid gravius accidisset* is a mild form of expression for “if he should be condemned to death”; cf. *si quid accidat Romanis*, p. 14, l. 24.

16. 5. *eum locum amicitiae apud eum*: *such a place in his* (Caesar's) *friendship*; lit., *such a place of friendship with him*. This is not an uncommon meaning for the pronoun *is*. For the

case of *amicitiae*, see 95. — *neminem* . . . *non* . . . *factum*: *everybody would believe that it was done*; 226. What is the lit. trans.?

16. 6. *sua voluntate*: 127.

16. 7. *futurum uti* . . . *avertentur*: *he would lose the good-will of all the Gauls*; lit., *it would come to pass that the good-will of all Gaul would be alienated from him*. This is a common form of expression in place of the fut. pass. infin. (*aversum iri*). For the mood of *avertentur*, which would be the same in the dir. disc., see 200.

16. 8. *Haec cum*: notice the order. Observe that *cum*, although an abl. immediately follows, is not the preposition, but the conjunction, as is clear from the mood of *peteret* (185). Always read a sentence through in Latin before deciding on the meaning of the words that make it up. — *pluribus verbis*: in many words; lit., *in more words (than usual)*. For the case see 123.

16. 10. *faciat*: *to make*; for the mood see 199. Here we have the simple subjunctive without *ut*, a less common form of this kind of subst. clause. — *tanti*: *so great*; lit., *of so great value*. See 103. — *eius apud se*: *eius* refers to Diviciacus, *se* to Caesar. Be careful in translating *apud*. — *ostendit*: *he assures him*.

16. 11. *rei publicae iniuriam* . . . *condonet*: a difficult sentence to translate. Somewhat literally it means, *he sacrifices (gives up) the wrong done to the state and his own indignation to his (Diviciacus') desire and entreaties, voluntati and precibus* being the indirect objects of *condonet*. More freely, *he pardons the wrong done to the state and lays aside his own feeling of resentment out of regard for his wish and entreaties*.

16. 13. *adhibet*: *has his brother present*; 227. — *reprehendat* . . . *intellegat*, . . . *queratur*: 198.

16. 15. *ut* . . . *vitet*: 199.

16. 16. *praeterita* . . . *Diviciaco* . . . *condonare*: see note on line 11. *Praeterita* means *the past*; see 152, a. — *Dumnorigi*: we should say "over Dumnorix." For the case see 109.

16. 17. *agat* . . . *loquatur*: 227; for the mood, 198.

16. 19. CHAPTER 21. *Eodem die*: resuming the account of the campaign from the middle of Chap. 16.

16. 20. *sub monte*: be careful in translating *sub*; see 143, 2, c. — *milia . . . octo*: 91.

16. 21. *qualis . . misit*: read the sentence through to the end before attempting to translate it. For the mood of *cognoscerent* see 177; for that of *esset*, 198. — *qualis in circuitu ascensus*: i.e., what kind of climbing it would be on the side away from the enemy. Caesar planned to ascend the hill without the knowledge of the enemy and so to command their camp. *In circuitu* may be translated, *in case a detour were made*.

16. 22. *Renuntiatum est*: 160. Note the force of *re-*; cf. p. 8, l. 10, and the note.

16. 23. *De tertia vigilia*: see 140 (last paragraph) and 142, 3, c. — *T. Labienum*: Caesar's ablest and most trusted lieutenant. To determine the construction, read the sentence through.

16. 24. *legatum pro praetore*: a lieutenant with the powers (on this occasion) of a commander-in-chief. Note the meaning of *praetor* here, which is not that of the Roman official. — *eis ducibus*: *ducibus* is in apposition with *eis*, which is governed by *cum*; trans. accordingly. The reference is to the men who had been sent to examine the situation (*qui cognoscerent*, line 22).

16. 25. *qui*: the antecedent is *eis*, not *ducibus*; see the preceding note. — *cognoverant*: see 168, Note.

16. 26. *quid sui consili sit*: what his plan is; *sui consili* is a predicate gen. of possession, lit., what belongs to his plan. See 96 and 103, Note.

16. 29. *rei militaris*: 104.

16. 30. *L. Sullae*: the well-known leader of the aristocracy and opponent of Marius. He was a very able and experienced general. On account of the blunder which Considius made, Caesar feels called upon to justify his choice of him as one of the scouts. — in *M. Crassi*: sc. *exercitu*. Crassus had defeated the rebels under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. See also 8.

Page 17. 1. CHAPTER 22. *Prima luce*: at this season of the year (midsummer) this would be about four o'clock in the morning. — *summus mons*: 149.

17. 2. *ipse . . . abesset*: note the asyndeton; 227.

17. 3. *passibus*: 117. What other constr. might have been used? See 118.—*ut*: 180, Note.

17. 5. *equo admisso*: denotes manner; see 130.—*accurrit, dicit*: 227; the asyndeton gives liveliness to the narration.

17. 6. *voluerit*: 207; note the tense.

17. 7. *insignibus*: referring to standards and other devices; see 29 and 45 ff.

17. 8. *subducit . . . instruit*: see note on *accurrit, dicit* in line 5.

17. 10. *ut . . . praeceptum a Caesare*: in accordance with Caesar's order. See 160 and 180, Note.—*ne proelium committeret*: 199.

17. 12. *visae essent*: *should be seen*, representing the fut. perf. indic. (207). Labienus was not to join battle, unless he first saw Caesar's forces in the vicinity of the enemy's camp. Learn to distinguish such conditions from conditions contrary to fact, which have the same mood and tense in ind. disc. Note the translation. How would a condition contrary to fact be translated?—*undique*: *on all sides*; i.e., one side was covered by Caesar's forces, the other by those of Labienus, so that the enemy would be practically surrounded.

17. 13. *expectabat . . . abstinebat*: imperfects of continued action; see 163 and translate accordingly.

17. 14. *Multo denique die*: *it was not until late in the day that*, etc. Note the emphatic position of the phrase and the force of *denique*. For the case see 138.

17. 15. *et montem*: be careful in translating *et*; look ahead.

17. 16. *timore perterritum*: *thoroughly frightened, panic-stricken*; note the intensive force of *per-*. It is not necessary to trans. *timore* into English.—*quod non vidisset pro viso*: Considius imagined that he saw the enemy on the top of the mountain, but he mistook the soldiers of Labienus for Gauls. *Viso* is the neuter of the perf. pass. part., used as a noun. On *pro* see 142, 6, b.

17. 17. *sibi*: the indirect reflexive (155). To whom does it refer?—*quo consuerat intervallo*: *at the usual interval*. This was five or six miles; see p. 12, lines 16 ff.—The full form of the expression would be *eo intervallo quo sequi consuerat*. (= *consueverat*).

Note the position of *consuerat*. For the case of *intervallo* see 126; for the tense of *consuerat*, 166, second Note.

17. 20. CHAPTER 23. *Postridie eius diei*: it is not necessary to trans. *eius diei*. It would correspond to "the day after that day" in English. For the construction of *eius diei* see 95. — *bi-duum*: a space of two days, used, as usual, instead of *duo dies* (91).

17. 21. *cum . . . oporteret*: (before the time) *when* (as he realized) *it would be necessary*. *Oporteret* is subj. in implied ind. disc., representing Caesar's thought (*oportebit*); 210.

17. 22. *Bibracte*: the abl. form in *-e* is regular in *i*-stems. The preposition *ab* (*a*) is regularly used with names of towns in expressions of distance.

17. 23. *milibus passuum XVIII*: for the constr. see note on *passibus* in line 3. *rei frumentariae*: governed by *prospiciendum* (*esse*) 107, *b*, which is impersonal; lit., *that it ought to be looked out (by him) for the supply of grain*.

17. 25. *Bibracte*: 93.

17. 26. *fugitivos*: used as a noun, *runaways*, *runaway slaves*; see 152, *a*.

17. 27. *timore perterritos*: see note on line 16.

17. 28. *discedere*: note the tense. — *existimarent . . . commisissent . . . confiderent*: subj. because the reasons are given as existing in the minds of the Helvetians (187). As is sometimes the case, the verbs of thinking themselves are in the subjunctive. — *eo*: 122; explained by the following *quod*-clause.

Page 18. 1. *superioribus locis occupatis*: the abl. abs. is equivalent to an adversative clause introduced by *cum* or some other word meaning *although*; 130.

18. 4. *a novissimo agmine*: *a* with the abl. here denotes the *place where*; 142, 1, *b*.

18. 6. *animadvertit*: 180.

18. 7. *subducit*: note the force of *sub-*; see 143, 2, *a*. — *sustineret*: 177.

18. 8. *in colle medio*: *halfway up the hill*. What is the lit. trans.? See 149.

18. 9. *triplicem aciem*: 41. — *legionum quattuor*: see 100 and the Note.



18. 10. in summo iugo: 149.

18. 11. auxilia: see 34.

18. 12. hominibus: 119.

18. 13. eum: sc. *locum*.—qui . constiterant: namely, *duae legiones* . . . et omnia auxilia, line 10.

18. 14. muniri: 213 and 199, Note.

18. 16. confertissima acie: in close order; 123. For the trans. of the superlative see note on p. 15, l. 10.

18. 17. phalange facta: explanatory of *confertissima acie*; with *successerunt* it may be translated, *formed a phalanx and*, etc. In the Gallic phalanx the men stood closely together with the overlapping shields of the front rank forming a vertical wall, while those of the rest were held (also overlapping) overhead. Unless it bore down its opponents by its mass and momentum, it was an awkward formation, as the result on this occasion shows.

18. 19. CHAPTER 25. suo: sc. *equo* from the following *equis*. See note on p. 1, ll. 1-3.

18. 20. aequato . periculo: the abl. abs. denotes means.

18. 21. e loco superiore: (charging) *from the higher ground*; modifying *perfregerunt*. The enemy were coming up the hill to attack them; see l. 17 and 40.

18. 22. pilis missis: *after first hurling their javelins*. See 40 and on the pilum, 32.

18. 23. gladiis dextris: do not translate the abl. abs. literally.—eos: i.e., the men who made up the phalanx.

18. 24. Gallis: here used of the Helvetians. For the case see 113, and the Note, and use the second example as a model in translating.—magno . . . impedimento: used predicatively with *erat*; for the case see 113 and Note.—ad pugnam: in fighting; lit., for battle.

18. 25. quod . . . poterant: a subst. clause, subject of *erat*. *Quod* may be translated *that*; for the mood of *poterant* see 196.—pluribus . . . colligatis: abl. abs.; with the following *cum*-clause it may be translated, *when several of their shields had been pierced* . . . and the iron point had bent. Their shields overlapped; see note on *phalange facta*, line 17.

18. 26. inflexisset: 185.

**Page 19. 1. evellere:** sc. *id* (= *ferrum*). — **sinistra impedita:** denotes cause. In English we should use the plural. The shield was carried in the left hand. With *sinistra* sc. *manu*, and see 152, *b*. — **satis commode:** *to sufficient advantage*. Both words are adverbs.

**19. 2. multi ut:** *so that many of them*. *Multi* is emphasized by the order; cf. *vix qua*, p. 5, l. 26. — **iactato:** *jerked about*, to free their shields. *Iacto* is an intensive verb; see VOCABULARY.

**19. 3. praeoptarent:** 178. — **manu:** 115. — **nudo corpore:** *with their bodies unprotected*; 126. On the number see note on *sinistra impedita*, line 1.

**19. 5. et . . . et:** be careful in translating these words. Read the sentence through. — **pedem referre:** do not trans. literally. — **quod passuum:** *because there was a mountain only about a mile away*. Instead of the usual *aberat*, “was distant,” *suberat*, “was near at hand,” is used. The force of *suberat* may be given in the translation by *only*.

**19. 6. eo:** the adverb, = *ad montem*.

**19. 7. Capto . . . succedentibus:** note the tenses, and translate accordingly. Decide too what the force of the abl. abs. is, and do not translate it literally.

**19. 8. hominum milibus:** for the former see 99; for the latter, 119.

**Page 20. 1. novissimis praesidio:** see 113 and note on *magno impedimento*, p. 18, l. 24.

**20. 2. ex itinere:** *on the way* (up the hill); lit., *from the march*, i.e., turning aside from their course up the hill. — **a latere aperto:** *on the open flank* (142, 1, *b*), i.e., the one on the side opposite to the hill which the Romans had previously occupied. — **circumvenire:** sc. *coeperunt*, from *coeperunt* at the end of the sentence.

**20. 5. conversa signa . . . intulerunt:** *wheeled about and advanced in two divisions*; lit., *bore their turned about standards*, a combination of *signa inferre* and *signa convertere* (see 50). As a matter of fact it was only the *tertia acies* which wheeled about, since the *prima* and *secunda acies* were already facing the enemy; see the Plan, p. 19.

**20. 6. prima . . . acies:** what must be supplied for the

constr.? See note on p. 1, lines 1-3. — *victis ac summotis*: used as nouns (152, a), *those who had been beaten and put to flight*, in the attack on the Roman position on the hillside; for the case see 107, a.

20. 7. *tertia*: what is to be supplied? See note on *prima acies*, line 6. — *resisteret*: 175. — *venientes*: used as a noun, *those who were coming* (to attack them), *i.e.*, the Boii and Tulingi. — *sustineret*: 175. Do not trans. by the corresponding English word.

20. 8. CHAPTER 26. *ancipiti proelio*: *in a twofold battle*; lit., *two-headed*. The Romans were contending with hostile forces on both sides. — *pugnatum est*: 160; with *ancipiti proelio* it may be translated, *a twofold battle was fought*.

20. 9. *Ditius cum*: note the order, which is a very common one.

20. 10. *possent*: 185. — *alteri*: *one division* (of the Helvetians), *i.e.*, those who had begun to retreat, but renewed the battle when the Boii and Tulingi made their attack.

20. 11. *alteri*: the other division, *i.e.*, the Boii and Tulingi. — *se contulerunt*: this phrase and *se receperunt*, used of the Helvetians instead of *fugerunt*, show that the enemy were merely repulsed, not routed. Caesar explains his choice of words in the following clause with *nam*.

20. 12. *hoc toto proelio*: 137. — *cum . . . pugnatum sit*: 192. What suggests the meaning of *cum* here? For the tense see 172. — *ab hora septima*: about noon; see 140.

20. 13. *aversum hostem*: *a single one of the enemy with his back turned* (in flight); note the number. — *Ad multam noctem*: *until late at night*; cf. *multo die*, p. 17, l. 14. For the meaning of *ad* see 144, 1, d.

20. 14. *ad*: *at, near*; 144, 1, b.

20. 15. *pro vallo*: *as a rampart, i.e.*, in place of a rampart; 142, 6, b. — *obiecerant coniciebant*: note the tenses; in *coniciebant* the prefix gives the idea of forcible action. — *e loco superiore*: *from (this) elevated position, i.e.*, from the top of the wall of wagons.

20. 17. *inter carros rotasque*: *amid the carts and the wheels*; *i.e.*, they sheltered themselves behind the carts and thrust their

weapons upward at the Romans as they mounted the rampart.  
— *subiciebant* . . . *vulnerabant*: note the tenses; 163.

20. 19. *Diu cum*: cf. *diutius cum*, line 9, and the note. — *impedimentis castrisque*: 121.

20. 20. *unus e filiis*: 142, 4, *d* (last part).

20. 21. *captus est*: the verb agrees with the nearer of the two subjects; see 85, Note.

20. 22. *ea tota nocte continenter*: 137, and the Note; observe *continenter*.

20. 23. *nullam partem*: 91. The reference is undoubtedly only to the first day of their retreat. It is hardly to be supposed that they marched day and night for four days. The Roman victory was a hard-earned one; see note on *se contulerunt*, l. 11.

20. 24. *die quarto*: 138. — *cum*: 186. What suggests the meaning of *cum* here?

20. 26. *triduum*: = *tres dies*; 91.

20. 27. *Lingonas*: the word has the ending of the Greek acc. plur. — *ne* . . . *iuvent*: *not to help them*; 199. *Litteras misit* is equivalent to a verb meaning *command*.

20. 28. *qui si iuissent*: *for if they should help them* (or *did help them*). For the trans. of *qui* see 158, a; for the mood and tense of *iuissent* see note on p. 10, l. 24. — *se eodem loco . . . habiturum*: = *se eodem loco eos habiturum esse, quo Helvetios haberet*, that is, he would regard them as enemies of the Romans. *Eodem loco quo* may be translated, *in the same light as*; cf. p. 9, l. 9.

20. 29. *triduo intermisso*: *after an interval of three days*. What is the lit. trans.?

Page 21. 1. CHAPTER 27. *inopia adducti*: see note on *cupiditate*, p. 3, l. 8.

21. 2. *Qui cum*: 158. — *eum*: the intransitive verb *venio* becomes transitive when compounded with *con-*; see 86, Note, and 107, Note.

21. 4. *eos*: *i.e.*, the Helvetians, while *se* refers to the *legati*; observe *quo tum essent*. — *quo*: *where*; the abl. of the rel. pronoun, not the adverb.

21. 5. *essent*: 211.

21. 6. *Eo*: what part of speech? — *postquam* . . . *pervenit*:

180.—*obsides, arma, servos*; see note on *lingua*, etc., p. 1, l. 4.

21. 7. *qui . . . perfugissent*: *who (as he alleged) had taken refuge with them*; 210. What is the antecedent of *qui*?

21. 8. *Dum . . . conferuntur*: *while these were being hunted up and got together*. For the mood and tense see 181. The clause modifies *nocte intermissa*.—*ea*: *these*; neut. plur., referring to *obsides, arma, servos*, a common agreement with words of different genders.—*Nocte intermissa*: *a night having passed*. What is the lit. trans.?

21. 10. *perterriti*: agrees with *milia hominum* in sense, rather than grammatically. On the expression *timore perterriti* see p. 17, l. 16.

21. 11. *afficerentur*: 203.

21. 13. *existimarent*: subj. as representing the reason of the Helvetians; 187 and ftn. Cf. *existimarent*, p. 17, l. 28.

21. 13. *prima nocte*: 149.

21. 16. CHAPTER 28. *Quod ubi*: be careful in translating these words.—*resciit*: 180.—*quorum per fines . . . his*: for *his quorum per fines*; *his* is the antecedent of *quorum*.

21. 17. *uti . . . reducerent*: 199.—*sibi*: *in his sight*; dat. of the person judging, a variety of the dat. of reference (109).

21. 18. *vellent*: subj. in ind. disc., implied in *imperavit* (210). Caesar's words might have been, *conquirite et reducite, si mihi purgati esse vultis*.—*reductos*: *those (who were) brought back*. The participle is used as a subst.; cf. 152, a. *Eos* should not be supplied.—*in hostium numero habuit*: that is, he put them to death. With the mild form of expression cf. *si quid accidat Romanis*, p. 14, l. 24.

21. 20. *Helvetios . . . reverti*: 213 and 199, Note.

21. 22. *domi*: 133.—*quo . . . tolerarent*: *with which to satisfy their hunger*; 179.

21. 24. *facerent*: here has the force of *furnish*; for the mood see 199.—*quos*: has for its antecedent *oppida vicosque* and agrees with the nearer of the two.

21. 26. *ea ratione*: leading up to the following *quod*-clause (122). For similar expressions see p. 1, l. 7, and p. 6, l. 16.

Page 22. 1. Galliae . . Allobrogibusque: 114.

22. 2. Boios: what is the construction of this word? Read the sentence through carefully.

22. 3. Aeduis: governed by *concessit* (106), *he allowed the Aeduians at their request (petentibus)*. — *egregia virtute*: sc. *esse* and see 128 (second example).

22. 6. *atque*: in connection with *parem* means *as*; see VOCABULARY.

22. 7. CHAPTER 29. *tabulae*: *lists*, written on tablets. These were thin boards, perhaps covered with wax, like the Roman writing-tablets; or the letters may have been painted on the boards.

22. 8. *litteris Graecis*: the Gauls became acquainted with these through the Greek colony at Massilia (Marseilles). The language was of course Celtic (see note on p. 1, l. 3), although the characters in which it was written were Greek. The Greek alphabet was used by various peoples, and the Roman alphabet itself was derived from the Greek. — *quibus in tabulis*: for the repetition of the antecedent see note on p. 5, l. 24.

22. 9. *nominatim*: *by items*, referring to those afterwards mentioned. *Nominatim ratio* may be translated together as *an itemized statement*. — *qui numerus . . . exisset*: a subst. clause in apposition with *ratio*; 198.

22. 10. *qui . . . possent*: 179. — *separati pueri*, etc.: *a separate list of the boys*, etc. The syntax of *pueri . . . senesque* is loose, a kind of independent nominative; or we may supply *inscripti erant*, *had been listed*.

22. 12. *rerum*: *items*. See note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25. — *capitum*: somewhat as we speak of "head" of cattle. The word may be omitted in the translation, or it may be rendered by *souls*.

22. 13. *milia*: this word is of course to be supplied with the following numbers.

22. 15. *qui*: sc. *ii* as antecedent and *fuertunt* as the pred. of *ii*. For the mood of *possent* cf. *qui possent* in line 10. — *ad*: 144, 1, c.

22. 16. *fuertunt*: agrees in number with the pred. noun *milia*, instead of with the subject *summa*.

22. 17. *Eorum*: depends on *censu*. — *ut*: 180, Note.

22. 18. *milium*: depends on *numerus* (100). The clause may be translated, *the number was found to be 110,000*. That is, 258,000 had perished.

## II. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

22. 20. CHAPTER 30. *Helvetiorum*: we should say “*with the Helvetians*”; for the case see 98. — *totius Galliae*: we should say “*from almost the whole of Gaul*”; for the case see 97. The term *Gallia* is here used in the narrower sense, referring to the *Celtae*; see note on *Gallia omnis*, p. 1, l. 1.

22. 21. *gratulatum*: 223.

22. 22. *intellegere sese*: 204; the verb of saying is implied in *gratulatum*, but may well be expressed in translating.

22. 23. *Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani*: see 98, Note.

22. 24. *repetisset*: = *repetivisset*. See 207 and cf. 193. — *ex usu*: *to the advantage of*; more lit., *in accordance with the advantage*, 142, 4, d.

22. 25. *populi Romani*: what must be supplied? See note on p. 1, lines 1-3.

22. 26. *eo consilio*: *with this design*, explained by the following *uti*-clauses; 126. Cf. *ea ratione* . *quod*, p. 21, l. 26. — *florētissimis rebus*: *at the height of their power*; 130.

22. 27. *uti* . *inferrent* . *potirentur*: subst. clauses in apposition with *eo consilio*; 199. — *Galliae*: 107, a. — *imperio*: 121.

Page 23. 1. *domicilio*: 113.

23. 2. *opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum*: 145.

23. 3. *iudicassent*: = *iudicavissent*; 211, representing a fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc. — *stipendiarias*: 145.

23. 4. *haberent*: in the same construction as *inferrent* and *potirentur*; see note on p. 22, l. 27.

23. 5. *sibi*: depends on what? Read the sentence through carefully.

23. 6. *certam*: do not trans. by the corresponding English word. — *voluntate*: 126.

23. 7. *sese habere*: *saying that they had*; the verb of saying

is implied in *petierunt*; 204. — *ex communi consensu*: in accordance with the common consent; cf. *ex usu*, p. 22, l. 24.

23. 8. *vellent*: 207. — *concilio*: 113.

23. 9. *iure iurando*. — *inter se sanxerunt*: bound one another by an oath; what is the lit. trans.? — *enuntiaret*: 175.

23. 10. *communi consilio*: 127; cf. *ex communi consensu* in line 7. — *mandatum esset*: see note on *iudicassent* in line 3.

23. 11. CHAPTER 31. *qui ante fuerant*: sc. *apud eum*. The reference is to those who had formerly come to Caesar.

23. 14. *liceret*: 199. — *Caesari ad pedes*: at Caesar's feet; for the case of *Caesari* see 109, a.

23. 15. *id*: object of *contendere* and *laborare*, with a difference of idiom from English (86, Note). *Id* is explained by the following clause *ne . . . enuntiaretur*.

23. 16. *dixissent*: were going to say, standing for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.; for the mood see 211. — *enuntiarentur*: 199.

23. 17. *vellent*: 211. — *impetrarent*: 199. Cf. *dixissent* in line 16. — *enuntiatum esset*: why this mood and tense?

23. 18. *venturos*: sc. *esse*.

23. 19. *Galliae*: here again the reference is to the country of the *Celtae*, not to *omnis Gallia*, p. 1, l. 1.

23. 20. *factiones . . . duas*: a national weakness; see 70. — *harum . . . Avernos*: note the cases and the relations of the words to one another before translating.

23. 21. *tantopere*: we should say *greatly* (*magnopere*); the meaning perhaps is, *so greatly as was a matter of common knowledge*.

23. 22. *contenderent*: the struggle for supremacy was still going on, when the Avernian and Sequani appealed to the Germans for assistance; hence the imperfect. We should be likely to use the past perfect (pluperfect) in English. — *factum esse*: *it came about*.

23. 23. *mercede*: 120.

23. 24. *arcesserentur*: 200. — *Horum* = *Germanorum*. Placed first as the emphatic word of the sentence.

23. 25. *posteaquam*: equivalent in meaning to *postquam*. It would be followed by the indic. in dir. disc.; 180.

23. 26. *homines feri ac barbari*: in apposition with the sub-



ject of *adamassent* (82). Translate accordingly. — *traductos*: sc. *esse*.

23. 27. *plures*: *more of them*; i.e., of the Germans. — *esse*: sc. *eos* = *Germanos*. — *ad* . . . *numerus*: *to the number*. Distinguish between *ad numerum* followed by a genitive and *ad*, *about*, used adverbially and qualifying a numeral. — *milium*: 100.

23. 29. *clientes*: here means *dependents*, i.e., dependent nations. — *semel atque iterum*: *more than once*, i.e., several times.

23. 30. *armis*: *in arms, in warfare*; 119 and Note. — *pulsos*: *as the result of defeat*; more lit., *when defeated*; 215, Note.

Page 24. 1. *omnem nobilitatem*, etc.: undoubtedly an exaggeration.

24. 3. *fractos*: sc. *eos*, which is the antecedent of *qui* and the subject of *coactos esse*. — *virtute* . . . *hospitio* . . . *amicitia*: 122.

24. 4. *ante*: here an adverb = *anteā*.

24. 5. *obsides*: be careful in translating this word; if necessary, see 84.

24. 7. *repetituros*: this and the following infinitives are in ind. disc. within the ind. disc. implied in *iure iurando* . . . *obstringere*.

24. 8. *recusatuos quo minus* . . . *essent*: *refuse to be*; see 201. — *illorum*: i.e., *Sequanorum*.

24. 9. *Unum se esse*: *that he* (Diviciacus) *was the only one*.

24. 10. *potuerit*: primary sequence, influenced by the present idea in *esse*; in the direct form, "I am the only one who could not, etc." For the mood see 179; for the tense, 172. — *ut iuraret*: *to take the oath*, referred to in line 6. For the mood see 200; for the tense, which is regular with a perf. subj.; 172.

24. 13. *postulatum*: 223.

24. 15. *peius*: *a worse fate*; lit., *a worse thing*. The adj. is used as a subst.; see 152, a. — *victoribus*: *victorious*, or *in spite of their victory*, a force given by the context. The noun has the force of an adj.; see 152, Note.

24. 18. *qui esset optimus*: this same district is still noted for its beauty and its fertility.

24. 19. *de altera parte tertia*: *from a second (or another) third*

part of their territory. — *iuberet*: note the tense and trans. accordingly.

24. 20. *mensibus*: 125.

24. 22. *locus ac sedes*: a place of abode; hendiadys, see 225. — *pararentur*: note the tense; cf. note on *iuberet*, line 19. — *Futurum esse*: it would come to pass; cf. *factum esse uti*, p. 23, l. 22. — *paucis annis*: 139.

24. 23. *omnes*: sc. *Galli*. — *PELLERENTUR* . *transirent*: see note on *arcesserentur*, p. 23, l. 24.

24. 25. *Gallicum*: sc. *agrum*. The meaning of course is that the Gallic territory was superior. We should therefore translate, in accordance with the English idiom, *the land of the Germans was not to be compared with that of Gaul*.

24. 26. *hanc*: i.e., of the Gauls, while *illa* is that of the Germans. Here too we should reverse the Latin order of comparison in the English translation; cf. the preceding note on *Gallicum*.

24. 28. *ut semel*: when once, i.e., as soon as; cf. *ut primum*.

24. 29. *vicerit*: for variety the primary sequence is used from now on, instead of the secondary; 173. — *quod proelium*: the antecedent is repeated, as often, in the relative clause; cf. *quibus in tabulis*, p. 22, l. 8. It may be translated, *a battle which*. — *Admagetobrigae*: locative; 133.

24. 30. *nobilissimi cuiusque*: of all the most prominent men, the regular meaning of *quisque* with a superlative; see 159. Observe the meaning of *nobilissimi*; the corresponding English word should not be used. See VOCAB., and note the derivation of the word.

24. 31. *omnia exempla cruciatusque*: all kinds of tortures; 225.

24. 32. *qua*: the regular form after *si*, instead of *quae*. — *ad* . . . *ad*: at . . . according to; 144, l. c.

24. 33. *barbarum* . . . *temerarium*: 145.

Page 25. 1. *posse*: sc. *eos*, referring to the Gauls.

25. 2. *auxili*: with *quid*, some help; 99. — *omnibus Gallis*: 112.

25. 4. *emigrent*: namely, leave their homes; the verb of a subst. clause in apposition with *idem*. For the mood see 200, Note.

25. 5. *fortunam* . . . *experiantur*: for *eam fortunam*, *quae*-

*cumque accidat, experiantur.* *Experiantur* is used somewhat as in the English expression "try one's luck." They would see what fortune had in store for them and make the best of it.

25. 7. *enuntiata . . . sint*: representing a fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. See the following note. — *non dubitare*: sc. *se*, referring to Diviciacus. Although the infin. is present, the whole clause, *non dubitare . . . quin sumat*, he would undoubtedly inflict, has a future force, corresponding to that of *enuntiata sint*. — *quin . . . sumat*: the clause is the object of *dubitare*; for the mood see 202.

25. 11. *detertere posse ne . . . traducatur*: could prevent a greater number . . . from being led across the Rhine; 199. — *Rhenum*: object of *traducatur*; see 90, Note.

25. 12. *Ariovisti*: what kind of a genitive?

25. 15. CHAPTER 32. *magno fletu*: 126.

25. 16. *unos*: alone.

25. 17. *tristes*: 147.

25. 18. *capite demisso*: 126; for the singular number see note on *sinistra*, p. 19, l. 1. — *Eius rei . . . quaesiit*: read the sentence through carefully before beginning to translate.

25. 19. *esset*: 198. — *ex ipsis*: from them directly, instead of inquiring from others. On the trans. of *ipsis* see 156, a. — *respondere . . . permanere*: what kind of infinitives? Note the case of the subject, and if necessary see 214.

25. 21. *saepius*: again and again; for a more lit. trans. see 150. — *neque ullam*: translate as if it were *et nullam*.

25. 22. *idem*: again, as before; lit., the same (i.e., the afore-said) *Diviciacus*.

25. 23. *hoc*: in apposition with the following *quod*-clauses. Therefore what kind of an ablative?

25. 24. *solī*: they alone, modifying the subject of *auderent* and *horrent*. — *ne . . . quidem*: modifying *in occulto*; note the position of the words.

25. 25. *neque*: be careful in translating this word. Double negatives are allowed in Latin, but not in English. — *absentis*: in his absence; i.e., even when he was absent. The adj. is used appositively; see 145.

25. 26. *crudelitatem*: object of *horrent*; 86, Note. — *adesset*: would be subj. in the dir. disc. in a comparative clause introduced by *velut si*.

25. 27. *reliquis*: sc. *Gallis*. — *tamen*: at least; i.e., in spite of the fact that they were under the dominion of Ariovistus.

25. 28. *Sequanis vero*: but by the *Sequani*; 112.

25. 30. *essent perferendi*: note the form, *had to be endured, must be endured*.

Page 26. 2. CHAPTER 33. *sibi . . curae futuram*: sc. *esse*, that he would look into the matter; lit., that that matter would be for a care to him (113). Verbs of promising are regularly followed by a fut. infin.

26. 3. *beneficio suo*: in having Ariovistus recognized as a friend of the Roman people; see p. 34, lines 14 ff.

26. 4. *iniuriis*: 106. — *facturum*: sc. *esse*, fut. infin. depending on *se habere spem*, = *se sperare*. See the last part of the note on l. 2.

26. 5. *secundum ea*: besides these things; *secundum* is the prep.

26. 6. *quare . . . putaret*: to think; 177. *Quare* is not interrogative, but the relative adverb, in place of the usual *ut*, on the same principle that leads Caesar to repeat the antecedent in the relative clause.

26. 7. *cogitandam . . . suscipiendam*: sc. *esse* and see 204. In translating note the forms carefully, and cf. *essent perferendi*, p. 25, l. 30. — *quod . . . videbat*: the fact that he saw, a subst. clause in apposition with *multae res*; for the mood see 196.

26. 8. *saepenumero*: an adv. formed of *saepe* and *numero* (129).

26. 11. *quod*: a state of things which; the antecedent of *quod* is implied in the preceding infinitives. Or it may be translated and this state of things; see 158, a. — *in tanto imperio populi Romani*: i.e., considering that the power of the Roman people was so great.

26. 14. *Germanos consuescere*: for the Germans to become accustomed; *consuescere* and *venire* are the subjects of *esse*, which is understood with *periculosum videbat* (see 213).

26. 16. *populo Romano*: 114. — *periculosum*: a predicate

adj. (145) modifying *consuescere* and *venire*. It is singular because the two infinitives form one idea. — *sibi temperaturos* . *quin*: *would refrain from*; more lit., *would restrain themselves from*. For the case of *sibi* see 107, a.

26. 18. *ut*: see 180, Note; the subj. in *fecissent* is due to ind. disc.

26. 19. *exirent* . . . *contenderent*: *quin* here introduces a result clause; cf. 178.

26. 21. *Rhodanus*: *only the Rhone*, as is implied in the context. — *quibus rebus*: 107, b.

26. 22. *occurrendum*: sc. *esse* and *sibi* (112). Note the form carefully before translating. — *autem*: *furthermore*, introducing an additional reason for his action.

26. 23. *sibi*: 106. With what verb is it to be taken?

26. 24. *ferendus non videretur*: *he seemed unbearable*; connect *non* with *ferendus*. For the mood of *videretur* see 178.

26. 25. CHAPTER 34. *placuit ei ut* . . . *mitteret*: *it seemed best to him to send*. The *ut*-clause is the subject of *placuit*; for the mood see 200 and Note.

26. 26. *qui* . . . *postularent*: 177.

26. 27. *medium utriusque*: *midway between each of them*, i.e., Ariovistus and Caesar. For the construction of *utriusque* see 95. — *colloquio*: 113. — *velle sese*: what does the infin. indicate? How should the translation be introduced?

26. 28. *summis utriusque rebus*: *matters of the highest importance to both* (Caesar and Ariovistus); more lit., *the highest interests of both*. For the trans. of *rebus* see note on p. 4, l. 25.

Page 27. 1. *Si quid* . . . *opus esset*: *if he himself wanted anything of Caesar*; more lit., *had need of anything from Caesar*. For the case of *ipsi* see 110; for the mood and tense of *esset*, 209. *Quod* is a predicate nominative.

27. 2. *venturum fuisse*: *he would have come to him*, the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in ind. disc.; see 191 and 209.

27. 3. *se*: a second accusative with *velit*, which here has the construction of *rogare*, to which it is nearly equivalent in meaning. See 89. — *velit*: a simple present condition in ind. disc., representing a pres. indic. of the direct form. The present is used for

contrast with *esset*, to show that *velit* is not contrary to fact. The secondary sequence is resumed in what follows.

27. 5. *possideret*: 207. Note the return to the secondary sequence; see previous note.

27. 6. *magno commeatu atque molimento*: *great trouble and the necessity of getting together a great supply of food*. Such different ideas as *commeatu* and *molimento* are not as a rule closely connected in English, except humorously.

27. 7. *Sibi . . mirum videri*: *it seemed surprising to him*. *Mirum* modifies the subst. clause *quid . . . esset*, which is the subject of *videri*. For the mood of *esset* see 198; for that of *vicisset*, 211.

27. 8. *Caesari . . populo Romano*: for the case see 110. Do not trans. literally. — *negoti*: to be taken with *quid*; 99.

27. 11. CHAPTER 35. *Quoniam*: what verb does this introduce? Such a sentence as this should be read through carefully more than once, before an attempt is made to translate it.

27. 12. *suo populi que Romani*: *by himself and the Roman people*; lit., *of*. What kind of a gen. is *populi Romani*? On the use of *suo* see note on p. 15, l. 4. — *cum . . . appellatus esset*: this *cum*-clause is explanatory of *beneficio*, *in being called*; cf. *cum . . . prohibent*, p. 1, l. 15. The mood is due to ind. disc. (207). — *in consulatu suo*: this was in 59 B.C.

27. 14. *gratiam referret*: see VOCAB. under *gratia*. — *ut . . . gravaretur*: a subst. clause in apposition with *gratiam*. The verb would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 200 and Note.

27. 15. *neque*: for the trans. see note on p. 13, l. 19.

27. 15. *communis re*: *a matter of common interest*.

27. 16. *dicendum sibi*: sc. *esse*. Note the forms *dicendum* and *cognoscendum* carefully. For the case of *sibi* see 112. — *haec esse*: *these were the things*, explained by the following clause introduced by *ne*. For the mood of *esse* and of *postularet* see 204 and 207.

27. 17. *quam multitudinem . . . amplius*: *any large force afterwards*.

27. 19. *traduceret*: 199.

27. 20. *redderet* . *permitteret*: governed by an *ut* implied in *ne* in line 17; 199.

27. 20. *Sequanisque permitteret ut illis liceret*: since *permitteret* and *liceret* mean practically the same thing, the expression is pleonastic; the pleonasm gives an emphasis which might be rendered by *that he should give the Sequani full and free permission*, etc.

27. 21. *voluntate eius*: referring to Ariovistus; for the case of *voluntate* see 126. — *neve* . *neve*: used instead of *neque* . . . *neque* to connect clauses which standing alone would be introduced by *ne*.

27. 22. *iniuria*: *wrongfully*; 123. For the omission of *cum* see note on *casu*, p. 10, l. 7.

27. 24. *fecisset*: represents what mood and tense of the dir. disc.? Note the following *futurum (esse)*. How should *fecisset* be translated? — *sibi populoque Romano*: 110.

27. 26. *impetraret*: for the fut. ind. of dir. disc. — *sese*: to determine the construction of this word, read the sentence through to the end carefully. *Sese* is so far from its verb that Caesar repeats it (in the form *se*) in line 30. — *M. Messala M. Pisone consulibus*: 61 B.C.; see 140 and 227.

27. 27. *uti*: observe that the verb depending on this word is *defenderet*, since *obtineret* and *posset* are introduced by *quicumque* and by *quod*.

27. 28. *quod . . . facere posset*: *so far as he could do it*; a restrictive clause of characteristic. *Quod* is adverbial accusative, *to the extent to which*. See 91, Note. — *commodo*: 127.

27. 29. *defenderet*: would be subj. in dir. disc.; 199. Caesar is not altogether fair in calling attention to this decree of the senate; see 79.

Page 28: 1. CHAPTER 36. *ut* . *imperarent*: a subst. clause, used as the predicate of *esse* and meaning the same thing as *ius*; see 199 (*ius esse belli* implies a demand).

28. 2. *qui*: sc. as antecedent *ii*, subject of *imperarent*. — *vicissent . . . vicissent*: for the perf. ind. of dir. disc. — *quem ad modum*: *as*, equivalent to *ad eum modum ad quem (modum)*. For the mood of *vellent* see 207.

28. 3. *victis*: equivalent to *eis quos vicissent*, line 2. — *ad*: according to; 144, 1, *e*.

28. 4. *alterius*: of another; here used as the gen. of *alius*, as it frequently is, not of *alter*.

28. 5. *consuesse*: = *consuevisse*, with the force of a present in dir. disc.; see 166, Note. — *praescriberet*: not a condition contrary to fact, but a simple present condition (189) in ind. disc. For the mood see 207.

28. 6. *suo*: refers to the Roman people; 155. — *uteretur*: would be what mood in the dir. disc.? See 198. — *se . . . impediri*: subject of *oportere*. — *suo*: refers to Ariovistus; 155.

28. 7. *sibi*: 109. To be taken with *stipendiarios*.

28. 9. *Magnam*: emphasized by being placed at the beginning of the sentence.

28. 10. *facere*: was doing, for a pres. ind. of the dir. disc. — *suo adventu*: 119; see note on *adventu*, p. 14, l. 22. *Suo* refers to Caesar; 155.

28. 11. *sibi*: 109, referring to Ariovistus (155). — *deteriora*: less profitable, in case the Aeduans, relying on Caesar's protection, should refuse to pay tribute. — *faceret*: would probably be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 188.

28. 12. *non*: made emphatic by being put in an unusual position. — *iniuria*: see note on *iniuria*, p. 27, l. 22.

28. 13. *in eo manerent*: should abide by that; lit., remain in that. Is this a condition contrary to fact? Why? — *convenissent*: had been agreed on. The active here is best translated by an English passive; see note on *accederent*, p. 15, l. 2.

28. 14. *fecissent*: what kind of a condition? See note on p. 10, l. 24.

28. 15. *longe . . . afuturum*: would be far from helping them; lit., would be far away for them. For the case of *sibi* see 109. — *fraternum*: takes the place of an appositional gen., *fratrum*.

28. 16. *Quod . . . denuntiaret*: as for Caesar's announcing to him. In this sentence the reflexive pronoun refers to no less than three different subjects; see 155, Note. What would the mood of *denuntiaret* be in the dir. disc.? See 197.



28. 18. *congrederetur*: for the mood see 205. — *intellecturum*: sc. *esse*, and as subject *eum*, referring to Caesar.

28. 19. *quid . . . virtute possent*: *what the valor of the Germans could accomplish*: lit., *what the Germans availed in valor*. For the case of *quid* see 91, Note; for that of *virtute*, 129.

28. 22. *Haec*: with what does this word agree?

28. 23. CHAPTER 37. *Aedui questum*: sc. *veniebant* from the preceding sentence and see note on p. 1, lines 1–3. For *questum* see 223.

28. 24. *transportati essent . . . popularentur*: as they said; 187.

28. 25. *obsidibus . . . datis*: 130, denoting means. The emphasis is laid on *obsidibus* by the position of *ne . . . quidem*, but *datis* contains the main idea of the clause; see 217. Be careful in translating.

28. 26. *Ariovisti*: modifies *pacem*, not *redimere*. In English we say “buy of,” but in Latin the construction is the abl. with a preposition.

28. 27. *Treveri autem*: sc. *dixerunt* or some word of saying, implied in *veniebant questum* in the preceding sentence. — *ad ripas*: 144, 1, *b*.

28. 28. *his*: for the case see 107, *b*.

Page 29. 1. *vehementer commotus*: this fear on Caesar's part, which is greater than he acknowledges at any other time during the Gallic wars, is justified by the situation, since a combination of Ariovistus and the Suebi would place him in a position of the greatest danger. — *maturandum sibi*: sc. *esse*. Note the form of *maturandum* and trans. accordingly.

29. 3. *coniunxisset*: be careful in translating. What time is referred to?

29. 4. *resisti posset*: the subject is not *nova manus*, since *resistere* governs the dative, but both verbs are impersonal and *resisti* governs *eis* understood, referring to the forces of Ariovistus and the Suebi; see 108. — *quam celerrime potuit*: *quam celerrime* would have the same force, but Caesar often uses the fuller forms; see note on p. 6, l. 16.

29. 5. *magnis itineribus*: see note on p. 8, l. 18.

29. 7. CHAPTER 38. *tridui viam*: *three days' march*. On *tridui* (= *trium dierum*) see 102.

29. 8. *ad occupandum Vesontionem*: gerundive construction; 220. *Vesontio* is masc., contrary to the regular rule for nouns in -io.

29. 9. *quod*: the relative, as usual, agrees with the predicate noun, *oppidum*, instead of with its antecedent *Vesontionem*.

29. 11. *Id*: *this*, referring to *ad occupandum Vesontionem*. — *accideret*: subject of *praecavendum (esse)*: 199. — *magnopere sibi praecavendum*: see 160 and note the form of *praecavendum*. Do not trans. literally.

29. 12. *ad bellum usui erant*: *were useful for war*. For the case of *usui* see 113. *Ad* means literally *in the direction of*.

29. 13. *summa*: emphasized by its separation from its noun *facultas*. — *idque*: *and it, i.e., the town*.

29. 14. *muniebatur*: 164; do not use the progressive form. — *ad ducendum bellum*: *for prolonging the war*. Ariovistus wished to give time for the Suebi to join forces with him.

29. 16. *ut circino circumductum*: *as (though) drawn with a pair of compasses*. That is, the river surrounded the town in a perfect circle, except for an interval of about 1600 feet, which was defended by a high hill.

29. 17. *pedum*: see 118, 102, and 103, Note.

29. 18. *qua flumen intermittit*: *where the river stops, i.e., does not surround the town*. — *magna altitudine*: 128.

29. 19. *ita ut*: *so completely that*. — *radices*: object of *contingant*, which governs the acc., though compounded with *con*; see 107, Note. — *ex utraque parte*: 142, 4, b.

29. 20. *Hunc*: refers to what? Look for a masc. noun in the preceding sentence. Is *hunc* governed by *circumdatus* or *efficit*? Why? — *arcem*: 88.

29. 22. *magnis . . . itineribus*: see note on p. 8, l. 18.

29. 24. CHAPTER 39. *ad Vesontionem*: *in the neighborhood of Vesontio*. The prep. is used because Caesar did not remain in the town all the time, but foraged in its vicinity.

29. 25. *moratur*: for the mood and tense see 181. — *ex percontatione*: *because of the questions*; lit., *from the questioning*.

The phrase gives the cause of *occupavit*, p. 30, l. 3. Read the whole sentence through carefully before attempting to translate it.

29. 26. *vocibus*: *talk, gossip*, in reply to the questions of the Roman soldiers, and otherwise.

29. 27. *magnitudine . . . virtute . . . exercitatione*: 128 (second example).

29. 28. *praedicabant*: 163; do not use the progressive form in translating.

Page 30. 1. *cum his congressos*: *when they had engaged in battle with these*; equivalent to a *cum*-clause of attendant circumstances. — *vultum*: (*savage*) *expression*; the adjective is implied in the context.

30. 2. *aciem*: (*fierce*) *glance*; cf. *vultum* in the preceding line.

30. 3. *tantus subito timor*: *such sudden terror*; lit., *such terror on a sudden*, but note the position of *subito*. — *non mediocriter*: *to no slight degree, i.e., to a very high degree*. See 227.

30. 4. *mentes animosque*: *the minds and hearts*. *Mentes* is intellectual, *animos* emotional.

30. 5. *Hic*: sc. *timor*. — *ortus est a*: *began with*. Notice the difference between the Latin and the English idiom, as indicated by the prepositions. — *tribunis militum*: these were ordinarily officers of experience, six to a legion, who commanded the legion in rotation. In Caesar's army, however, the *tribuni* and the *praefecti* were young men who had joined the army from friendship to Caesar, and for the sake of experience and booty, and, as he says, were in many cases not trained soldiers. See 21. — *praefectis*: ordinarily this word is applied to officers who commanded the cavalry and the auxiliary troops, but here it evidently does not include the commanders of the cavalry, who were experienced officers; see l. 18. See also the preceding note on *tribunis militum*.

30. 7. *non magnum*: see note on *non mediocriter* in line 3.

30. 8. *alius alia causa illata*: *one giving one reason and another another*; see VOCAB. under *alius*. — *quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam diceret*: sc. *domum*; *which he said made it imperative for him to go home*. Lit., *which he said was necessary to himself*

for departing; for the mood of *diceret*, see 210. Here the verb of saying itself is in the subj.; cf. *existimarent*, p. 17, l. 28.

30. 9. *voluntate*: 126.

30. 11. *remanebant*: do not translate by the progressive form. — *vultum fingere*: to assume an expression (of indifference to the danger); i.e., to conceal their fear.

30. 13. *tabernaculis*: see 54.

30. 15. *Vulgo*: the adverb. — *totis castris*: throughout the whole camp; for the omission of the preposition see 132. — *obsignabantur*: were (signed and) sealed. That is, they drew up formal wills, which were duly witnessed.

30. 16. *vocibus*: talk; cf. p. 29, l. 26.

30. 17. *in castris*: i.e., in military life. — *milites*: here used in the special sense of the *legionary* (private) soldiers, exclusive of the centurions. — *centuriones*: see 23.

30. 18. *quique*: = *et ii qui*; see note on *praefectis*, l. 5.

30. 19. *Qui se ex his*: = *ex his ii qui se*. *Se* is the subject of *existimari*, wished that they should be thought, instead of wished to be thought.

30. 22. *rem frumentariam*: the object of *timere*, like *angustias* and *magnitudinem*, by the figure called prolepsis (anticipation); cf. "I know you, who you are." Trans. as if it were, *ut res frumentaria satis commode supportari posset*, and for the translation of *ut* see 203.

30. 24. *cum . . . iussisset*: stands for what mood and tense of the dir. disc.? What time is referred to?

30. 25. *dicto*: governed by the phrase *fore audientes*, which is equivalent to a verb meaning obey; see 107, a.

30. 26. *signa laturos*: sc. *esse*.

30. 28. CHAPTER 40. *omniumque ordinum . . . centurionibus*: see 23 and 24.

30. 30. *quam in partem . . . ducerentur*: subject of *quaerendum* and *cogitandum* (*esse*); for the mood see 198. Note the tense and trans. accordingly.

Page 31. 1. *putarent*: subj. representing the thought of Caesar as commander of the army, not as the writer of the *Commentaries*; cf. *tenebat*, p. 6, l. 28. — *Ariovistum*: *Ariovistus*, he said; ind.

disc., implied in *incusavit*. — *se consule*: in his own (Caesar's) consulship, the year before.

31. 2. *cupidissime* appetisse: an exaggeration. The Roman senate voluntarily conferred on Ariovistus the title "Friend of the Roman People." See 71 and 79, end. Suetonius, who wrote a Life of Caesar, during the reign of Hadrian, tells us that Asinius Pollio accused Caesar of having written untruthfully at times, in part inadvertently, and in part intentionally, to make a better impression on his readers. Pollio thought that if Caesar had lived longer, he would have rewritten the *Commentaries* and made corrections in them.

31. 3. *ab officio*: from his allegiance.

31. 4. *iudicaret*: a rhetorical question, representing *iudicet* of the dir. disc.; see 206. — *Sibi* . . . *persuaderi*: he for his part was convinced. What is the lit. trans.? See 108. *Quidem* emphasizes *sibi*. — *cognitis* . . . *perspecta*: in connection with *repudiaturum* (*esse*) the perfect participles have the force of future perfects, when his demands should be known, etc. That is, they represent time past from a future standpoint.

31. 7. *intulisset*: be careful of the trans. See note on p. 30, l. 24.

31. 8. *vererentur* . . . *desperarent*: see note on *iudicaret* in line 4. — *sua* . . . *ipsius*: their own or his. *Ipsius* is the indirect reflexive; 157.

31. 10. *periculum*: trial; see VOCAB. and note the derivation of the word. — *memoria*: 139. — *Cimbris et Teutonis*: see 76 and 77.

31. 12. *meritus*: sc. *esse*; nominative because the subject is the same as that of the verb on which the infinitive depends. — *videbatur*: indicative in a *cum*-clause expressing time, on which occasion the army seemed (185). The indicative is retained in ind. disc., because *videbatur* is not strictly a part of the ind. disc.; *meritus videbatur* = *mereretur, ut videbatur*. — *factum*: what is to be supplied? See note on p. 1, lines 1-3.

31. 13. *servili tumultu*: do not trans. literally; it means at the time of the insurrection of the slaves; 138. The adjective *servili* has the force of a subjective genitive. The reference is

to the uprising under Spartacus, the gladiator, in 73–71 B.C. Many of the slaves were Cimbri and Teutones, descended from those who had been captured by Marius. — *quos tamen*: *and yet these* (158, a); the antecedent of *quos* is *servorum*, implied in *servili*; *tamen* implies that the slaves had had the advantage of Ariovistus and his army in their Roman training. — *aliquid*: *somewhat, to some extent*; 91, Note.

31. 14. *quae*: when a rel. pron. has as its antecedents two or more common nouns of different genders, it is frequently in the neut. plur.

31. 15. *iudicari posse*: on the former see 213; on the latter, 204. — *quantum . . . constantia*: *how great the advantage of firmness is*, a general truth put into a past tense by the rule of the sequence of tenses; 171. Note the emphatic position of *constantia*. For the case of *boni* see 99. What would be the mood of *haberet* in the dir. disc.? Why?

31. 16. *quos*: the antecedent is the following *hos*, referring to the slaves implied in *servili*.

31. 17. *victores*: with the force of an adjective, *flushed with victory*; 152, Note.

31. 20. *congressi . . . superassent* (= *superavissent*): *had fought with and conquered*.

31. 21. *qui tamen*: for the trans. cf. *quos tamen*, in line 13.

31. 22. *exercitui*: 114.

31. 23. *adversum proelium*: referring to the defeat of the Aeduans by Ariovistus; see Chapter 31 (p. 23, l. 29 ff.).

31. 24. *defatigatis*: *de-* is intensive.

31. 25. *castris . . . ac paludibus*: see note on *memoria*, p. 6, l. 28.

31. 26. *sui potestatem*: *chance at him, i.e., opportunity of attacking him*. On *sui* see 98.

31. 27. *subito adortum . . . vicisse*: *had surprised . . . and conquered*; more lit., *had suddenly attacked and conquered*.

31. 28. *Cui rationi . . . hac*: the relative clause precedes and contains the antecedent. A more normal order would be, *ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus hac ratione capi posse, cui, etc.*

31. 32. Qui: *those who*; the antecedent is *eos* understood, the subject of *facere*. — *rei frumentariae simulationem*: a pretence of (anxiety about) the supply of grain.

31. 33. cum: how should this word be translated? What gives it this force?

Page 32. 1. *de officio imperatoris*: about the commander's (readiness to do his) duty. — *praescribere*: sc. *officium*, (to try) to show him what his duty was.

32. 2. *sibi . . . curae*: 113 and Note. — *esse*: note the tense, and translate accordingly. Note the tenses also of the following infinitives. — *frumentum . . . frumenta*: grain supply, grain; see note on p. 12, l. 22.

32. 4. *ipsos . . . iudicatueros*: they would judge for themselves. We should be more likely to say *they could*. Caesar indicates his determination to go on, which he expresses in definite terms below (lines 12 ff.).

32. 5. *Quod . . . dicantur*: sc. *milites*, as to its being said that the soldiers, etc.; lit., as to the fact that the soldiers were said; see 197. For the tense of *dicantur* see 173.

32. 6. *nihil*: 91, Note. — *scire*: sc. *se*.

32. 7. *quibuscumque*: in the case of those whose armies; a general relative, having for its antecedent *eis* understood, a dat. governed by *defuisse*. *Quibuscumque* is governed by the phrase *dicto audiens*; see note on p. 30, l. 25.

32. 8. *male re gesta*: the abl. abs. denotes cause (130). — *aliquo . . . comperto*: the part. contains the main idea, through the discovery of some criminal act; 217.

32. 9. *avaritiam esse convictam*: avarice had been proved (against him). We should be likely to say in English, *he had been convicted of avarice*. — *innocentiam*: for the meaning see VOCAB., and note that the word is contrasted with *avaritiam*.

32. 10. *perpetua vita*: 137. — *bello*: 138. In both *bello* and *vita* there is an idea of means, since *perspectam esse* is nearly equivalent to *was shown*.

32. 12. *quod*: the antecedent is *id*, the object of *repraesentaturum*. — *collaturus fuisset*: be careful in translating. What

is denoted by the first periphrastic conjugation? Note the return to the secondary sequence.

32. 13. *de quarta vigilia*: 142, 3, c, and 140.

32. 16. *valeret*: *would prevail*; subj. in a double indirect question. See 198, a. — *praeterea*: *else*; lit., *besides* the tenth legion.

32. 18. *praetoriam cohortem*: *body-guard*. *Praetor* originally meant *leader, general*, whence *praetoria cohors, the general's cohort*. — *legioni*: 107, a.

32. 19. *praecipue . . . maxime*: note the emphatic positions of the adverbs.

32. 21. CHAPTER 41. *mirum in modum*: *to a remarkable degree*.

32. 23. *innata est*: instead of being plural, the verb agrees with the nearer of the two subjects, which form one idea. See 85, Note. — *princeps . . . gratias egit*: for the trans. of *princeps* see 148.

32. 24. *se*: *them*; lit., *it*, referring to the legion.

32. 25. *fecisset*: for the mood see 187.

32. 27. *primorum ordinum*: see note on *omnium ordinum*, p. 30, l. 28.

32. 28. *egerunt*: *arranged*; see note on *egit*, p. 10, l. 22. — *uti Caesari satisfacerent*: *to apologize to Caesar*. For the case of *Caesari* see 107, a. — *se neque umquam dubitasse*: *and to say that they had never doubted*. The ind. disc. is implied in *satisfacerent*.

32. 29. *suum . . . sed imperatoris*: used in the predicate, and hence to be translated after *esse*.

Page 33. 2. *ex Gallis . . . maximam*: we should say, *more confidence in him than in all the other Gauls*. For the case of *ei* see note on *cui*, p. 15, l. 16.

33. 3. *ut . . . duceret*: to be taken with *profectus est, intending to lead*; 175. — *milium amplius quinquaginta*: see 118 and 102. — *locis apertis*: *through open country*; lit., *in open country*. See 132.

33. 5. *cum iter non intermitteret*: *having marched without cessation*. For the mood see 185.

33. 7. *nostris*: what must be supplied?



33. 9. CHAPTER 42. *quod antea*, etc.: the beginning of ind. disc., implied in *legatos mittit*. How should the translation be introduced? — *postulasset*: sc. *Caesar*.

33. 10. *per se*: so far as he (*Ariovistus*) was concerned. — *accessisset*: sc. *Caesar*. — *seque*: *se* does duty both as the subject of *existimare* and of *posse*; = *se existimare se posse*.

33. 12. *reverti*: note the tense and translate accordingly.

33. 13. *petenti*: sc. *sibi*, referring to *Caesar*.

33. 14. *pro*: considering; i.e., when *Ariovistus* took into consideration the services which *Caesar* personally and the Roman people had rendered him.

33. 16. *fore uti . . . desisteret*: that he would desist from his stubbornness; lit., that it would be (the case) that he would, etc. *Fore ut desisteret* is equivalent to the fut. infin. *desititurum esse*. The form *fore ut* is perhaps more emphatic; that he would unquestionably desist. *Uti desisteret* is a subst. clause, subject of *fore*; 200. For the case of *pertinacia* see 115.

33. 17. *colloquio*: 113.

33. 18. *saepe ultro citroque*: the adverbs modify *mitterentur*, and *cum*, as is often the case, is postponed. See note on p. 20, l. 9.

33. 19. *ne . . . adduceret*: 199.

33. 20. *vereri se*: why the infin.? If necessary, see note on *quod antea*, in line 9. — *circumveniretur*: 203. Note that *venire* becomes transitive when compounded with *circum*.

33. 21. *veniret*: 205. — *alia ratione*: on any other condition; 126.

33. 23. *interposita causa*: by affording an excuse to *Ariovistus* for declining the conference; what is the lit. trans.? — *tolli*: to be prevented.

33. 24. *Gallorum equitatus*: *Caesar's* cavalry consisted of Gauls, and he feared that they might either betray him to *Ariovistus* or might be unable to defend him against the German horsemen.

33. 25. *commodissimum*: agrees with *imponere* below; he judged that the best thing (to do) was to place, etc. Read the sentence through carefully before translating. — *Gallis equitibus*:

33. 26. *eo*: the adverb is here equivalent to *in eos*, i.e., *in equos*. — *legionarios milites legionis decimae*: not pleonastic, since there were other troops connected with the legion; it might be translated *the regulars of the tenth legion*.

33. 28. *si quid opus facto esset*: *if there should be any need of action*. *Facto* is abl. governed by *opus*. On *quid* see 91, Note.

Page 34. 1. *fieret*: note the tense and trans. accordingly. *Cum* may be translated *while*. — *non irridicule*: a case of *litotes*; see 226; how may it be translated?

34. 3. *pollicitum*: the perf. part. agreeing with *eum* (or *illum*) = *Caesarem* understood, subject of *rescribere*. It may be translated as a finite verb cognate with that represented by *rescribere*. — *se*: subject of *habiturum (esse)*.

34. 4. *ad equum rescribere*: used with the double meaning: (1) enroll in the cavalry; (2) enroll among the *equites*, or knights, a class of Roman citizens inferior in rank to the nobles, or men of the senatorial order, but superior to the common people. The latter idea is more prominent (cf. *plus quam pollicitus est . . . facere*), hence we may translate *he was making knights of them*.

34. 5. CHAPTER 43. *tumulus terrenus*: *a mound (or hill) of earth*, i.e., bare of trees and not rocky.

34. 6. *satis grandis*: *of quite good size*. The hill which has been identified with this is over 170 feet in elevation. — *aequo fere spatio*: 125.

34. 7. *ut erat dictum*: 160. Note the tense and be careful of the meaning of the verb.

34. 8. *equis*: *on horseback*; 119 and Note.

34. 9. *passibus ducentis*: 125; the phrase modifies *ab*, which here means *away from* or *distant from*.

34. 10. *pari intervallo*: i.e., two hundred paces; 126. — *ex equis*: *on horseback*; the Latin idiom is "*from horseback*."

34. 11. *colloquerentur . . . adducerent*: 199. — *denos*: *ten each*; note the distributive numeral.

34. 13. *Ubi eo ventum est*: 160; *eo* is the adverb. For the mood and tense of *ventum est* see 180. — *initio*: 138.

34. 14. *in eum*: *towards him*, Ariovistus. — *quod . . . appellatus esset*: *the fact that he had been called king*, a subst. clause in

apposition with *beneficia*; is subjunctive because of the idea of ind. disc. implied in *commemoravit*. — *quod amicus*: what must be supplied? Note the preceding clause.

34. 16. *missa*: sc. *essent*. — *quam rem . . docebat*: and he said that this honor; lit., this thing; see note on p. 4, l. 25. The singular *quam rem* is used because the calling of Ariovistus king and friend and the sending of gifts were parts of the same ceremony. *Docebat* is not part of the ind. disc.; hence the mood. — *paucis*: 107, b.

34. 17. *pro*: in return for; 142, 6, b. — *consuesse tribui*: was usually conferred.

34. 18. *illum*: that he (Ariovistus), resuming the ind. disc. — *aditum*: i.e., he did not have any good reason for appearing before the Roman senate.

34. 19. *sua ac senatus*: these words modify *beneficio* as well as *liberalitate*, but *sua* agrees with the nearer of the two words.

34. 20. *ea praemia*: referring both to the honor and to the gifts; translate accordingly.

34. 22. *necessitudinis*: alliance. — *ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent*: existed between themselves (the Roman people) and the Aeduans. For the case of *ipsis* see 109; for the mood of *intercederet*, 198.

34. 23. *in eos*: with regard to them (the Aeduans); 143, 1, c.

34. 24. *ut*: how, introducing an indirect question; 198~

34. 25. *etiam*: even. Do not overlook such words as this.

34. 26. *appetissent*: 211; cf. 184. — *hanc*: this, referring to the following clause with *ut*, but agreeing with the predicate noun *consuetudinem*.

34. 27. *sui nihil*: nothing of theirs, i.e., of their possessions. *Sui* is the neuter of the reflexive pronoun used as a subst.; for the case see 99.

34. 28. *gratia . . . honore*: 129.

34. 29. *quod*: the antecedent is *id*. Read the sentence through carefully and begin to trans. with *quis*.

34. 30. *id . . . eripi*: object of *pati* (213). Trans. by a clause with *that*. — *eis*: 111. — *posset*: subj. in a rhetorical question in ind. disc. The direct form would be *quis pati possit*; see 206.

Page 35. 1. in *mandatis dederat*: *he had enjoined upon, i.e.*, he repeated the demands which he had instructed the envoys to make of Ariovistus. *Legatis* is governed by the phrase in *mandatis dederat*, = *mandaverat*. See 106, and cf. *fidem habebat*, p. 15, l. 16.

35. 2. *ne*: *namely that . . . not*, introducing clauses which explain *eadem*. — *inferret . . . redderet . . . pateretur*: 205.

35. 4. *posset*: 209. What kind of a condition in *dir. disc.*? Consider the time referred to. — *at*: *at least*. — *quos amplius*: *any more of them*; *lit., any . . . further (i.e., hereafter)*; see note on p. 27, l. 17.

35. 6. CHAPTER 44. *pauca*: *sc. verba*, object of *respondit*. It may be translated, *briefly*.

35. 7. *multa*: *many things*; the *adj.* is used as a substantive (152, a), object of *praedicavit*; the two together may be translated, *he boasted greatly*. — *transisse . . . sese*: note the mood; what does it show? What word must be used to introduce the translation?

35. 8. *rogatum et arcessitum*: participles with causal force; 215, Note.

35. 9. *magna spe magnisque praemiis*: hendiadys, equivalent to *magna spe magnorum praemiorum*, 225.

35. 11. *ab ipsis*: *by (the Gauls) themselves*. — *voluntate*: 126.

35. 12. *stipendium capere*: *sc. se*. — *iure*: 127. — *quod*: the relative; its antecedent is of course *stipendium*.

35. 13. *victis*: used as a subst.; for the case see 107, b. — *consuerint*: = *consueverint*. For the tense see 166, second Note.

35. 15. *ad se oppugnandum*: 220.

35. 16. *castra habuisse*: *i.e.*, had made formal war.

35. 17. *proelio*: 119.

35. 18. *velint*: the *pres. subj.*, instead of the *imperf.* required by the sequence of tenses, is used for vividness or perhaps for variety; so *velint* and *pependerint* below. See 173. — *decertare*: *to fight it out*; note the force of *de-*, and cf. *defatigatis*, p. 31, l. 24.

35. 19. *pace*: 121. — *uti*: note the quantity of the *ū*; what does it show? — *iniquum*: the adjective modifies *recusare*, which is equivalent to a noun, the subject of *esse* (213). — *de stipendio*

recusare: *i.e.*, to refuse to pay the tribute; note the lit. trans.

35. 20. sua: of course refers to the Gauls; for the case see 126. — ad: *up to*; 144, 1, d.

35. 21. ornamento . . . praesidio . . . detrimento: 113.

35. 22. hac spe: 126.

35. 23. petisse: sc. *eam*, referring to *amicitiam*. — per: *through the influence of*; 144, 3, b.

35. 24. dediticii: *prisoners of war*; here referring to the hostages of the Aedui, on the retaining of which by Ariovistus the payment of the tribute depended.

35. 26. Quod . . . traducat: 197.

35. 27. id: *this thing*, referring to the preceding *quod*-clause. — sui muniendi . . . Galliae impugnandae: gen. of the gerundive, governed by *causa*, *for the sake of*; 220.

35. 28. facere: note the tense. — eius rei: cf. *id* above; *rei* is expressed because the form of *eius* does not determine its gender. — testimonio: 113. — quod . . . venerit: *the fact that he had not come*. A subst. clause, subject of *esse*, *testimonio* taking the place of a predicate noun. So the following *quod*-clause. For the mood see 207. — nisi rogatus: *without being asked*. The pres. part. is much more common in English than in Latin, where the ideas expressed by the English pres. part. must be expressed in other ways.

35. 29. defenderit: *warded off, i.e.*, defended himself against it.

35. 30. prius . . . quam . . . populum Romanum: *before the Roman people*. *Quam* is here the adverb. With *prius* . . . *quam* as a conjunction the construction would have been *priusquam populus Romanus venisset*. The statement is not true, since the Romans had subdued the Allobroges in 121 B.C.

Page 36. 2. finibus: 115. — Quid sibi vellet: *what did he mean?* See 206.

36. 3. venerit: cf. *vellet* in line 2.

36. 4. hanc . . . Galliam: *this part of Gaul*, where they then were; lit., *this Gaul*. — sicut illam nostram: supply the words necessary to complete the sentence on the principle given in the note on p. 1, lines 1-3. — Ut: in order to determine the meaning

of this word, read the sentence through, and remember that all subordinate clauses are in the subj. in ind. disc. — *ipsi*: to him, referring to Ariovistus. — *concedi*: subject of *oporteret* and used impersonally; *no concession ought to be made, or no indulgence ought to be shown*.

36. 6. *item*: do not omit this word. — *quod*: in that, because.

36. 8. *Quod . . . diceret*: 197. — *appellatos*: sc. *esse*.

36. 9. *rerum*: of the facts; for the case see 104.

36. 10. *bello Allobrogum proximo*: in the recent war with the Allobroges, referring to the revolt of the Allobroges against the Romans. For the case of *bello* see 138.

36. 11. *ipsos*: i.e., the Aeduans.

36. 12. *Aedui*: we should use the pronoun here, and the noun in place of *ipsos* above; and that the Aeduans themselves in the wars which they had had, etc.

36. 13. *Debere se suspicari*: that he had good reason to suspect; lit., he ought to suspect.

36. 14. *quod . . . habeat*: with reference to his having an army in Gaul; to be taken with *suspicari*. The sentence should be translated freely. Try to express the thought in the best and clearest English possible. Supply *eum*, referring to *exercitum*, as the object of *habere*.

36. 15. *Qui nisi*: now if he (Caesar) did not; 158, a.

36. 18. *Quod si*: and if; lit., as to which, if. — *interfecerit*: refers to what time (note *facturum*); trans. accordingly.

36. 19. *gratum esse facturum*: he would confer a favor on; lit., would do a thing pleasing to. *Gratum* is the neuter of the adjective, used as a noun; 152, a. — *id se . . . compertum habere*: he was assured of this; more lit., he had found this out. *Compertum habere* differs very little in meaning, if at all, from *comperisse*; see 218 and note on p. 12, l. 6.

36. 20. *ab ipsis per eorum nuntios*: from these men themselves through their (own) messages; i.e., his information was direct, not indirect. Caesar had many enemies at Rome, who would have been glad to hear of his death. — *quorum omnium . . . posset*: and he could purchase the favor . . . of all these men; *quorum* refers to *ipsis* and *eorum*; its antecedent is *eorum*.

There is no doubt that Ariovistus spoke the truth with regard to the general situation, though it may be uncertain whether he was in direct communication with any one at Rome. He was well informed on the subject of Roman politics, at any rate.

36. 21. *morte*: 120; observe that it is merely the meaning of the word *redimere* which makes this a special variety of the abl. of means.

36. 22. *Quod si*: *but if*; see note on *quod si* in line 18. — *discessisset*: sc. *Caesar*; see note on *interfecerit* in line 18. Note the change to secondary tenses, and see 173.

36. 23. *magno . . . praemio*: the words are emphasized by their separation; for the case see 123.

36. 25. *eius*: *on his part*; lit., *of his*; 97.

36. 26. CHAPTER 45. *in eam sententiam: to show*, followed by the indirect question, *quare . . . non posset*; lit., *to this effect*, or *purport*.

36. 27. *neque suam . . . pati*: what is shown by the infin.? Translate accordingly.

36. 28. *uti desereret*: 200.

36. 30. *Ariovisti . . . populi Romani*: the genitives are used predicatively; 96 and Note to 103.

Page 37. 1. *Avernos et Rutenos*: in 121 B.C. — *quibus . . . ignovisset*: *although the Roman people had pardoned them*; 194. For the case of *quibus*, 107, a.

37. 2. *redegisset*: since this verb takes a direct object, we must supply *eos*.

37. 3. *imposuisset*: sc. *eis*; 107, b.

37. 4. *antiquissimum quodque tempus*: *priority of time* with regard to their coming into Gaul; for the lit. trans., consult 159.

37. 7. *bello victam*: the participle has concessive force; 215, Note.

37. 8. *voluisset*: supply as subject *is*, referring to the senate; it may be translated *they*.

37. 9. CHAPTER 46. *geruntur*: for the mood and tense see 182.

37. 10. *propius tumulum*: *nearer the mound*. *Propius* has the force of a preposition. — *accedere*: note the tense of this and the following infinitives, and translate accordingly.

37. 13. *ne quod omnino . . . reicerent*: *not to throw back any weapon at all*; 199.

37. 14. *legionis*: 98. Be careful in translating.

37. 15. *cum equitatu proelium*: to be taken together, = *proelium equestre*. Prepositional phrases do not often qualify nouns. — *fore*: = *futurum esse*. — *videbat*: 193. — *committendum* (sc. *esse*) *non putabat ut*: *he thought he ought not to run the risk that*; more lit., *that it ought not to be allowed to happen that*. The clause *ut . . . posset* is the subject of *committendum*. For the meaning of *committendum* cf. p. 11, l. 3.

37. 16. *posset*: 200.

37. 17. *per fidem*: *through their confidence (in him)*. — *in colloquio*: *during a parley*; do not connect this phrase with *per fidem*.

37. 18. *Posteaquam*: another form for *postquam*; 180. — *in vulgus militum*: *among the common soldiers*; for the case of *militum* see 99. — *qua arrogantia . . . usus*: *with what arrogance*; lit., *making use of what arrogance*.

37. 19. *omni Gallia . . . interdixisset*: *had refused the Romans access to any part of Gaul*; more lit., *had interdicted them from all Gaul*. For the mood of *interdixisset* (and *fecisset*) see 198; for the case of *Romanis*, 109; for that of *Gallia*, 115.

37. 21. *ut diremisset*: *ut* here means *how*; cf. p. 34, l. 24. — *maior . . . maius*: so-called chiasitic order, instead of *maior alacritas maiusque studium pugnandi*.

37. 24. CHAPTER 47. *Biduo post*: *on the following day*; according to the Roman way of reckoning, *two days later*; cf. *pridie eius diei*, p. 39, l. 1, and see 140. For the case of *biduo* see 125.

37. 25. *Velle se*: note the infin., and trans. accordingly. — *coeptae*: sc. *essent*. The passive of *coepi* is used when the dependent infinitive is passive.

37. 26. *uti . . . constitueret*: *he asked that he would appoint*; a verb of requesting is implied; 199.

37. 27. *minus*: = *non*; cf. p. 12, l. 25. — *suis*: sc. *legatis*, referring to Caesar's staff, while *se* refers to Ariovistus; see 155. *E suis (legatis) legatum aliquem* may be translated, *one of his officers*.



37. 28. *Colloquendi . . . causa*: reason for holding a conference; lit., of holding a conference.

Page 39. 1. *pridie eius diei*: the day before (that day); *eius diei* need not be translated. See note on *biduo post*, p. 37, l. 24.

39. 2. *quin . . . conicerent*: from hurling; more lit., but that they should hurl; so that they should not hurl; 178.

39. 3. *ex suis sese*: (sc. *legatis* with *suis*) emphatic reflexives, one of his own officers.—*magno cum periculo . . . missurum (esse)* . . . *existimabat*: he thought it would be very dangerous for him to send, etc.; lit., that he would send with great danger.

39. 6. *Commodissimum*: governs *mittere*, in line 12, which is the subject of *visum est*. This long sentence should be read through carefully in Latin and the relations of the words noted.—C. *Valerium Procillum*: Caesar thought it dangerous to send a Roman (*legatum e suis*), but believed that he could more safely send a Gaul, for the reasons given below. On becoming a Roman citizen, the father had, according to the usual custom, assumed the first two names of his patron C. Valerius Flaccus, keeping his own name of Caburus as a cognomen.

39. 7. *summa . . . humanitate*: 128.

39. 8. *civitate donatus erat*: had been presented with (Roman) citizenship; for the case of *civitate*, see 119.

39. 10. *qua multa . . . utebatur*: which Ariovistus used readily; lit., used much. In English we should have an adverb, but *multa* is an adjective agreeing with *qua*; see 147. As we see from this passage, the Germans spoke a different language from that of the Gauls (see p. 1, l. 3), namely that from which modern German is descended. It was a sister-language to Greek, Latin, Celtic, and English.—*longinqua consuetudine*: from long practice; 122. Ariovistus had spent so much time in Gaul that he spoke the language readily and fluently.

39. 11. *quod . . . esset*: and because he thought there was; the subj. indicates that this was Caesar's thought at the time.—*Germanis*: 110.

39. 12. *una*: adv.; sc. *cum eo*.

39. 13. *hospitio . . . utebatur*: i.e., was a guest-friend of

Ariovistus. The relation of guest and host was sacred and binding in ancient times.

39. 14. *quae diceret Ariovistus: what Ariovistus had to say; diceret* stands for a fut. of the dir. disc. — *cognoscerent . . . referrent: 199.*

39. 15. *apud se: before him, in his presence.* — *conspexisset: note the tense; the idea is, when he had got them into his power.*

39. 16. *conclamavit: shouted out; con-* has intensive force. — *Quid: why?* — *venirent: a question in ind. disc.; see 206.* Note the tense.

39. 17. *an speculandi causa: sc. venirent; was it for the purpose of playing the spy?* Since the first part of the double question is omitted, *an* should not be translated “or.” — *Conantes: sc. eos, when they attempted.*

39. 20. CHAPTER 48. *a: away from; cf. p. 34, l. 9.* For the case of *milibus*, see 125. — *Postridie eius diei: see note on pridie eius diei, line 1.*

39. 22. *milibus . . . duobus: 125.* — *eo consilio, uti: with the design of; more lit., with this design, that.* *Uti . . . intercluderet* is a subst. clause, in apposition with *consilio*; for the mood see 199.

39. 23. *frumento commeatuque: 115.*

39. 24. *supportaretur: for the mood see 211.* — *Ex: after; 142, 4, c.*

39. 25. *dies continuos quinque: 91.*

39. 26. *aciem instructam habuit: kept his army drawn up in line of battle.* Here *instructam habuit* has quite a different meaning from that of *instruxit*; cf. *coactam habebat*, p. 12, l. 6, and the note. — *ut . . . non deesset: a clause of purpose (175), in spite of the negative non.* *Non* is closely connected with *deesset*, and by litotes (225) the two are equivalent to an emphatic *esset*, the meaning being *that he might have ample opportunity.*

39. 27. *vellet: 211.*

39. 29. *his omnibus diebus: 137.* — *castris: 119, Note.* Cf. note on *memoria*, p. 6, l. 28.

39. 30. *hoc: the following.*

Page 40. 1. *quo: 119 and Note.*

40. 2. *numero*: 129. *Totidem numero pedites* may be translated, *an equal number of foot-soldiers*. — *velocissimi ac fortissimi*: 145 and 150.

40. 3. *quos* . *singuli singulos delegerant*: *whom they had chosen* . . . *each cavalryman selecting one*. The subject of *delegerant* is *ii* understood, = *equites*, and *singuli* is in apposition with *ii*.

40. 4. *cum his*: referring to the *pedites*. The subject of *versabantur* is *equites* understood.

40. 5. *Ad eos* . *hi*: also refer to *pedites*. — *si quid erat durius*: *if there was any difficulty*; lit., *anything harder (than usual)*.

40. 6. *si qui*: *if anyone*; the more usual form of the nom. sing. masc. of the indefinite pronoun is *quis*, but *qui* is also used, as here. — *graviores*: *very severe*; lit., *severer (than common)*; cf. *durius*, line 5, and the note.

40. 7. *quo*: adv., *anywhere, in any direction*. — *longius* . . . *celerius*: the comparatives have the same force as *durius* (line 5) and *graviores* (line 6).

40. 8. *prodeundum* . *recipiendum*: be careful of the meaning.

40. 9. *exercitatione*: 122. — *iubis*: 119, Note. — *sublevati*: *assisting themselves (by)*; i.e., *clinging (to)*; the verb has a middle or reflexive force.

40. 10. *cursum adaequarent*: *they equalled their pace*.

40. 11. CHAPTER 49. *Ubi* . . . *intellexit*: 180. — *castris*: see note on p. 39, l. 29. — *ne* . . . *prohiberetur*: 175. With what verb is this clause to be taken? Read the sentence through carefully before translating.

40. 13. *passus sexcentos*: 91. What other construction might have been used? Cf. p. 39, l. 19.

40. 14. *ab*: for the meaning of *ab* see note on p. 34, l. 9. — *castris*: 114. — *triplici*: see 41.

40. 16. *in armis*: we should say, *under arms*. — *esse*: 199, Note. — *munire*: *to lay out*; 199, Note, 51, and 52.

40. 18. *hominum sedecim milia expedita*: *sixteen thousand light-armed troops*. Notice that in Latin *expedita* agrees with *milia*, not with *hominum*. *Numero* need not be translated.

40. 19. *quae copiae*: *that these forces*; for the mood of *perterrent* and *prohiberent*, see 177.

40. 21. *Nihilo setius*: *nevertheless*, = *nihilo minus*. For the case of *nihilo* see 125. — *ut*: note the mood which follows and translate accordingly.

40. 22. *propulsare*: *to keep off*; 199, Note. — *opus*: referring to *castra munire*, line 16.

40. 24. *castra maiora*: *i.e.*, his former camp, as is shown by *reduxit*.

40. 26. CHAPTER 50. *instituto suo*: *according to his regular custom*; 127.

Page 41. 1. *hostibus*: 106.

41. 2. *prodire*: *were coming out*; the present, as is frequently the case in *eo* and its compounds, is nearly equivalent to a future.

41. 4. *quae . . . oppugnaret*: note the mood. What does it indicate?

41. 5. *Acriter utrimque . . . pugnatum est*: *both sides fought fiercely*. What is the lit. trans.?

41. 10. *decertaret*: note the tense and the force of *de-*; *would not (yet) fight a decisive battle*. — *hanc . . . causam*: *he found out that this was the reason*; in the Latin *hanc causam* is the direct object of *reperiebat*.

41. 11. *quod . . . esset*: *that this was*, etc., a subst. clause in apposition with *causam*. For the mood see 210. — *ut . . . declararent*: a subst. clause in apposition with *consuetudo*; for the mood see 200.

41. 12. *sortibus et vaticinationibus*: *by the use of lots and by their predictions*. In the case of the former certain signs were put upon bits of the branches of a fruitful tree, which were scattered over a white cloth. These were then taken up at random and interpreted by women (*matres familiae*), who were supposed by the Germans to have a special power of divination. The *vaticationes* were predictions, especially from the sound of running waters.

41. 13. *utrum . . . necne*: *whether . . . or not*; a double indirect question; see 198, a. — *proelium . . . esset*: the subject of *esset* is *proelium committi*; *ex usu*, in the predicate, is about equivalent in meaning to *utile*. See 142, 4, d.

41. 14. *eas ita dicere*: *that they* (the matrons) *made the following statement*, passing into formal ind. disc. — *fas*: *the will of the gods*; lit., *right* from the religious point of view. — *Germanos superare*: subject of *esse*; *non esse fas . . . superare* is about equivalent to *non superaturos esse*.

41. 15. *contendissent*: represents what tense of the dir. disc.? See the previous note for the time of the conclusion.

41. 16. CHAPTER 51. *Postridie eius diei*: see note on p. 39, l. 20. — *praesidio utrisque castris*: 113.

41. 17. *quod satis esse visum est*: *which seemed sufficient*. The antecedent of *quod* is *id* (*praesidium*) implied in *praesidio*. — *alarios*: see 35.

41. 19. *quod minus . . . valebat*: *because he was less strong*; *minus* is an adv. — *pro*: *in proportion to*.

41. 20. *ad speciem*: *to make a show*; lit. *for a show*; *i.e.*, he stationed the auxiliary troops (*alarii*) where the legionary soldiers were usually put, in the hope of disguising his weakness in regulars.

41. 21. *usque ad*: *right up to*.

41. 23. *necessario*: *of necessity*; an adverb.

41. 24. *paribus intervallis*: 126.

41. 27. *circumdederunt*: the reference is of course only to a half-circle, in the rear of the line. — *qua*: *any*.

41. 28. *Eo*: *there, i.e.*, in the wagons and carts.

41. 29. *proficiscentes*: sc. *eos*, *them*, *as they went into battle*. — *passis manibus*: 126.

41. 30. *se*: the indirect reflexive (155). To what does it refer?

Page 43. 1. CHAPTER 52. *singulis . . . singulos*: *i.e.*, one *legatus* over each legion with the exception of one, which was put under the command of a *quaestor*. For the use of *singuli* cf. p. 40, l. 3, and for the case of *legionibus*, see 107, b.

43. 2. *testes*: in apposition with *eos*; translate accordingly. — *virtutis*: 98.

43. 3. *eam partem . . . hostium*: *i.e.*, the part of the enemy opposite the right wing of the Romans, which would of course be the left wing of the enemy.

43. 4. *animadverterat*: note the tense and translate accordingly.

43. 5. *Ita*: modifies *acriter*.

43. 6. *itaque*: not in its common meaning of *therefore*, but = *ita* + *que*. *Ita* modifies *repente* and *celeriter*.

43. 7. *pila . . . coniciendi*: the gerund construction in place of the more common gerundive (220), to avoid the less euphonious *pilorum coniciendorum*.

43. 8. *Reiectis*: *throwing down*, since there was not room to hurl them at the enemy. In English the present part. is commonly used in such a case; in Latin, with a more strict observance of the actual relations of time, the perfect. — *pugnatum est*: for the trans. see note on *acriter* . . . *pugnatum est*, p. 41, l. 5.

43. 9. *ex*: 142, 4, *d.* — *phalange*: for the formation of the phalanx see note on p. 18, l. 17.

43. 11. *complures nostri*: in English we say *very many of our (soldiers)*. — *insilirent . . . vulnerarent*: 179.

43. 14. *multitudine*: 122.

43. 16. *P. Crassus*: son of *M. Crassus*, triumvir with *Caesar* and *Antony* in 60 B.C.; see 8 and 9.

43. 17. *expeditior*: *freer*, as the cavalry were not engaged.

43. 18. *versabantur*: be careful of the meaning; see VOCAB. — *tertiam aciem*: *i.e.*, the rear line of the *triplici acie* (see p. 41, l. 21), which formed a reserve for just such an emergency. — *subsidio*: 113 and Note.

43. 20. CHAPTER 53. *Ita*: *thus*; *i.e.*, by the prompt action of *Publius Crassus*. — *restitutum*: *saved*.

43. 21. *prius*: to be taken with *quam*. Note the indicative *pervenerunt*, since the action of the verb was not prevented but actually took place. The indicative is usual when the main clause stands first and contains a negative; 184.

43. 23. *viribus*: 119, Note.

43. 25. *naviculam*: diminutive of *navis*, perhaps used for variety, since *lintribus* has just been used above.

43. 26. *ea*: *in it*; 119.

43. 27. *consecuti*: *overtook*, *and*. Note the force of *con*.

43. 28. *Duae . . . uxores*: polygamy was not general among

the Germans, but the chiefs sometimes had more than one wife.  
— *natione*: 129; it might be translated here *by birth*.

Page 44. 1. *domo*: 135. — *Norica*: i.e., from Noricum.

44. 2. *duxerat*: sc. *in matrimonium*.

44. 3. *duae filiae* . . . *altera* . . . *altera*: of the two daughters one was killed, the other captured. *Altera* . . . *altera* are in apposition with *duae filiae*, which is the subject of *occisa est*. The verb, however, agrees with the nearer of the two appositives.

44. 6. *trinis*: the distributive, because *catenae* is usually used only in the plural. In the same way one would say *trina castra* for *three camps*. — *in ipsum Caesarem* . . . *incidit*: fell into Caesar's own hands; 156, a.

44. 7. *equitatu*: 124. Here *cum* is omitted, although there is no adjective in agreement, because of the idea of means. — *persequentem*: as he was pursuing. — *Quae quidem res*: this circumstance; see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25. *Quidem* gives emphasis to *quae*; it might be rendered by emphasizing "this" or by adding "especially."

44. 9. *honestissimum*: do not translate by the corresponding English word, but note the derivation; see VOCABULARY.

44. 10. *eruptum*: the participle.

44. 11. *restitutum*: sc. *esse*. — *neque*: and because . . . not, the force of *quod* continuing to the end of the sentence. — *eius calamitate*: by disaster to him; on *eius* see 98.

44. 13. *se praesente de se*: the order emphasizes *se*; it might be translated, *before his very eyes*.

44. 14. *sortibus*: see note on p. 41, l. 12.

44. 15. *sortium beneficio*: 122. The lots decided that his death should be put off, and in the meantime the battle took place and Ariovistus was defeated.

44. 20. CHAPTER 54. *Rhenum*: accusative governed by *proximi*, after the analogy of *prope*. *Proximus* commonly takes a dative (114).

44. 22. *aestate*: 139. Ariovistus was defeated in September, the Helvetians in the preceding June, or July.

44. 23. *maturius paulo*: a little earlier (in the season).

44. 24. *in Sequanos*: we should say among the *Sequani* or in

the country of the *Sequani*, but in Latin the idea of motion is continued.

44. 25. *ad conventus agendos*: to hold the assizes, as governor of Gaul. He also wished to be as near as possible to Rome, to keep track of the political movements going on there.

## BOOK II

### I. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIANS

Page 45. Line 1. CHAPTER 1. *esset*: 185. — *ita uti . . . demonstravimus*: at the end of Chap. 54 of Book I. The plural is like the "editorial we" in English. The first person is comparatively rare in Caesar's *Gallie War*, and always refers to Caesar the writer, not to Caesar the general. See note on p. 6, l. 28.

45. 2. *crebri . . . rumores*: the separation of the adj. from its noun by an intervening phrase is common in Latin. — *afferebantur . . . fiebat*: the imperfect denotes repeated action (163). Do not, however, use the progressive form here in translating.

45. 4. *quam*: *who*. The antecedent is *Belgas*, but the relative is attracted to the number and case of the predicate noun (*partem*), as it often is. — *dixeramus*: in Chap. I of Book I. The pluperf. here does not differ much from a perfect indefinite. Strictly it denotes action completed at some past time, which would perhaps be that of the completion of Book I. For the number see note on *ita uti demonstravimus*, in line 1.

45. 5. *coniurare*: *were forming a league*. A pres. infin. in ind. disc., representing a pres. indic. of the letter of Labienus. See 204. — *inter se*: *to one another*; lit., *among themselves*. *Inter se dare* may be translated *were exchanging*.

45. 6. *Coniurandi*: 219. — *esse*: *that these were*, continuing the indirect quotation from Labienus; 204. — *vererentur*: the reason given by Labienus; 187.

45. 7. *omni pacata Gallia*: *when all Gaul should be subdued*, = *cum omnis Gallia pacata esset* (standing for a fut. perf. of the dir. disc.); see note on *cognitis*, p. 31, l. 4. *Gallia* refers here, as usual, not to Gaul in the widest sense, but to the country inhabited by the *Celtae* (see Book I, Chap. 1). — *adduceretur*: 203.



45. 8. *sollicitarentur*: *they were urged to it*; for the mood see note on *vererentur*, line 6.

45. 9. *partim qui . . . partim qui*: *of whom some . . . while others*; lit., *partim* is an adverb modifying *sollicitarentur* understood, sc. *ab eis*, *in part by those who*, etc. — *ut*: *as*; observe the mood of the following verb; see 180, Note. — *Germanos . . . versari*: *that the Germans should abide*. The infin. with its subject accusative is the object of *noluerant*; 213.

45. 10. *noluerant*: *had been unwilling*, in the past. The mood shows that Caesar is no longer quoting Labienus, but returns to *dir. disc.* This continues to the end of the chapter. — *populi Romani . . . moleste ferebant*: *were displeased that the army of the Roman people was passing the winter in Gaul and establishing itself there*. The infinitives with their subject are used as objects of *ferebant*; 213.

45. 11. *partim qui*: see note on *partim qui* in line 9.

45. 12. *mobilitate et levitate*: these were general characteristics of the Gauls. For the case see 122. — *novis imperiis*: *a change of government*, i.e., from the Roman rule to that of the Belgians. For the case see 107, a.

45. 13. *a nonnullis etiam*: supply *sollicitarentur*, from line 8.

45. 14. *eis*: sc. *ab*. — *ad conducendos homines facultates*: *opportunities for hiring mercenaries*; 220.

45. 15. *vulgo regna occupabantur*: *the supreme power was commonly seized*. The plural *regna* is used because the reference is to various instances of usurpation. — *qui*: *and these* (158, a), referring to *a potentioribus . . . habebant*, which is logically identical with *nonnullis* in line 13.

45. 16. *imperio nostro*: 126.

45. 17. CHAPTER 2. *duas legiones*: namely XIII and XIV. Caesar already had six legions, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, and XII.

45. 18. *inita aestate*: *at the beginning of summer*. What is the lit. trans.? See 130.

45. 19. *qui deduceret*: sc. *eas*, *to lead them*; for the mood see 177. The antecedent of *qui* is *Q. Pedium*; he was Caesar's grandnephew, the grandson of his sister.

45. 20. *cum primum . . . inciperet*: the indicative is ordinarily used with *cum primum*, but here the idea of time is not the only one, and the subjunctive is used as in a clause of attendant circumstances with *cum*; 185.

45. 21. *Dat negotium*: *he directed*; more lit., *assigned the task* (of finding out, etc.). For the tense of *dat* see 162.

Page 46. 1. *Belgis*: 114. — *uti . . . cognoscant . . . faciant*: subst. clauses in apposition with *negotium*; for the mood see 199; for the tense, 171, ftn. 1. — *quae . . . gerantur*: 211.

46. 2. *se . . . certiore faciant*: *inform him*, referring to Caesar. *Se* is here the indirect reflexive; see 155. For the mood of *faciant*, see 199.

46. 3. *constanter*: *uniformly, i.e., they all tell the same story*. — *manus*: acc. plural, *bands of troops*.

46. 4. *cogi . . . conduci*: 204.

46. 5. *dubitandum*: sc. *esse sibi* (112). Be careful in translating. — *quin . . . proficisceretur*: *about marching against them* (i.e., the Belgians); a subst. clause, subject of *dubitandum* (*esse*); see 202. *Dubito* meaning "to hesitate" usually takes an infinitive.

46. 6. *diebus*: 139.

46. 8. CHAPTER 3. *Eo*: the adv., *thither*, = *ad fines Belgarum*. — *de improviso*: an adverbial phrase; see VOCAB. under *improvisus*. — *celerius omni opinione*: *more quickly than any one expected*; lit., *more quickly than all expectation*. For the case of *opinio* see 117.

46. 9. *venisset*: for the mood see 185. — *Galliae*: 114. — *ex Belgis* = *Belgarum*; 142, 4, d.

46. 10. *legatos*: *as envoys*; 82.

46. 11. *qui dicerent*: 177. — *se . . . permittere*: 204, = *nos . . . permittimus* of the dir. disc. *Se* does duty both as subject and object of *permittere*, *that they committed themselves*; see note on *seque*, p. 33, l. 10.

46. 13. *neque . . . consensisse*: *neque* is equivalent to *et non* and should be translated accordingly. Cf. p. 13, l. 19.

46. 14. *neque*: here translated *nor*, on account of the preceding *neque*. See the preceding note and always be careful to

observe the exact force of this word. — *coniurasse*: = *coniuravisse*.

46. 15. *paratos esse*: not the perf. infin., but the pres. infin. with the participial adj. as predicate; cf. *est divisa*, p. 1, l. 1. — *et . . . et . . . et*: these words are correlative, but as there are more than two, the first *et* cannot be translated “both.” Omit the first *et*, and translate the others by *and*. — *dare . . . facere*, etc.: these infinitives depend on *paratos*, which has the same construction as *parare*.

46. 16. *oppidis recipere*: sc. *eum*, = *Caesarem*. On the case of *oppidis* see 119 and the Note. There is also a locative idea; see note on *castris*, p. 39, l. 29.

46. 18. *cis Rhenum*: i.e., on the west bank, towards Italy and Rome. — *incolant*: 207; for *incolunt* of the dir. disc. Since the ind. disc. is introduced by *dicerent*, we should expect the imperf. subj.; but see 173.

46. 19. *Suessiones*: object of *deterrene*. Read the sentence through carefully before attempting to translate it.

46. 20. *eodem iure et isdem legibus*: 121. *Ius* refers to the general principles of law, *legibus* to laws or statutes. For the mood and tense of *utantur* cf. *incolant* in line 18.

46. 21. *unum imperium* . *habeant*: *and have*; asyndeton, see 227.

46. 22. *potuerint*: the mood and tense would be the same in the dir. disc.; see 178 and 172.

46. 23. *consentirent*: 178; for the tense see 171.

46. 24. CHAPTER 4. *Cum* . *quaereret*: *on inquiring*; 185.

46. 25. *essent . . . possent*: 198. — *quid* . *possent*: *how strong they were as fighting men*; more lit., *to what extent they were able in war*. For the case of *quid* see 91, Note. — *sic*: *the following facts*; lit., *as follows*.

46. 26. *plerosque Belgas*: *that most of the Belgians*; ind. disc. through *sumerent*, p. 48, l. 5. The Belgians had originally lived on the eastern side of the Rhine and had been influenced in their development by their nearness to the Germans (see Book I, Chap. 1), but they were probably a Celtic, not a Germanic people.

— **a Germanis**: abl. of source or origin; 142, 1, *a*. — **Rhenum**: 90 and Note.

46. 27. **antiquitus**: an adverb; see VOCAB. — **ibi**: *i.e.*, on the western, or Gallic, bank of the Rhine.

46. 28. **incolerent**: for the mood and tense see 207. — **solosque**: not the subject of *esse*, but a predicate accusative; translate accordingly.

Page 48. 1. **memoria**: 139. — **omni Gallia vexata**: *when all (the rest of) Gaul was overrun*.

48. 2. **Teutonos Cimbrosque**: see 76 and 77. — **ingredi**: *from entering*; infin. with subject acc., object of *prohibuerint*. *Prohibeo*, like other verbs of *preventing*, often takes a subst. clause introduced by *quin*, but Caesar and Cicero commonly use the infinitive.

48. 3. **prohibuerint**: this would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 179. For the tense cf. *potuerint*, p. 46, l. 22. — **qua ex re fieri**: *and that the result of this was*; more lit., *and that from this fact it happened*. — **uti . . . sumerent**: a subst. clause, the subject of *fieri*; 200. — **memoria**: 122.

48. 4. **spiritus**: see VOCABULARY.

48. 6. **omnia se habere explorata**: *that they had full information*; lit., *that they had everything ascertained*. *Explorata habere* is nearly equivalent to *exploravisse*; see 218. For the infin. see 204.

48. 7. **propinquitatibus affinitatibusque**: 119. Note the meaning of the words; see VOCABULARY.

48. 8. **coniuncti**: sc. *cum eis*, referring to the Belgians. — **quisque**: *i.e.*, *each chief* of the various tribes which made up the Belgic nation.

48. 9. **pollicitus sit**: for the mood see 198; and for the tense, 172 and 173.

48. 10. **cognoverint**: for the mood see 207, and for the tense, 166, second Note, and note on *pollicitus sit*, line 9. — **Plurimum . . . valere**: *were strongest*; cf. *quid . . . possent*, p. 46, l. 25, and for the construction of *plurimum* see 91, Note.

48. 11. **virtute, auctoritate, numero**: 122.

48. 12. **armata milia centum**: = *centum milia armatorum*, a

*hundred thousand armed men; lit., a hundred armed thousands. — pollicitos: sc. esse.*

48. 13. *electa . . sexaginta: = sexaginta milia electorum; cf. armata milia centum, line 12.*

48. 14. *sibi: 106. Sibi may be omitted in translating; it refers to Bellovacos. — suos: referring to the Remi, whose envoys are speaking.*

48. 16. *fuisse: had been, for fuit of the direct discourse. — nostra . . . memoria: 139. — Diviciacum: not the same, of course, as Diviciacus the Aeduan.*

48. 17. *cum: be careful in translating; read the sentence through.*

48. 18. *obtinerit: do not trans. by the corresponding English word; see VOCABULARY.*

48. 19. *esse: was, for est of the dir. disc. — regem Galbam: the latter word is subject of esse, the former a predicate accusative.*

48. 20. *summam: a noun; see VOCAB. — voluntate: 126.*

48. 21. *habere: sc. eos, = Suessiones. — numero: 129. — polliceri: for a pres. indic. of dir. disc. — milia armata: cf. line 12.*

48. 22. *totidem: sc. armata milia polliceri, promised the same number, etc. Do not take it with Nervios, which is the subject of polliceri understood.*

48. 23. *longissime absint: are furthest off, from the Rhine and the Remi. — quindecim milia Atrebatas: sc. polliceri, and make Atrebatas the subject; cf. totidem Nervios in line 22. So with the following names and numbers as far as the semi-colon in line 27.*

48. 27. *Condruos, etc.: subjects of confecturos esse understood; sc. se (= Remos) as the subject of arbitrari, they thought that the Condruzi, etc. would furnish about 40,000 men.*

48. 28. *appellantur: indicative because the statement is made by Caesar the writer, and does not form part of the ind. disc.; see 208 and 14.*

48. 30. CHAPTER 5. *liberaliter oratione prosecutus: having addressed them (in a speech) in a friendly manner. For the case of oratione, see 119.*

48. 31. *senatum*: Caesar applies this Roman term to the council of the Gauls. — *convenire* . . . *adduci*: 199, Note.

Page 49. 1. *obsides*: a predicate accusative; translate accordingly. — *Quae omnia*: for the translation of the relative see 158.

49. 2. *diligenter ad diem*: *punctually to a day, i.e., exactly* at the time designated by Caesar. — *Diviciacum Aeduum*: this man, as the adjective *Aeduum* makes clear, is not the same as the one mentioned on p. 48, l. 16.

49. 3. *rei publicae* . . . *salutis*: genitive governed by *intersit*; see 105, a.

49. 4. *manus hostium distineri*: *for the forces of the enemy to be kept apart, or that the forces of the enemy be kept apart*. *Manus* is the subject of *distineri*, which is itself the subject of *intersit*; 213.

49. 5. *ne* . . . *confingendum sit*: 175 and 216. Be careful in translating. — *uno tempore*: 138.

49. 6. *Id fieri posse*: *that this could be done*; ind. disc., implied in *docet*. *Id* = *manus hostium distineri*.

49. 7. *introduxerint* . . . *coeperint*: 209; standing for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

49. 8. *His mandatis*: *with these instructions*. *Mandatum* is the noun; see VOCAB. For the case see 126.

49. 10. *coactas*: the participle; trans. by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with *venire*. — *vidit*: for the mood and tense see 180. — *ab eis* . . . *exploratoribus*: depending on *cognovit*, not of course on *abesse*. In reading the sentence in Latin make a pause after *abesse*; see note on *Lisci Dumnorigem*, p. 13, l. 26.

49. 12. *flumen Axonam*: 90.

49. 13. *ibi*: *i.e., in the territories of the Remi on the other side of the Axona, near the modern village of Berry-au-Bac, where remains of Caesar's fortifications have been discovered*.

49. 14. *Quae res*: *this step or manœuvre of crossing the river*. Note that *res* must be translated in many different ways according to the context; see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25. — *et* . . . *et* . . . *et*: correlative. Omit the first one in translating; see note on *et* . . . *et* . . . *et*, p. 46, l. 15. — *muniebat*: *protected*.

49. 15. *post eum quae erant reddebat*: *made his rear safe from the enemy*. *Tuta* is a predicate adjective, modifying *ea* understood, the antecedent of *quae*.

49. 16. *commeatus . . . efficiebat*: *made it possible for supplies to be brought*; lit., *brought it about that supplies could be brought*. *Commucatus* is the subject of *posset*, and the clause *ut . . . posset* is the object of *efficiebat*; for the mood see 200.

49. 18. *In eo flumine*: we should say, *across that river*. — *Ibi*: i.e., at the end of the bridge on the north side of the Axona. — *in altera parte*: *on the other bank*, i.e., on the south side of the river, from which he had crossed.

49. 20. *in altitudinem*: we should say *in height*. The Latin idiom is *in* with the acc., because the wall rises to that height; see 143, 1, b. — *pedum duodecim*: for the case see 102.

49. 21. *duodeviginti pedum*: for the case cf. *pedum duodecim*, l. 20. This was the measure at the top; as the sides sloped, the width at the bottom was somewhat less.

49. 22. CHAPTER 6. *nomine*: *by name*; for the case see 129.

49. 23. *milia*: 91. — *passuum*: 99. — *ex itinere*: *on their march*. That is, the Remi turned aside *from* their march at this point to attack the town; cf. 142, 4, b. — *magno impetu*: 123.

49. 24. *Aegre . . . sustentatum est*: *the attack was resisted with difficulty*; 160.

49. 25. *Gallorum eadem . . . haec*: *the manner of besieging a town which is used by the Gauls is the same as that employed by the Belgians, namely, the following*; or *the Gauls and the Belgians besiege towns in the same way, as follows*. What sort of genitives are *Gallorum* and *Belgarum*? If necessary, see 97.

49. 26. *circumiecta multitudo*: 130; trans. by a verb correlative with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*, or by a clause introduced by *after*. — *totis moenibus*: *the entire line of the walls*, i.e., the whole town. For the case see 107, b.

49. 27. *coepti sunt*: with a pass. infin. the pass. form of *coepti* is regularly used; cf. p. 37, l. 25.

49. 28. *defensoribus*: 115. — *testudine facta*: 130; trans. by a perf. act. part. in English, or by a verb correlative with *succedunt* and *subruunt*. The *testudo* or *tortoise*, a formation

used also by the Romans, consisted in holding the shields overhead so that they overlapped and formed a covering like the shell of that animal; see the second illustration on *Introd.* p. xxix and the note on the Gallic phalanx, p. 18, l. 17.

49. 29. *Quod*: *this*, referring to the mode of attack which he has just described. — *tum*: *in this case*, or *on the present occasion*.

49. 30. *conicerent*: plural because of the plural idea in the collective noun *multitudo*; 85, Note.

49. 31. *consistendi* . . . *nulli*: *no one was able to keep his place*. *Consistendi* is the gen. of the gerund depending on *potestas* (219); for the case of *nulli* see 110.

Page 50. 1. *Remus*: in apposition with *Iccius* (82), *one of the Remi*, not part of the name.

50. 2. *summa nobilitate et gratia*: *sc. vir, a man of the highest rank and of the greatest influence*; for the case see 128. — *suos*: *his countrymen*. — *oppido*: 107, a.

50. 3. *praefuerat*: nearly equal to *praecerat*; the idea is that he *had been* in command when he had come to Caesar as an envoy, and of course he still *was* in command. — *ex eis*: 142, 4, d. — *legati*: pred. nom., *as envoys*.

50. 5. *summittatur* . . . *posse*: ind. disc., introduced by the verb of saying implied in *nuntium mittit*; *saying that, unless*, etc. *Summittatur* stands for a fut. ind. of the dir. disc. — *sustinere*: used intransitively, *hold out*.

50. 6. CHAPTER 7. *Eo*: *thither, i.e., to Bibrax*. — *de media nocte*: *at midnight*; 142, 3, c. — *isdem ducibus*: *the same men as guides*; *ducibus* is in apposition with *eisdem*, which is governed by *usus* (121). — *usus*: *using*; the perf. part. is sometimes used with about the force of a present.

50. 7. *nuntii*: pred. nom.; for the trans. cf. *isdem ducibus*, l. 6.

50. 8. *subsidio*: 113.

50. 9. *Quorum adventu*: *through their arrival*; 122. There is also an idea of time; see note on p. 14, l. 22. — *cum*: *along with*.

50. 10. *propugnandi*: 219. — *accessit*: *was aroused in*; lit., *came to*; some active verbs in Latin are best translated by English passives. — *hostibus*: 111.



50. 11. *potiundi oppidi*: gerundive, instead of the gerund *potiundi oppido*, and with the same meaning; 220.

50. 12. *morati . . . depopulati*: the perf. participles of deponent verbs are often equivalent to the English pres. act. part.; 216, Note.

Page 51. 1. *quo*: the adverb, = *ad quos (vicos)*.

51. 2. *omnibus copiis*: 124. — *a milibus passuum . . . duobus*: by a kind of attraction the preposition governs not the place from which the distance is reckoned, but the word indicating the distance; *i.e.*, *ab (castris) duo passuum milia*, whence *ab duobus passuum milibus*; cf. *ante diem tertium Kal. (140)*. *Minus* does not affect the construction; see 118.

51. 4. *milibus*: abl. of comparison with *amplius*; what other case might have been used? See 118, Note.

51. 5. *in latitudinem*: see note on *in altitudinem*, p. 49, l. 20.

51. 7. CHAPTER 8. *opinionem virtutis*: *reputation for valor*; more lit., *the opinion of their valor* (which was held by others). What sort of a gen. is *virtutis*? See, if necessary, 98. — *proelio supersedere*: *refrain from battle*; for the case of *proelio* see 107, b.

51. 8. *equestribus proeliis*: to be taken with *periclitabatur*; 119. — *quid hostis virtute posset*: *what the enemy's valor was*; more lit., *what the enemy were able in respect to valor*. For the case of *quid* see 91, Note; for that of *virtute*, 129.

51. 9. *quid nostri auderent*: *what the courage of our soldiers was*; cf. the preceding note.

51. 10. *intellexit*: for the mood and tense see 180. — *loco . . . idoneo*: 130; trans. by a causal clause.

51. 11. *ad aciem instruendam*: governed by *opportuno* and *idoneo*; 220 and 219. — *natura*: *by nature, naturally*; more lit., *in its nature* (129).

51. 12. *ubi*: *on which*, equivalent to *in quo*, referring to *collis*. — *paululum . . . editus*: *slightly elevated above the plain*.

51. 13. *tantum . . . quantum loci*: *as great a space as*; *loci* depends on *quantum* (199). In English we should attach the word rather to "so much" (*tantum*), as in the translation of the phrase given above. — *adversus*: *in front, i.e.*, in the direction

of the enemy. *Adversus* is here an adverb. — *patebat . . . redibat*: 164.

51. 14. *instructa*: *when drawn up in line of battle*; appositive use of the part.; cf. 145.

51. 15. *ex utraque parte*: *on each side*; 142, 4, b. — *lateris deiectus*: *steep sides*; lit., *declivities of side*, or *lateral declivities*; 95. — *in frontem*: *in front*; lit., *sloping (fastigatus) towards the front*; i.e., towards the west. See Plan, p. 50.

51. 16. *ad planitiem redibat*: *sank to the level of the plain*.

51. 17. *ab utroque latere*: cf. *ex utraque parte*, l. 15. — *transversam fossam*: *a ditch at right angles (to the length of the hill)*, which was from east to west; see Plan, p. 50.

51. 18. *passuum*: sc. *in latitudinem*, and for the case see 102. — *ad extremas fossas*: *at the ends of the trenches*, of course the ends farthest from the camp; for the trans. of *extremas* see 149.

51. 19. *ibique*: *and in them, i.e., in castellis*. — *tormenta*: a general term for hurling-engines or artillery; see 65, and note the derivation of the word; see VOCABULARY.

51. 20. *instruxisset*: *should draw up*; a fut. perf. ind. transferred to past time. For the mood see 211. — *quod tantum multitudine poterant*: i.e., because of their superior numbers; for the case of *tantum* and *multitudine* see note on *quid hostes virtute possent*, l. 8. *Poterant* is indicative because it gives the reason of the writer as an explanation, and is not an essential part of the sentence *ne . . . possent*; 208.

51. 21. *a lateribus*: *on the flanks*, to be taken with *circumvenire*. — *pugnantes*: *while they were fighting*.

51. 22. *possent*: 175.

51. 23. *duabus legionibus . . . conscripserat*: the thirteenth and fourteenth; see p. 45, l. 17, and the note. These, as having less experience, were given a less responsible position. The brunt of the battle was to be borne by the veterans.

51. 24. *quo*: adverb, *anywhere*, modifying *eos duci*, for *them to be led*, to be supplied as the subject of *esset*; *opus* is a pred. nom. — *esset*: for a fut. ind. of the direct form, cf. *instruxisset*, l. 20. *Esset* is subj. for the same reason as *instruxisset*.

51. 26. *eductas*: trans. by a finite verb, correlative with *instruxerant*.

51. 27. CHAPTER 9. *non magna*: of no great size.

51. 28. *exercitum*: to be taken both with *nostrum* and with *hostium*. — *Hanc*: governed by *transirent*. — *si*. *expectabant*: were waiting to see whether; for the mood of *transirent* see 198.

51. 29. *si ab illis . . . in armis erant*: a simpler order would be, *parati in armis erant, ut, si . . . fieret, impeditos aggredierentur*. For the mood of *fieret* see 211; it stands for a fut. ind. in the thought of *nostris*.

Page 52. 2. *proelio equestri* . . . *contendebatur*: a cavalry battle was carried on; 160.

52. 3. *neutri*: neither side. — *faciunt*: 180 and 162. — *secundiore* . . . *nostris*: and our men had had the upper hand in the cavalry battle; lit., the cavalry battle having been more favorable. For the case of *nostris* see 114.

52. 6. *quod* . . . *demonstratum est*: which, as has been shown, was in the rear of our camp. *Demonstratum est* is impersonal, having for its subject *quod esse* (213).

52. 8. *eo consilio, ut*: with the purpose of. For the case of *eo consilio* see 126, and with the expression cf. *propterea quod*, etc. — *possent*: see note on *fieret*, p. 51, l. 29. — *castellum*: at the end of the bridge; see p. 51, l. 19, and the Plan on p. 50.

52. 9. *expugnarent . . . interscinderent*: a subst. clause, in apposition with *consilio*; see 199.

52. 10. *potuissent*: cf. *posset*, l. 8; *potuisset* stands for a fut. perf., the force of which might be rendered by *if this should have proved to be impossible*.

52. 11. *popularentur* . . . *prohiberent*: (sc. *ut*) subst. clauses in apposition with *consilio*; cf. *ut expugnarent*, l. 9. — *magno* . . . *usui*: 113. — *ad bellum gerendum*: 219.

52. 12. *commeatu*: 115.

52. 13. CHAPTER 10. *certior factus*: when he was informed (of the design of the enemy). The phrase is used absolutely, instead of being followed, as it usually is, by an infin. with subject acc.

52. 14. *levis armaturae Numidas*: the light-armed Numidians;

for the construction of *levis armaturae* see 101. — *funditores sagittariosque*: 34; in Eng. we should insert *and* or *with* before this phrase (227).

52. 15. *ponte*: 119, Note. Abl. of "the way by which." — *ad eos*: i.e., the enemy. — *Acriter . . . pugnatum est*: 160. Do not translate literally; see 160.

52. 16. *Hostes impeditos*: object of *aggressi*; trans. *impeditos* by a clause.

52. 17. *per*: *over*; to be taken with *transire*.

52. 18. *conantes*: *who tried*, agreeing with *reliquos*, which is the object of *reppulerunt* (sc. *nostri*).

52. 20. *circumventos*: trans. by a verb correlative with *interfecerunt*.

52. 21. *de expugnando . . . transeundo*: equivalent in meaning to genitives qualifying *spem*; 220.

52. 22. *spem se fefellis*: *that they were disappointed in their hope*; lit., *that the hope had disappointed them*. — *intellexerunt*: 180. — *neque nostros . . . progredi*: *and that our men would not advance*; although *progredi* is present, the meaning of the verb gives it a future force; cf. "I am going" in English.

52. 24. *ipsos . . . deficere coepit*: *they themselves were running short of provisions*; lit., *provisions were beginning to fail them themselves*.

52. 25. *optimum*: a predicate adjective, agreeing with *domum suam quemque reverti*, *that it was best for each one to return to his own home*. For the case of *domum* (note the gender) see 93.

52. 26. *quorum in fines . . . convenirent*: trans. the relative clause *quorum . . . introduxissent* after *eos*, which is the antecedent of *quorum*. For the mood of *convenirent* see 199, and for the mood and tense of *introduxissent* cf. *potuissent*, l. 10.

52. 28. *ut . . . decertarent . . . uterentur*: depend on *constituerunt* in l. 25; for the mood see 175. — *suis*: what is to be supplied?

52. 30. *cum*: *along with*.

Page 53. 1. *quod . . . cognoverant*: *that they knew*, a subst. clause in apposition with *ratio*. Since *cognovit* has the force of

a present, *cognoverant* is equivalent in meaning to a perfect or imperfect. For the mood see 196.

53. 2. *finibus*: dat. governed by *appropinquare*, on the same principle as *propinquus* (114).

53. 3. *His persuaderi . . . non poterat*: *these could not be persuaded*. What is the lit. trans.? See 108. — *ut . . . morarentur neque . . . ferrent*: *to remain longer and to fail to lend aid*; lit., *and not to lend aid*; subst. clauses, subjects of *persuaderi*; for the mood see 199. *Neve* would be the usual connective of such clauses, but *neque* is used because the negative is closely connected with *ferret*; cf. *ut . . . non deesset*, p. 39, l. 26, and the note.

53. 5. CHAPTER 11. *secunda vigilia*: 138. This would be from 9 to 12 at night. The meaning probably is, *at the beginning of the third watch*.

53. 6. *nullo imperio*: *without any definite order and with no one in command*; 126.

53. 7. *cum . . . peteret . . . properaret*: explanatory of *nullo . . . imperio*; 186.

53. 8. *domum*: for the case cf. *domum*, cf. p. 52, l. 25. — *fecerunt . . . videretur*: *they made their departure seem like a flight*; lit., *they caused that their departure should seem*. For the case of *fugae* see 114; for the mood and tense of *videretur*, 200.

53. 10. *Caesar*: note the position in the midst of the abl. abs. It may be translated, *Caesar, who was at once informed of this movement through spies, fearing treachery*, etc. On the trans. of *re* see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25.

53. 11. *discederent*: 198. — *exercitum*: here = *pedites*, in contrast with *equitatum*. Or *exercitum equitatumque* may be translated, *the army including the cavalry*.

53. 12. *castris*: see note on p. 39, l. 29. — *confirmata re*: *when the fact was established*; i.e., that they were really retreating.

53. 13. *qui . . . morarentur*: 177.

53. 14. *His*: plural, referring to the horsemen who made up the *equitatus*; for the case see 107, b.

53. 17. *Hi*: referring both to the horsemen under *Pedius* and

Cotta and to the three legions of infantry under Labienus. — **novissimos**: *those in the rear*, equivalent to *novissimum agmen*, in l. 14; the adj. is used as a subst.; 152, a.

53. 18. **eorum fugientium**: *of them (i.e., novissimos) as they were fleeing*, not “of those fleeing,” which would be expressed by the participle alone.

53. 19. **cum**: this clause explains the reason for the heavy losses of the enemy, namely, that those in front gave no help to those in the rear when they were attacked by the pursuing Romans; how should *cum* be translated? — **ab extremo agmine**: supply *ei* and see 149. — **ad quos ventum erat**: 160; the antecedent is *ei* understood. Do not trans. literally.

53. 21. **priores**: *while those in front*. Asyndeton; see 227. — **viderentur . . . containerentur**: for the mood see 187, and Note.

53. 22. **neque ulla**: trans. as if it were *et . . . nulla*.

53. 23. **exaudito . . . ordinibus**: the first abl. abs. gives the cause of the second, *their ranks being thrown into confusion on hearing the shouting* (of those who were fighting in the rear). — **omnes . . . ponerent**: *all sought safety in flight*; lit., *placed their protection in flight*. For the case of *sibi* see 109; *ponerent* depends on *cum* in l. 19.

53. 24. **tantam . . . quantum . . . spatium**: *killed as great a number of them as the continuance of daylight allowed*; lit., *as was the duration of the day*.

53. 26. **sub occasumque solis**: *but towards sunset*. Note the position of *-que*, which is rarely appended to a monosyllabic preposition.

53. 27. **ut erat imperatum**: sc. *eis* and see 108.

53. 28. CHAPTER 12. **Postridie eius diei**: *the day after the slaughter of the Belgae*. *Eius diei* need not be translated.

53. 29. **reciperent**: *could recover themselves*; see 184.

Page 54. 1. **Remis**: 114. — **magno itinere confecto**: *making a forced march*.

54. 2. **Noviodunum**: a Celtic word meaning *Newtown*, a name which is common in various forms in many languages. — **ex itinere**: *on the way*; cf. *ex itinere*, p. 20, l. 2.

54. 3. *vacuum a defensoribus*: *destitute of defenders*.

54. 5. *paucis defendentibus*: *though the defenders were few*; what is the lit. trans.? See 130.

54. 6. *vineas*: see 63. — *agere*: *to move up* to the walls of the town. — *quaeque* . . . *comparare*: *and to get ready the things which*. The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *comparare*. For the case of *usui* see 113.

54. 8. *ex fuga*: *after their flight*; 142, 3, c.

54. 10. *aggere* . . . *constitutis*: see 62 and 63.

54. 11. *ante*: the adverb. — *Galli*: subject of *viderant* and *audierant*. We should translate it in the main clause, *Galli permoti* . . . *quae audierant*, . . . *mittunt*.

54. 12. *audierant*: *had heard of*.

54. 13. *petentibus* . . . *impetrant*: *since the Remi pleaded for them, they prevailed on him to spare them*. The clause *ut conservarentur* is governed both by *petentibus* and *impetrant*. Cf. *populi Romani*, p. 4, l. 10.

54. 15. CHAPTER 13. *obsidibus*: in apposition with *primis* and *filiis*; translate accordingly. *Primis* is used as a substantive, = *principibus*; 152, a.

54. 16. *Galbae regis*: see p. 48, l. 19.

54. 18. *Qui cum*: *when they, i.e., the Bellovaci*.

54. 21. *maiores natu*: *the older men*, the elders. For the case of *natu* see 129.

54. 22. *voce significare*: *to indicate by (the tone of) their voice*, since the Romans could not understand their language.

54. 23. *venire* . . . *contendere*: with almost a future force; see note on *progredi*, p. 52, l. 22.

54. 25. *accessisset* . . . *poneret*: note the tenses. — *pueri*: here means *children* (of both sexes).

54. 26. *passis manibus*: *with outstretched hands*; 126. — *suomore*: *as was their custom*, 127; the phrase is to be taken with the sentence *passis manibus* . . . *petierunt*; i.e., to stretch out their hands was their way of begging for peace.

54. 28. CHAPTER 14. *Pro his*: *in behalf of these, i.e., the Bellovaci as a whole*.

54. 28. *Diviciacus*: the Aeduan.

54. 29. *eum*: *i.e.*, Caesar. — *facit verba*: *made a plea*; 162 and Note.

54. 30. *omni tempore*: 137. — *in fide atque amicitia*: *i.e.*, had been faithful friends.

Page 55. 1. *redactus*: part. agreeing with *Aeduos*; trans. by a clause introduced by *after*.

55. 2. *perferre*: note the tense, and trans. accordingly. — *et . . et*: correlative; *not only . . but even*.

55. 4. *Qui*: *that those who had been*. The antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse*. — *eius consili principes*: *the ringleaders in that plot*. — *intellegent . . intulisset*: for the moods see 187 and 198.

55. 6. *Petere*: first in the sentence for emphasis; to find the subjects read the sentence through carefully.

55. 7. *sua*: *his habitual, his characteristic*; for the case of *clementia* and *mansuetudine* see 121; for the mood of *utatur*, 199. Note that Caesar from this point on uses the primary tenses, instead of the regular secondary tenses, for vividness or for variety; see 173.

55. 8. *Quod si . . fecerit*: *if he should do this*; *quod* is the rel. pron. having for its antecedent the clause *ut . . utatur*; *fecerit* stands for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

55. 9. *amplificaturum*: supply *eum* (= *Caesarem*) and *esse*. — *quorum*: the antecedent is *Belgas*.

55. 10. *sustentare consuerint*: with *auxiliis atque opibus* may be translated *on whose help and power (or powerful aid*; see 225) *they were wont to rely*; lit., *by whose aid (119) they were wont to hold out*. For the tense of *consuerint* see 166, second Note.

55. 12. CHAPTER 15. *honoris Diviciaci . . causa*: *for the sake of doing honor to, etc.*; for the case of *Diviciaci* and *Aeduarum* see 98; for that of *honoris*, which is governed by *causa*, 95.

55. 13. *eos*: the Bellovaci. — *recepturum . . conservaturum*: sc. *esse*.

55. 14. *civitas*: that of the Bellovaci. — *magna auctoritate . . multitudine*: observe the difference between the two constructions. For the former see 128; for the latter, 129.

55. 17. *ex oppido*: *i.e.*, from Bratuspantium.



55. 20. *Eorum: i.e., of the Ambiani. — quorum . . . quaereret*: note the order, = *cum Caesar de eorum*, etc.

55. 21. *sic: the following facts*; more lit., *as follows*.

55. 22. *mercatoribus: 110*. Do not translate literally. — *nihil pati: that they allowed no*; sc. *eos* as subject of *pati*. —  *vini reliquarumque rerum: 99*.

55. 23. *ad luxuriam pertinentium: which encouraged luxurious living*; lit., *pertained to*.

55. 24. *eis rebus: through such things; 122*. Since *relanguescere* is practically passive in force, *were weakened* (note the following *remitti*), the abl. might be referred to 119. — *eorum*: we might have expected *suos*, referring to the subject of *existimarent*; cf. note on *cum eis*, p. 5, l. 20.

55. 25. *esse*: supply as subject *eos* (= *Nervios*); *homines* is a pred. acc. — *magnaeque virtutis: 101*. Note that the phrase is parallel with *feros*.

55. 27. *dedissent . . . proiecissent*: might be subjunctive also in the dir. disc.; see 188. — *patriam*: here the adj.; see VOCABULARY.

Page 56. 1. CHAPTER 16. *eorum: i.e., Nerviorum. — tri-duum: for three days; 91*.

56. 3. *milia passuum decem: amplius* does not affect the construction; see 118 and 91.

56. 6. *his utrisque: both of these*, referring to the Atrebatas and Viromandui; for the case see 106. — *uti . . . experirentur*: a subst. clause object of *persuaserant*; 199.

56. 9. *quique: and those who*; the antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, object of *coniecisse*.

56. 10. *eum locum: a place*; strictly *eum locum* means *such a place* (as was unapproachable). — *quo*: the adverb, equivalent to *in quem (locum)*. — *exercitui: 110*.

56. 11. *esset*: would be subj. in dir. disc.; see 179.

56. 13. CHAPTER 17. *castris: 114. — deligant*: note the mood (177).

56. 14. *ex dediticiis . . . Gallis: of those of the Belgians and of the rest of the Gauls who had surrendered. Dediticiis* is here an adjective; see VOCABULARY.

56. 15. *una*: the adverb.

56. 16. *eorum dierum consuetudine . . . perspecta*: *having noticed the customary marching order of our army during those days*. *Consuetudine* is limited by *eorum dierum* and *itineris*, and *nostri exercitus* limits *itineris*. To have so many genitives in a single clause is unusual.

56. 19. *impedimentorum . . . numerum*: *a great amount of baggage*. *Numerum* is used with reference to the animals by which the baggage was transported.

56. 20. *neque esse quicquam negoti*: *and that there was no difficulty*. In Latin the negative is attached as usual to the conjunction. Here *esse* really has a future force; see note on *progredi*, p. 52, l. 22, and cf. the following note on *venisset . . . abessent*.

56. 21. *venisset . . . abessent*: note the tenses, standing respectively for the fut. perf. and the fut. of the dir. disc.

56. 22. *hanc . . . adoriri*: *in attacking this, i.e., the first legion*. *Adoriri* is the subject of *esse* in l. 20; see 113. The literal meaning is *to attack this would be no trouble*. — *sub sarcinis*: *i.e., before the soldiers had time to lay aside the packs which they carried on the march*. See 39. — *qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis*: *trans. qua* by a demonstrative and the abl. abs. by a clause introduced by *when*.

56. 23. *futurum ut . . . auderent*: equivalent to *reliquos . . . non ausuros esse*. *Ut . . . auderent* is a subst. clause, the subject of *futurum (esse)*; see 200 and Note. Cf. p. 33, l. 16, and the note. — *contra*: adverb.

56. 25. *Adiuabat . . . consilium*: *it added weight to the advice; or weight was added (by the fact that)*. The subject of *adiuabat* is the subst. clause *quod . . . effecerant*. What is the literal meaning of *adiuabat*?

56. 26. *quod*: the conjunction, meaning *that*, or *the fact that*; see the preceding note. — *equitatu nihil possent*: *were not strong in cavalry*. For the construction of *equitatu* and *nihil* see note on p. 51, l. 8; how should *cum* be translated?

56. 27. *neque enim*: *and indeed . . . not*. *Enim* does not have here its usual meaning, "for." — *ei rei*: *i.e., cavalry forces*;

for the case see 107, a. — quicquid valent copiiis: *whatever strength they have is in their infantry forces*. For the construction of quicquid, which limits both *possunt* and *valent*, cf. *equitatu nihil possunt*, l. 26.

56. 28. pedestribus . . . copiiis: 129. — quo . . . impedi-  
rent: 176.

Page 57. 1. venissent: for the fut. perf. ind., *in case they should come*; for the mood see 210.

57. 2. teneris arboribus incis, etc.: this long sentence might well be divided into two at this point, in some such way as this: *the Nervii devised the following plan When they had notched young trees, etc.*

57. 3. in latitudinem: *sideways*. The trees were notched (*cut into*) only enough to make it possible to bend them into a horizontal position (*inflexis*). The branches then grew out on each side and the spaces between them were filled in with thorn bushes, making a dense wall.

57. 4. effecerant: the subject is *Nervii*, p. 56, l. 26; but if the sentence is divided (see note on l. 2 above), supply *ei, they*. For the mood see 196. — ut praeberent: a subst. clause, object of *effecerant*; 200. — instar muri: *like a wall*, lit., *the image of a wall*. *Instar* is an indeclinable noun (see VOCAB.), in apposition with *munimentum*.

57. 5. quo: the adverb, equivalent to *in quod (munimentum)*. For the mood of *posset* see 179.

57. 6. His rebus: *by this state of things, i.e., by the presence of these hedges*. Translate after *cum*, remembering that *cum* frequently follows one or more words of its clause. How should *cum* be translated?

57. 7. non omittendum: sc. *esse* and *sibi* (112), referring to the *Nervii*.

57. 9. CHAPTER 18. haec: *as follows*. — quem locum: Caesar frequently repeats the antecedent in the relative clause; see p. 5, l. 24, and the note.

57. 10. aequaliter: *evenly, i.e., the slope was even from the summit of the hill (a summo) to its foot*. — ad flumen . . . vergebat: *i.e., the slope of the hill ended at the river Sabis*

(Sambre). For the tense of *vergebat*, which of course should not be translated by the progressive form, see 164.

57. 12. *pari acclivitate*: for the case see 128. The second hill was of the same height and of a similar slope to the first. — *nascebatur*: *arose*; for the tense cf. *vergebat*, l. 11, and the note. — *adversus huic et contrarius*: *opposite this* (i.e., the first hill) *and on the other side of the river*. For the case of *huic* see 114.

57. 13. *passus . . ducentos*: 91. The phrase modifies *apertus*. — *infimus*: *at the bottom*, i.e., the lower part of the slope; on the trans. see 149.

57. 14. *apertus*: opposed to *silvestris*. — *a superiore parte*: in translating *a* remember *a dextra* and the like. — *ut*: *so that*. The sentence preceding a clause of result often contains a word meaning *so*, but not always.

57. 16. *secundum*: preposition; see VOCAB. Note the derivation of the word, which throws light on the various meanings of *secundus* and *secundum*.

57. 18. *pedum . . trium*: 102. The genitive is used in predicate; see Note to 103.

57. 19. CHAPTER 19. *omnibus copiis*: 126.

57. 20. *ratio ordoque*: *the arrangement and order*. These two words form one idea, and hence take a singular verb (*habebat*); see 85, Note. — *aliter . . . ac*: *different from that which*; lit., *otherwise than*. For the meaning of *ac* see VOCABULARY. — *se habebat*, *was*; lit., *had itself*.

57. 21. *ad Nervios*: acc. with *ad* instead of the dative, because the verb really means *to carry news*. — *hostibus*: for the case see note on p. 53, l. 2.

57. 22. *consuetudine sua*: 127.

57. 23. *expeditas*: *without baggage*, appositive adj. (145). Because he was approaching the enemy, Caesar relieved six legions of the packs which they ordinarily carried on the march, that they might be ready for a sudden attack; see 38.

57. 24. *collocarat*: = *collocaverat*. Note the meaning of the word, which is derived from *locus*; see VOCAB. — *inde*: *the next*; i.e., after the baggage. — *quae proxime conscriptae erant*: the thirteenth and fourteenth. These newly enrolled legions

were given less responsible positions than the veterans. See note on p. 51, l. 23.

57. 25. *praesidio*: 113.

57. 27. *Equites nostri*: these had been sent on ahead of the main body; see l. 19.

Page 58. 1. *Cum*: has the force of *while* and the verbs *reciperent*, *facerent*, and *auderent* denote repeated action; cf. *identidem*, l. 1, and the note on *interim*, l. 4 below. — *se*: to be taken with *reciperent*. — *illi*: *the enemy*. — *identidem*: *again and again*, as they were beaten by the Romans. — *in silvas . . . ex silva*: note the difference in number; so in English we say either *wood* or *woods*.

58. 3. *neque nostri . . . auderent*: trans. as if it were *et nostri . . . non auderent*. — *quam quem ad finem . . . pertinebant*: for *ad eum finem, ad quem*. That is, the Romans did not venture to follow the enemy into the woods, but pursued them only to the end of the open ground mentioned on p. 57, l. 13.

58. 4. *cedentes*: sc. *eos, them in their retreat, or as they retreated*. See note on *eorum fugientium*, p. 53, l. 18. — *interim*: i.e., while this was going on. The word implies that the acts denoted by *reciperent*, *facerent*, and *auderent* were repeated several times; see note on *cum*, l. 1.

58. 5. *legiones sex*: *the six legions*; in light marching order (*expeditas*); see p. 57, l. 23. — *dimenso*: has a passive force, though from a deponent verb; see 216, second Note. It may be translated, however, *having laid out the work, i.e., having marked out the form and limits of the camp*.

58. 7. *prima*: for the trans. see 149.

58. 8. *visa sunt*: here passive in meaning (see VOCAB.). For the mood and tense see 180. — *quod tempus*: *the time which*. Really *tempus* is the subject of *convenerat*, which is best translated by an English passive, *had been agreed on*; the antecedent of *quod* is the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*, which is repeated in *tempus, i.e., eo tempore (ubi . . . visa sunt), quod tempus convenerat*.

58. 9. *committendi proeli*: for *beginning the battle*; 220. *Proeli* is governed by *tempus*, and *committendi* agrees with *proeli*. — *ut*: in translating note the mood of the following verbs.

58. 10. *ipsi sese confirmaverant*: *i.e.*, had screwed their courage to the sticking point.

58. 11. *omnibus copiis*: 126.

58. 13. *incredibili celeritate*: 123. — *ut*: *so that*; see note on *incredibili lenitate*, p. 9, l. 19.

58. 14. *ad silvas*: *at the (edge of the) woods*. They could not be seen while they were still *in silvis*. — *in manibus nostris*: *right before us, close at hand*. The distance was about three quarters of a mile.

58. 16. *adverso colle*: *up the hill*, on which the Roman camp was being laid out; *lit.*, *the hill being against them*.

58. 17. *in opere*: *i.e.*, of laying out and fortifying the camp.

58. 18. CHAPTER 20. *Caesari*: 116. Note the emphatic position of the word. — *omnia*: *everything*; the various things referred to are given in detail in the rest of the sentence; the *adj.* is used as a *subst.*; 152, *a.* — *vexillum*: the red flag which was the signal for beginning a battle; see 47.

58. 19. *proponendum*: with this and the following gerundives supply *erat* (*erant*). — *signum tuba dandum*: *i.e.*, the signal to form in line of battle, and for each soldier to take his proper place.

58. 20. *qui*: supply *ei*, subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). — *paulo longius*: *to some little distance*; *lit.*, *somewhat farther (than usual)*. — *aggeris*: *materials* for the rampart (of the camp); see VOCAB.

58. 21. *milites cohortandi*: a regular preliminary to any important battle, often taking the form of a set speech.

58. 22. *signum*: *i.e.*, the signal to begin fighting. Three signals are referred to in this sentence. First, the display of the *vexillum*, indicating that there was to be a battle and warning the soldiers to get ready; second, the signal on the *tuba*, for the soldiers to take their places in the ranks; lastly, the signal (also given by the *tuba*) for the actual beginning of the fight. This was the regular mode of procedure, but as the next sentence shows, the greater part of it had to be omitted on this occasion.

58. 25. *His difficultatibus*. *subsidio*: 113. — *duae res*: *two things*, explained by (1) *scientia atque usus militum*, which form one idea, and (2) by the *subst. clause quod . . . vetuerat*.

58. 26. *quod . . . poterant*: a causal clause explaining

*scientia atque usus*, and accounting for the admirable discipline of Caesar's troops.

58. 27. *quid . . . oporteret*: object of *praescribere*; for the mood see 198.

58. 29. *singulis legionibus singulos legatos . . . discedere*: *the various lieutenants to leave their respective legions*. See note on p. 40, l. 3.

58. 30. *nisi munitis castris*: *until after the camp had been finished*; lit., *unless the camp having been fortified*. — *Hi*: the *legati*.

Page 59. 1. *nihil*: = an emphatic *non*.

59. 2. *videbantur*: *seemed best*.

59. 4. CHAPTER 21. *necessariis rebus imperatis*: *after giving such orders as were (absolutely) necessary*.

59. 5. *quam in partem*: = *in eam partem, in quam*.

59. 6. *non longiore quam uti . . . retinerent*: i.e., he confined himself to this one exhortation. *Uti retinerent* is a subst. clause, the object of some word meaning *to urge* (or the like), implied in *oratione cohortatus*; 199.

59. 7. *virtutis*: 98.

59. 8. *neu*: for *neve*, = *et ne*.

59. 9. *-que but.* — *non longius . . . aberant quam . . . posset*: *were not more than a spear's throw off*; lit., *were not farther off than (the point) to which a spear could be thrown*. For the mood of *posset* see 179.

59. 11. *in alteram partem*: note *alteram*, not *aliam* (see VOCAB.); *in the opposite direction*, namely to the right wing, where the twelfth and eighth legions were; see Plan, p. 59.

59. 12. *pugnantibus*: supply *eis*, and see note on *cedentes*, p. 58, l. 4. For the case see 107, b.

Page 60. 1. *tanta*: *such*, not "so great."

60. 2. *ad dimicandum*: 219. — *ad insignia accommodanda*: *putting on their decorations*, referring to the crests of the helmets, which were taken off when the army was on the march. In a battle they were important for identifying the members of the various legions. For the constr. see 220.

60. 3. *ad galeas induendas*: on the march the helmets were slung around the soldiers' necks; 27. — *scutis*: 95.

60. 4. *tegimenta*: the metal shields were protected, when not in use, by coverings; 29. — *defuerit*: for the mood see 178; for the tense, 172. — *Quam*: to be taken with *partem*, into *whatever part* (of the field).

60. 5. *casu devenit*: *chanced to come*; lit., *came by chance*. Do not translate literally. — *quaeque*: *quae* + *-que*, and *what*.

60. 6. *ad haec constitit*: *by these* (standards) *he took his place*. — *suis*: sc. *signis*. The soldiers did not waste time in trying to find their own places in the ranks, but attached themselves to whatever standard they came to.

60. 8. CHAPTER 22. *ut*: in translating, note the mood of the following verb.

60. 9. *rei militaris ratio atque ordo*: *i.e.*, the arrangement (*ordo*) approved by the theory (*ratio*) of military science; 225.

60. 11. *aliae alia in parte*: *some in one place and others in another*; sc. *legiones* with *aliae*. — *saepibus*: those described above, p. 57, lines 2 ff.

60. 13. *neque . . . nec . . . neque*: correlative; the main sentence begins with the first *neque*, which should be translated *not*. Cf. *et . . . et . . . et*, p. 46, l. 15, and the Note. — *certa subsidia*: *regular bodies of reserves*; *i.e.*, bodies of reserves in definite places, where they would be available in time of need. — *collocari*: *stationed*; note the derivation of the word. *Collocari* depends on *poterant* at the end of the sentence. — *quid*: predicate of *opus esse*.

60. 14. *esset*: 198. — *provideri*: depends on *poterat*, implied in *poterant* at the end of the sentence.

60. 15. *rerum iniquitate*: *i.e.*, such difference in conditions in different parts of the field; note the meaning of *iniquitate*.

60. 16. *quoque*: *i.e.*, the conditions were different (see preceding note), and the results were *also* different.

60. 17. CHAPTER 23. *ut*: in translating note the mood of the following verb.

60. 18. *acie*: a form of the genitive singular, instead of *aciei*. — *cursu ac lassitudine*: *i.e.*, weariness *caused* by their running down the hill, through the river, and up on the other side; 225.



60. 19. *vulneribus confectos*: exhausted by wounds, inflicted by the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 20. *ea pars*: i.e., of the Roman line of battle, namely the left wing.

60. 21. *conantes*: as they attempted to cross, supply *eos*, object of *insecuti*.

60. 22. *impeditam*: in confusion; lit., impeded by the circumstances referred to in *cursu* . . . *confectos*, l. 18.

60. 23. *Ipsi*: they themselves, i.e., the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 24. *locum iniquum*: since the enemy were now on higher ground than they.—*resistentes redintegrato proelio*: the abl. abs. is to be taken with *resistentes*, making a stand and renewing the battle.

60. 25. *alia in parte*: namely, the center.

60. 26. *diversae*: separately, i.e., fighting independently of each other, and at some little distance apart, not together like the ninth and tenth legions.

60. 27. *ex loco superiore*: leaving the higher ground, in pursuit of the Veromandui; cf. *ex itinere*, p. 54, l. 2.

60. 28. *in ipsis . . . ripis*: right on the banks; see 156, a.

60. 29. *a fronte . . . parte*: be careful of the translation.—*castris . . . nudatis*: by the victory of the eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh legions and their pursuit of the enemy down to and across the river.

Page 61. 1. *cum . . . constitisset*: 185. The clause may be translated by a participial clause, the eleventh legion having taken its position on the right wing, etc.

61. 2. *magno . . . intervallo*: the phrase qualifies *ab ea*; lit., (the seventh legion) had taken its place (distant), from it (the eleventh) by no great interval. For the case see 125.

61. 3. *confertissimo agmine*: in close order; for the trans. of the superlative see note on p. 15, l. 10; for the case 126.

61. 4. *summam imperi*: i.e., the chief command of the united forces. *Summam* is the noun; for the case of *imperi* see 99.

61. 5. *quorum*: = *Nerviorum*.—*ab aperto latere*: on the un-

*protected flank*. — *circumvenire*: depends on *coepit* at the end of the sentence.

61. 6. *summum castrorum locum*: *the high ground where the camp was located*; for the case of *castrorum* see 100.

61. 7. CHAPTER 24. *levis armaturae pedites*: see note on p. 52, l. 14.

61. 8. *cum . . . una*: *along with*; cf. *una cum*, p. 39, l. 12. — *fuerant*: *had been, i.e.*, when they were last mentioned; note the tense, and cf. the following *dixeram*.

61. 9. *pulsos*: sc. *esse*. — *dixeram*: *I had said; i.e.*, at the time when he was writing of that part of the engagement. See note on *fuerant*, l. 8. — *cum . . . reciperent*: *as they were returning* (185). They had been routed and scattered on the other side of the river (see p. 58, l. 12), and in order to return to the camp they had to cross the river and climb the hill on which the camp was placed.

61. 10. *adversis*: *face to face; i.e.*, before the gates of the Roman camp.

61. 11. *a decumana . . . iugo collis*: these two expressions refer to the same place, *from the rear gate, which was on the crest of the hill*. Though the *porta decumana* was at the rear of the camp, the hill and the camp sloped to such a degree that the *calones* could look over it and see what was going on at the foot of the hill. See 52.

61. 12. *nostros victores*: *nostros* is used as a substantive and *victores* as an adj., *our victorious troops*; 152, a, and Note.

61. 13. *praedandi egressi*: thinking that the battle was practically over and that the Romans were everywhere victorious. For the construction of *praedandi* see 219 and the Note. — *cum respexissent . . . vidissent*: *on looking back and seeing* (185).

61. 15. *praecipites*: *headlong*, agreeing with *calones*, but having the force of an adverb (147); or it may be translated, *took to headlong flight*.

61. 16. *qui . . . veniebant*: referring to the baggage train, guarded by the thirteenth and fourteenth legions, which was just coming to the camp from the rear side.

61. 17. *oriebatur*: singular because *clamor fremitusque* form one idea; sec 85, Note. — *alii aliam in partem*: in different directions; lit., some in one direction, others in another, referring to the baggage carriers. — *ferebantur*: *fled*; lit., were carried. Observe that a Latin passive is sometimes best translated by an English active, and *vice versa*.

61. 18. *Treveri*: here the adjective, modifying *equites*; see VOCABULARY.

61. 19. *quorum*: the antecedent is not *equites*, but *Treverorum* (implied in the adjective *Treveri*). — *virtutis opinio*: reputation for valor. — *singularis*: unparalleled, second to none; note the exact meaning of the word.

61. 20. a *civitate*: collective nouns are frequently put in the ablative of agency with *ab* (116), as here. *Civitate* = *civibus*. — *cum*: do not be misled as to the meaning of this word by the following abl. Read the sentence through. For the case of *multitudine* see 119. For the trans. of *cum* *vidissent* see note on *cum* . . . *resperissent*, l. 13.

61. 21. *legiones*: the seventh and twelfth. Coming to the camp from the rear, the *Treveri* did not notice the victory of the rest of Caesar's forces.

61. 22. *circumventus teneri*: completely surrounded; lit., held surrounded.

61. 23. *Numidas*: previously referred to as *sagittarii*; see p. 57, l. 27. — *diversos*: the participle from *diverto*.

61. 24. *desperatis nostris rebus*: despairing of our fortunes (130), i.e., thinking that we (the Romans) had lost the day.

61. 25. *pulsos superatosque*: sc. *esse*; the infins. depend on *nuntiaverunt* at the end of the sentence; 204. — *castris impedimentisque*: 121.

61. 26. *renuntiaverunt*: carried back the news; note the force of *re-*.

61. 28. CHAPTER 25. a . . . *cohortatione*: after encouraging. *A* is really local in its meaning, he set out from the encouraging of the tenth legion; but a temporal sense is also implied in the context. It was in this way that *ab* acquired its temporal meaning. Read this long sentence through carefully before attempt-

ing to translate it. In English it should be divided into several shorter sentences.

61. 29. *ubi*: what is the verb depending on *ubi*? See, if necessary, 180. — *signis collatis . confertos*: giving the reason for *sibi* . . *esse impedimento*.

Page 62. 2. *impedimento*: 113.

62. 3. *quartae cohortis*: this cohort, which was on the extreme left of the front line, was especially exposed to the attack of the enemy.

62. 4. *signo amisso*: the loss of the standard was always considered a disgrace; see 49.

62. 6. *primipilo*: the chief centurion, really the centurion of the first manipule of the first cohort, who, according to the system of advancement in the Roman army, was the ranking centurion of the legion; see 23.

62. 8. *tardiores*: somewhat slow, a common force of the comparative; see 150. — *nonnullos a novissimis*: some of those in the rear; a *novissimis* is nearly equivalent to a partitive genitive.

62. 10. *neque*: correlative with *et*, did not cease and were pressing on. *Neque* cannot be translated "neither," and it is frequently not the best translation; see note on p. 13, l. 19. — *subeuntes*: depends on *intermittere* and is nearly equivalent in meaning to *subire*.

62. 11. *rem esse in angusto*: that affairs were in a critical condition; *angusto* is the adjective used as a substantive; sc. *loco*; 152, b.

62. 12. *vidit*: a repetition of *vidit* in l. 2, on account of the length of the sentence.

62. 13. *posset*: would be subj. in the dir. disc.; see 179, and note the meaning of *esse*. — *a novissimis uni militi*: from one of the soldiers in the rear; a *novissimis* is here equivalent to a partitive genitive; cf. the same expression in l. 8. For the case of *militi* see 111.

62. 14. *quod . . venerat*: the mention of the fact that Caesar had brought no shield with him shows that the Roman officers carried shields, as we know from other sources.

62. 15. *nominatim*: by name, showing Caesar's personal ac-

quaintance with his men. His biographer Suetonius testifies to the strong affection which the rank and file had for Caesar, and to their devotion to him. He tells us that when the Civil War with Pompey began, the soldiers gave Caesar their services without pay, supplying their own provisions, and that each centurion equipped a horseman. During the whole war not a single soldier deserted, and many, when taken prisoner, refused to save their lives by serving against Caesar. They endured incredible hardships with cheerfulness and fought with the utmost valor. The officers were not all so loyal. Labienus, for example, fought on Pompey's side.

62. 16. *manipulos laxare*: to open up the maniples, i.e., to fight in more open order, so as to give each man more room. On the *maniples* see 17, and for the derivation of the word, 46.

62. 17. *quo . . . possent*: 176. — *Cuius adventu . . . animo*: the abl. abs. denotes cause. The following *cum*-clause is also causal; *cum* may be translated by *as* for variety.

62. 19. *pro se quisque*: each man individually, or every single man. — *etiam in extremis suis rebus*: even though exposed to the greatest personal danger, lit., even in his greatest danger.

62. 22. CHAPTER 26. *cum . . . vidisset*: seeing; 185. — *iuxta*: near by; i.e., near the twelfth legion, which Caesar had just rallied.

62. 24. *legiones*: referring to the seventh and the twelfth legions.

62. 25. *conversa signa . . . inferrent*: should wheel about and charge; lit., should bear (forward) their reversed standards. The idea is not clear, but apparently the two legions faced in opposite directions, so as to protect each other's rear. *Coniungerent* and *inferrent* are the verbs of subst. clauses, which are a second object of *monuit*; 199. — *Quo facto cum*: since by this manœuvre; *quo facto* is an abl. abs., denoting means.

62. 27. *aversi*: in the rear; lit., lest they (when) turned away should be surrounded.

62. 29. *legionum duarum*: the thirteenth and fourteenth.

62. 30. *fueraut*: had been, according to the original arrangement of the line of march. See p. 57, lines 24 ff. — *praesidio*:

113. — *proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato*: *having started to run at full speed when they heard of the battle*; the first abl. abs. gives the reason for the action denoted by the second.

Page 63. 1. *castris . . . potitus*: Labienus with the ninth and tenth legions had driven the Atrebatas across the river, and had captured the camp of the enemy there; see Plan, p. 59. For the case of *castris* see 121.

63. 2. *ex loco superiore*: *from the higher ground*, on which the enemy's camp was located. — *gererentur*: 198.

63. 3. *subsidio*: cf. *praesidio*, p. 62, l. 30.

63. 4. *Qui*: *and they*, referring to the soldiers of the tenth legion. — *quo in loco res esset*: *the state of affairs*; lit., *in what situation the affair was*. For the mood of *esset* and *versaretur* see 198. Note the number of *versaretur*, since the three subjects form one general idea; see 85, Note.

63. 6. *nihil . . . fecerunt*: *spared no efforts to reach the scene of action as quickly as possible*; more lit., *left nothing undone in the way of speed*. For the case of *reliqui* see 99; of *celeritate*, 129.

63. 8. CHAPTER 27. *rerum*: *in the situation*; lit., *of affairs*; 98.

63. 9. *qui*: sc. *ei*, *those who*. — *procubuissent*: 211.

63. 10. *scutis*: abl. governed by *innixi*; 119, Note. — *red-integrent*: 178.

63. 11. *perterritos*: *panic-stricken*; note the force of *per-*. — *etiam inermes*: with adversative force, *even though unarmed*. — *armatis*: supply *hostibus*; 107, b. Note the contrast between *inermes* and *armatis*, which is heightened by placing the two words side by side.

63. 12. *occurrerent*: depends on *ut*, in l. 9. — *equites vero*: *while the cavalry*. We have a sort of climax: the camp followers were brave, the cavalry outdid themselves, but the enemy performed prodigies of valor.

63. 13. *omnibus in locis . . . praeferrent*: *tried to show themselves superior to the legionary soldiers*. *Praeferrent* depends on *ut*, in l. 9. *Pugnae* modifies *locis*.

63. 15. *At hostes*: see note on *equites vero*, l. 12.

63. 16. *primi*: i.e., *those in the front ranks*.

63. 17. *iacentibus*: *those who had fallen*, depending on *insisterent*; 107, b. — *insisterent* . . . *pugnarent*: 178.

63. 18. *his*: *and that when these (in turn) had been laid low*. Asyndeton; see 227. The force of *ut* in line 16 is continued through *remitterent*.

63. 19. *qui superessent*: *the survivors*. The antecedent of *qui* is *ei* understood, subject of *conicerent*. For the mood see 211. — *ut*: adverb, *as, as if*. — *conicerent* . . . *remitterent*: in the same construction as *insisterent* and *pugnarent* above, see note on *his* in l. 18.

63. 20. *pila intercepta remitterent*: *caught and threw back the pikes of the Romans*. Unless the *pilum* missed its mark, it was generally useless, at least temporarily, after it had once been cast, since the point, which was of iron, bent; see 32. — *ut non* . . . *deberet*: a clause of result in general dependence on the preceding sentence. The order and the sense of the passage show that *nequiquam* is emphatic, *so that it ought not to be thought that it was without reason (i.e., reasonable hope of success) that men of such valor dared*, etc. There is an emphasis also on *homines tantae virtutis* that it is somewhat difficult to bring out. The idea is that the remarkable courage of the enemy showed that the risks which they took were not wholly unreasonable ones, and that but for the discipline and valor of the Romans their desperate enterprise might have been crowned with success. The sentence is somewhat carelessly written, the use of *ut* as an adverb, the omission of the conjunction *ut* in l. 18, and the appending of another result clause in a different relation from that of the preceding ones are decidedly awkward. See note on p. 31, l. 2 (last part).

63. 21. *homines*: subject of *ausos esse*, while *homines* . . . *ausos esse* is the subject of *deberet*. Taking no account of the emphasis of individual words, the order of the thought is: *ut non iudicari deberet homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse*, etc.

63. 23. *quae* . . . *redegerat*: *for these things, difficult as they were, the greatness of their courage had rendered easy*; more lit., *had rendered easy from (being) most difficult*. *Facilia* is a predicate adj.

63. 25. CHAPTER 28. *prope ad internecionem*: this seems to be an exaggeration, since five years later the Nervii sent a large force to join in the general revolt of Gaul against Caesar. Caesar, however, believed the statement of the Nervii themselves (see below, note on *ex sescentis*, p. 64, l. 3). On the general subject see note on p. 31, l. 2.

63. 26. *redacto*: agrees in gender and number with the nearer of the two subjects, *nomine*.

63. 28. *coniectos*: sc. *esse*. — *dixeramus*: *we had said*, before beginning the description of the battle; on the plural see note on *demonstravimus*, p. 45, l. 1.

63. 29. *impeditum* . . *tutum*: predicate adjectives with *nihil* (sc. *esse*) that nothing stood in the way of the victors, etc.; i.e., that no place of retreat could save them from the pursuing Romans. For the case of *victoribus* and *victis* see 109.

Page 64. 1. *consensu*: 126.

64. 3. *ex sescentis*: to be taken with *sese redactos esse*. This statement bears out that of Caesar on p. 63, l. 25 (see note on *prope ad internecionem*); but it was evidently an exaggeration, designed to excite pity and get favorable terms of surrender.

64. 4. *vix ad*: we should reverse the order of these two words in English.

64. 6. *usus*: sc. *esse*; nom. since the subject is the same as that of *videretur*, on which *usus* depends.

64. 8. *uti*: note the quantity. What does it indicate? — *ab iniuria et maleficio*: sc. *eorum*, referring to the Nervii; 99.

64. 10. CHAPTER 29. *cum*: the conjunction, in spite of the following abl.; cf. p. 16, l. 8, and the note. — *omnibus copiis*: 126.

64. 12. *ex itinere*: i.e., they turned back from their march and went home.

64. 13. *in unum oppidum*: at the junction of the Sabis (Sambre) and Mosa (Meuse) rivers, the modern Namur. See Plan.

64. 14. *Quod cum*: although this.

Page 65. 3. *ducentorum pedum*: 102; *amplius* does not affect the construction. — *relinquebatur*: imperfect of description;



164. — *quem locum*: *this place*; *i.e.*, the accessible side of their stronghold.

65. 4. *duplici altissimo*: two adjectives modifying one noun are usually connected by *et*, but *duplici* and *muro* form one idea; trans. *a double wall of great height*. — *tum . . . collocabant*: *they were at that time placing*, progressive imperfect; see 163, and cf. *relinquebatur*, l. 3. Note the difference between these two uses of the imperfect. — *magni ponderis*: 101.

65. 7. *iter . . . facerent*: *were on their way*.

65. 8. *agere ac portare*: *to drive and carry*, referring to baggage and to beasts of burden and other cattle.

65. 9. *citra*: *i.e.*, on the west side, towards the Roman Province. — *custodiam ex suis ac praesidium*: *a guard and a garrison from their own (number)*. Or *a force of men to guard it* (225).

65. 10. *sex milia hominum*: *(consisting of) six thousand men*; in apposition with *custodiam ac praesidium*. — *una*: *with it, i.e.*, the baggage.

65. 11. *post eorum obitum*: after the destruction of the rest of the Cimbri and Teutones who had continued their march towards Italy; see 76 and 77.

65. 12. *cum . . . inferrent . . . defenderent*: the clauses are explanatory of *exagitati*; for the mood see 185, and cf. *cum . . . prohibent*, p. 1, l. 15. — *illatum*: *brought against (them)*.

65. 13. *consensu*: 126. — *eorum* = *finitimorum*. — *hunc . . . locum*: *this place, i.e.*, the place where they had established their stronghold, and the surrounding country. The name of their *oppidum* is not known. For the case of *domicilio* see 113.

65. 15. CHAPTER 30. *primo adventu*: 138; note that the context often determines the construction of words.

65. 16. *faciebant . . . contendebant*: imperfects of repeated action; see 163. Do not use the progressive form in translating. — *parvulis proeliis*: *slight skirmishes*; *parvulis* is the diminutive of *parvus*.

65. 17. *pedum*: 102.

65. 18. *quindecim . . . passuum*: 102. Both this phrase and *pedum* in l. 17 modify *vallo*; *vallo pedum duodecim* forming one idea; cf. *duplici altissimo muro*, p. 65, l. 4. We may trans-

late, a twelve-foot wall, fifteen miles in circumference. — *castellis*: redoubts, diminutive of *castra*, in the sense of fortifications. The Romans surrounded the stronghold of the enemy by a wall, in which there were redoubts at frequent intervals.

65. 19. *circummuniti*: invested, not "defended." — *oppido*: cf. *castris continuuit*, p. 39, l. 29, and the note.

65. 20. *vineis*, *aggere*, *turrim*: see 61-64.

65. 21. *irridere* . . . *increpitare*: 214.

65. 22. *a tanto spatio*: so far off; for *ab* (*oppido*) *tantum spatium* (91) or *tanto spatio* (125). Cf. p. 51, l. 2 and the note.

65. 23. *institueretur*: 187. — *quibusnam manibus*: with what hands, pray? 119. Note the force of *-nam*.

65. 24. *praesertim homines*, etc.: especially since they were (lit., being) such little men. *Homines* is in apposition with the subject of *confident*. For the case of *tantulae staturae* see 101; note the contemptuous diminutive *tantulae*.

65. 25. *hominibus Gallis*: in the eyes of the Gauls; dative of the person judging, a variety of the dat. of reference (109); cf. *sibi*, p. 21, l. 17, and the note.

65. 26. *contemptui*: an object of contempt; 113. — *tanti oneris*: 101.

65. 27. *confident*: 206. Introduce the sentence by asking.

65. 28. CHAPTER 31. *moveri*: sc. *turrim*. — *moenibus*: dat. with *appropinquare*; see note on p. 53, l. 2.

65. 29. *commoti*: *com-* has intensive force.

Page 66. 1. *ad hunc modum*: in the following manner, 144, 1, *e*.

66. 2. *locuti*: sc. *sunt*. — *non* . . . *existimare*: sc. *se*, as subject.

66. 4. *tanta celeritate*: 123. — *possent*: 188.

66. 5. *eorum*: i.e., *Romanorum*. — *permittere*: *se* does duty both as subject and object, = *se se suaque* . . . *permittere*. — *Unum*: one thing; the adj. is used as a subst. It stands first for emphasis, which may be brought out by translating, *there was one thing that they begged and prayed for*. What it was, is explained by the clause, *ne . . . despoliaret*, line 8.

66. 6. *pro*: in accordance with. — *sua*: cf. p. 55, l. 7.

66. 7. *quam . . . audirent*: note the tense of the verb: not “which they had heard of,” but *which they were (continually) hearing of*. That is, it was well-known among the Gauls. For the mood see 211. — *statuisset*: for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

66. 8. *ne . . . despoliaret*: 205. — *armis*: 115. — *Sibi*: 114.

66. 9. *inimicos*: an adjective; see VOCAB. — *virtuti*: 107, a. — *a quibus*: *against these*; 115, and Note.

66. 10. *traditis armis*: = *si arma tradidissent* (for the fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc.), *if they should surrender their arms*. — *possent*: for the fut. ind. of the dir. disc. — *Sibi praestare*: 160; the subject of *praestare* is the clause *quamvis fortunam . . . pati*.

66. 11. *in eum casum*: *to such a pass.* — *deducerentur*: for the fut. ind. (or pres. subj.) of the dir. disc. — *quamvis*: acc. of *quavis*; see VOCAB. and note the derivation and meaning. — *a populo Romano*: *at the hands of the Roman people*; abl. of agent (116), since *quamvis fortunam pati* is equivalent to *to be visited with any punishment whatsoever*, or *to have any punishment whatsoever inflicted on them*. Cf. p. 16, l. 4, and the note on *a Caesare*.

66. 13. *consuessent*: = *consuevissent*.

66. 14. CHAPTER 32. *Ad haec*: *ad* with the acc. is used because Caesar *sent* his reply to the people in the town.

66. 15. *merito*: 122.

66. 16. *aries*: see 62. — *attigisset . . . deditissent*: for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc.

66. 17. *deditionis . . . traditis*: note the tense of the infin.; *there were no terms of peace which did not include the surrender of their arms*. *Armis traditis* is an abl. abs. with the force of a condition.

66. 18. *in*: *in the case of*.

66. 19. *quam*: *any*, with *iniuriam*. — *dediticiis*: here the noun; cf. p. 21, l. 12 and note on p. 56, l. 14.

66. 21. *Re nuntiata ad suos*: by the envoys; see p. 65, l. 29. On *ad suos* see note on *Ad haec*, l. 14. — *facere*: *did*. We should expect the future, “that they would do,” but the present is sometimes used with the force of a future, cf. p. 52, l. 22, and the note on *neque . . . progređi*.

66. 22. *magna multitudine*: where is the participle of the abl. abs.? Read the sentence through.

66. 23. *prope*: adv., with *adaequarent*.

66. 24. *summam altitudinem*: *the full height*. The *agger* had been pushed close to the enemy's wall. The arms nearly filled up the gap between the end of the *agger* and the wall.

66. 25. *tamen*: *in spite of this*; i.e., although they threw out so great a number of weapons, these were only two-thirds of what they had.

66. 26. *portis patefactis . . . usi*: trans. the abl. abs. by a verb correlative with *usi* (here = *kept*).

66. 29. CHAPTER 33. *quam*: for the meaning cf. *quam*, i. 19.

Page 67. 1. *ut intellectum est*: = *ut postea intellectum est*; cf. *ut postea perspectum est*, p. 66, l. 25.

67. 2. *praesidia deducturos*: *would withdraw their garrison* at the wall and the redoubts. Supply *esse* with *deducturos* and *servaturos*.

67. 3. *crediderant*: note the tense, *they had believed*, before forming their plan.

67. 5. *scutis*: governed by *cum* in line 4. — *ex cortice*: of bark, abl. of material; see 142, 2, d. — *viminibus intextis*: *woven willow twigs*, governed by *ex*.

67. 6. *ut*: note the mood of the verb.

67. 7. *tertia vigilia*: 140. This long sentence should be divided into two or more in the translation. — *qua*: the adv. — *minime arduus*: evidently the Roman wall was on higher ground than the rest of the plain at the foot of the hill on which the stronghold of the enemy was located.

67. 8. *omnibus copiis*: 126.

67. 10. *imperaverat*: the tense implies that Caesar had anticipated the attack, and given the order beforehand.

67. 11. *eo*: the adv.; they ran to the point where the enemy's attack was made; see line 7. — *concursum est*: *the Romans rushed*; lit., *it was rushed* (by the Romans); 160.

67. 12. *pugnatumque*. *est*: *but the enemy fought*; see the preceding note. — *ita*: here means *as*. — *a viris . . . pug-*

*nari debuit*: as brave men might be expected to fight; lit., as it ought to be fought by brave men.

67. 13. *iniquo loco*: for the omission of the prep. see 132.

67. 14. *iacerent*: 179.

67. 15. *una*: alone. — *omnis spes salutis*: cf. *in extrema spe salutis* in l. 13. In English we should avoid such a repetition, but similar cases are not infrequent in Caesar. — *ad*: about, with *milibus quattuor*.

67. 17. *cum* . . *defenderet*: how should *cum* be translated here?

67. 19. *sectionem* . . *vendidit*: including the inhabitants, as well as their possessions, as appears below. Although Caesar's reputation for clemency (see p. 66, l. 6) was well deserved, his situation compelled him to punish treachery in signal fashion.

67. 20. *capitum*: persons or souls; see p. 22, l. 12, and the note.

67. 21. *milium quinquaginta trium*: as 53,000; appositional genitive in the predicate; 100 and 103, Note.

## II. THE CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

67. 22. CHAPTER 34. *P. Crasso*: son of Marcus Crassus, the triumvir, and one of Caesar's best officers. He had rendered good service in the battle with Ariovistus; see p. 43, lines 15 ff. — *cum legione una*: the seventh.

67. 23. *miserat*: after the battle with the Nervii. — *Coriosolitas*: a Greek accusative plural.

67. 24. *quae*: agrees in gender and number with the predicate nominative *civitates*.

67. 25. *omnes eas civitates*: namely, those just enumerated.

Page 68. 1. CHAPTER 35. *tanta . . opinio perlata est*: i.e., the report was so widespread and made so strong an impression. *Opinio* might perhaps be translated *impression*.

68. 3. *incolerent*: 211.

68. 4. *qui . . . pollicerentur*: note the mood; 177. — *se . . daturas*: since *daturas* is feminine, either *se* refers to *qui* and the ambassadors identify themselves with the states that

they represent, or perhaps *se* refers to *nationibus* as the logical subject, since the sentence might have read, *ut eae nationes mitterent legatos . . . qui se daturas . . . pollicerentur*.

68. 5. in *Italiam*: Cisalpine Gaul, in northern Italy, is referred to. This with *Illyricum* formed part of Caesar's province.

68. 6. *inita proxima aestate*: abl. abs. denoting time (130).

68. 7. in *Carnutes*, etc.: with *deductis*; we should say, *having led his legions into winter quarters in the country of the Carnutes*, etc.

68. 8. *quaeque civitates . . . erant*: = *in easque civitates quae . . . erant*.

68. 10. *Ob easque res*: *-que* is seldom appended to a monosyllabic prep.; cf. *ex utraque parte*, p. 51, l. 15. — *ex litteris*: *i.e.*, on the receipt of Caesar's letter, in which he gave an account of his victory. — *dierum quindecim*: 102; the longest previous public Thanksgiving had been one of twelve days, decreed in honor of Caesar's rival, Pompey, after the defeat of Mithradates.

68. 11. *quod*: *a thing which*; the antecedent is the clause which precedes. In such cases *id quod* is more common.

68. 12. *nulli*: = *nemini*, *to no one*; note the emphatic position.

### BOOK III

#### I. GALBA AMONG THE ALPINE TRIBES. END OF THE YEAR 57 B.C.

Page 71. 1. CHAPTER 1. *Servium Galbam*: like others of Caesar's lieutenants, he ultimately went over to his enemies and became one of the assassins. The Roman emperor Galba (68–69 A.D.) was a lineal descendant of this man.

71. 4. *lacu Lemanno*: *Lake Geneva*.

71. 5. *mittendi*: trans. *for this* (*i.e.*, sending). — *iter per Alpes*: the road leading by the Great St. Bernard into Switzerland and to Lake Geneva.

71. 6. *magno cum periculo*, etc.: trans. *running great risk and paying high toll*. — *mercatores*: these were no doubt Greek

traders from Massilia (Marseilles) ; the close alliance and friendship between this city and the Roman republic were very useful at the outset as a pretext for increasing Rome's power in Gaul. See 75.

71. 7. *consuerant* : = *consueverant*, from *consuesco*.

71. 8. *arbitraretur* : in spite of its mood and tense, this is not a condition contrary to fact. Its tense is due to its being in a dependent clause in secondary sequence ; its mood to its being a part of the original message of Caesar. This message is not quoted in regular form with a principal and dependent clauses following an introductory verb of saying, but as a subst. clause (*uti . . . collocaret*) the direct object of *permisit*, qualified by this conditional clause. In Caesar's original order, the wording may have been, *Si arbitraris* (or *arbitraberis*) *colloca* ; 211. — in his locis : *in that neighborhood*.

71. 10. *proeliis factis* . *constituit* : Caesar's fondness for the abl. abs. construction is everywhere shown. Of the five examples in this passage the first two are dependent upon those following. Perhaps they may be joined to the main sentence in this way : *When ambassadors were sent to Galba . . . after he had fought . . . and captured* . *he determined*, etc. Another way would be to translate the participles as main verbs, and break up the long sentence into several shorter ones.

71. 13. *reliquis* . *cohortibus* : how many would there be ? See 17.

71. 16. *non magna adiecta planitie* : abl. abs., *bordering upon a small plain* ; lit., *adiecta* means *being placed near*.

71. 17. *continetur* : *is shut in by*.

71. 19. *ad hiemandum* : a variety upon *hiemandi causa* used just above ; 219. It was not the Roman custom to billet their soldiers upon the inhabitants of subject towns for winter quarters, but to keep them together in camps of their own. In this case, when, for some reason, a part of the town is taken, the inhabitants of that part are sent out.

Page 72. 2. CHAPTER 2. *eo* : i.e., to the village of Octodurus. — *exploratores* : 44.

72. 3. *quam . . . concesserat* : a clause introduced by the

writer simply to explain; not reported by the *exploratores*, hence not subjunctive; 208.

72. 6. *Id*: omit in translating; it is explained by the clause *ut . . . caperent*.

72. 8. *primum . . . ; tum etiam . . . Accedebat quod . . .*: these three words or phrases serve to introduce the successive clauses which give the reasons for the Gauls' conduct. Roughly they correspond to, *first; then too; furthermore*. — *neque eam plenissimam*: *which was not even complete, as, etc.*

72. 10. *singillatim*: in contrast with *cohortibus*, not regular divisions, but individuals or small parties.

72. 16. *nomine*: lit., *in the name of*, translate simply as; *loco* is used in the same way.

72. 18. *conari*: an infin. in the principal clause of indir. disc. depending upon the phrase *sibi persuasum habebant*. This expression (lit. translated, *they had (it) persuaded to themselves*) is equivalent to a verb of thinking and so takes an infin. clause dependent upon it in the same way. Trans., *they were convinced, etc.*

72. 20. *Galba*: translate *consilio convocato* as the principal clause immediately after this word, *i.e., G. consilium convocat et*, etc.; then bring in the subordinate clauses with *cum*, etc. — *opus hibernorum*: the laying out of the camp and erecting of buildings and all else except the defences round about it; these are specially mentioned, *i.e., munitiones*.

72. 21. *perfectae*: in agreement with the nearer subject *munitiones*.

72. 22. *commeatu*: when this is used with *frumento*, or *re frumentaria*, it probably refers to all sorts of war supplies other than food.

72. 23. *nihil de bello timendum*: *he had no reason to fear war*, supplying *sibi* and *esse*.

72. 25. *Quo in*, etc., the usual close connection with the preceding sentence by a rel. pron. Trans. by a demonstrative pron. Begin the translation of the whole sentence with the *cum*-clause; 158, a. — *consilio*: *a council of war*.

72. 26. *repentini*: this adj., followed so closely as it is by



*praeter opinionem*, emphasizes the complete surprise of the Romans.

72. 28. *neque subsidio*: for *et neque subsidio*.

72. 29. *veniri*: supply *posset* from *possent* following; *no one could come to rescue them*, lit., and *neither was it able to be arrived for help*. *Venio* can, of course, be used only impersonally in the pass., as it is an intransitive verb; 108.

Page 73. 1. *prope iam desperata salute*: *desperare* is used in the abl. abs. construction by Caesar as if a transitive verb. In other constructions he joins the dat. with it or *de* and the abl. Make this abl. abs. the main clause of the English translation, and join it closely with *quo in consilio*.

73. 2. *sententiae dicebantur, ut*: *proposals were made that*; this phrase is followed by a subst. clause with *ut* (as a verb meaning *resolve* or *decree* would be) explaining the *sententiae*. Cf. 199.

73. 3. *eruptione facta*: the English idiom needs careful consideration in translating Caesar's numerous abl. abs. uses. No one method is sufficient. Vary your style as much as possible. Here trans. as if we had *eruptionem facerent . . . et contenderent*.

73. 4. *Maiori . . . parti placuit*: *the majority (i.e., the larger part) preferred*.

73. 5. *rei eventum experiri*: *test the outcome of a struggle*.

73. 7. CHAPTER 4. *vix*: emphatic because placed out of position before *ut*; this draws attention to it. Cf. *vix qua*, p. 5, l. 26. — *eis rebus . . . administrandis*: the dat. of the gerundive, as here, is rare, replacing the gen., or more common acc. with *ad*. Trans. the verbs here by *arrange* and *carry out*; 219.

73. 9. *decurrere*: for *decurrebant*, as *conicere* below for *coniciebant*, historical infin. substituted for indic., with the subject *hostes* in the nom. Observe the others following: *propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari*; 214.

73. 11. *integris viribus*: an abl. abs. expressing time, *so long as their strength was unimpaired*; 130.

73. 12. *ex loco superiore*: from the rampart of the camp, with the enemy below them in the plain.

73. 13. *defensoribus*: an abl. of separation depending on *nudata*; 115. — *eo*: to that point.

73. 14. *hoc*: an abl. of specification with *superari*; they were at a disadvantage in this; 129.

73. 16. *integris viribus*: an abl. of quality describing *alii*; 128.

73. 17. *non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem*: both parts of this expression qualify a single verb *dabatur*. A second *non* is to be supplied after *modo* from the *ne . . . quidem*, trans., not only was opportunity not given . . . but not even . . ., etc. On p. 57, l. 5, we have the complete expression *non modo non . . . sed ne . . . quidem*.

73. 18. *defesso*: an adj. used as a subst.; so *saucio* following; 152, a.

73. 24. CHAPTER 5. *vallum scindere*: the *vallum* consisted largely of a palisade made of stakes (*valli*); hence the appropriateness of the word *scindere*. — *fossas*: perhaps referring to different parts of the *fossa* mentioned at the end of Chapter 1. The singular seems more suitable.

73. 25. *ad extremum . . . casum*: matters (*res*) had now reached a desperate state.

73. 26. *primi pili centurio*: the highest in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion (the number when the ten cohorts were present). See 23. — *Nervico proelio*: an abl. expressing time when; *Nervico* is an adj. equivalent to *cum Nervii*.

73. 27. *diximus*: cf. p. 62, l. 6 ff.

73. 28. *tribunus militum*: see 21. — *consili*: judgment.

73. 29. *unam esse spem*: the real subj. acc. of this infin. is the clause *si . . . experirentur*.

Page 74. 1. *experirentur*: resort to their last expedient. Account for the apparently irregular sequence in tense of the verb; 162 and 171, ftn. 1.

74. 3. *certiores facit*: the meaning here is not simply "inform" as so often, but obviously "command" as well. Hence the subj. follows (*ut* is frequently omitted after verbs of commanding). See 199. Supply *per eos* in translating.

74. 5. *post*: then.

74. 7. CHAPTER 6. *Quod*: for *id quod*; supply *facere* with *iussi sunt*.

74. 8. *cognoscendi*: to see exactly (lit., of seeing, etc.); join closely with *facultatem*.

74. 9. *sui colligendi*: though *sui* is plural, the form *colligendorum* is not used. It is usual in such cases to keep the singular with *sui*, even if it refers to the plural; 221. The enemy had been divided, making their attack in many places. Now to meet the sally successfully they needed to rally in one place.

74. 10. *qui in spem potiundorum . . . venerant*: *who had expected to gain*, etc.; lit., how is it rendered? *Potior* and all the deponents governing the abl. may be used as if transitive in the gerundive construction. In earlier Latin they were transitive and governed the accus.

74. 11. *circumventos interficiunt*: instead of the Latin idiom of a finite verb with a participle in agreement with the obj., substitute two finite verbs connected by a conjunction, *circumveniunt et interficiunt*.

74. 15. *superioribus*: perhaps emphasized by its unusual position. Obviously it is the emphatic word of the phrase. Regularly, then, it should come between *ne* and *quidem*.

74. 16. *armis*: an abl. of separation depending on *exutis*, which, like *fusus*, is in the abl. abs. with *copiis*.

74. 19. *alio . . . consilio*: contrasted with *aliis . . . rebus*. The first three chapters describe Caesar's purpose in coming. Had he expected to need to quell uprisings, he would have brought more troops.

74. 20. *occurrisse*: *met*.

## II. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR, 56 B.C.

Page 75. 1. CHAPTER 7. *His rebus gestis*: this refers not merely to Galba's experiences, but to everything previously described in Caesar's two years of campaigning in Gaul. It is surprising that in the summary just below he fails to mention the war with the Helvetii. — *omnibus de causis . . . existimaret*: *had every reason to consider Gaul at peace*.

**75. 7. P. Crassus:** he is mentioned before, p. 42, l. 16. — *adulescens*: this is like our affix *Jr.* when added to a proper name. It indicates, usually, that there is another, as here the father, having the same name. This young man lost his life in battle with the Parthians vainly trying to save the day for his father, Crassus, the triumvir, whose folly had involved the army in peril. It is he that has been compared to Lausus in Vergil's *Aeneid*. See *Aeneid* X, 762–832.

**75. 8. proximus:** with prepositional force here, governing the acc. in the same way as *prope* and *propior*. — *mare Oceanum*: almost a reminiscence of the stream Oceanus of Homer; the sea (*mare*) was called Oceanus unless it had some special name. — *Andibus*: consult the Map of Gaul for the location of these tribes. The Andes were just north of the Liger (the modern Loire), the Esuvii were to the northeast of them. The northwestern peninsula (modern Brittany) was occupied by the Veneti and Coriosolitae.

**75. 15. CHAPTER 8. Huius . . . civitatis:** the Veneti, the last mentioned. — *est*: with the pred. gen. of possession, *belongs to this people*.

**75. 16. regionum earum:** *thereabout*. — *et (naves) . . . et (scientia)*: *not only . . . but also*.

**75. 19. et in magno impetu . . . ipsi:** these phrases give reasons for *habent omnes vectigales*, etc. The sea is unsheltered (*aperto*), violent (*magno impetu*), and moreover there are but few harbors (*paucis portibus*), all in the possession of the Veneti. Hence came their power.

**75. 22. vectigales:** any who ran into their harbors, compelled by stress of weather, were forced to pay tolls.

**75. 23. retinendi Sili:** lit., *of retaining Silius*, but the idea is more clearly brought out if we translate, *by keeping*, etc., i.e., they start a rebellion by this act.

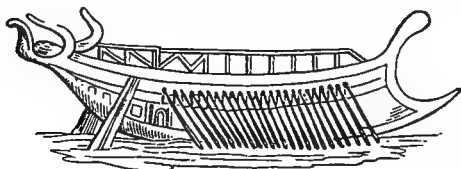
**75. 25. auctoritate:** *example*.

**Page 76. 1. subita et repentina:** the first means *quickly taken*; the second, *unexpected*.

**76. 4. communi consilio:** *with the general approval*, or, *in common with the rest*; 127.

76. 10. *si . . . remittat*: in indir. disc. depending upon a verb of saying implied in *legationem mittunt*. Why is *remittat* not in the infin., standing, as it does, in the principal clause in indir. disc.? See 205.

76. 13. CHAPTER 9. *longius*: Caesar was in Illyricum, as Chap. 7 (p. 75, l. 3) shows. As he (emphatically) opposed



WAR GALLEY: (*Navis Longa*.)

to Crassus) was too far away to attend to the matter himself, pending his own arrival (*interim*) he had ships built in the Loire.

— *naves . . . longas*: the ships of war. These were made longer than the *naves onerariae*, ships of burden, both for greater speed, and in order that a longer row of fighting men might be ranged on deck to face the foes. See also illustration on p. 90.

76. 19. *quantum in se facinus admisissent*: how great a crime they had been guilty of, lit., they had allowed (or admitted) upon themselves.

76. 20. *legatos . . . coniectos*: this depends directly upon *intellegebant* and shows what their *facinus* had been. The term *legatos* is used inexactly. Caesar is perhaps trying to justify his campaign against these people. These were simply *deputies* sent out to demand military supplies among a subject population, and not ambassadors whose persons should have been sacred. — *quod nomen*: an office which.

76. 24. *hoc*: for this reason, an abl. of cause immediately explained by the clause *quod . . . confidebant*.

76. 25. *Pedestria itinera*: all the roads, i.e., approach by land, as opposed to *navigationem*; approach by sea.

76. 29. *ac iam ut . . . acciderent*: and even assuming that, etc.; the subjunct. is jussive, expressing a concession. The *tamen* of the following clause shows this.

Page 77. 1. *facultatem . . . navium*: the usual translation, supply (cf. p. 29, l. 13) of ships is probably correct, but the words

and the situation lend themselves easily to the idea, *skill (in handling) ships*.

77. 4. *atque in vastissimo*, etc.: *atque* has a comparative force here directly following *aliam*; trans. *than*, or better, *from what it was in*, etc. In this way regularly after words of similarity and dissimilarity.—*concluso mari*: naturally the Romans were well acquainted only with the Mediterranean and its subdivisions, not with the Ocean.

77. 14. CHAPTER 10. *multa*: many reasons, partly enumerated in what follows, *iniuria, rebellio, defectio*, etc.

77. 15. *iniuria retentorum*, etc.; the gen. here defines what the wrong was; 100.—*equi-*

*tum*: many of the messengers were *tribuni militum*, who generally were selected from the equestrian order. See note on *equites*, p. 34, l. 4; 21.

77. 16. *rebellio*: a renewal of fighting. Cf. p. 109, l. 20, and p. 113, l. 15.

77. 17. *imprimis ne hac*, etc.: most of all (the fear) lest; this is to be made parallel with *iniuria, rebellio*, etc., as a fifth reason.—*hac parte neglecta*: if he let them go unpunished; 130.

77. 19. *omnes fere Gallos . . . studere et . . . excitari*: Caesar constantly repeats this sentiment in one form or another. Cf. p. 45, l. 12; p. 76, l. 1; p. 94, ll. 1-3.

77. 21. *condicionem servitutis*: means no more than *servitutem* alone; freely translated to be slaves.

77. 22. *conspirarent*: for the more usual *coniurarent*.

77. 25. CHAPTER 11. *flumini*: the dat. following the adj. of nearness, *proximi*; 114. Cf. 75, l. 8, above, where it was followed by the acc. as if a preposition.



GUBERNATOR.

77. 26. *adeat*: obj. clause with the *ut* omitted after *mandat*, a verb of commanding; 199.

77. 29. *conentur*: attracted into the subjunct., as it forms an integral part of the command; 211.

Page 78. 1. *equitatus*: the cavalry was of course composed of *auxilia*. See 18 and 16.

78. 3. *tantae nationes*: *i.e.*, the Gauls of Aquitania might unite with the tribes of Central Gaul against Rome.

78. 5. *qui . . . curet*: certain verbs, of which *curare* is one, allow the gerundive in agreement with a dir. obj. expressing purpose. Hence *manum* and *distinendam*; 222.

78. 6. *D. Brutum*: another of Caesar's officers who later became one of the conspirators against his life, following the lead of his relative Marcus Brutus, and C. Cassius. — *adulescentem*: see note on *adulescens*, p. 75, l. 7.

78. 8. *pacatis*: used as an adj. here.

78. 9. *possit*: a part of the command; hence attracted into the subjunct.; 211.

78. 11. CHAPTER 12. *ferre*: *usually, as a rule.*

78. 12. *posita*: in agreement with *oppida* understood, the subj. of *haberent*. — *extremis*: *on the ends of*, etc.; 149. — *neque . . . aditum haberent*: *could not be reached*, etc.

Page 79. 1. *cum . . . se . . . incitavisset*: *whenever (as often as) . . . had rushed in*; for the subjunct. compare p. 18, l. 26, *inflexisset*; but usually Caesar employs the indic. to denote repetition in the past.

79. 2. *horarum XII spatio*: *every twelve hours*; abl. of time within which; 139.

79. 3. *minuente*: here used as an intransitive verb.

79. 4. *affictarentur*: *would be*, not “were”; the subjunct. suggests an implied protasis in a contrary to fact condition. *If they made such an attempt* (which they did not). — *utraque re*: *in either way*; *i.e.*, the tide by its rising stopped approach by land, and by its falling ended approach by sea.

79. 5. *impediebatur*: *was rendered difficult*.

79. 6. *aggere ac molibus*: by this we are apparently to understand not simply the usual mound (*agger*), used in approaching

a town, but also dikes, whether separate or connected with the *agger*, to keep out the tide. Perhaps the whole phrase may be translated by hendiadys (see 225), *by enormous dikes*.

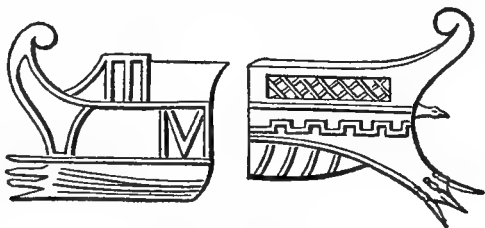
79. 7. *moenibus*: dat. following *adaequatis* (which is in the abl. and agrees with *his*), *i.e.*, brought up to a level with. For a different case following this verb used transitively, see p. 40, l. 10.

79. 11. *loci*: *position, situation*.

79. 14. *vasto atque aperto mari*: the Romans never were great sailors, despite their courage and naval victories. Caesar's repeating this phrase in three almost successive chapters, 8, 9, 12, shows how formidable this sea appeared to him. There is very little tide in the Mediterranean, a fact which largely accounts for his description.

79. 18. CHAPTER 13. *quo*: here for *ut*, as is customary whenever a comparative adj. or adv. is in the clause; 176. — *facilius*

*vada ac deces-*  
*sum aestus ex-*  
*cipere possent*: flat-bottomed boats would ground much more easily and safely when the tide left them than boats hav-



BEAK: (*Rostrum*.)

ing keels; we must trans. freely: *could rest more easily on bottom when the tide went down*; lit., *could bear the shoals and the departure of the tide more easily*. Cf. for *excipere* with this meaning, p. 101, l. 24.

79. 19. *admodum erectae*: *built up very high*.

79. 22. *quamvis*: *any whatsoever*. — *contumeliam*: *buffeting*. — *transtra*: probably we are not to think of thwarts, seats for oarsmen, which is the common meaning and use of this word, but of strong cross-beams supporting the deck. Certainly we learn from p. 81, l. 4 f., and p. 81, ll. 19 ff., that these ships had no oars.

79. 24. *crassitudine*: 128.



79. 25. *alutae*: these were of fine leather, in contrast with the *pelles*, raw hides.

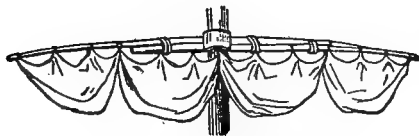
79. 28. *tantos impetus ventorum*: such violent winds. How translated literally? Translate freely in similar fashion *tanta onera navium* just below.

Page 80. 6. *adigebatur*: for *adigi poterat*. So in p. 6, l. 4, *transitur*; in p. 9, l. 12, *prohibere*.

80. 7. *copulis*: in sea-fighting the Romans always strove to reproduce the methods of fighting on land.

80. 8. *Accedebat ut . . . ferrent . . et . . . consistenter*:

*Furthermore they* (the ships of the Veneti) *rode the storm . . and rested, etc.*



YARD: (*Antenna*.)

80. 12. *casus*: disaster.

80. 14. CHAPTER

14. *sumi*: was spent.

80. 15. *fugam*: departure, escape. — *eis noceri posse*: do not imitate the awkwardness of the Latin impersonal expression (*noceo*, an intransitive verb, can only be used impersonally in the pass.), but trans. personally; 108.

80. 19. *neque satis Bruto . . . vel . . . constabat*: and neither Brutus . . . nor . . . had fully made up their minds.

80. 22. *quid agerent*: the indir. question here stands probably for a deliberative subjunct. in their thought, *quid agamus*, implying doubt. So trans. here: *what they should do*.

80. 23. *Rostro*: the abl. of means with *noceri*; the dat. of the person is to be supplied.

80. 24. *tamen*: this shows the force of the preceding abl. abs. How is it to be translated? More strictly we should have had no abl. abs. at all, but *excitatas turres* with *has*, obj. of *superabat*. — *altitudo puppium ex*, etc.: the high sterns of, etc., lit., the height of the sterns from, etc. See illustration, p. 68.

80. 25. *ex inferiore loco*: the Romans tried to get higher than their enemy by erecting towers on the decks; but this height

was more than matched by the high sterns of the ships of the Veneti.

80. 28. *falces*: in apposition with and explaining the *una res* preceding. It is described by the abl. of quality, *forma absimili*, which follows.

80. 30. *falcium*: supply *formae* after *absimili*, and you have the full expression.

Page 81. 1. *adducti erant*: compare and see note on *se incitavisset*, p. 79, l. 1.

81. 4. *Gallicis navibus*: a dat. of reference limiting the verb *consisteret* where a gen. limiting the noun *spes* would be more usual; 109, a. — *armamentis*: *equipment*. This refers to rigging which would enable them to manœuvre their vessels better. Of course this must include the *velis*, which are mentioned specifically first, as of most importance, followed by the more general word.

81. 5. *eriperetur*: perhaps this is an intentional play upon the words, *ereptis* . . . *eriperetur*, repeated so directly in a somewhat different meaning; *i.e.*, *torn away* . . . *lost*. See note on *largiter posse*, p. 14, l. 15.

81. 6. *in virtute*: *i.e.*, the contest was now more nearly like a land battle.

81. 8. *res*: *battle*; see note on *ea res*, p. 4, l. 25.

81. 13. CHAPTER 15. *binae ac ternae*: not to be taken literally; not five ships, but two or three at a time.

81. 15. *fieri*: unnecessary to the sense.

81. 16. *ei rei*: *i.e.*, the Romans could not be stopped from tearing away the sail-yards and then boarding.

81. 18. *quo*: for *in quam*. — *ferebat*: used intransitively; *naves* need not be supplied.

81. 19. *malacia*: according to some authorities this signifies *quiet* (absence) of the wind, while *tranquillitas* means the (consequent) *quiet of the sea*. — *ut se* . . . *non possent*: these ships could not have been provided with oars. See note on *transtra*, p. 79, l. 22.



FALX  
MURALIS.

81. 21. *singulas*: one after the other.

81. 23. *noctis interventu*: under cover of the night. — *pervenerint*: observe the departure from the law for the sequence of tenses; the perf. subjunct. is regular in result clauses in secondary sequence to express completed action. See 172.

81. 24. *ab hora fere quarta*: at what time in the morning? See 59.

81. 26. CHAPTER 16. *cum . . . tum*: not only . . . but also. — *iuventus*: according to Roman ideas this would mean all men who were thought fully capable of military service, *i.e.*, those from 17 to 45 years of age. They had all of these, and in addition to them all their elders and councillors.

81. 28. *navium*: placed first in its clause for emphasis, even preceding the relative *quod*, upon which it depends as a partit. gen.; trans. *all the ships they had anywhere*; 99.

Page 82. 1. *quo se . . . habebant*: *i.e.*, with their ships gone they had no place they could reach, in which they would be safe from pursuit, nor any means of defending their towns. — *quo se recipere*: a place to retreat to; a rel. clause of purpose; 177. What would be the lit. translation?

82. 3. *In quos . . . vindicandum*: an unusually severe penalty must be visited upon them, etc. — *gravius*: more severe (than usual); see note on *graviore*, p. 40, l. 6.

82. 4. *quo*: here for *ut* in a purpose clause; 176. This is a strange use of *quo* when preceded by *eo* in the principal clause.

82. 6. *sub corona vendidit*: sold as slaves. It is said that in very early times slaves were exhibited for sale wearing wreaths upon their heads, much as victims for sacrifice. This serves to account for the origin of the phrase.

### III. TITURIUS AMONG THE VENELLI

82. 7. CHAPTER 17. Q. Titurius Sabinus . . . *acceperat*: see p. 78, ll. 3 ff.

82. 10. *summam imperi*: leadership; on *imperi*, see 99.

82. 11. *exercitum magnasque copias*: the use of *inopia cibariorum* on p. 83, l. 17, seems to forbid our assuming the mean-

ing of *supplies* here for *copias*. The usual interpretation distinguishes between the trained, organized army (*exercitum*) and the large number of irregular troops gathered, which were simply multitudes of unorganized fighting men.

82. 12. *his paucis diebus*: *i.e.*, since Sabinus had come into their country.

82. 13. *quod auctores belli . . . nolebant*: *because they refused to authorize (declare) war*. Compare the usage among the Romans given in Livy 1, 17, 9; *patres auctores fiunt*.

82. 18. *revocabat*: the tense seems to show that these men were bandits; not men who gave up their usual occupation of tilling the soil for this war only.

82. 19. *rebus loco castris*: each of these ablatives may be translated by *in*. Are the ablatives all of the same sort?

82. 24. *vocibus . . . carperetur*: *was taunted by*.

Page 83. 1. *opportunitate*: *advantage*.

83. 2. *legato*: *i.e.*, a subordinate should not take chances in the absence of his superior. Even though a lieutenant was conducting an independent campaign, we must remember that his commander-in-chief had to bear all blame for his failure, just as on the other hand he would receive all praise for his success; 19.

83. 3. CHAPTER 18. *opinione*: *impression*.

83. 4. *ex eis*: supply *one* before these words in translating.

83. 5. *praemiis pollicitationibusque*: *by (present) rewards and promises (of more)*. This seems more natural than to translate it by hendiadys; 225.

83. 7. *pro perfuga*: *as if he were a deserter*. Cf. *pro viso*, p. 17, l. 17, and the note on p. 17, l. 16.

83. 8. *quibus angustiis . . . Caesar . . . prematur*: *how closely Caesar is hemmed in by the Veneti*, lit., *in what straits Caesar, etc.*

83. 9. *docet*: observe that both the indir. question (*quibus . . . prematur*) and the infin. clause in indir. disc. (*abesse*) are dependent on this word. — *neque longius abesse quin*: *and that no later than the, etc.*; lit., *and that it was not farther away but that, etc.* *Quin* is for *ut non* in a negative result clause; 178 and note on p. 39, l. 2.

83. 13. *negoti bene gerendi*: of striking a successful blow.

83. 14. *iri oportere*: both are intransitive and used impersonally; *they ought to go*, etc.

83. 15. *Multae res*: the list of these follows, *i.e.*, *cunctatio*, *confirmatio*, etc., and last of all, the clause *quod fere . . . credunt*, which is practically a noun; all are the subjects of *hortabantur*.

83. 18. *spes Venetici belli*: their belief in Caesar's peril as reported to them by the other Gauls.

83. 22. *Qua re concessa laeti, ut explorata victoria*: Overjoyed at this permission as though victory was now certain for them. Of these abl. absolutes the first seems to tell why they are *laeti*, *i.e.*, to express cause, and the second to be equivalent to a condition; 130.

83. 23. *collectis*: trans. as a finite verb and connect with *pergunt* by a conjunction *and*.

83. 26. CHAPTER 19. *Locus*: situation.

Page 84. 2. *Impeditis hostibus*: While the enemy were hampered, etc.

84. 5. *superiorum pugnarum*: in former battles. — *exercitatione*: *militum* is to be supplied with this. It is therefore followed by two genitives.

84. 7. *ac*: but, just as *-que* is to be translated frequently after a negative clause.

84. 13. *Titurio*: *i.e.* *Sabino*. — *Nam ut . . . animus sic . . . mens*: For as the disposition, etc., so their spirit, etc., or, while . . . yet . . .

84. 15. *minime resistens*: without the vigor. To quote from Livy, X, 28, 4: "The Gauls at the beginning of their battles fight as if they were more than men, at the end of them as if they were less than women."

#### IV. CAMPAIGN OF CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA

84. 18. CHAPTER 20. *ut ante dictum est*: this statement is inexact. On p. 1, l. 2, Aquitania is described as one of the three divisions of Gaul, but nothing is said of its size or population compared with the others.

84. 21. L. Valerius . . . *legatus*: nothing is known of this event.

84. 23. L. Manlius: governor of Further Gaul; defeated by one of the inferior officers of Sertorius in 78 B.C.

84. 26. *comparato*: in agreement with the nearer noun *equitatu*.

84. 27. Tolosa . . . Narbone: these are to be joined closely with *evocatis*. See 75, for *Narbo*.

Page 85. 1. *evocatis*: these were naturally most efficient soldiers. See 25, *evocati*.

85. 4. *quo plurimum valebant*: in which their chief strength lay. — in *itinere agmen*: marching column.

85. 8. *Hi*: more properly the reference to *copiae* would require *hae*.

85. 11. CHAPTER 21. in sua virtute . . . *positam*: depended on their valor.

85. 13. *imperatore*: general-in-chief. Crassus was merely a *legatus*, though a most capable one, who served his chief well; 19.

85. 14. *cuperent*: causal, parallel in construction to *putarent* and forming an additional reason why the battle was so fiercely and obstinately fought.

85. 16. *ex itinere*: i.e., he attacked the town at once, not looking for a strong resistance.

85. 18. *vineas turresque*: the resistance is so great that he is forced to resort to a regular siege. See 61, 62, 63, for the use of the *vineas turresque*. — *alias* . . . *alias*: adverbs here.

85. 21. *aerariae secturaeque*: the first of these is certainly an adj. used substantively (152, b); *copper mines and (stone) quarries*. People accustomed to such operations as are required in mining could readily build *cuniculos*, which might easily cause the Romans much annoyance.

85. 25. *faciunt*: without obj. expressed; *they do (so)*.

85. 27. CHAPTER 22. *Adiatunnus*: no verb appears in the predicate for this word until we reach *impetravit* at the very end of the chapter. The Latin includes a great many ideas in one sentence, so that English idiom requires that we break the long

involved Latin sentence into a number of shorter ones in translating. Supply a verb for *Adiatunnus* from the participle *conatus* on p. 86, l. 7, i.e., *A. eruptionem facere conatus est*.

85. 28. *devotis*: the literal meaning is, *men who had bound themselves by oath to defend another*. This is found among other tribes, — the Celtiberi, e.g., who, according to Valerius Maximus (II, 6, 11), thought it wrong to survive a battle in which he had perished to whose safety they had consecrated themselves. See also *Bellum Gallicum* 7, 40, 7: *Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit*. — *soldurios*: as this is not a Latin word, it should be retained in the nom. in the English translation. On the language of the Gauls see note on p. 1, l. 3.

85. 29. *uti . . . fruuntur*: a subst. clause in apposition with and explaining *condicio*. It may be well to trans. *haec condicio* by, *their relation (to their chiefs) is such*, etc.

Page 86. 2. *dediderint*: subjunct. by attraction to *fruuntur*; 211. — *si quid . . . accidat*: as this is introduced in direct contrast to the clause *commodis . . . fruuntur*, supply *but on the other hand* just before it. The phrase is, of course, a euphemistic one for “in case of his death.” Cf. p. 14, l. 24.

86. 6. *cum his*: of course we must trans. this clause again as a principal statement.

86. 7. *ab ea parte*: just as in *a tergo*, *a dextra*, and similar phrases, *a* is to be translated *in* or *on*; 142, 1, *b*.

86. 13. CHAPTER 23. *manu*: i.e., by the hand of man, *art*, in addition to the advantages for defence which nature had given it from its position.

86. 14. *quibus*: abl. of time *within which*, best translated by *after* or *since*, when following the other abl. of time *within which*, *paucis diebus*. Cf. p. 101, l. 29; p. 126, l. 4.

86. 16. *coniurare*: not *conspire*, but *bind themselves together on oath*. Treachery to one another was always greatly to be feared in a people so unstable as the Gauls.

86. 18. *citerioris Hispaniae*: on the border of Aquitania, inhabited by the Cantabrians (p. 88, l. 20), and later known as *Hispania Terraconensis*.

86. 19. *duces*: bring into the predicate. — *adventu*: the abl. certainly expresses time, but seems also to have an idea of cause. Cf. p. 14, l. 22. — *magna cum auctoritate*: apparently the arrival of allies from such a distance made all their neighbors favorable to their attempt, and look for its success.

86. 22. *Q. Sertorio*: one of the finest characters and greatest soldiers in the history of Rome. Forced to appear as a rebel in Spain against his own country, he really desired its good; and though called by the enemies of Rome the new Hannibal, he seems to have been rather a forerunner of Julius Caesar. Pompey, who was the last in command against him, succeeded only because of the assassination of Sertorius by certain Roman refugees who were jealous of his power and wished to supplant him. — *omnes annos*: i.e., throughout his rebellion up to his death.

86. 24. *consuetudine*: 127; Sertorius had taught them the Roman art of war.

86. 26. *Quod ubi*: the preceding sentence contains the reason why it would speedily become necessary for Crassus to separate his army. *Quod* is to be taken adverbially and may be translated *but*, as in the phrase *quod si*.

86. 27. *non facile diduci*: supply *posse*; he had not troops enough to meet them at all these points.

86. 30. *in dies*: *day after day*.

Page 87. 1. *quin . . . decertaret*: trans. as if it were *decertare* simply. Just as *dubitare*, meaning *hesitate*, is regularly followed by the complementary infin., so we should expect *cunctari* to be used here.

87. 4. CHAPTER 24. *duplici acie*: it will be remembered that the usual form of battle-line for the Romans was the *triplex acies*. See 41, 42, for the description of this and the different views of what the formation was. It is clear in any event that the Roman leader did not place much reliance upon the *auxilia*, for these were not placed as usual upon the wings, but between the Roman lines, so that they would be compelled to fight. Apparently Crassus's choice of the *duplex* rather than the *triplex acies* was to enable him to present as many men as possible against the line of the enemy, which must greatly have outnumbered his own.



87. 9. *sine ullo vulnere*: *without loss* (to themselves).

87. 11. *impeditos*: this always suggests unreadiness to fight, but not always for the same reason. Here they are marching (*in agmine*) and are burdened by the weight of their personal baggage. See 38, 39, upon the weight of the soldier's pack, etc.

87. 13. *productis Romanorum copiis*: an abl. abs. expressing concession; 130.

87. 14. *castris*: general words of place like *castris* and *loco* often omit the preposition *in*; 132.

87. 17. *expectari . . . oportere quin ad castra iretur*: *they should not longer delay going against the camp*. This awkward impersonal construction should of course be avoided in English. What is the lit. rendering? 160; 200; a subst. clause of result; cf. *quin* in a clause of result, p. 39, l. 2.

87. 20. CHAPTER 25. *Ibi*: the entire chapter is occupied by a single Latin sentence. Here as elsewhere in such cases it is best to break the sentence into two or three shorter ones in translating.

87. 21. *vallo munitionibusque*: if the second word is not a mere repetition of the first, it must refer to special defences raised on the top of the wall, such as breastworks, towers, etc. See p. 167, Caesar's Fortifications at Alesia.

87. 23. *lapidibus telisque subministrandis*: an abl. of manner limiting *praebuit*. Trans.: *by supplying stones and javelins*; lit., *by stones and javelins to be furnished*; 123; 219.

87. 24. *speciem atque opinionem*: lit., *look and idea*. Trans.: (with *praeberent*) *had the look and gave the impression of fighting men*.

88. 2. *esse*: join closely with *munita*. — *a decumana porta*: *a* used as in *a dextra*, *a tergo*, etc. The decuman gate was at the rear of the camp. Its name may have come from the position occupied by the tenth cohort in a regularly organized camp of a single legion. The rear gate of any camp would undoubtedly be so called by the Romans from their own usage, whether the inner part of the camp or even the position of the gate exactly corresponded with their own, or not; 52.

88. 3. *-que*: *and therefore*. — *habere*: *had, i.e., allowed, offered*.

88. 4. CHAPTER 26. *equitum praefectos*: the cavalry were not composed of Romans. How about their officers? See 18.

88. 5. *praemiis*, etc., cf. p. 83, l. 5, with note.

88. 7. *a labore*: there seems to be no satisfactory explanation of the use of *a* here. Trans. as a simple abl. of means or cause.

88. 8. *longiore*: the march was round-about, hence longer than would have been required had it not been necessary to avoid observation.

88. 11. *prius . . . quam*: translate the two together as if *priusquam* stood where *quam* does.

88. 12. *ab his videri* (posset): trans. this whole phrase actively and personally. There is an underlying idea of purpose "that the enemy might not be able to see," etc., "before the," etc., 184. Otherwise we should have had the indic.

88. 14. *ab ea parte*: *in that quarter*, cf. p. 86, l. 7.

88. 17. *desperatis omnibus rebus*: *in utter despair*.

88. 20. *quae*: (*i.e.*, *milia*) this relates to *miliū* for its antecedent, and is subject acc. of *convenisse*, with which it serves as subject of the impersonal *constabat*.

88. 21. *multa nocte*: *late at night*; perhaps this is really an abl. abs. expressing time and limiting *se recepit*. Cf. *multo die*, p. 17, l. 14; *ad multam noctem*, p. 20, l. 13.

88. 24. CHAPTER 27. *quo in numero*: *among them*.

88. 27. *ultimae*: bring in predicatively. Only a few did not send hostages, and these because they were *ultimae*. — *tempore*: observe the abl. instead of the usual dat. with a verb of trusting.

#### V. CAESAR'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI

89. 6. CHAPTER 28. *longe alia ratione ac*: *in a far different way from*, etc. As appears from what follows, they declined a regular battle with the Romans and watched for an opportunity to surprise them. See note on *atque*, p. 77, l. 4.

89. 12. *in opere*: the work of fortifying, *i.e.*, chiefly, building their wall and digging the trench.

89. 13. *evolaverunt*: *dashed forth*.

89. 16. *impeditioribus locis*: *over more difficult ground*.

89. 18. CHAPTER 29. *Reliquis*: hardly differing here from

*following*. — *deinceps*: an adv., but standing between adj. and noun as if itself an adj. or a participle. Trans.: *one after the other*.

89. 19. *inermibus militibus*: 130.

89. 20. *materiam*: *timber*.

89. 24. *extrema*: *the last part of*; 149.

89. 27. *sub pellibus*: as the winter season was at hand, the ordinary covering of the summer camp was insufficient. The soldiers needed more protection against the weather. Huts took the place of tents in *hibernis*; 58.

## BOOK IV

### I. CAMPAIGN AGAINST USIPITES AND TENCTERI, 55 B.C.

Page 91. 1. CHAPTER 1. *Ea quae secuta est hieme*: the first four words are equivalent to an adj., *sequenti*. — *qui fuit annus*: *qui* agrees in gender with its pred. appos. *annus* (84, a). *Annus* is made to appear the equivalent of *hieme* in meaning. Trans.: *which was that of the year when P. and C. were*, etc. The date was 55 B.C. The Roman calendar — which Caesar himself corrected some years later — was then in such confusion that the official Jan. 1 fell in November of the solar year.

91. 2. *M. Crasso*: the third member of the First Triumvirate (8, end; 10) with Julius Caesar and Pompey. He was the richest of the Romans at this time, and was frequently of service to Caesar financially. His son, P. Crassus, mentioned above, was one of Caesar's valued lieutenants. See note on *adulescens* (p. 75, l. 7). — *Usipites Germani*: *Germani*, not repeated with *Tencteri*, is generally assumed to be in apposition with both *Usipites* and *Tencteri*. It is obvious from what follows that they were both German tribes; possibly, then, German Usipites are thus distinguished from other Usipites who were not Germans.

91. 10. *singula milia*: *one thousand each*, i.e., a total of 100,000 men. *Milia* being itself plural requires the distributive numeral instead of the cardinal (*una*) with it; see note on *trinis catenis*, p. 44, l. 6.

91. 12. *illos*: *i.e.*, those who have gone out to war.

91. 13. *anno post*: the abl. expresses degree of difference; *a year later*; 125.

91. 14. *ratio atque usus*: *theory and practice*; the first refers to study of the art of war and to strategy, the second to actual experience in warfare.

91. 15. *agri*: partitive gen. depending upon *nihil*; 99.

91. 16. *anno*: contrast the use of this abl. with that of *anno* above (l. 13).

91. 19. *quae res*: these two words seem to sum up what has gone before (*neque . . . venationibus*), and then to be explained again in *cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione*, etc. Their food, exercise, and general freedom from restraint are thought to have the result which Caesar claims.

Page 92. 1. *vires alit*: *increases (fosters) their strength*. — *immani . . . magnitudine*: abl. of quality limiting *homines*; 128.

92. 3. *locis frigidissimis*: this phrase certainly expresses a concession; trans.: *although the climate is very cold*; 130. — *vestitus*: limiting *quicquam*; 99.

92. 5. *lavarentur*: a pass. form equivalent to the reflexive, *se lavarent*. Use the present tenses in translating these verbs; the Latin sequence follows the form of *adduxerunt*, rather than the meaning. They *have accustomed themselves*, therefore *they are accustomed*, speaking generall of the habit of the tribe.

92. 7. CHAPTER 2. *est aditus*: supply *ad eos*. — *eo*: distinguish between the use of this word for a dative, meaning to *this place*, and, as here, the abl. use, *on this account, for this purpose*. — *quae*: equivalent to *eas res* (obj. of *vendant*) *quas*.

92. 8. *quibus*: equivalent to *eos* (obj. of *habeant*) *quibus*. — *vendant*: subjunct. in a rel. clause of purpose; *quibus vendant* may be translated together as a noun, *purchasers*. — *quo*: here equivalent to *quod* in a reason given for the purpose of denying it.

92. 9. *Quin etiam*: join closely in translation with *importatis non utuntur*, *But they do not import and use the horses*, etc.; lit., *But even they do not use horses imported*. It seems unlikely that mules and oxen are meant here, but rather horses, which are often used as pack animals.

92. 10. *impenso . . . pretio*: *impenso* here has adjectival force; equivalent to *maximo*. An abl. of price usually expresses definite value, the gen. indefinite; not so in this instance; 120. Cf. 103.

92. 13. *summi . . . laboris*: *greatest endurance*; a gen. in the predicate depending on *sint*, best translated by introducing a word like *capable* with the verb; 101; 103, Note.

92. 16. *usus*: *need*.

92. 17. *eorum moribus*: an abl. of accordance; 127. Lit., *in accordance with their customs, i.e., from their point of view*. — *neque . . . quicquam*: for *et nihil*.

92. 19. *quamvis pauci*: *even though very few* (themselves).

92. 20. *omnino . . . non*: cf. *nihil omnino*, p. 91, l. 21. Join the two in translation.

92. 23. CHAPTER 3. *Publice*: which they can have *as a state*; opposed to *privatim*, which applies to the individual. — *esse*: the subj. acc. of this infin. in indir. disc. is the other infin. clause *agros vacare*.

92. 24. *vacare*: an examination of p. 157, ll. 14–19, seems to show that this desire was due quite as much to fear of sudden raids on the part of near neighbors, as to any glory obtained thereby.

92. 26. *una ex parte a*: *in one direction from*.

92. 27. *agri*: nom. plural subject. The size of this uninhabited tract is quite beyond acceptance as stated; Caesar must be in error.

92. 28. *ampla*: probably referring to extent of territory, while *florens* describes its general condition of power and prosperity.

92. 29. *ut est captus Germanorum*: *captus* is a noun here; *as is the standard of the Germans, i.e., judged by German standards, or, as Germans rate them*.

Page 93. 1. *generis*: *race*.

93. 3. *ventitant*: this and *sunt adsuefacti* are parallel to *attinunt*, giving reasons why the Ubii are *humaniore ceteris*.

93. 5. *gravitatem*: *power*.

93. 7. *humiliores*: *more submissive*.

93. 8. CHAPTER 4. *causa*: *situation*.

93. 10. *ad extremum*: an adverbial expression of time, to be joined closely with *pervenerunt*.

93. 11. *ad Rhenum*: the spot where they reached and crossed the Rhine is more definitely given in Chap. 1 (p. 91, ll. 3 ff.).

93. 12. *quas regiones*: *there*, etc.

93. 15. *cis Rhenum*: *i.e.*, the Gallic side.

93. 16. *dispositis*: give the force of the prefix in the translation. See VOCABULARY.

93. 20. *reverti se . . . simulaverunt et*: *apparently returned, but*.

93. 21. *viam*: cognate acc. with *progressi*.

93. 22. *reverterunt*: this verb, usually deponent in the forms derived from the present stem, has in the active most forms from the perfect stem.

93. 23. *confecto*: join with *itinere*, not with *equitatu*.

93. 28. *certior fieret*: not "were" but *should* or *could be informed*. The subjunct. shows an underlying idea of purpose on the part of the Germans. An indic. would state simply the fact of their crossing before word of their coming reached the Menapii; 184.

Page 94. 1. CHAPTER 5. *infirmiorem*: *fickle nature*.

94. 2. *mobiles*, etc.: the usual statement. Cf. p. 45, l. 12; p. 76, ll. 20-21.

94. 3. *his*: the dat. of the indir. obj. with *committendum*, not the dat. of the agent with the gerundive; the latter, *i.e.*, *sibi*, referring to Caesar, must be supplied; 106; 112.

94. 4. *Gallicae consuetudinis*: a pred. gen. of possession limiting *est*. Cf. *summi laboris* on p. 92, l. 13. Trans.: *This is (peculiar to) the Gallic custom*, or, *It is one of the customs of the Gauls that*, etc.; 101; 103, Note.

94. 5. *invitos*: observe that this is not *invitados*, which has a very different meaning.

94. 8. *circumsistat*: parallel in construction to *cogant* and *quaerant*, following *uti*, though with a different subject; it is, as are the others, a subst. clause of result in apposition with *hoc*; 200.

94. 11. *quorum eos*: the regular construction with the imper-

sonal *paenitere*, the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing.

94. 12. *in vestigio*: lit., *on the footprint*, i.e., without lifting the foot to move away, *on the spot, immediately*. — *incertis*: *unfounded*.

94. 13. *serviant*: lit., *serve*, followed by the dat. according to rule; freely, *are led* (i.e., influenced) *by*; 107, a. — *plerique*: travellers or traders, under such conditions, were likely to give answers, without regard to the facts, of the sort which they believed would be satisfactory to their questioners, the Gauls.

94. 15. CHAPTER 6. *Qua consuetudine*, etc.: the abl. abs. is causal and tells the reason of Caesar's early start. — *graviori*: i.e., more serious than usual, because now he had to fear a war with the Gauls in which they would be aided by the Germans.

94. 16. *occurreret*: cf. the use of this word in Bk. III, chap. 6 (p. 74, l. 20): *occurrisse rebus*.

94. 17. *Eo cum venisset*: on his arrival there. In like manner a noun may be used to trans. *ea quae* . . . *erat*.

94. 18. *missas legationes*: this and *invitados eos* following are clauses in the infin. with subj. acc. explaining what Caesar means by *ea* . . . *acta* preceding.

94. 20. *a Rheno discederent*: i.e., come further into Gaul. — *omnia*: (*assuring them*) *that everything*, etc. The word of saying upon which the infin. clause *fore parata* depends is implied in *invitados*.

94. 24. *clientes*: these were weaker states who looked to them for protection. — *pervenerant*: probably only raiders had come thus far.

94. 25. *dissimulanda*: this word is well chosen if we are to accept Caesar's statement that the Gauls were anxious for the Germans to come into Gaul; *permulsis* and *confirmatis*, then, are hardly appropriate to their real state of mind, but rather to one which Caesar pretends is theirs.

Page 95. 3. CHAPTER 7. *audiebat*: imperfect of repeated action; the reports kept coming in; 163. — *A quibus*: this refers back to *locis*; not to *Germanos*, who are taken up again in *his* later.

95. 4. *haec*: as follows.

95. 5. *priores*: not the *former*, or *earlier Germanos*, but to be taken with adverbial force qualifying the verb *inferre*. They are not seeking a war, as aggressors, but for all that (*tamen*) they do not shrink from a struggle, etc.

95. 8. *resistere neque deprecari*: to face boldly, not appeal for mercy to, etc.

95. 9. *dicere*: supply *se* for its subj. accus.; in indir. disc. parallel in construction to *inferre* and *recusare*. The Germans are ready to state their case to the Romans, but not to ask any favors.

95. 10. *gratiam*: for *amicitiam* here. — *posse*: in the same construction as *venisse*.

95. 11. *attribuant*: a principal clause in indir. disc., representing an original subjunct. or imperative, not an indic.; 205.

95. 13. *concedere*: acknowledged inferiority.

95. 16. CHAPTER 8. *quae*: the acc. case, obj. of the infin. *respondere*, to be supplied with *visum est*.

95. 18. *remanerent*: a fut. indic. of the dir. disc. has become subj. by indir. disc., and imperf. by sequence after *fuit*; 207; 171. — *verum*: right. The infin. clause (*eos*) *alienos* (*fines*) *occupare* serves as the subject acc. of *esse*, and *verum* in the predicate agrees with this clause.

95. 19. *potuerint*: this tense, and that of *possint* below and the other subjunctives to the end of the chapter, do not conform to the sequence as shown in *remanerent*. This use of the primary tense in the subjunct. where the law of sequence, strictly observed, requires the secondary, introduces variety and a certain amount of vividness. Compare the use in the indic. of the so-called historical present, for the regular past historic tenses; 173. — *alienos*: for *aliorum*.

95. 24. *hoc*: i.e., to admit them.

95. 26. CHAPTER 9. *post diem tertium*: a literal translation, after the third day, gives the wrong idea. The Romans included the day of making the request. Trans.: the next day but one, or on the second day. Cf. p. 39, l. 20, *postridie eius diei* and note.



95. 27. *propius se*: nearer them. *Se* is here an indir. reflexive referring to the subj. of *petierunt*; 155. It is in the acc. governed by *propius*, which has prepositional force here. Cf. *propius tumultum*, p. 37, l. 10.

Page 96. 4. *hos expectari equites*: translate this and *moram interponi* actively, with *they* for subj., and *equites* and *moram* as obj.

96. 6. CHAPTER 10. *profluit ex*: rises in. — *qui est*: omit in translation.

96. 7. *parte . . . recepta*: i.e., a branch of the Rhine (*Vacalus*, the modern Waal) flows into the Mosa (the modern Maas or Meuse), thus uniting the two rivers.

96. 9. *inde*: seems to refer to the *Vacalus*. An inaccurate statement.

96. 11. *longo spatio*: a loose abl. of manner, *in a long course*; 123.

96. 13. *citatus fertur*: flows very swiftly. *Citatus* is really a participle of *cito*, *citare*. Here it is an adj. to be translated as an adv.

96. 14. *ingentibusque*: our idiom omits the “and” between “many” and the second adj.

96. 17. *existimantur*: a subjunct. of characteristic with the expression *sunt qui* would be more usual; 179. — *capitibus*: *caput* applied to a river undoubtedly suggests “source” rather than “mouth.” But the context determines the latter to be the meaning here. The abl. expresses means; 119.

96. 19. CHAPTER 11. *Caesar*: this is the subject of the subordinate clause only, i.e., *abessel*. From its position we should look for it to be subject of the main clause.

96. 20. *ut erat constitutum*: according to their agreement. Apparently their pledge to return *post tertium diem* (p. 93, l. 26) was all there was to this agreement.

96. 23. *eos equites*: this would appear to describe only a part of his cavalry, but from *praefectos qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant* (p. 97, l. 6), we see all the cavalry is meant.

96. 24. *praemitteret*: observe the absence of an obj.; as we should say, *send ahead* (to, etc.). — *sibique ut*: irregular order; *sibi*, which properly follows *ut*, is thus made emphatic.

96. 25. mittendi: gen. of the gerund depending on *potestatem*;  
219.

96. 26. sibi iure iurando fidem fecisset: *pledge them security on their oath*; this means security against themselves quite as much as against others. The verb agrees with the nearer subject *senatus*.

96. 27. ferretur: (*offer which*) was made.

96. 29. daret: subjunct. in a principal clause in indir. disc. What must it represent? Cf. *attribuant*, p. 95, l. 11. — *eodem illo*: adverbial; with *pertinere*, *had the same end in view*, explained by the *ut* clause following, *the return*, etc.

Page 97. 4. *convenirent*: cf. *daret* above.

97. 7. *ne . . . lacerarent*; *et . . . sustinerent*: these subst. clauses depend upon *nuntiarent*, which here has the force of a verb of commanding; 199.

97. 10. CHAPTER 12. *ubi primum*: like *simul atque* in meaning, and also in the mood which follows it; 180.

97. 11. *milium*: 102; 103, Note.

97. 12. *amplius*: this has no effect upon the construction following; *equites* is the direct object of *haberent*, though translated as if the abl. of comparison after *amplius*; 118.

97. 15. *indutiis*: 113.

97. 17. *rursus*: *i.e.*, the cavalry recovered from its confusion and, again in order, opposed the enemy.

97. 19. *fugam*: this flight of 5000 cavalry before 800 has been looked upon with some suspicion. It is quite possible that the Roman cavalry were in reality the aggressors, and that the flight was intentional in order to cover up their covert attack and afford some apparent justification for Caesar's subsequent treatment of them.

97. 20. *fuga*: for *fugere*.

97. 22. *ex equitibus nostris*: this takes the place of a partit. gen. following the cardinal numeral seventy-four.

97. 24. *regnum*: here and elsewhere this word signifies *royal power, authority*, as well as *territory, kingdom*, its more usual meanings.

Page 98. 3. CHAPTER 13. *ab eis*: *from those*. — *per dolum*

atque insidias: the phrase limits *petita pace*, and may be translated adverbially, *craftily and treacherously*.

98. 4. *expectare*: an infin. used as a subst., the subject acc. of *esse* depending upon *iudicabat*.

98. 5. *summae dementiae esse iudicabat*: *he thought it most foolish*; lit., *to be of the highest folly*; 103, Note.

98. 7. *hostes*: nominative.

98. 8. *auctoritatis*: join closely with *quantum*.

98. 10. *His constitutis rebus*: *Having reached this decision*. — *consilio* . . . *communicato*: *i.e.*, in a council of war the *consilium* was agreed to, which is explained by the following clause *ne* . . . *praetermitteret*.

98. 11. *diem pugnae*: *i.e.*, no possible opportunity to engage the enemy should be neglected.

98. 12. *opportunissima res*: this is explained by the *quod*-clause following; *quod* may be translated *that*.

98. 13. *eadem*: *i.e.*, as the preceding day.

98. 14. *omnibus* . . . *adhibitis*: *bringing with them all*, etc.

98. 16. *sui purgandi*: as usual with *sui* in the plural, the gerundive keeps the sing. form; 221. We are told by another writer that these elders had opposed the attack. They blamed their young men for it, whose impetuosity they said they had been unable to curb. — *atque*: after *contra* used adverbially in the sense of *than*; lit., *on the other hand than, contrary to what*, etc.

98. 18. *simul*: *and furthermore*. — *si quid possent*: trans. as the dir. obj. of *impetrarent*; *whatever they could*; lit., *if they could (get) anything*.

98. 19. *sibi* . . . *oblatos*: (*esse*) *had come into his hands*, depending upon *gavisus*.

98. 23. CHAPTER 14. *Acie triplici*: the favorite battle-line, always employed when possible; 41.

98. 25. *omnibus rebus*: apparently this is explained by the two ablatives following, *celeritate* and *discessu*, which seems strange.

98. 27. *discessu suorum*: this seems to refer to the disappearance of the chiefs and elders who had gone to Caesar and whom he had retained. Naturally this caused their friends

much anxiety. — *arma capiendi*: in place of the gerundive (*ar-morum capiendorum*), here we have the rare use of the gerund with a dir. obj. The necessary form of the gerundive construction would not sound well to Roman ears; hence, probably, the substitution. See note on p. 43, l. 7.

98. 28. *perturbantur*: *are in much doubt whether*; lit., *are greatly disturbed whether*.

Page 99. 1. *praestaret*: this tense, in strict sequence, should be pres.; *perturbantur* however is really an historical pres. and so may properly have a secondary sequence; 171, ftn. 1.

99. 10. CHAPTER 15. *clamore*: this seems to refer to the outcry of the *puerorum mulierumque*, who fled and were followed by the cavalry.

99. 11. *interfici*: Cato would have denied Caesar a *supplicatio* for his victory and urged that he be surrendered to the Germans for this inhuman massacre. — *armis abiectis*, etc.: translate by finite verbs in the indic., *flung down, abandoned*, etc.

99. 12. *ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni*: it seems necessary to assume that by *Rheni* is here meant the *Vaalus* (p. 94, l. 8), the modern Waal. In order to free Caesar from apparent error, some have chosen arbitrarily to apply the meaning *connecting stream to confluentem*.

99. 15. *vi fluminis*: *the current of the stream*; cf. *vim fluminis*, p. 101, ll. 12 ff. They were unable to cross the current in their condition of panic and weariness.

99. 16. *perierunt*: not to be taken strictly, perhaps. At all events both peoples are mentioned in later history by Tacitus. — *ad unum*: *to one (man)*, i.e., with no exception. None were slain; there were a few wounded.

99. 17. *ex tanti belli timore*: *after a war which had excited so much alarm*; give the lit. translation.

99. 18. *milium*: cf. *milium*, p. 95, l. 11. See 102 and 103, Note.

99. 21. *veriti*: a perf. participle, but best translated by a pres.; this is often the case with deponent verbs. See note on *nisi rogatus*, p. 35, l. 28.

99. 22. *libertatem concessit*: it is claimed that this means that Caesar gave the captives *freedom*, as well as permission to

stay in his camp. It seems more natural to take *libertatem* as *permission* simply.

## II. CAESAR'S INVASION OF GERMANY

99. 26. CHAPTER 16. *iustissima*: most urgent, impelling. *Illa* is explained by the *quod*-clause following.

Page 100. 1. *suis . . . rebus*: (to be alarmed) about their own security; 109.

100. 2. *intellegerent*: when they should realize. The subjunct. is due, not to the *cum*, but to attraction; 211. It depends closely upon *timere*.

100. 4. *Accessit etiam quod*: a second reason was that; lit., it was added also that, etc.

100. 10. *dederent*: supply *ut* after *postularent* to introduce this. *Ut* with verbs of demanding, wishing, necessity, etc. is occasionally omitted; 199.

100. 12. *non aequum*: supply *esse*, of which the clause *Germanos in Galliam transire* serves as subj. acc., and has *aequum* in agreement.

100. 13. *sui . . . esse imperi*: to be (of) under his power or control; 103.

100. 14. *postularet*: here followed by the acc. and infin. contrary to the general practice. Exceptions like this occur with *impero* and other verbs in Caesar and Cicero. *Postularet* represents a real question in dir. disc., *cur . . . postulas?* and so becomes subjunct. on becoming indir., though in a principal clause. A question asked merely for rhetorical effect would be put in the infin.; 206.

100. 18. *occupationibus rei publicae*: political considerations; he need not actually participate in war against their enemies. A mere demonstration would be sufficient, hence *transportaret*.

100. 20. *transportaret*: representing in the words of the Ubii an imperat. or subjunct.

100. 21. *futurum*: representing a fut. indic. in dir. disc.

100. 22. *eius exercitus*: of his army; lit., of the army of him.

100. 23. *ad*: (reaching) to; among.

100. 27. CHAPTER 17. *Rhenum transire*: Caesar was the first Roman to lead an army over the Rhine. The two places where he crossed were both in the neighborhood of Cologne, say some authorities, the first in the vicinity of the modern Wörringen, nine miles north of Cologne, and the second near Altburg, less than two miles southeast of Cologne. Others with perhaps more probability place the crossings at Neuwied and Coblenz.

100. 28. *neque suae neque . . . dignitatis esse*: *beneath his dignity*; why gen.?

100. 29. *satis tutum*: Caesar evidently thinks the enemy could more easily destroy ships than a bridge. It has been suggested, too, that Caesar might easily distrust the loyalty of those who might furnish the ships. Furthermore a passage of the river in ships — borrowed ships — could hardly be expected to impress the barbarian tribes with a sense of Rome's power in the same way as the building of a bridge, which "symbolically took captive their much beloved Rhine."

100. 30. *summa*: join in translation with *proponeretur*; *appeared very great*.

Page 101. 1. *id sibi contendendum*: *he ought to attempt this*; *id* means the building of the bridge.

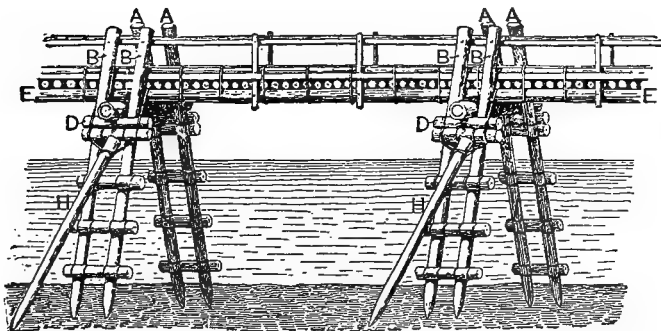
101. 4. *Rationem . . . hanc*: *this sort*. — *bina*: *i.e.*, a series of pairs of beams just like this pair were driven into the river bed. — *sesquipedalia*: what appear to be the underlying elements of this big word point to its meaning; *semi -que pes*, *a foot and a half (in thickness)*.

101. 5. *ab imo*: *at the lower end*. — *dimensa ad altitudinem*: the logs were of different lengths according to the depth of the water. The participle is passive.

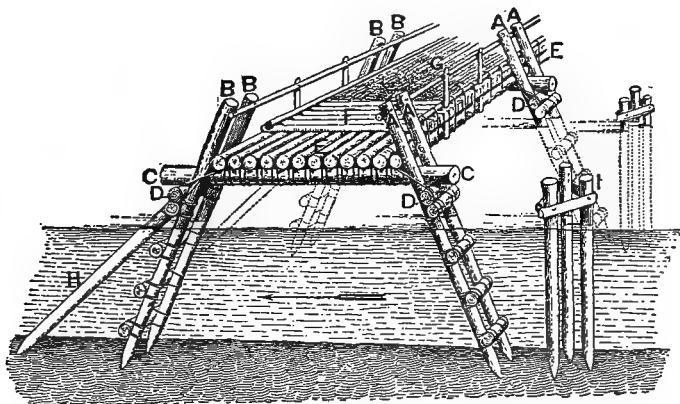
101. 7. *Haec*: *i.e.*, these beams (*tigna sesquipedalia*, etc.) were lowered (*immissa*) into the river by derricks, cranes (*machinationibus*), on floats, fixed in position, and then driven into the bed of the stream by pile-drivers.

101. 8. *non . . . directe ad perpendicularum*: *i.e.*, not in an absolutely upright or vertical position. Lit., *not exactly according to a plumb-line*. — *fastigate*: cf. *fastigia* (*gables*), *i.e.*, slanting as the gables of a roof slope.

I. View of one section looking up the river.



II. View looking across the river.



*A*, tigna bina sesquipedalia. *B*, his contraria duo. *C*, bipedales trabes.  
*D*, binae utrimque fibulae. *E*, directa materia. *F*, longurii. *G*, crates.  
*H*, sublicae obliquae. *I*, defensores.

#### CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE.

From Harkness & Forbes' "Caesar."  
 By permission of the American Book Co.

101. 10. *secundum naturam fluminis*: with (i.e., following; *secundum* derived from *sequor*) the current. See note on *secundum*, p. 57, l. 16.

101. 11. *ad eundem modum*: for *eodem modo*.

101. 12. *quadragerum*: this measures the space between the two rows of supporting posts; the roadway of the bridge would naturally be narrowed, as these posts inclined towards each other. — *ab inferiore parte*: further down stream.

101. 13. *Haec utraque*: this refers to each pair of posts and the corresponding pair facing them across the interval where the roadway of the bridge was to be.

101. 14. *quantum . . distabat*: these two-foot beams laid horizontally just filled the space left between the two beams (*haec utraque*) forming each pair of uprights.

101. 15. *binis utrimque fibulis*: just what these “clasps” were and how they were applied is not clear. Probably they are best taken as *braces*, placed, two at either end of the cross timber, one above and the other below the slanting uprights.

101. 16. *ab extrema parte*: at the end. — *quibus disclusis . . revinctis*: the *rel.* refers to the *tigna* (*haec utraque*), and this clause repeats in general the content of the previous sentence. The cross-beams served to hold apart the uprights, which, sloping in opposite directions (*in contrariam partem*) and firmly bound together with the cross-beams by the braces, were well calculated to defy the river, whose current would simply bind the structure more firmly together.

101. 18. *quo maior . . . hoc artius*: the greater . . . the more closely, etc. *Quo* and *hoc* are ablatives of degree of difference; 125.

101. 19. *tenerentur*: sc. the subj. *tigna*, i.e., the pairs of uprights.

101. 20. *derecta materia*: i.e., timbers laid lengthwise of the bridge. — *contexebantur*: observe that the verb is *contexo*, not *contego*. This set of timbers laid upon the cross-beams joined the various bridge supports together, and constituted the roadway of the bridge.

101. 21. *nihilo setius*: nevertheless. The bridge would seem



strong enough as it was, but for all that to make it still more secure he added more supports.

101. 24. *excipere*: subjunct. in a relative clause of purpose; lit., receive, i.e., sustain.

101. 25. *sive*: or if.

101. 29. CHAPTER 18. *Diebus decem quibus*: abl. of time within which; 139. Trans. the relative, after.

101. 30. *omni opere effecto*: trans. this abl. abs. by a finite verb with subject nom., as if it were the main verb of the sentence, and connect with what follows by *and*.

101. 31. *partem*: end.

Page 102. 5. *institui*: to be built. Observe the pass. form of *coeptus est* when used with a pass. infin. — *hortantibus eis*: at the instigation of those.

102. 8. *solitudinem ac silvas*: the second noun seems to define more particularly the first; trans. by hendiadys as if *silvas* were a gen. *silvarum*, and omit the *ac*; 225. — *abdiderant*: observe that the force of *do* in this compound is the same as in *circumdo*, not give but put.

102. 9. CHAPTER 19. *paucos*: insert *only* before this word in translation.

102. 10. *vicis aedificiisque*: the former as usual refers to villages, to rows of dwellings fairly close together; the latter to isolated buildings. — *frumentis*: this word is used in the plural only of standing grain, the crops.

102. 12. *premerentur*: subjunct. because of the implied indir. disc. in *auxilium pollicitus*; 210. It is imperf. tense, because of the secondary sequence.

102. 15. *uti . . . demigrarent . . . deponerent . . . convenirent*: subst. clauses dependent upon the idea of commanding in *nuntios misisse*; 199.

102. 18. *hunc esse delectum*: the principal clause in indir. disc. as suggested by *nuntios misisse*; this is not the command but a simple declaration of a fact. Translate, a place (locum understood with which *medium* agrees) had been chosen for this.

102. 20. *decertare*: to fight it out.

102. 21. *omnibus . . . rebus confectis*: as he had gained

*those objects.* These objects are given again, though he had told them before. Caesar evidently thought he had involved himself in danger enough, but wished to impress his Roman readers with the successful nature of his expedition.

102. 24. *obsidione*: *state of oppression.*

102. 25. *laudem*: *glory.* — *utilitatem*: *profit.*

### III. CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN

Chapters 20–36 describe Caesar's first expedition into Britain. With this chapter, then, English history may be said to begin.

Page 103. 2. CHAPTER 20. *septentriones*: the seven stars making the constellation of the "Great Dipper," always visible in our northern hemisphere, and used symbolically for "the north."

103. 4. *omnibus . . . bellis*: an abl. of time *when* or *during which*; 138; 137.

103. 5. *auxilia*: it is hardly likely that this was the only or even the chief reason for his decision to invade Britain. The very lateness of the season seems to imply that he was not seriously planning conquest this time. Like the invasion of Germany, there seems to be in this an effort to gain popular and so political support at home. The Romans attached great importance to the fact that Caesar had opened up new countries, which offered them chances of profit and plunder in the future.

103. 6. *deficeret*: *proved insufficient*; for fut. (not contrary to fact). See note on *arbitraretur*, p. 71, l. 8.

103. 7. *fore*: the subjects acc. of this infin. are the clauses *si . . . adisset . . . perspexisset . . . cognovisset.*

103. 9. *aditus*: perhaps this means *landing-places.*

103. 10. *praeter mercatores*: the traders naturally had dealings with the inhabitants, but no one else, *without good reason (temere)*, went to the island.

103. 12. *Gallias*: the plural is peculiar; probably Caesar is thinking of the divisions of Gaul which he himself has enumerated. Cf. p. 1, ll. 1 ff.

103. 20. CHAPTER 21. *priusquam periculum faceret*: used

in the sense in which it occurs in p. 31, ll. 9 ff. Before the whole army should attempt to land, etc., Caesar wished one of his trusted followers to investigate the conditions for him.

103. 21. C. Volusenum [Quadratus]: he is mentioned in other places by Caesar. Cf. p. 73, l. 28. He was a *tribunus militum*.

103. 24. Morinos: a Belgian tribe; see Map of Gaul. *Itius Portus* seems to have been Boulogne, from which Caesar is thought to have sailed for Britain on both of his expeditions. Others identify it with Wissant, about ten miles west southwest of Calais.

Page 104. 3. dare: more strictly we should have *se daturos atque . . . obtemperaturos*.

104. 4. Quibus auditis: abl. abs., not dat. with *pollicitus*.

104. 5. liberaliter pollicitus: *he made them generous promises*.

104. 7. Atrebatibus: this tribe lived not far from the coast, and their lands bordered upon those of the Morini.

104. 8. virtutem et consilium: *courage and intelligence*.

104. 10. in his regionibus: possibly we are justified in stretching the meaning of this phrase so as to include part of Britain as well as of Gaul; see Map of Gaul. — magni: sc. *preti*; lit., of great value; i.e., highly. The gen. expresses indefinite value; 103.

104. 11. imperat: sc. *ut* with *adeat*, etc.

104. 12. fidem sequantur: *enter into an alliance with*. — se(que): i.e., Caesar himself, as *se* here refers indirectly to the subject of *imperat*, the main verb.

104. 14. quantum . . . facultatis: lit., *how much of opportunity*. Trans., as if *facultatis* were nominative, *just to such an extent as opportunity could*, etc. — qui . . . non auderet: this is probably a causal clause (*qui = cum is*), and seems to imply that Caesar was dissatisfied with the report, and chooses to reflect upon the man's courage and fitness.

104. 20. CHAPTER 22. de consilio: *for their previous conduct*, lit., *concerning the plan of the earlier time*. One's conduct is assumed to be the result of one's purpose (*consilium*).

104. 21. quod: this defines their misconduct; *namely that*, etc. — barbari et . . . imperiti: bring in predicatively, *being or*

who were, etc. — *nostrae consuetudinis*: with our (i.e., the Romans') ways; 104.

104. 22. *se . . facturos*: see note on *dare*, l. 3.

104. 26. *propter anni tempus*: we are told at the beginning of Chapter 20 that the summer was nearly over.

104. 27. *tantularum*: the diminutive ending *-ulus* negatives the force of *tantus*, trifling (matters). — *Britanniae*: dat. of ind. obj. after the compound verb, *antepono*; 107, b. Of course we are to understand that the place, *Britain*, is put here for the war in *Britain*.

Page 105. 2. *Huc accedebant*: the verb is equivalent to *addebantur*. Trans.: *Besides these there were*, etc.

105. 3. *ex eo loco*: i.e., his own point for embarking, *Itius Portus*. — *a milibus passuum VIII*: *a* is used with the force practically of a comparative; hence it is followed by an ablative of the degree of difference; *away by eight miles*, i.e., eight miles away; 125.

105. 4. *tenebantur*: as a verb of hindering, this is followed by a subst. clause in the subjunct. with *quo minus*; 201.

105. 8. *ducendum*: gerundive in agreement with the obj. of the verb *dedi*, to express purpose; 222.

105. 12. CHAPTER 23. *tempestatem*: not *tempest* or *storm*, but *weather* simply; defined further by *idoneam ad navigandum*. — *tertia . . vigilia*: on the Roman watches see 59.

105. 13. *ulteriorem portum*: i.e., farther to the east; perhaps the harbor of Ambleteuse to-day. See on p. 103, l. 24. The matter is still in dispute whether Caesar himself sailed from Boulogne or Calais or from some point between. It is perhaps as well to assume with the majority that he sailed from Boulogne.

105. 14. *A quibus cum . . esset*: this clause seems not well related to the rest of the sentence. Perhaps it may be taken as concessive, *cum* = *although*. Caesar arrived at a certain time, in spite of the slowness of the ships carrying the cavalry, as he did not wait for them.

105. 17. *expositas*: *ranged*. Apparently there was some hope of deterring the Romans from landing by this display of force.

105. 18. *atque . . . continebatur*: this defines the *natura loci* mentioned in the preceding clause. The meaning is that the hills came down so close to the shore that, etc.

105. 22. *convenirent*: this clause indicates not only the time to which he would wait, but also his purpose in waiting. The same use of the same word in p. 7, l. 4; 183.

105. 24. *ostendit*: *made known*.

105. 25. *monuit*: the subst. clause following this (199; here without *ut*) comes at the end of the sentence *ad nutum . . . administrarentur*; 199. — *ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: *as warfare in general and naval warfare especially required*.

105. 26. *ut quae*: *since it (these)*. This is supposed to express the same thing (*i.e.*, cause or reason), but to be more emphatic than the relative alone.

105. 27. *ad nutum*: *at the nod, sign, i.e.*, promptly; in that case *ad tempus* would add the idea of favorable opportunity, *at the right instant*, referring to the *instabilem motum* just mentioned.

105. 28. *ventum et aestum*: *i.e.*, the wind must have been west or southwest, and the tide set to the eastward.

105. 31. *aperto ac plano litore*: an abl. abs., *where the shore was open and level, i.e.*, there were none of the difficulties of landing such as confronted him at or near Dover. This must have been between Walmercastle and Deal.

Page 106. 2. CHAPTER 24. *quo . . . genere*: *genere* stands for *essedariis*, but is placed in the rel. clause in agreement with *quo*. Any literal translation would be most awkward, *a kind (of fighting equipment) which*, etc. Translate as if the simple relative *quibus* stood here in place of *quo genere*.

106. 4. *navibus egredi*: for *quominus e navibus egrederentur*, *from landing*. — *prohibebant*: *tried to stop*. The imperf. here denotes attempted action. — *nisi in alto*: the Roman ships were too large to bring close enough in shore for the men to leap out and find themselves in shallow water where they would have firm footing; 152, a.

106. 6. *militibus*: a dat. of agent limiting *desiliendum (erat)* and the other gerundives following. Observe that *oppressis*

agrees with *militibus*, while between the two come an abl. expressing place, an abl. abs., and an abl. of manner.

106. 10. *cum illi*: *while they, i.e., the enemy*. — *arido*: used as a noun here; 152, *a*.

106. 15. *pedestribus*: this nondescript sort of fighting can hardly be termed a land battle. The soldiers from the ships were greatly hindered because they were standing in the water.

106. 17. CHAPTER 25. *species*: the war galleys were of course much narrower and longer than the ships built to carry cargoes. The latter, too, were dependent upon sails alone, while the war galleys were propelled by oars. The Britons were acquainted with the cargo ships of the traders, but large ships propelled by oars were an unfamiliar sight. — *motus ad usum expeditor*: *method of handling (i.e., by oars) made them readier for use*. The advantage of the oar-propelled vessel in going directly to any given point, over the vessel using sails, unless it so happen that the wind is favorable, is most obvious.

106. 21. *quae res*: *this movement*.

106. 23. *tormentorum*: these machines of war correspond roughly to modern artillery. They were of various shapes and of course were designed to increase the size of the missile and the force with which it could be hurled. The catapult, ballista, etc., are examples. See 65. — *permoti . . . constiterunt*: *halted in astonishment at, etc.*

106. 26. *aquilam*: the legionary standard. There were *signa* also for the subdivisions of a legion, and figures of animals were favorites for these. See 45-50. With what modern nations is the eagle a symbol of power?

106. 27. *ea res*: *his act*.

106. 29. *certe*: *at any rate, i.e., whatever you do*. It was the greatest possible disgrace to lose the standard. This shows the strategy of the Romans in choosing the bravest and strongest to carry it. This appeared also in their habit of placing the standard and its bearer in the greatest danger and then appealing, much as is done in this passage, to the men of the legion to rescue it. A battle often turned on this.

**Page 107.** 1. *officium praestitero*: *shall do my duty*; as often the less exact English prefers the fut., or even pres., to the fut. perf. of the Latin; a more emphatic statement than the fut.; 169, Note.

**107. 5.** *subsecuti*: *following close behind* (sub).

**107. 7.** CHAPTER 26. *Pugnatum est . . acriter*: observe the emphatic position of the verb at the beginning, and the adv. at the end of the sentence.

**107. 8.** *ordines servare*: it has often been remarked that the elbow-touch in the lines as they close up in battle has kept up the courage and maintained the discipline of many armies since the Romans' time. There were two *ordines* (ranks) in each manipule; a centurion was in command of each *ordo*, which numbered 100 men when recruited to its full strength, but this was rarely the case in Roman history. See 17. — *firmiter insistere*: *get a firm footing*.

**107. 9.** *signa*: see note on *aquila*, l. 26, and 50. *Signa subsequi*; i.e., keep with their proper maniples. — *alius alia ex navi*: cf. the double use of *alius*, p. 30, l. 8.

**107. 11.** *vero*: *while*. This emphasizes strongly the difference between the Britons and the Romans in position and circumstances. — *notis . . . vadis*: an abl. abs. expressing cause; 130.

**107. 13.** *incitatis equis*: an abl. abs.; not dat. with *adoriebantur*, which always takes the acc. of the dir. obj., as here (*eos*) *impeditos*. Do not make the mistake of thinking that all verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, etc., are followed by the dat.; 107, Note.

**107. 14.** *plures*: nom. case. — *a latere aperto*: as so often of direction, *on*, not *from*.

**107. 15.** *universos*: those who were massed together as opposed to the *singulares*, those who left the ships singly.

**107. 16.** *scaphas*: from its derivation this word means a "dug-out." Its resemblance to the English "skiff" is apparent. They were the small boats, tenders, of the ships of war.

**107. 17.** *item*: hardly differing from *et*, connecting *scaphas* and *speculatoria navigia*. — *speculatoria navigia*: these may

have been the same as the *naves actuariæ* which used both oars and sails. These were intended simply for scouting purposes and not for naval fighting. In this peculiar engagement, neither a land nor a water battle, they were of especial use, as they could be rowed in close to shore and the larger vessels could not.

107. 19. *simul*: for *simul atque*.

107. 21. *in fugam dederunt*: observe that in this phrase *do*, *dare* (as in some compounds) means "put," not "give." So *circumdo*, *abdo*.

107. 22. *tenere*: *keep*. — *capere*: used technically, as we say "make" the island, *i.e.*, reach it.

107. 23. *fortunam*: Caesar believed in his "lucky star"; this was true of Scipio, Napoleon, and other men famous in the world's history. Possibly it would be more true in some cases to say they pretended to believe in it.

107. 26. CHAPTER 27. *de pace*: (*to treat*) for *peace*.

107. 27. *imperasset*: for *imperavisset*; probably the form used by the ambassadors was *imperaveris*.

107. 28. *polliciti sunt*: observe the absence of a conjunction between this verb and the preceding verb in the same construction; 227.

107. 29. *demonstraveram*: the English would use a simple past tense, but the Latin idiom calls for a pluperfect. We should look for the plural or for an impersonal form here as more in keeping with Caesar's usual style. Cf. *dixeramus* on p. 45, l. 4.

Page 108. 1. *illi*: *the Britons*, nom. case.

108. 2. *oratoris modo*: *as an ambassador*. Cf. *publicæ modo*, p. 101, ll. 8 ff. The ordinary word would be *legatus*. This seizure would of course be a most heinous offence from Caesar's standpoint. Perhaps he magnifies the mission of this envoy in order to put the Britons in the wrong so far as possible. See note on *legatos . . . coniectos*, p. 76, ll. 20 ff.

108. 3. *tum proelio facto*: *now however that the battle was over*.

108. 4. *eius rei*: *for this act*, *i.e.*, the seizure of Commius.

108. 5. *multitudinem*: the ruling class refuse to accept responsibility for the acts of members of the tribe. Obviously this is a mere pretext to excuse their conduct in this case. Sim-



ilar explanations have frequently been offered in both ancient and modern times, and sometimes with justice.

108. 6. *ignosceretur*: an intransitive verb used impersonally in the pass.; 108. Trans. personally in the act. Supply *sibi*.

108. 7. *questus*: from *queror*, not *quaero*; in translating, use a clause of concession with *although*.

108. 9. *ignoscere*: supply *se* for its subj. acc.; a rare omission.

108. 12. *suos*: not in agreement with *agros*, but to be taken with *militēs* understood. The people, *i.e.*, *multitudinem*, had gathered somewhere after the flight, and are now bidden to return to their homes.

108. 15. CHAPTER 28. *post diem quantum quam*: for *quarto die postquam*, etc.

108. 17. *quae equites sustulerant*: freely trans., *on which the horsemen had embarked*; lit., *which had lifted, removed the*, etc.

108. 18. *superiore portu*: see note on *ulteriorem portum*, p. 105, l. 13.

108. 22. *ad inferiorem partem*: this is explained by the clause *quae est* immediately following, *i.e.*, towards the south-western part of the island.

108. 23. *suo*: lit., *their own*, best translated, *to themselves*.

108. 24. *ancoris iactis*: they tried to ride out the storm near the island, but, unable to do this, as they were safer sailing than anchored, they put to sea in spite of the storm and darkness.

108. 25. *necessario*: because they shipped so much water while anchored. — *adversa nocte*: just as we say, “in the teeth of the gale”; the darkness added to the peril which they had to face.

108. 27. CHAPTER 29. *ut esset luna plena*: a subst. clause of result, the subject of *accidit*; 200. — *qui dies*: the calendar day of 24 hours is meant, which includes the hours of night. The absurdity is then only apparent. Cf. p. 91, l. 1, *hieme*, *qui fuit annus*. Trans.: *a time which*, etc.

Page 109. 1. *nostris . . . incognitum*: the absence of tides in the Mediterranean accounts for this ignorance on the part of the Romans.

109. 5. *administrandi*: of attending to them. Evidently the severity of the storm and its suddenness prevented those on shore from reaching those transports which were moored off shore.

109. 7. *armamentis*: not *armament*, but *rigging* or *tackle*.

109. 8. *id*: this stands as an appositive for the entire clause, *magna . . . facta est*.

109. 9. *perturbatio*: excitement, alarm.

109. 18. CHAPTER 30. *hoc*: abl. of degree of difference, limiting *angustiora*. Translate, *all the smaller*, etc., lit., *smaller by this much*: 125.

109. 20. *factu*: this supine (abl. of specification with *optimum*) may be omitted in translation. Lit. *best (to be done)*, i.e., *to cut off*, etc.; 224. —*duxerunt*: equivalent to *arbitrati sunt*. — *rebellione facta*: translate by an infin. clause coördinate with the infin. clauses following.

109. 21. *rem*: for *bellum* here.

109. 22. *his superatis . . . interclusis*: trans. this abl. abs. clause as though conditional with "if"; the infin. *transituum* (*esse*) forms the apodosis.

109. 24. *rursus*: this does not mean that this was a second conspiracy, but simply a change of conduct, attitude. They turned back (*rursus*) from the peace negotiations and made a conspiracy.

109. 28. CHAPTER 31. *ex eventu*: lit., *from what had happened to*; here: *from the disaster to*. — *ex eo quod*: *from the fact that*.

Page 110. 2. *Itaque . . . comparabat*: *And so he took precautions against all emergencies*. Caesar meant to be prepared, whatever happened.

110. 6. *ex continenti*: evidently Caesar had some ships which were in condition to make the voyage and bring materials for refitting the others.

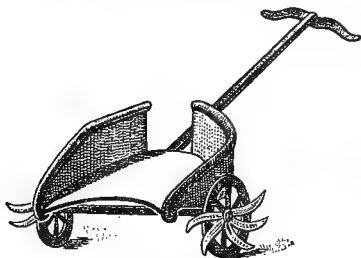
110. 10. CHAPTER 32. *Dum ea geruntur*: *Meanwhile*.

110. 13. *in agris*: i.e., attending to the crops, etc. — *ventitaret*: an intensive or iterative verb derived from *venio* and indicating repetition of an action. Show this in translating.

110. 14. *in statione erant*: i.e., the bodies of pickets and

sentries placed at the four gates of the camp, perhaps as many as a cohort at each. Stronger bodies of course were on guard at night than by day.

110. 16. *in ea parte*: *in that direction*; do not repeat this in the rel. clause, as the Latin does. Cf. note on *quibus itineribus*, p. 5, l. 24.



CHARIOT: *Essedum*.

110. 17. *aliquid . . . consili*: a clause in the acc. and infin. explaining *id quod erat*. Trans. actively.

110. 20. *in stationem . . . succedere*: *to go on guard duty*.

110. 23. *sustinere*: used here absolutely, with

no obj. Cf. *prohibere*, p. 5, l. 28.

110. 25. *pars una*: *only one place*, i.e., from which the Romans had not gathered the grain.

110. 27. *delituerant*: cf. *delitescere*, derived from *lateo*. — *dispersos*, etc.: use finite verbs in translating this succession of participles. Trans.: *Our men who had scattered, laid down their arms*, etc. *They attacked* . . .

110. 29. *incertis ordinibus*: the Romans could not resume their formation.

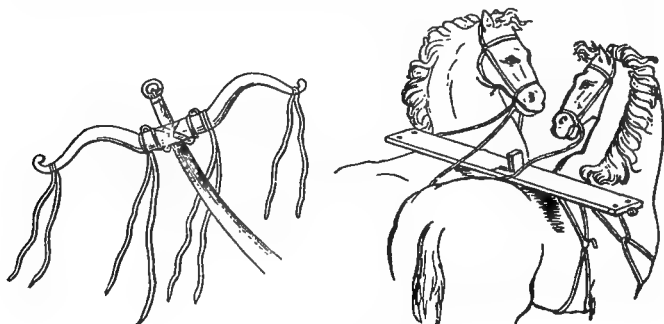
Page 111. 1. CHAPTER 33. *Genus hoc est*: *is after this fashion*. *Ex essedis* has the force of an adjective modifier, *chariot fighting*. Give the lit. trans. of the sentence.

111. 2. *perequitant*: subject *Britanni* to be supplied. — *et tela coniciunt atque . . . perturbant*: omit the conjunction *et* and trans. the verbs by present participles, *flinging*, etc.

111. 10. *praestant*: *exhibit*, followed by an obj. acc. When it has the meaning *be superior*, this verb is generally followed by the dat. — *ac tantum usu cotidiano . . . efficient*: *freely, and daily practice and training make them so efficient*.

111. 12. *sustinere*: *rein in*. — *brevi*: sc. *spatio*, *within a short space*. — *teumonem*: the pole or tongue of the chariot.

111. 13. *in iugo*: this may at times have served a useful purpose in giving a vantage point from which to attack or repel an



a

YOKE: *Jugum*.

enemy, but in general it may be taken as a mere acrobatic feat showing the agility of these chariot-fighters.

111. 15. CHAPTER 34. *Quibus rebus*: this is an abl. of means qualifying *perturbatis*. — *nostris*: dat. case with *auxilium tulit*.

111. 18. *Quo facto*: equivalent to *nevertheless*; it expresses concession.

111. 19. *arbitratus*: *since he thought*; in general, participles expressing circumstances should be translated by clauses in English. — *suo se loco continuit*: *he remained where he was*. Perhaps we are to understand by *suo* "favorable," i.e., in a place he could defend even though he did not feel strong enough to take the offensive against an enemy so active and peculiar in tactics.

111. 24. *continerent et . . prohiberent*: the mood shows that the storms were of such a kind as to keep, etc.; 179. *Continebant* would simply state that they did keep.

111. 28. *expulissent*: this represents a fut. perf. indic., used by the messengers. It depends closely upon the indir. question *daretur*, and so itself becomes subjunct. Subjunct. by Attraction; 221.

112. 2. CHAPTER 35. *ut . . effugerent*: a subst. clause of result in apposition with and explanatory of *idem*; 200. —

essent        pulsi: a future condition changed into the secondary tense by the sequence; 207.

112. 3. equites: these would allow him to follow up the enemy after defeating them in battle.

112. 6. diutius . . non: *i.e.*, not longer than the first encounter.

112. 8. tanto spatio . . quantum: *so far as*; the abl. seems to be a loose use of the abl. of means, the *road over which*; 119, Note.—cursu et viribus . . potuerunt: *speed and strength would allow*.

112. 15. CHAPTER 36. die: observe the gender and compare with the meaning of *die* in the first line of the chapter; also see note on *die* . . . *dictionis*, p. 4, l. 29. The construction with *propinqua* is an abl. abs. expressing cause. Probably *infirma navibus* is best taken the same way. This is the reason for not sailing later in the season; 130.

112. 15. aequinocti: then as now violent storms are generally looked for about the time of the equinox, the 21st to the 24th of September, when what we call the "line storm" is expected.

112. 16. subiciendam: trans. *subicere*, *expose*.

112. 20. capere: see *capere insulam*, p. 107, l. 22.

112. 21. infra: further down the coast, *i.e.*, to the westward.

#### IV. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE MORINI AND MENAPII

112. 22. CHAPTER 37. essent expositi: *had landed*.

Page 113. 1. non ita: *not very*.

113. 2. si sese interfici nollent: subjunct. by attraction representing a simple condition (*si non vultis*) depending upon *ponere*, which in turn depends upon the secondary tense *iusserunt*. It is a part of the original command; 211.

113. 3. orbe facto: in this formation the soldiers formed something like our "hollow square," standing back to back, thus protecting themselves from all sides. See 43.

113. 8. amplius horis: the idiom allows *horas*; 118.

113. 15. CHAPTER 38. rebellionem: as they had offered their submission to Caesar before he went to Britain, this may be

properly thus described, p. 104, ll. 19 ff. — *siccitates paludum*: the dry marshes, the abstract noun *siccitas* appears very strangely in the plural. As the condition of dryness appeared in many places, probably the plural was thus to be accounted for. Cf. *frigora* = cold weather above, p. 12, l. 20; see also p. 45, l. 15. Trans. by an adj.

113. 16. *quo se reciperent*: a place to retreat to, a purpose clause, *quo* for *ut eo*; 177.

113. 26. *supplicatio*: a thanksgiving to the gods which took the form of a general holiday and celebration. The increasing length of these indicated Caesar's advancing popularity and power at Rome. We do well to recall at times that Caesar wrote his "Commentarii" as campaign documents to serve his interests at Rome in his absence. Compare the number of days (15) mentioned at the end of Book II. At the end of Book VII we find that a *supplicatio* of 20 days marked the subjection of Gaul after its last united stand under Vercingetorix.

Cato proposed, on the contrary, that Caesar be surrendered to the Germans because of his treatment of the Usipites and Tencteri. See on p. 99, l. 11. The length of the *supplicatio* was probably supposed to signify the importance, in the Romans' eyes, of Caesar's achievement in opening up two new lands, Germany and Britain.



## VOCABULARY



## ABBREVIATIONS

|         |                                        |           |                                  |
|---------|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| abl.    | = <i>ablative.</i>                     | indecl.   | = <i>indeclinable.</i>           |
| abs.    | = <i>absolute.</i>                     | indef.    | = <i>indefinite.</i>             |
| acc.    | = <i>accusative.</i>                   | indic.    | = <i>indicative.</i>             |
| adj.    | = <i>adjective.</i>                    | inf.      | = <i>infinitive.</i>             |
| adv.    | = <i>adverb, adverbial.</i>            | intens.   | = <i>intensive.</i>              |
| cf.     | = <i>compare.</i>                      | inter.    | = <i>interrogative.</i>          |
| coll.   | = <i>collective, collectively.</i>     | irr.      | = <i>irregular.</i>              |
| comp.   | = <i>comparative.</i>                  | lit.      | = <i>literally, literal.</i>     |
| conj.   | = <i>conjunction.</i>                  | l.        | = <i>line.</i>                   |
| constr. | = <i>construction.</i>                 | m.        | = <i>masculine.</i>              |
| dat.    | = <i>dative.</i>                       | n.        | = <i>neuter.</i>                 |
| decl.   | = <i>declension.</i>                   | nom.      | = <i>nominative.</i>             |
| def.    | = <i>defective.</i>                    | num.      | = <i>numeral.</i>                |
| dem.    | = <i>demonstrative.</i>                | obj.      | = <i>object.</i>                 |
| dep.    | = <i>deponent.</i>                     | p., pp.   | = <i>page, pages.</i>            |
| desid.  | = <i>desiderative.</i>                 | part.     | = <i>participle.</i>             |
| dim.    | = <i>diminutive.</i>                   | pass.     | = <i>passive.</i>                |
| dir.    | = <i>direct.</i>                       | pers.     | = <i>person, personal.</i>       |
| disc.   | = <i>discourse.</i>                    | perf.     | = <i>perfect.</i>                |
| distr.  | = <i>distributive.</i>                 | pl.       | = <i>plural.</i>                 |
| e.g.    | = <i>exempli gratia = for example.</i> | pluperf.  | = <i>pluperfect.</i>             |
| Eng.    | = <i>English.</i>                      | pos.      | = <i>positive.</i>               |
| etc.    | = <i>et cetera = and so forth.</i>     | pred.     | = <i>predicate.</i>              |
| f.      | = <i>feminine.</i>                     | prep.     | = <i>preposition.</i>            |
| ff.     | = <i>following, and what follows.</i>  | pres.     | = <i>present.</i>                |
| ftn.    | = <i>footnote.</i>                     | pron.     | = <i>pronoun, pronominal.</i>    |
| fut.    | = <i>future.</i>                       | reflex.   | = <i>reflexive.</i>              |
| gen.    | = <i>genitive.</i>                     | rel.      | = <i>relative.</i>               |
| i.e.    | = <i>id est = that is.</i>             | sc.       | = <i>supply.</i>                 |
| impers. | = <i>impersonal, impersonally.</i>     | semi-dep. | = <i>semi-deponent.</i>          |
| imperf. | = <i>imperfect.</i>                    | sing.     | = <i>singular.</i>               |
| ind.    | = <i>indirect.</i>                     | subj.     | = <i>subjunctive.</i>            |
|         |                                        | subst.    | = <i>substantive.</i>            |
|         |                                        | sup.      | = <i>superlative.</i>            |
|         |                                        | trans.    | = <i>translate, translation.</i> |

## VOCABULARY

NOTE.—English words in the definitions which are derived, directly or indirectly, from the Latin words are given in small capitals, as **ABSENT**; except in the case of proper names.

English derivations which are not used as definitions are given in capitals between parentheses; for example (**ABDUCT**).

Composition, in cases where the parts are unchanged in form, is indicated by hyphens, as *ab-dūcō*; when the parts are changed in form, or when it is necessary to define their meaning, they are given in parentheses as *abiciō* (*ab* + *iaciō*), *abdō* (*ab* + *dō*, *put*).

In nouns in *-eius* the accent, both in Latin and in English, falls on the *ei*, which is a diphthong, as in *eius*; cf. *maior*, etc.

In the principal parts of verbs the *neuter* of the perf. pass. part. is given.

### A

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>A.</b>, abbreviation for Aulus, a Roman forename.</p> <p><b>a.</b>, abbreviation for ante in a.d., <i>ante diem</i>. See Introd. 140.</p> <p><b>ā, ab, abs</b>, prep. with abl., <i>from, away from; at, on; ā dextrā, on the right; on the side of; of agency, by; of time, from after, since</i>. See Introd. 142, 1. In this text <i>ab</i> is written only before vowels and <i>h</i>; <i>ā</i> before all consonants.</p> <p><b>ābditus</b>, -a, -um, perf. part. of <b>abdō</b>; as adj., <i>hidden, secluded</i>.</p> <p><b>abdō</b>, -dere, -didi, -ditum (<i>ab</i> + <i>dō</i>, <i>put</i>), <i>put away; hide, conceal</i>.</p> <p><b>ab-dūcō</b>, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, <i>lead away, lead off</i>. (<b>ABDUCT</b>.)</p> | <p><b>ab-eō</b>, -ire, -iī, —, fut. part. <b>abitūrus</b>, <i>go away</i>.</p> <p><b>abesse</b>, infin. of <b>absum</b>.</p> <p><b>abiciō</b>, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (<i>ab</i> + <i>iaciō</i>), <i>throw away</i>. (<b>ABJECT</b>.)</p> <p><b>abiēs</b>, -ietis, f., <i>spruce, fir</i>.</p> <p><b>ab-iungō</b>, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, <i>detach</i>.</p> <p><b>abs</b>, see <b>ā</b>.</p> <p><b>abscidō</b>, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum (<i>abs</i> + <i>caedō</i>), <i>cut off</i>.</p> <p><b>absēns</b>, -sentis (part. of <b>absum</b>), adj., <b>ABSENT</b>.</p> <p><b>absimilis</b>, -e (<i>ab</i> = <i>un-</i>, + <i>similis</i>), adj., <i>unlike</i>.</p> <p><b>ab-sistō</b>, -sistere, -stiti, —, <i>withdraw; desist</i>.</p> <p><b>abstineō</b>, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (<i>abs</i> + <i>teneō</i>), <i>hold back, hold away from; ABSTAIN from; spare</i>.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- abs-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, draw from, draw off.** (ABSTRACT.)
- ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, fut. part. āfutūrus, be away, be ABSENT; be distant, be far from; be lacking, be wanting.**
- abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ab + undō; cf. unda, wave), overflow; ABOUND in.**
- ac, another form of atque (see atque), conj., and also, and; with comparatives and words implying comparison or contrast, as, than.**
- accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (ad + cēdō, go), go to, approach; be added. (ACCESS.)**
- accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad + celerō; cf. celer), hasten. (ACCELERATE.)**
- acceptus, -a, -um (perf. part. of accipiō), adj., ACCEPTABLE, agreeable, dear.**
- accidō, -cidere, -cidī, — (ad + cadō), fall to, befall, happen; impers. accidit, it happens. (ACCIDENT.)**
- accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum (ad + caedō), cut into.**
- accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (ad + capiō), take to (oneself), ACCEPT, receive; of misfortunes, suffer; receive as information, learn.**
- acclivis, -e (ad, cf. clivus), adj., sloping (up to), rising.**
- acclivitas, -tātis (acclivis), f., slope (upward), ascent.**
- Accō, Accōnis, m., Acco, a chief of the Senones.**
- accommodātus, -a, -um, comp. accommodātor (perf. part. of accommodō), adj., suited, adapted. (ACCOMMODATED.)**
- accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad, cf. commodus), fit to, adapt to, put on (ACCOMMODATE.)**
- accūrātē, comp. accūrātius (accūrātus, careful; cf. cūra), adv., carefully. (ACCURATELY.)**
- accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum (ad + currō), run to, run up, hasten to.**
- accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad, cf. causa), ACCUSE.**
- acerbē (acerbus), adv., harshly. acerbitas, -tātis (acerbus), f., bitterness; pl., hardships, troubles. (ACERBITY.)**
- acerbus, -a, -um (cf. ācer, sharp), adj., bitter.**
- ācerimē, sup. of ācritēr.**
- acervus, -ī (cf. ācer, sharp), m., heap, pile; lit., "a pointed heap."**
- aciēs, -ēi (cf. ācer, sharp), f., sharp edge; keen glance; line of battle; army in line of battle; battle; prima aciēs, the front line.**
- acquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum (ad + quaerō), secure in addition; ACQUIRE in addition.**
- ācritēr, comp. ācrius, sup. ācerimē (ācer, sharp), adv., sharply, eagerly, with vigor, fiercely. (ACRIMONIOUSLY.)**
- ācrius, comp. of ācritēr.**
- āctuārius, -a, -um (agō), adj., easily moved, swift.**
- āctus, perf. part. of agō.**
- acūtus, -a, -um, comp. acūtior, sup. acūtissimus (part. of acuō, sharpen), adj., sharpened, sharp; pointed. (ACUTE.)**
- ad, prep. with acc., to, up to; towards; at, near; of time,**

- until, up to; for, for the purpose of; according to, in respect to; with numerals and expressions of number, up to. about.* See *Introd.* 144, 1.
- a.d., abbreviation for *ante diem*. See *Introd.* 140.
- adactus, perf. part. of *adigō*.
- ad-aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *make equal, be equal.* (ADEQUATE.)
- ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *love greatly, be enamored of, become fond of.*
- addō, -dere, -didi, -ditum (ad + dō, *put*), ADD, *join.*
- ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead to, bring to; haul taut; lead, induce, persuade.* (ADDUCE.)
- ademptus, perf. part. of *adimō*.
- adeō (ad + eō, adv.), adv., *to such a degree, so much, so.*
- ad-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go to, approach.*
- adepsus, perf. part. of *adipiscor*.
- ad-equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. *equus, eques*), *ride to, ride up to.*
- ad-haerescō, -haerescere, -haesi, —, *cling to.* (ADHESIVE.)
- adhibeō, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum (ad + habeō), *take with one; summon, admit; use, employ.*
- ad-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *urge on, exhort.*
- ad-hūc, adv., *up to this time, until now.*
- ad-iaceō, -iacere, -iacui, —, *lie near, be ADJACENT.*
- Adiatunnus, -i, m., *Adiatunnus, a chief of the Sotiates.*
- adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (ad + iaciō), *throw to, throw; add; be near.* (ADJECTIVE.)
- adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum (ad + agō), *drive to, hurl.*
- adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (ad + emō), *take to oneself; take away.*
- adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus (ad + apiscor), dep., *obtain.*
- aditus, -ūs (adeō, -ire), m., *going to, access, approach.*
- ad-iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ADJUDGE, *award.*
- ad-iungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *join to.* (ADJUNCT.)
- adiutor, -tōris (adiuvō), m., *assistant, helper; advocate.* (ADJUTANT.)
- ad-iuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum, *aid, help.*
- Admagetobriga, -ae, f., *Admagetobriga, a town in the eastern part of Gaul.*
- ad-mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *bring to MATURITY, hasten.*
- ad-minister, -trī (cf. *minister, servant*), m., *assistant.*
- ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *attend to, manage, ADMINISTER.*
- ad-miror, -mirārī, -mirātus sum, dep., *wonder at; ADMIRE.*
- ad-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *let go, let loose; equō admissō, with horse at full speed; ADMIT, allow to happen, commit; incur.*
- admodum (ad + modum, acc. of *modus*), adv., *to a degree; very, fully.*
- ad-moneō, -monēre, -monui, -monitum, *remind, ADMONISH.*
- ad-olēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, *grow up.* (ADOLESCENT, ADULT.)
- ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *rise against; fall upon, attack.*

- ad-sum**, -esse, -fui, *be near, be present; appear; assist, help.*
- Aduatuca**, -ae, f., *Aduatuca*, a stronghold in the eastern part of Belgic Gaul.
- Aduatuci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Aduatuci*, a tribe of the Belgae.
- adolēscēns**, -centis (adolēscō), adj., *young*; as subst. m., *youth, young man.* (ADOLESCENT.)
- adolēscēntia**, -ae (adolēscēns), f., *youth.* (ADOLESCENCE.)
- adolēscēntulus**, -ī (dimin. of adolēscēns), m., *very young man.*
- adventus**, -ūs (adveniō), m., *arrival, approach.* (ADVENT.)
- adversārius**, -a, -um (cf. adversus), adj., *turned against, opposed*; as subst., *adversārius*, -ārī, m., *opponent, ADVERSARY.*
- adversus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of advertō), adj., *turned toward, facing, opposite; unfavorable, ADVERSE, stormy; adversō colle, up the hill; adversō flūmine, up stream.*
- adversus** (advertō), prep. with acc., *turned towards; against.*
- ad-vertō**, -vertere, -verti, -ver-sum, *turn towards; animum advertere, notice; punish.*
- ad-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *call to, call.* (ADVOCATE.)
- ad-volō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *fly to; hasten to.*
- aedificium**, aedifi'ci (aedificō), n., *building, EDIFICE.*
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (aedēs, *building*, cf. faciō), *build.*
- Aeduus**, -a, -um, adj., *Aeduan*; as subst., **Aeduus**, -ī, m., *an Aeduan*; pl., *the Aedui, the Aeduans*, a prominent people of Gaul.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, weak.*
- aegerrimē**, sup. of aegrē.
- aegrē**, comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimē (aeger), adv., *with difficulty, hardly.*
- Aemilius**, Aemi'li, m., *Aemilius*, gentile name of L. Aemilius, a decurion in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.
- aequāliter** (aequālis, *equal*), adv., *evenly, EQUALLY.*
- aequinoctium**, -noctī (aequus + nox), n., *the EQUINOX.*
- aequitās**, -tātis (aequus), f., *evenness, EQUALITY; fairness, justice; contentment. (EQUITY.)*
- aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (aequus), *make equal, EQUALIZE.*
- aequus**, -a, -um, adj., *level, EQUAL, fair.*
- aerāria**, -ae (aerārius, adj. from aes), f., *copper mine.*
- aes**, aeris, n., *copper, bronze; money; aes aliēnum, debt; lit., "another's money."*
- aestās**, -tātis (cf. aestus), f., *summer.*
- aestimātiō**, -tiōnis (aestimō), f., *valuation, ESTIMATION.*
- aestimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (aes, *money*), *value, ESTIMATE; regard as, consider.*
- aestivus**, -a, -um (aestās), adj., *of summer, summer.*
- aestuārium**, -ārī (aestus), n., *salt marsh; arm of the sea, ESTUARY.*

**aestus**, -ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

**aetās**, -tātis, f., *time of life, age; old age.*

**aeternus**, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting, ETERNAL; lasting, long-continued.*

**afferō**, **afferre**, **attuli**, **allātum** (ad + ferō), *bring to, bring; bring forward, allege; cause, produce.*

**afficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (ad + faciō), *do something to any one; AFFECT, afflict; supplicio affici, be visited with punishment, be punished; beneficio affici, be treated with kindness.*

**affigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum (ad + figō), *fasten to, AFFIX.*

**affingō**, -fingere, -finxī, -fictum, (ad + fingō), *make up besides, invent besides.*

**affinitās**, -tātis (affinis, *relative by marriage*), f., *relationship by marriage. (AFFINITY.)*

**affirmātiō**, -tiōnis (affirmō, *assure*), f., *assurance. (AFFIRMATION.)*

**affixus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **affigō**.

**afflictō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of **affligō**), *dash against, wreck.*

**affligō**, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum (ad + fligō, *dash*), *dash against; throw down, damage, wreck. (AFFLICT.)*

**affore**, for **affutūrus**; fut. infin. of **adsum**.

**Āfricus**, -a, -um (cf. **Āfrica**), adj., *African; as subst., Āfricus, -ī* (sc. *ventus*), m., *the southwest wind, which blew towards Rome from the direction of Africa.*

**āfuisse**, perf. infin. of **absum**.

**āfutūrus**, -a, -um, fut. part. of **absum**.

**ager**, **agrī**, m., *field, land, territory. (ACRE.)*

**agger**, -geris (ad + gerō, *i.e., what is brought to a place*), m., *material for a mound, rampart, or embankment; mound, rampart, embankment.*

**aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (ad + gradior, *step, go*), *approach; attack. (AGGRESSIVE.)*

**aggregō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad + gregō, from **grex**, *herd*), *collect; join. (AGGREGATE.)*

**agitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of **agō**), *set in motion; discuss, consider, AGITATE.*

**agmen**, -minis (**agō**), n., *army on the march, army; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.*

**agō**, **agere**, **ēgi**, **āctum**, *set in motion, drive, lead; do, make; carry on, ACT; bring up, treat, negotiate, arrange, discuss; conventus agere, to hold the assizes, hold court; grātiās agere, to thank; pass., be done, go on, happen.*

**agricultūra**, -ae (**ager**, cf. **colō**), f., *AGRICULTURE, farming.*

**alacer**, -cris, -cre, comp. **alacrior**, adj., *lively, eager, spirited.*

**alacritās**, -tātis (**alacer**), f., *liveliness, eagerness, ALACRITY.*

**ālārius**, -a, -um (**āla**, *wing*), adj., *of a wing; as subst., ālārii, -ōrum*, m. pl., *auxiliary troops, which originally had their position on the wings of the army. See Introd. 35.*

**albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white; plumbum album, tin; lit., white lead. (ALBUM.)*

- alcēs, -cis, f., ELK.**  
**Alesia, -ae, f., Alesia,** a city in the territory of the Mandubii.  
**aliās (alius), adv., at another time. (ALIAS.)**  
**aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (aliēnus), ALIENATE, estrange;** of the mind, *turn, make insane.*  
**aliēnus, -a, -um (alius), adj., of another; unfavorable; out of place, inappropriate. (ALIEN.)**  
**aliō (alius), adv., to another place, elsewhere.**  
**aliquam-diū, adv., for some time, for a while.**  
**aliquandō (ali- + quandō), adv., sometime, finally.**  
**aliquantus, -a, -um (ali- + quantus), adj., some, considerable; n., aliquantum, as adv., somewhat.**  
**aliqui, aliqua, aliquod (ali- + qui), adj. pron. indef., some, any.**  
**aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (ali- + quis), indef. pron., some one, any one; pl., some, any; as subst., aliquid, n., something, anything.**  
**aliquot (ali- + quot), adj. indecl., several, some.**  
**aliter (alius), adv., otherwise.**  
**alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius, dat. aliū, adj., another, other. Alius . . . alius, one . . . another, the other. Alii . . . alii, some . . . others.**  
**allātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of afferō.**  
**alliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum (ad + laciō, entice), entice, allure.**  
**Allobrogēs, -gum, m. pl., the Allobroges, a tribe in the north-**  
**eastern part of the Roman province of Gaul.**  
**alō, alere, alui, altum or alitum, nourish, feed; keep up, support.**  
**Alpēs, Alpium, m. pl., the Alps.**  
**alter, -tera, -terum, gen. alterius, dat. alteri, adj., the other; second. Alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other. Alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other.**  
**alternus, -a, -um (alter), adj., ALTERNATE.**  
**altitūdō, -dinis (altus), f., height, ALTITUDE; depth.**  
**altus, -a, -um, comp. altior, sup. altissimus (perf. part. of alō), adj., high, deep; as subst., altum, -i, n., the deep, the sea.**  
**alūta, -ae, f., soft leather.**  
**ambactus, -i, m., retainer, dependent.**  
**Ambarri, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambarri, a Gallic tribe living on the Arar (Saône) near its junction with the Rhone, kinsmen of the Aedui.**  
**Ambiāni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiani, a tribe of the Belgae.**  
**Ambibarii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambibarii, a tribe dwelling in the northwestern part of Gaul.**  
**Ambiliati, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiliati, a Gallic tribe, dwelling near the mouth of the Liger (Loire).**  
**Ambiorix, -rigis, m., Ambiorix, a chief of the Eburones.**  
**Ambivareti, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambivareti, a tribe dwelling on the upper part of the Liger (Loire), dependents of the Aedui.**

- Ambivaritī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambivaritī*, a Belgian tribe.
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, adj., *both*.
- āmentia**, -ae (āmēns, from ā + mēns), f., *madness, folly*.
- āmentum**, -ī, n., *thong, strap* for hurling javelins. See Intro. 33.
- amfractus**, -ūs, m., *bend*.
- amicitia**, -ae (amicus), f., *friendship*.
- amicus**, -a, -um, sup. **amicissimus** (amō), adj., *friendly*, **AMICABLE**; as subst., **amicus**, -ī, m., *friend*.
- ā-mittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *let go; lose*.
- amor**, -ōris (amō), m., *love*. (**AMOROUS**.)
- amplē**, comp. **amplius**, sup. **amplissimē** (amplus), adv., *fully, largely*, **AMPLY**; comp. **amplius**, *more, further*.
- amplificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (amplus, cf. faciō), *enlarge, increase*. (**AMPLIFY**.)
- amplitūdō**, -dinis (amplus), f., *greatness, extent; importance*. (**AMPLITUDE**.)
- amplius**, see **amplus** and **amplē**.
- amplissimē**, sup. of **amplē**.
- amplus**, -a, -um, sup. **amplissimus**, adj., *large*, **AMPLE**, *generous; important, distinguished*; comp. as subst., **amplius**, n., *more*.
- an**, interrog. conj., introducing the second part of a double question, *or; utrum* . . . **an**, *or -ne* . . . **an**, *whether* . . . *or*.
- Anartēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Anartes*, a people of Dacia.
- Analitēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Ancalites*, a tribe of Britain.
- anceps**, -cipitis (amb-, = ambī + caput), adj., *two-headed, double, twofold*.
- ancora**, -ae, f., **ANCHOR**.
- Andecumborius**, -bo'rī, m., *Andecumborius*, one of the principal men of the Remi.
- Andēs**, **Andium** or **Andī**, -ōrum m. pl., *the Andes*, a Gallic tribe dwelling north of the Liger (Loire).
- angulus**, -ī, m., **ANGLE**, *corner*.
- angustē** (angustus), adv., *closely; scantily*.
- angustiae**, -ārum (angustus), f. pl., *narrowness; narrow pass*; pl., *straits, difficulties*.
- angustus**, -a, -um, comp. **angustior** (angō, squeeze), adj., *contracted, narrow, small*.
- anima**, -ae, f., *breath; life, soul*.
- animadvertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum (animum advertō), *turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in aliquem, punish any one*.
- animal**, -ālis (cf. anima), n., *living thing*, **ANIMAL**.
- animus**, -ī, m., *soul, mind; feeling, consciousness; courage, spirit*. (**ANIMATE**.)
- annōtinus**, -a, -um (annus), adj., *of the preceding year*.
- annus**, -ī, m., *year*. (**ANNIVERSARY**.)
- annuus**, -a, -um (annus), adj., *of a year, for a year*. (**ANNUAL**.)
- ānsēr**, -eris, m., *goose*.
- ante**, adv. and prep. As adv., *before, previously*. As prep. with acc., *before, in front of*. (**ANTEDATE**, etc.)
- anteā** (ante + eā), adv., *before, previously, formerly*.



- ante-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cesum**, go before; surpass, be superior.
- antecursor, -ōris** (**antecurrō**, run before), m., one who runs before, scout; pl., advance-guard, vanguard.
- ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**, place before, prefer.
- antemna, -ae, f.**, yard of a ship.
- ante-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum**, place before, prefer.
- ante-quam, conj.**, before.
- ante-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, —**, place before, prefer.
- antiquitus (antiquus), adv.**, formerly, anciently, in ancient times.
- antiquus, -a, -um, sup. antiquissimus (ante), adj.**, former, ancient, old; **ANTIQUE.**
- Antistius, Antisti, m.**, *Antistius*, gentile name of C. *Antistius Rēginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Antōnius, Antōnī, m.**, *Antonius*, gentile name of M. *Antōnius*, Mark Antony, and of C. *Antōnius*, a brother of M. *Antōnius*, and one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertum, open.**
- apertē (apertus), adv.**, openly.
- apertus, -a, -um, sup. apertissimus (part. of aperiō), adj.**, open, unprotected, exposed.
- Apollō, -llinis, m.**, *Apollo*, identified by Caesar with the Gallic god of medicine.
- apparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad + parō), prepare, get ready. (APPARATUS.)**
- appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum** (ad + pellō), drive to, bring to land.
- appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, address, name, call. (APPELLATION.)**
- appetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum (ad + petō), seek; draw near. (APPETITE.)**
- Appius, Appī, m.**, *Appius*, a Roman *praenōmen*, or first name.
- applicō, -āre, -āvi or -uī, -ātum (ad + plicō, fold), APPLY to, fasten to; sē applicāre, lean against. (APPLICATION.)**
- apportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad + portō), bring to, bring.**
- approbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad + probō), approve. (APPROBATION.)**
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad + propinquō), approach, draw near.**
- appulsus, perf. part. of appellō, -ere.**
- Aprīlis, -e (aperiō, open; the month of the opening flowers), adj., of April.**
- aptus, -a, -um, comp. aptior (root ap-, fasten), adj., fitted, fit, suitable, APT.**
- apud, prep. with the acc., at, near; with, among; in the presence of.**
- aqua, -ae, f.**, water. (**AQUEDUCT, AQUATIC.**)
- aquatiō, -tiōnis (aquor, get water; cf. aqua), f.**, getting water, watering.
- aquila, -ae, f.**, eagle; eagle as a standard, standard. (**AQUILINE.**) See **Introd. 45.**
- Aquileia, -ae, f.**, *Aquileia*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, situated at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

- aquilifer**, -ferī (aquila + ferō), m., *standard-bearer*.
- Aquitānia**, -ae, f., *Aquitania*, one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.
- Aquitānus**, -a, -um, adj., of *Aquitania*; as subst., **Aquitānus**, -ī, m., an *Aquitanian*.
- Arar**, -aris, acc. **Ararim**, abl. **Arari**, m., the *Arar*, a river flowing into the Rhone; the modern Saône.
- arbiter**, -trī, m., **ARBITER**, judge.
- arbitrium**, arbi'trī (cf. arbiter), n., *decision, choice, will*; suō arbitriō, *independently*.
- arbitror**, -āri, -ātus sum, *think, believe, judge*. (ARBITRATION.)
- arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*. (ARBOR, ARBOREAL.)
- arcessō**, -sere, -sivī, -situm, *summon, send for, invite*.
- ardēō**, ardēre, ārsī, —, fut. part. ārsūrus, *burn*; be eager, be **ARDENT**; be angry.
- Arduenna**, -ae, f., *Arduenna*, the *Ardennes*, a forest in north-eastern Gaul.
- arduus**, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high; difficult*. (ARDUOUS.)
- Arecomici**, -ōrum, m., the *Arecomici*, a people dwelling in the Roman Province of Gaul.
- Aremoricus**, -a, -um, *Aremoric*, a Celtic word meaning *by the sea*, applied to the sea-coast states of northwestern Gaul.
- argentum**, -ī, n., *silver*.
- argilla**, -ae, f., *clay*.
- āridus**, -a, -um, adj., *dry*, **ARID**; as subst., **āridum**, -ī, n., *dry land, shore*.
- ariēs**, -etis, m., *ram*; *battering-ram*. See *Introductio* 61.
- Ariovistus**, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans.
- arma**, -ōrum, n. pl., **ARMS**, *armor, weapons*; of a ship, *equipment, rigging*.
- armāmenta**, -ōrum (armō), n. pl., *implements, equipment, rigging*. (ARMAMENT.)
- armātūra**, -ae (armō), f., *armor, equipment*.
- armātus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of armō), adj., **ARMED**, *equipped*; as subst., **armāti**, -ōrum, m. pl., *armed men*.
- armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (arma), **ARM**, *equip*.
- Arpineius**, -ēī, m., *Arpineius*, family name of C. *Arpineius*, a Roman knight.
- arripio**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (ad + rapiō), *seize*.
- arroganter** (arrogāns, *arrogant*), adv., *presumptuously*, **ARROGANTLY**.
- arrogantia**, -ae (arrogāns), f., *presumption, insolence*, **ARROGANCE**.
- ars**, artis, f., **ART**, *science*.
- artē**, comp. artius (artus, *close*), adv., *closely, tightly*.
- articulus**, -ī, m., *joint*. (ARTICLE, ARTICULATE.)
- artificium**, artifi'ci, n., *art*; **ARTIFICE**, *trick*.
- artus**, -a, -um (for arctus, from arceō, *shut in*), adj., *thick, close, dense*.
- Arvernus**, -a, -um, adj., of the *Arverni*, *Arvernian*; as subst., **Arvernī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Arverni*, a tribe in the south-eastern part of Gaul, whose capital was Gergovia.
- arx**, arcis, f., *citadel, strong-hold*.

- ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum (ad + scandō, climb); ASCEND, climb up, scale.
- ascēsus, -ūs (ascendō), m., ASCENT; means of ascent, way up, approach.
- asciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scitum (ad + sciscō, decree), admit to alliance, receive, accept.
- aspectus, -ūs, m., appearance, ASPECT; sight.
- asper, -era, -erum, comp. asperior, sup. asperimus, adj., rough; difficult; harsh, violent.
- assiduus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, constant, ASSIDUOUS.
- assistō, -sistere, astitī, — (ad + sistō), stand near, appear, ASSIST.
- assuēficiō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (assuētus + faciō), make accustomed, accustom, train.
- assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed to.
- at, conj., but, however; yet, but yet, at least.
- atque, ac (at + -que), and also, and; with words implying comparison and contrast, as, than.
- Atrebās, -bātis, m., an Atrebatian, one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe; pl., the Atrebates.
- Ātrius, Ātrī, m., Atrius, family name of Q. Ātrius.
- attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum (ad + texō), weave on, add, join to.
- attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum (ad + tangō), touch on; reach to, reach, extend to; border on.
- attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum (ad + tribuō), assign, assign to. (ATTRIBUTE.)
- attuli, perf. indic. of afferō.
- auctor, -tōris (augeō), m., AUTHOR, originator, instigator, adviser.
- auctōritās, -tātis (auctor), f., AUTHORITY, influence, prestige.
- auctus, -a, -um, comp. auctior (part. of augeō), adj., increased, well-off; comp., better off.
- audācia, -ae (audeō), f., boldness, daring, AUDACITY.
- audācter, comp. audācius, sup. audācissimē (audāx), adv., boldly, courageously. (AUDACIOUSLY.)
- audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., dare, have courage to; undertake.
- audiēns, -entis (part. of audiō), hearing; obedient; audiēns dictō, obedient to a command, obedient. (AUDIENCE.)
- audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: hear, listen to; hear of. (AUDIBLE.)
- auditiō, -ōnis (audiō), f., report.
- augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, increase, AUGMENT.
- Aulercus, -ī, m., an Aulercan, one of the Aulerci; pl., the Aulerci, a people in Central Gaul, having four branches, the Aulerci Brannovicēs, Aulerci Cēnomanī, Aulerci Diablintēs, and the Aulerci Eburovicēs.
- Aulus, -ī, m., Aulus, a Roman praenomen or forename, abbreviated A.
- aureus, -a, -um (aurum, gold), adj., of gold, golden.
- auriga, -ae (aureae, bridle; cf. ōs, mouth + agō), m., charioteer.
- auris, auris, f., ear. (AURIST.)

**Aurunculeius**, -e'i, m., *Aurunculeius*, gentile name of *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Ausci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ausci*, an Aquitanian tribe.

**ausus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of *audeō*.

**aut**, conj., *or*; *aut . . aut*, *either . . or*.

**autem**, conj., postpositive, *but*, *however*; *moreover*.

**autumnus**, -i, m., *AUTUMN*.

**auxiliāris**, -e (*auxilium*), adj., *AUXILIARY*; as subst., m. pl., *auxiliārēs*, -ium, *AUXILIARY* troops, *AUXILIARIES*.

**auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus sum (*auxilium*), *help*, *aid*.

**auxilium**, auxili' (*cf. augeō*), n., *help*, *aid*.

**Avaricēnsis**, -e (*Avaricum*), adj., *of Avaricum*.

**Avaricum**, -i, m., *Avaricum*, a city of the Bituriges.

**avāritia**, -ae (*avārus*, *greedy*), f., *AVARICE*, *greed*.

**ā-vehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry off*.

**āversus**, -a, -um (part. of *āvertō*), adj., *turned away*, *retreating*. (*AVERSE*.)

**ā-vertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn away*, *AVERT*; *alienate*.

**avis**, avis, f., *bird*. (*AVIARY*, *AVIATION*.)

**avus**, -i, m., *grandfather*.

**Axona**, -ae, f., *the Axona*, a river in Belgic Gaul, the modern *Aisne*.

## B

**Bācēnis**, -is, f., *Bacenis*, the name of a forest in Germany.

**Baculus**, -i, m., *Baculus*, surname of *P. Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**Baleārēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Balearic Isles*, off the eastern coast of Spain. They were celebrated for their skill as slingers.

**balteus**, -i, m., *belt*.

**Balventius**, Balventī, m., *Balventius*, family name of *T. Balventius*, a Roman centurion.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign*; *rude*, *uncivilized*, *BARBAROUS*; as subst., *barbarī*, -ōrum, m. pl., *foreigners*, *natives of foreign countries*, *BARBARIANS*.

**Basilus**, -i, m., surname of *L. Minucius Basilius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

**Batāvi**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Batavians*, a people living near the mouth of the river Rhine.

**Belgae**, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians*, inhabiting one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.

**Belgium**, Belgī, n., *Belgium*, the country of the Belgae.

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, comp. *bellicōsior*, sup. *bellicōsissimus* (*bellum*), adj., *warlike*. (*BEL-LICOSE*.)

**bellicus**, -a, -um (*bellum*), adj., *pertaining to war*, *military*.

**bellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*bellum*), *wage war*, *fight*.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellovacī*, a tribe of the Belgians.

**bellum**, -i (for *duellum*, from *duo*; cf. English *DUEL*), n., *war*.

- bene**, comp. **melius**, sup. **optimē** (*bonus*), adv., *well, successfully.*
- beneficium**, **benefici** (*bene + faciō*), n., *kindness, favor, service, BENEFIT.*
- benevolentia**, -ae (*bene*, cf. **volō**), f., *good-will, kindness. (BENEVOLENCE.)*
- Bibracte**, -tis, n., *Bibracte*, a town in Gaul, capital of the Aeduians.
- Bibrax**, -actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi.
- Bibroci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bibroci*, a tribe of the Britons.
- bīduum**, -ī (*bis + diēs*), n., *a period of two days, two days.*
- biennium**, **biennī** (*bis + annus*), n., *a period of two years, two years. (BIENNIAL.)*
- Bigeriōnēs**, -ōnum, m. pl., *the Bigerriones*, a tribe of Aquitania.
- bini**, -ae, -a (*bis*), distrib. num. adj., *two by two, two apiece.*
- bipedālis**, -e (*bis + pedālis*, from **pēs**), *two feet thick.*
- bipertitō** (*bis + partitus*), adv., *in two parts, in two divisions.*
- bis** (*for duis*; cf. **duo**), adv., *twice.*
- Biturigēs**, -igum, m. pl., *the Bituriges*, a people of Central Gaul, living near the river Loire.
- Boduognātus**, -ī, m., *Boduognatus*, a chief of the Nervii.
- Boii**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Boians*, the *Boii*, a Celtic people.
- bonitās**, -tātis (*bonus*), f., *goodness, fertility.*
- bonus**, -a, -um, comp. **melior**, sup. **optimus**, adj., *good, advantageous; well-disposed; as*
- subst., bonum, -ī, n., good thing, advantage; pl. bona, -ōrum, goods, property, possessions.*
- bōs**, **bovis**, gen. pl. **boum**, dat. abl. pl. **bōbus**, m. and f., *bull, ox, cow; pl., cattle, kine. (BOVINE.)*
- bracchium**, **bracchi**, n., *forearm, arm.*
- Brannovicēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Brannovices*, a tribe of the Aulerci.
- Brātuspantium**, **Brātuspanti**, n., *Bratuspantium*, a town of the Bellovaci.
- brevis**, -e, comp. **brevior**, sup. **brevissimus**, adj., *short, BRIEF.*
- brevitās**, -tātis (*brevis*), f., *shortness, small stature. (BREVITY.)*
- breviter** (*brevis*), adv., *shortly, BRIEFLY.*
- Britanni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons, inhabitants of Britain.*
- Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain.*
- Britannicus**, -a, -um (*Britannia*), adj., *of Britain, British.*
- brūma**, -ae (*for brev-ma*, sup. form from **brevis**, sc. **diēs**), f., *shortest day of the year; winter solstice.*
- Brūtus**, -ī, m., surname of *D. Iūnius Brūtus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, who afterwards joined the conspirators against his life.

## C

- C.**, abbreviation for *Gaius*, a Roman *praenōmen*, or forename.
- C.**, abbreviation for *centum*, one hundred.

- Cabillōnum**, -ī, n., *Cabillonum*, a city of the Aeduians.
- Cabūrus**, -ī, m., *Caburus*, surname of C. *Valerius Cabūrus*, a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship.
- cacūmen**, -minis, n., *top*.
- cadāver**, -veris (cadō), n., *corpse*.
- cadō**, cadere, cecidī, —, fut. part. *cāsūrus*, *fall*; *be killed*; *be fall*, *come to pass*, *happen*.
- Cadūrci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cadurci*, a people of Aquitania.
- caedēs**, -dis (cf. *caedō*), f., *killing*, *slaughter*.
- caedō**, caedere, cecidī, *caesum*, *cut*; *cut down*, *kill*.
- caelestis**, -e (*caelum*, *heaven*), adj., *heavenly*, *CELESTIAL*; as subst., *caelestēs*, -ium, m. pl., *dwellers in heaven*, *gods*.
- caerimōnia**, -ae, f., *rite*, *CEREMONY*.
- Caeroesi**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Caeroesi*, a Belgian tribe.
- caeruleus**, -a, -um (*caelum*), adj., *sky-blue*, *dark blue*. (*Cerulean*.)
- Caesar**, *Caesaris*, m., *Caesar*, a Roman surname, referring in this book to: (1) C. *Iūlius Caesar*, the dictator, author of the *Gallie War*; (2) L. *Iūlius Caesar*, a relative of C. *Iūlius Caesar*, and one of his lieutenants. (*KAISER*, *CZAR*.)
- caespes**, -pitis (*caedō*), m., *sod*, *turf*.
- calamitās**, -tātis, f., *disaster*, *misfortune*, *defeat*; *CALAMITY*.
- Caleti**, -ōrum, also *Caletēs*, -um, m. pl., *the Caleti*, a Gallie tribe, dwelling near the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).
- callidus**, -a, -um (*calleō*, *be skilled*), adj., *skilful*, *cunning*, *shrewd*.
- cālō**, -ōnis, m., *camp-follower*, *servant of a soldier*.
- campester**, -tris, -tre (*campus*), adj., *of a plain*, *level*.
- campus**, -ī, m., *field*, *plain*, *open country*, *level country*. (*CAMPUS*.)
- Camulogenus**, -ī, m., *Camulogenus*, a chief of the *Auleri*.
- Caninius**, *Caninī*, m., *Caninius*, gentile name of C. *Caninius Rebilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- canō**, *canere*, *cecini*, *cantum*, *sing*, *CHANT*; *sound*, with a horn.
- Cantabri**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cantabrians*, the *Cantabri*, a tribe in the north of Spain.
- Cantium**, *Canti*, n., *Cantium*, *KENT*, a district of Britain.
- capillus**, -ī (cf. *caput*), m., *hair*. (*CAPILLARY*.)
- capio**, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *take*, *get*; *seize*, *occupy*, *take possession of*, *CAPTURE*; *receive*; *reach*.
- capra**, -ae, f., *she-goat*.
- captivus**, -ī (*capio*), m., *CAPTIVE*, *prisoner*.
- captus**, part. of *capio*.
- captus**, -ūs (*capio*), m., *capacity*; *standard*.
- caput**, -pitis, n., *head*; *life*; *capitis poena*, *CAPITAL punishment*; *person*, *individual*, *man*; *moult of a river*. (*CAPITAL*, *CAPITOL*.)
- Carcasō**, -ōnis, *Carcaso*, a town in the Province.
- careō**, *carēre*, *carui*, —, fut. part. *caritūrus*, *be without*, *lack*.
- carina**, -ae, f., *keel of a ship*,

- Carnutēs, -um, m. pl., the Carnutes, a Gallic state north of the Liger (Loire).**
- carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat. (CARNAL.)**
- carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, pluck; criticise, censure, CARP at.**
- carrus, -ī, m., cart. (CAR.)**
- cārus, -a, -um, comp. cārīor, sup. cārissimus, adj., dear.**
- Carvilius, Carvi'li, m., Carvilius, a chief of the Britons.**
- casa, -ae, f., hut, house; pl., barracks.**
- cāseus, -ī, m., cheese.**
- Cassī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cassi, a tribe of Britain.**
- Cassiānus, -a, -um (Cassius), adj., of Cassius, with Cassius.**
- cassis, -idis, f., helmet. See Introd. 27.**
- Cassius, Cassī, m., Cassius, gentile name of L. Cassius Longīnus, who was defeated by the Helvetians in 107 B.C.**
- Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cassivellaunus, Caswallon, a chief of the Britons.**
- castellum, -ī (dimin. of castrum; see castra), n., fortress, fort, redoubt. (CASTLE.)**
- Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus, a chief of the Sequanians.**
- castra, -ōrum (pl. of castrum, fortress), n. pl., camp.**
- cāsus, -ūs (cadō), m., fall; chance, occurrence, fortune, condition; event; mischance, disaster, death; cāsū, by chance; ad extrēmum cāsum, to the last extremity, to a desperate condition. (CASE, CASUAL, CASUALTY.)**
- Catamantāloedis, -dis, m., Catamantaloedis, a Sequanian chief.**
- catēna, -ae, f., chain; pl., fellers.**
- Caturigēs, -um, m. pl., the Caturiges, a Gallic tribe in the eastern part of the Roman Province.**
- Catuvolcus, -ī, m., Catuvolcus, a chief of the Eburones.**
- causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, occasion, reason; excuse, pretext; matter, case, suit; causā, with the gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of.**
- cautē (cautus), adv., CAUTIOUSLY.**
- cautēs, -tis, f., rock, reef.**
- Cavarillus, -ī, m., Cavarillus, the name of one of the Aedui.**
- Cavarinus, -ī, m., Cavarinus, a chief of the Senones.**
- caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard, be CAUTIOUS, take care, beware.**
- Cebenna, -ae, f., Cebenna, the Cévennes, a range of mountains in the southern part of Gaul.**
- cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, yield, withdraw, retreat. (CEDE.)**
- celer, -eris, -ere, adj., quick, swift, sudden.**
- celeritās, -tātis (celer), f., quickness, swiftness, speed, Celerity.**
- celeriter, comp. celerius, sup. celerrimē (celer), adv., quickly, swiftly.**
- cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CONCEAL, hide.**
- Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts, inhabitants of the central one of the three grand divisions of Gaul.**

- Celtillus**, -ī, m., *Celtillus*, a chief of the Avernī, and the father of Vercingetorix.
- Cēnabēnsēs**, -ium, m. pl., the *Cenabenses*, inhabitants of *Cenabum*.
- Cēnabum**, -ī, n., *Cenabum*, a town of the Carnutes, the modern Orléans.
- Cēnimagnī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Cenimagni*, a British tribe.
- Cēnomani**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Cenomani*, a tribe of the *Aulerci*.
- cēnsēō**, -sēre, -suī, -sum, *estimate; think; decree, determine; favor*.
- cēnsus**, -ūs (cēnsēō), m., *CENSUS*, enumeration.
- centum**, num. adj. indecl., *one hundred*. (CENTURY.)
- centuriō**, -ōnis (centuria, century), m., *CENTURION*. See *Introd.* 23.
- cernō**, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *separate; see*. (DISCERN.)
- certāmen**, -tāminis (certō, contend), n., *contest, battle, strife*.
- certē** (certus), adv., *CERTAINLY*, surely; at least.
- certus**, -a, -um, comp. certior, sup. certissimus (part. of cernō, decide), adj., *CERTAIN*, sure; fixed, appointed; undoubted; trustworthy, reliable; certiorē facere, *inform, command*, lit., "make more certain."
- cervus**, -ī, m., *stag*; in military language, a device for obstructing the enemy's advance.
- cēteri**, -ae, -a (found only in the pl. in Caesar), adj., *the rest, the others*.
- Ceutronēs**, -um, m. pl., the *Ceutrones*: (1) a Belgian tribe; (2) a people who lived in the eastern part of the Roman Province.
- Chēruscī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Cherusci*, a tribe of the Germans.
- cibāria**, -ōrum (cibus), n. pl., *food, provisions, supplies*.
- cibus**, -ī, m., *food*.
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, a Roman cognomen. In this book refers to *Q. Tullius Cicerō*, brother of *M. Cicerō*, and one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Cimberius**, Cimbe'ri, m., *Cimberius*, a chief of the Suebians.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Cimbri*, a Germanic people.
- Cingetorix**, -rigis, m., *Cingetorix*: (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a chief among the Britons.
- cingō**, cingere, cīnxī, cinctum, *surround, invest*. (CINCTURE.)
- cippus**, -ī, m., *post*.
- circinus**, -ī, m., *a pair of compasses*.
- circiter** (cf. circus, ring, circle), adv. and prep. with acc., *around, about, near*.
- circuitus**, -ūs (circu(m)eō), m., *CIRCUIT; way around, circuitous path*.
- circum** (acc. of circus, ring, circle), prep. with acc., *around, about, near*. (Circumnavigare, etc.)
- circumcidō**, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum (circum + caedō) *cut around, cut out*.
- circumcisus**, -a, -um (circumcidō), adj., *steep, precipitous*.



- circum-clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum**, enclose on all sides.  
**circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum** (circum + dō, *put*), put around, build around, surround.  
**circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum**, lead around; draw around.  
**circum-eō** (circueō), -īre, -iī, -itum, go around; inspect, visit.  
**circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum**, pour around, surround; pass, crowd around.  
**circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** (circum + iaciō), throw around.  
**circum-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum**, send around.  
**circum-mūniō, -nīre, -nīvī, -nītum**, surround by a wall; fortify.  
**circum-plector, -plecti, —, embrace**, surround.  
**circum-sistō, -sistere, -steti or -stiti, —**, stand around, surround.  
**circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum** (circum + speciō), look around; consider, examine. (CIRCUMSPECT.)  
**circum-vallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, surround with a wall, blockade. (CIRCUMVALLATION.)  
**circum-vehor, -vehī, -vectusum, dep., be carried around**; ride around.  
**circum-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum**, come around; surround; deceive, CIRCUMVENT.  
**cis**, prep. with acc., on this side of.  
**Cisalpinus, -a, -um** (cis + Alpīnus), adj., Cisalpine, lying on this (the Roman) side of the Alps.  
**Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um** (cis + Rhēnānus), adj., lying on this side of the Rhine (i.e. the western or Gallic side).  
**Cita, -ae, f., Cīta**, surname of C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight.  
**citātus, -a, -um** (perf. part. of citō, set in motion), adj., swift, rapid.  
**citerior, -ius** (comp. of citer; cf. cis), adj., on this side, nearer, hither.  
**cito, sup. citissimē** (citus, swift), adv., swiftly.  
**citrā** (cf. cis), prep. with acc., on this side of.  
**citrō** (cf. cis), adv., hither; ultrō citrōque, to and fro.  
**cīvis, -vis, m. and f., citizen**, fellow-citizen. (CIVIL.)  
**civitas, -tātis** (civis), f., state, nation; citizenship.  
**clam** (cf. celō), adv., secretly.  
**clāmītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (intens. of clāmō), shout.  
**clāmor, -ōris** (clāmō), m., outcry, shout; battle-cry. (CLAMOR.)  
**clandestīnus, -a, -um** (clam), adj., secret, CLANDESTINE.  
**clārus, -a, -um**, comp. clārīor, sup. clārissimus, adj., clear, loud.  
**classis, -sis, f., fleet**.  
**Claudius, Claudi, m., Claudius**, gentile name of Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul in 54 B.C.  
**claudō, -dere, clausī, clausum**, shut, close; agmen claudere, bring up the rear.  
**clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike**.  
**clēmēntia, -ae** (clēmēns), f., mercy, CLEMENCY.  
**cliēns, -ntis, m., dependent**, subject, CLIENT.  
**clientēla, -ae** (cliēns), f., clientage, vassalage; pl. collectively, clients.

- clivus**, -i, m., *slope*, DECLIVITY.  
**Clōdīus**, Clōdī, m., *Clodius*, gentile name of *P. Clōdīus Pulcher*.  
**Cn.**, abbreviation for *Gnaeus*, a Roman first name.  
**coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + acervō), *pile up together, heap up; crowd together*.  
**coāctus**, perf. part. of cōgō.  
**coāctus**, -tūs (cōgō), m., used only in the abl. sing. coāctū, *by compulsion*.  
**coagmentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (coagmentum, from cōgō), *fasten together*.  
**coartō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + artō, compress), *crowd together*.  
**Cocosātēs**, -um, m., *the Cocosates*, a tribe of Aquitania.  
**coemō**, -emere, -ēmi, -ēptum (com- + emō), *buy up*.  
**coēō**, -īre, -īvi, or -iī, -itum (com- + eō), *come together, unite*.  
**coepī**, coepisse, coeptus, defective, *begin, commence*.  
**coerceō**, -cēre, -cuī, -citum (com- + arceō), *confine, restrain*, COERCE.  
**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + agitō), *consider, think; think of; intend*. (COGITATE.)  
**cognātiō**, -tiōnis (cognātus), f., *relationship by blood, kinship*; pl. collectively, *connections, family*.  
**cognitus**, perf. part. of cognōscō.  
**cognōscō**, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum (com- + (g)nōscō), *become acquainted with, consider, learn*, RECOGNIZE; perf. cognōvī, *know*; See Introd. 166, Note.
- cōgō**, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (com- + agō), *drive together, collect; force, compel*.  
**cohors**, -hortis, f., COHORT, one of the divisions of the legion; see Introd. 17.  
**cohortātiō**, -tiōnis (cohortor), f., *encouraging, exhortation*.  
**cohortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (com- + hortor), *encourage, exhort*.  
**collātus**, perf. part. of cōnferō.  
**collaudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + laudō), *praise, commend*.  
**colligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + ligō, bind), *bind together, fasten together*.  
**colligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum (com- + legō, gather), *gather together, COLLECT; acquire; sē colligere, recover oneself, rally*.  
**collis**, collis, m., *hill*.  
**collocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + locō, place), *place, put; settle; give in marriage*.  
**colloquium**, collo'quī (colloquor), n., *conference, parley*. (COLLOQUY, COLLOQUIAL.)  
**colloquor**, -loqui, -locūtus sum (com- + loquor), *talk with, confer with, parley with; talk, converse*.  
**colō**, colere, coluī, cultum, CULTIVATE, *till*.  
**colōnia**, -ae (colōnus), f., COLONY, *settlement*.  
**color**, -ōris, m., COLOR, *complexion*.  
**com-**, old form of cum, found only in composition, *together, with; thoroughly*.  
**combūrō**, -būrere, -bussi, -būsum (com- + (b)ūrō), *burn, destroy by fire, burn up*. (COMBUSTION.)

- comes, -itis (com- and eō), m. and f., *companion*.
- comitia, -ōrum, n. pl., *elections*.
- comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum (comes), dep., *accompany*.
- commeātus, -ūs (commeō), m., *going to and fro; voyage, trip; supplies, provisions*.
- com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call to mind, mention, tell of. (COMMEMORATE.)
- commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + mandō), *entrust, commend, recommend*.
- com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + meō, go), *go to and fro, resort; with ad and ace., visit*.
- commilitō, -tōnis (com-, cf. miles), m., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.
- comminus (com- + manus), adv., *hand to hand*.
- commissūra, -ae (committō), f., *joint*.
- com-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *bring together, join; COMMIT; entrust, trust; cause, allow; proelium committere, join battle, contend in battle*.
- Commius, Commī, m., *Commius, one of the Atrebatas, a friend of Caesar's*.
- commodē, comp. commodius, sup. commodissimē (commodus), adv., *easily, conveniently; suitably, advantageously*.
- commodus, -a, -um, comp. commodior, sup. commodissimus (com- + modus, measure), adj., *advantageous, fitting, advisable; as subst., commodum, -ī, n., advantage, profit. (COMMODIOUS.)*
- commonefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum (com- + moneō + faciō), *remind, remind of*.
- com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *delay, linger*.
- com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move greatly, disturb, alarm. (COMMOTION.)*
- communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (communis), *share with, COMMUNICATE with; join with; bestow*.
- com-mūnio, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itum, *fortify strongly*.
- communis, -e (com- + mūnus), adj., *COMMON, general, public; res communēs, matters of common interest. (COMMUNITY.)*
- commūtatiō, -tiōnis (commūtō), f., *change. (COMMUTATION.)*
- com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *change, exchange. (COMMUTE.)*
- com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, get ready; acquire, obtain*.
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (compar, like), *COMPARE, match*.
- com-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive together, collect; drive, force back. (COMPEL, COMPULSION.)*
- compendium, compendī, n., *saving, gain*.
- comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -per-tum (com- + pariō, obtain), *learn, find out, detect; compertum est, guilt is proven, they are found guilty*.
- compertus, -a, -um (perf. part. of comperiō), adj., *settled, certain*.
- complexor, -plectī, -plexus sum (com- + plectō, braid), *embrace; enclose. (COMPLEX.)*

**com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum,**  
*fill full, fill; COMPLETE.*

**complexus, perf. part. of com-  
plector.**

**com-plūrēs, -a or -ia, adj.,**  
*very many, several, many;*  
*as subst., complūrēs, -ium, m.,*  
*very many people, many.*

**com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,**  
*bring together, collect, bring.*

**com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī,**  
*-hēnsūm, seize, grasp; cap-*  
*ture; COMPREHEND.*

**com-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,**  
*approve fully.*

**cōnātum, -ī (cōnor), n., attempt,**  
*undertaking. (CONATIVE.)*

**cōnātus, -ūs (cōnor), m., at-**  
*tempt.*

**cōnātus, perf. part. of cōnor.**

**con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,**  
*-cessum (com- + cēdō), give*  
*up, yield; allow, permit; with-*  
*draw, depart. (CONCEDE.)*

**concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-**  
*+ certō), contend.*

**concessus, -ūs (concēdō), m.,**  
*found only in abl. sing. con-*  
*cessū, with (by) permission.*

**concidō, -cidere, -cidī, — (com-**  
*+ cadō), fall; be killed.*

**concidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum**  
*(com- + caedō), cut to pieces,*  
*slay, kill.*

**conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (con-**  
*cilium), win over, secure.*  
*(CONCILIATE.)*

**concilium, concī'li (com- + calō,**  
*call), n., assembly, COUNCIL,*  
*meeting.*

**concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-**  
*+ cito), rouse, excite.*

**conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
*(com- + clāmō), shout loudly,*  
*shout, cry out; victōriam*

*conclāmāre, raise a shout of*  
*victory.*

**conclūsus, -a, -um (part. of**  
*conclūdō), adj., closed, en-*  
*closed, shut in, confined.*

**Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m.,**  
*Conconnetodumnus, a chief of*  
*the Carnutes.*

**concrepō, -āre, -crepui, -cre-**  
*pitum (com- + crepō), clash.*

**concurrō, -currere, -cucurri or**  
*-curri, -cursum (com- +*  
*currō), run together, rush,*  
*charge; resort to; rush about.*  
*(CONCUR.)*

**conkursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
*(intensive of concurrō), rush*  
*about.*

**concursum, -ūs (concurrō), m.,**  
*a running together, meet-*  
*ing, assembly; charge. (CON-*  
*COURSE.)*

**condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
*(com- + damnō), CONDEMN,*  
*find guilty of.*

**condiciō, -ciōnis (com- + dicō,**  
*declare), f., CONDITION, propo-*  
*sition, agreement; state.*

**condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
*(com- + dōnō), give up; par-*  
*don, CONDONE.*

**Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. pl., the**  
*Condrusi, a Belgian tribe.*

**condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-**  
*tum (com- + dūcō), lead to-*  
*gether, collect, bring in a body;*  
*hire. (CONDUCT, CONDUCE.)*

**cōnfectus, perf. part. of cōn-**  
*ficiō.*

**cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum**  
*(com- + ferō), bring together,*  
*collect, attribute, ascribe; con-*  
*tribute; compare; postpone,*  
*put off; sē cōnferre, betake*  
*oneself. (CONFER, COLLATION.)*

- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, sup. **cōnfertissimus** (part of **cōnferciō**, *crowd together*), adj., *crowded together, in close order.*
- cōnfestim**, adv., *immediately, at once.*
- cōnfiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (com- + faciō), *do thoroughly, finish, complete, furnish; make, draw up, compose; exhaust; of leather, dress.*
- cōnfidō**, -fidere, -fīsus sum (com- + fidō, *trust*), semi-dep., *trust fully, CONFIDE in; be CONFIDENT.*
- cōnfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum (com- + figō, *fasten*), *fasten together.*
- cōnfinis**, -e (com- + finis), adj., *neighboring.*
- cōnfinium**, cōnfinī (cōnfinis), n., *boundary. (CONFINES.)*
- cōnfiō**, -fieri, — (com- + fiō), pass. of cōnfiō, *be done.*
- cōnfirmātiō**, -tiōnis (cōnfirmō), f., *assurance, assertion. (CONFIRMATION.)*
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + firmō, *strengthen*), *strengthen greatly; CONFIRM, establish; settle, fix, appoint, encourage; assert, affirm, declare.*
- cōnfisus**, perf. part. of cōnfidō.
- cōnfiteor**, cōnfiterī, cōnfessus sum (com- + fateor), dep., *CONFESS.*
- cōnfixus**, perf. part. of cōnfigō.
- cōnflagrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + flagrō, *burn*), *be on fire. (CONFLAGRATION.)*
- cōnfiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of cōnfigō), *assail.*
- cōnfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fiōtum (com- + figō, *dash*), *dash together; contend, struggle, fight; assail, attack. (CONFLICT.)*
- cōnfluēs**, -ntis (cōnfluō), m., *meeting of two rivers, CONFLUENCE.*
- cōnfluō**, -fluere, -flūxī, — (com- + fluō), *flow together, come together.*
- cōnfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, — (com- + fugiō), *flee, flee for refuge.*
- cōnfundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, fūsum (com- + fundō), *pour together, bring together. (CONFOUND, CONFUSION.)*
- concredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (com- + gradior, *step*), *come together, meet; engage in battle.*
- congressus**, -ūs (concredior), m., *meeting; encounter. (CONGRESS.)*
- coniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (com- + iaciō), *throw with force, hurl; bring together, collect, put; in fugam conicere, put to flight.*
- coniectūra**, -ae (coniciō), f., *CONJECTURE.*
- coniūctim** (coniungō), adv., *jointly.*
- coniūctus**, -a, -um (part. of coniungō), adj., *joined, connected; allied. (CONJUNCTION.)*
- coniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūntum (com- + iungō), *join together, unite, connect.*
- coniūnx**, -iugis (coniungō), f., *wife. (CONJUGAL.)*
- coniūrātiō**, -tiōnis (coniūrō), f., *league; conspiracy.*
- coniūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + iūrō), *take oath together, conspire. (CONJURE.)*

- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *attempt, try, undertake*. (CONATIVE.)
- conquiescō**, -quiescere, -quievi, —, fut. part. -quieturus (com + quiescō), *rest*.
- conquirō**, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum (com- + quaerō), *seek out, search for; collect*.
- conquisitus**, perf. part. of **conquirō**.
- cōsanguineus**, -a, -um (com- + sanguis), adj., *of the same blood, kindred*; as subst., **cōsanguineus**, -ī, m., *kinsman*. (CONSANGUINEOUS.)
- cōnscendō**, -scendere, -scendi, scēsum (com- + scandō, *climb*), *mount, go aboard a vessel, embark on*.
- cōnscientia**, -ae (cf. **cōnsciūs**), f., CONSCIOUSNESS, *knowledge*.
- cōnsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum (com- + sciscō, *decree*), *decree; resolve on*; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, *to commit suicide*.
- cōnsciūs**, -a, -um (com- + sciō), adj., CONSCIOUS, *aware*.
- cōnscribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum (com- + scribō), *write together, enroll, enlist*. (CONSCRIPT.)
- cōnscriptus**, perf. part. of **cōnscribō**.
- cōnsecrātus**, -a, -um (part. of **cōnsecrō**), adj., CONSECRATED, *sacred*.
- cōnsector**, -ārī, -ātus sum (intens. of **cōnsequor**), *follow eagerly, pursue*.
- cōnsecūtus**, perf. part. of **cōnsequor**.
- cōnsēnsiō**, -siōnis (cōnsentiō), f., *unanimity*.
- cōnsēnsus**, -ūs (cōnsentiō), m., *agreement, CONSENT*.
- cōnsentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsū (com- + sentiō), *agree with, unite with*. (CONSENT.)
- cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum (com- + sequor), *follow up; overtake; attain, acquire*. (CONSEQUENCE.)
- cōnservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + servō), *spare, save; observe a law*. (CONSERVE.)
- Cōnsidius**, Cōnsī'dī, m., *Considius*, gentile name of P. *Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- cōnsidō**, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum (com- + sidō, *sit*), *sit down; halt, encamp; settle*.
- cōnsilium**, cōnsī'li (cōnsulō), n., *deliberation, COUNSEL; council; plan, design; good judgment; strategy*.
- cōnsimilis**, -e (com- + similis), adj., *very like, very SIMILAR*.
- cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum (com- + sistō, *set*), *place oneself, take a position, stand; stay, remain, stop, halt; settle; consist of; depend on*.
- cōnsobrīnus**, -ī (com-, cf. **soror**), m., *cousin*.
- cōnsōlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (com- + sōlor, *comfort*), dep., CONSOLE, *cheer, encourage*.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs (cōnspiciō), m., *sight, view; presence*. (CONSPECTUS.)
- cōnspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum (com- + speciō, *see*), *catch sight of, behold, observe, see*.
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *catch sight of, perceive, see*.

- cōnspirō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + spirō, *breathe*), CONSPIRE, *combine*.
- cōstanter** (cōstāns, *resolute*), adv., *resolutely, firmly; consistently, uniformly*.
- cōstantia**, -ae (cōstāns, *resolute*), f., *firmness, steadfastness*. (CONSTANCY.)
- cōsternō**, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum (com- + sternō), *strew, cover*.
- cōnstipō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + stipō, *press*), *press together*.
- cōnstituō**, -stituire, -stitui, -stitūtum (com- + statuō), *station, place; set up, arrange, draw up; appoint, establish; decide, determine; of ships, moor, bring to anchor*.
- cōnstō**, -stāre, -stiti, —, fut. part. cōnstātūrus (com- + stō), *stand firm; depend on; impers. cōnstat, it is certain, it is agreed*.
- cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum (com- + suēscō), *become accustomed; perf. consuēvī, I am accustomed, am wont*.
- cōnsuētūdō**, -dinis (cōnsuēscō), f., *custom, habit; mode of life*.
- cōnsuētus**, perf. part. of cōnsuēscō.
- cōnsul**, -sulis (com-, cf. sedēō), m., CONSUL, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome.
- cōnsulātus**, -ūs (cōnsul), m., *consulship, CONSULATE*.
- cōnsulō**, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, *take counsel, consider; with dat., CONSULT for, have regard for*.
- cōnsultō** (cf. cōnsulō), adv., *with deliberation, purposely*.
- cōnsultō**, -āre, -avī, -ātum (intens. of cōnsulō), CONSULT, *take counsel*.
- cōnsultum**, -ī (cōnsulō), n., *deliberation, decree*.
- cōnsūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum (com- + sūmō), CONSUME, *use up, destroy*.
- cōnsūptus**, perf. part. of cōnsūmō.
- cōnsurgō**, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum (com- + surgō), *rise*.
- contabulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-, cf. tabula, *board*), *board over; build over, cover*.
- contāgiō**, -giōnis (contingō), f., *touching, contact*. (CONTAGION.)
- contāminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com-, cf. tangō), CONTAMINATE.
- contegō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum (com- + tegō), *cover, cover up*.
- contemnō**, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum (com- + temnō), *despise*.
- contemptiō**, -tiōnis (contemnō, *despise*), f., CONTEMPT.
- contemptus**, -ūs (contemnō), m., CONTEMPT; *contemptui esse, be an object of contempt*.
- contendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum (com- + tendō), *put forth an effort, strive; hasten; fight, CONTEND; demand, insist*.
- contentiō**, -tiōnis (contendō), f., *effort; strife; fight, struggle, CONTENTION*.
- contentus**, -a, -um (part. of contineō), adj., CONTENT, *contented*.
- contextō**, -texere, -texui, -textum (com- + texō, *weave*), *weave together, bind together; fashion*.

- continēns**, -ntis (part. of **contineō**), adj., *continuous, unbroken*; as subst. f., **CONTINENT**, *mainland* (sc. *terra*).
- continenter** (**continēns**), adv., *continuously; without interruption, continually*.
- continentia**, -ae (**continēns**), f., *self-control*.
- contineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (com- + **teneō**), *hold together, hold, keep; hold back, detain, shut in, hem in; surround, bound, contain*.
- contingō**, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum (com- + **tangō**), *touch, border on; happen to, fall to the lot of*. (**CONTACT**.)
- continuātiō**, -tiōnis (**continuō**), f., **CONTINUATION**.
- continuō** (**continuus**), adv., *immediately, at once*.
- continuus**, -a, -um (com-, cf. **teneō**), adj., *successive, in succession*, **CONTINUOUS**.
- cōntiō**, -tiōnis (for **coventiō**, from com- + **veniō**), f., *assembly; address to an assembly*.
- contrā** (com-), adv. and prep. with acc. As adv., *opposite; on the other hand; against*. As prep., *opposite, facing; against; in spite of; in reply to*. (**CONTRARY, CONTRADICT**, etc.)
- contrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum (com- + **trahō**), *draw together, collect; CONTRACT, make smaller*.
- contrārius**, -a, -um (**contrā**), adj., *opposite*, **CONTRARY**.
- contrōversia**, -ae (cf. **contrā** and **vertō**), f., *rivalry, difference of opinion, dispute*, **CONTROVERSY**.
- contumēlia**, -ae (com-, cf. **tumēō**, *swell*), f., *insult, indignity; injury, violence, force*. (**CONTUMELY**.)
- convalēscō**, -valēscere, -valuī, — (com- + **valēscō**, from **valeō**), *get well*, **CONVALESCERE**.
- convallis**, -lis (com- + **vallis**), f., *valley, ravine*.
- convehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum (com- + **vehō**), *bring together*.
- conveniō**, -venire, -vēmī, -ventum (com- + **veniō**), *come together, assemble, CONVEENE; be agreed on; used transitively, meet; impers., be fitting, be proper*.
- conventus**, -ūs (**conveniō**), m., *assembly; court, assizes*. (**CONVENTION**.)
- conversus**, perf. part. of **convertō**.
- convertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (com- + **vertō**), *turn, turn about; change*. (**CONVERT**.)
- Convictolitavis**, -is, m., *Convictolitavis, a chief of the Aeduians*.
- convictus**, perf. part. of **convincō**.
- convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victum (com- + **vincō**), *prove, establish*. (**CONVINCE, CONVICT**.)
- convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (com- + **vocō**), *call together*, **CONVOKE**.
- coōrior**, -oriri, -ortus sum (com- + **orior**), *arise, spring up; break out*.
- coōrtus**, perf. part. of **coōrior**.
- cōpia**, -ae (for **co-opia**; com-; cf. **ops**), f., *abundance, plenty, supply, number*; plur. **cōpiae**, -ārum, *resources, riches; forces, troops*. (**CORNUCOPIA**.)



**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, comp. **cōpiōsior**, sup. **cōpiōsissimus** (**cōpia**), adj., *well supplied, rich*; **COPIOUS**.

**cōpula** -ae (com- + root **ap**, *fasten*), f., *grappling-hook, grapnel*. (**COPULA**.)

**cor**, **cordis**, n., *heart*; **cordi esse alicuī**, *to be dear to any one*. (**CORDIAL**.)

**cōram** (for **cō-ōram**; cf. **ōs**, *face*), adv., *face to face, in person*.

**Coriosolitēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Coriosolites, a people living on the northwestern coast of Gaul*.

**corium**, **cori**, n., *hide, skin*.

**cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn*; *wing of an army*. (**CORNUCOPIA**.)

**corōna**, -ae, f., *crown, garland*; *circle, audience*; sub **corōnā vendere**, *to sell as slaves*. (**CORONET**.)

**corpus**, **corporis**, n., *body*; **CORPSE**. (**CORPORAL**.)

**corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rūptum (com- + **rumpō**), *destroy*. (**CORRUPT**.)

**cortex**, -tici, m. and f., *bark of a tree*.

**Cōrus**, -ī, m., *Corus, the name of the northeast wind*.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um (**cotidiē**), adj., *daily*; *usual*.

**cotidiē** (cot- for quot + **diēs**), adv., *daily, every day*.

**Cotta**, -ae, m., *Cotta, surname of L. Aurunculeius Cotta*.

**Cotus**, -ī, m., *Cotus, one of the Aeduans*.

**crassitūdō**, -tūdinis (**crassus**, *thick*), f., *thickness*.

**Crassus**, -ī, m., *Crassus, surname of: (1) M. Licinius*

*Crassus, member with Caesar of the First Triumvirate.*

(2) *M. Licinius Crassus, elder son of (1), and a quaestor in Caesar's army.* (3) *P. Licinius Crassus, younger son of (1), and one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**crātēs**, -tis, f., *wicker-work*; *hurdle, fagot*.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, comp. **crēbrior**, sup. **crēberrimus**, adj., *thick, crowded, frequent*.

**crēbrō** (**crēber**), adv., *frequently, constantly*.

**crē-dō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *give CREDENCE*, *believe*, **CREDIT**; *suppose, think*.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *burn*. (**CREMATE**.)

**creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *make, CREATE*; *appoint, choose*.

**crēscō**, **crēscere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *increase, grow*; *grow strong*. (**CRESCENT**.)

**Crētēs**, -um, m. pl., acc. pl. **Crētas**, *the Cretans, inhabitants of Crete*.

**Critognātus**, -ī, m., *Critognatus, a prominent man among the Avernī*.

**cruciātus**, -ūs (**cruciō**, *torture*), m., *torture, punishment*. (**EXCRUCIATING**.)

**crūdēlitās**, -tātis (**crūdēlis**, *cruel*), f., **CRUELTY**.

**crūdēliter** (**crūdēlis**, **CRUEL**), adv., **CRUELY**.

**crūs**, **crūris**, n., *leg*.

**cubīle**, -ilis (**cubō**, *lie down*), n., *bed, resting-place*.

**culmen**, -minis, n., *height, summit*. (**CULMINATION**.)

**culpa**, -ae, f., *fault, blame*. (**CULPABLE**.)

**cultūra, -ae** (colō), f., *tilling, cultivation.* (CULTURE, AGRICULTURE.)

**cultus, -ūs** (colō), m., *cultivation; manner of life, civilization.*

**cum**, prep. with abl., *with, in company with.* See *Intro.* 142, 2.

**cum**, conj., *temporal, when, while, whenever; causal, since; concessive and adversative, although, though; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also; cum primum, as soon as.*

**cunctātiō, -tiōnis** (cunctor), f., *delay, hesitation.*

**cunctor, -āri, -ātus sum**, dep., *delay, hesitate.*

**cūctus, -a, -um** (for *coniūctus*), adj., *all.*

**cuneatim** (cuneus), adv., *like a wedge, in the form of a wedge.*

**cuneus, -i**, m., *wedge, a wedge-shaped mass of soldiers.*

**cuniculum, -i**, n., *mine.*

**cupidē**, comp. **cupidus**, sup. **cupidissimē** (cupidus), adv., *eagerly.*

**cupiditās, -tātis** (cupidus), f., *eagerness, desire.* (CUPIDITY.)

**cupidus, -a, -um** (cupiō), adj., *desirous, eager, fond of.* (CUPID.)

**cupiō, cupire, cupivī, cupitum**, *desire; wish well to.*

**cūr**, adv., *why.*

**cūra, -ae**, f., *CARE, attention.*

**cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *CARE for, attend to; with the gerundive, have (done), cause (to be done).* (CURATOR.)

**currus, -ūs** (currō, run), m., *chariot.*

**cursus, -ūs** (currō, run), m., *running; speed; COURSE.*

**cūstōdia, -ae** (cūstōs), f., *watch, guard, CUSTODY.*

**cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum** (cūstōs), *guard.*

**cūstōs, -tōdis**, m. and f., *guard.* (CUSTODIAN.)

## D

**D.**, abbreviation for **Decimus**, a Roman first name.

**D.**, abbreviation for 500.

**d.**, abbreviation for *diem* in *a.d., ante diem.* See *Intro.* 140.

**Dāci, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the Dacians, a nation living on the Danube River.*

**damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (damnum), *condemn; part. as subst., damnāti, -ōrum*, m. pl., *those condemned, prisoners.* (DAMN.)

**damnum, -i**, n., *loss.*

**Dānuvius, Dānu'vī**, m., *the Danube.*

**dē**, prep. with abl., *from, down from; for, on account of; about, concerning, with respect to; of time, at, in; dē improvisō, unexpectedly.* See *Intro.* 142, 3.

**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitum** (dē+habeō), *owe; pass. be due; with dependent infinitive, ought, must.* (DEBT, DEBIT.)

**dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum**, *go away, withdraw; avoid; die.* (DECEASE.)

**decem**, num. adj. indec., *ten.* (DECIMATE, DECIMAL.)

**dēceptus**, part. of *dēcipiō.*

**dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum**, *decide; vote, DECREE.*

**dē-certō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *fight out, fight a decisive battle.*

**dē-cessus**, -ūs (dēcēdō), m., *departure; falling, ebbing of the tide.*

**Decetia**, -ae, f., *Decetia*, a town of the Aeduan on the river Liger (*Loire*).

**dēcīdō**, -cidere, -cidī, —, fut. part. **dēcāsūrus** (dē + cadō), *fall down, fall off.*

**decimus**, -a, -um (decem), num. adj., *tenth.* (DECIMAL, DECIMATE.)

**Decimus**, -ī, m., *Decimus*, a Roman first name, abbreviated D.

**dēcipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (dē + capiō), *deceive.* (DECEPTION.)

**dē-clārō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. clārus), *DECLARE, announce.*

**dēclivis**, -e (dē + clivus), adj., *sloping; as subst., declivia, -ōrum, n. pl., slopes, declivities.*

**dēclivitās**, -tātis (dēclivis), f., *DECLIVITY, descent, slope.*

**decumānus**, -a, -um (decimus), adj., *of or belonging to a tenth, DECUMAN; porta decumāna, the DECUMAN gate, the rear gate of a Roman camp, so called because the tenth cohorts were originally stationed near this gate. See Introd. 52.*

**decuriō**, -iōnis (cf. decem), m., *DECURION*, an officer in charge of a *decuria*, or division of ten horsemen.

**dē-currō**, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum, *run down, rush down; run down to.*

**dēdecus**, -coris (dē + decus, *honor*), n., *dishonor, disgrace.*

**dēditicius**, -a, -um (dēditus, part. of dēdō), adj., *that has surrendered; as subst., dēditiciū, -ōrum, m. pl., prisoners of war.*

**diditiō**, -tiōnis (dēdō), f., *surrender.*

**dē-dō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *give up, surrender; devote.*

**dē-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead down, lead away; lead, induce.* (DEDUCE, DEDUCT.)

**dēfatigātiō**, -tiōnis (dēfatigō), f., *weariness, fatigue.*

**dē-fatigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tire out, FATIGUE greatly.*

**dēfectiō**, -tiōnis (dēficiō), f., *desertion, revolt, DEFECTION.*

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fensum (dē + fendō, *strike*), *ward off, repel; DEFEND, protect.*

**dēfēnsiō**, -siōnis (dēfendō), f., *DEFENCE.*

**dēfēnsor**, -sōris (dēfendō), m., *defender; defence, guard.*

**dēfēnsus**, perf. part. of dēfendō.

**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring down; carry away; confer on, bestow; refer, report.* (DEFER.)

**dēfessus**, -a, -um (part. of dēfetiscor), adj., *wearied, exhausted, tired; as subst., dēfessus, -ī, m., one exhausted.*

**dēfetiscor**, -fetisci, -fessus sum, (dē + fatiscor), dep., *become tired.*

**dēficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (dē + faciō), *fail, be wanting; fall away, revolt; (eum) omnia dēficere, to be wholly at a loss.* (DEFICIENT, DEFECTION.)

- dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum** (dē + figō, *fasten*), *drive in, fasten in*.  
**dē-finiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum**, DE-FINE, *fix*.  
**dē-fluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum**, *flow down, flow*.  
**dēfore**, fut. inf. of dēsum.  
**dēfōrmis, -e** (dē + fōrma), adj., *misshapen, ugly, DEFORMED*.  
**dē-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —**, *flee; flee from, avoid*.  
**dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** (dē + iaciō), *throw down; drive away, rout; be carried; deprive of, disappoint; destroy, kill. (DEJECTION.)*  
**dēiectus**, perf. part. of dēiciō.  
**dēiectus, -ūs** (dēiciō), m., *descent, slope*.  
**dēinceps** (deinde + root cap-, *take*), *one after the other, in turn, in succession*.  
**de-inde**, adv., *thereupon, then, next*.  
**dēlātus**, perf. part. of dēferō.  
**dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (freq. of dēliciō, *entice*), *delight, please; pass., take pleasure in. (DELECTATION.)*  
**dēlēctus**, perf. part. of dēligō.  
**dē-leō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum**, *wipe out, do away with; destroy. (DELETE.)*  
**dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (dē, cf. libra, *balance*), *DELIBERATE, consider*.  
**dēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (dē + liber, *bark*), *remove the bark, peel*.  
**dēlictum, -ī, n.**, *fault, crime*.  
**dē-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *bind, fasten*.  
**dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum** (dē + legō, *choose*), *choose, select, pick out. (DELEGATE.)*  
**dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, —** (dē + latēscō, from lateō), *hide oneself, lie in wait*.  
**dēmēntia, -ae** (dēmēns), f., *madness. (DEMENTIA, DEMENTED.)*  
**dēmessus**, perf. part. of dē-metō.  
**dē-metō, -metere, -messuī, -messum**, *reap*.  
**dē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *move from, move away, depart*.  
**dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum**, *lessen, DIMINISH; impair*.  
**dēmīssus, -a, -um** (perf. part. of dēmīttō), adj., *dropped; low; capite dēmīssō, with downcast face*.  
**dē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum**, *send down, let fall; sē animō dēmittere, be disheartened*.  
**dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dēmp-tum** (dē + emō, *take*), *take down, take*.  
**dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *show, point out, mention. (DEMONSTRATE.)*  
**dē-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.**, *delay, retard, hinder*.  
**dēmum** (dē), adv., *at length, finally*.  
**dē-negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *deny, refuse. (NEGATION, NEGATIVE.)*  
**dēni, -ae, -a** (decem), *distr. num. adj., ten each, ten apiece*.  
**dēnique**, adv., *at last, finally; in short; at least*.  
**dēnsus, -a, -um**, comp. dēnsior, sup. dēnsissimus, adj., *DENSE, thick, close*.  
**dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *announce, declare; threaten, DENOUNCE*.

dē-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive away*.  
 dē-perdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *lose*.  
 dē-pereō, -perire, -periī, —, fut. part. dēperitūrus, *perish utterly, be destroyed*.  
 dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, place, DEPOSIT*.  
 dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *lay waste, plunder*. (DEPOPULATE.)  
 dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry off; DEPORT*.  
 dē-poscō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, *demand earnestly, demand*.  
 dēpositus, perf. part. of dēpōnō.  
 dēprecātor, -tōris (dēprecor), m., *intercessor, mediator*.  
 dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *pray to be delivered from; beg for mercy, ask for quarter*. (DEPRECATE.)  
 dē-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *seize; surprise*.  
 dēprehēnsus, perf. part. of dēprehendō.  
 dē-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight to the end*.  
 dēpulsus, perf. part. of dēpellō.  
 dērēctē (dērēctus), adv., *straight*. (DIRECTLY.)  
 dērēctus, -a, -um (part. of dērīgō), adj., *straight, perpendicular*. (DIRECT.)  
 dērīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum (dē + regō), *draw up, arrange*. (DIRECT.)  
 dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dē + rīvus, *stream*), *draw off*. (DERIVE.)  
 dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *take away, withdraw; deny*.

dē-scendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum (dē + scandō, *climb*), *come down, DESCEND; resort to*.  
 dē-secō, -secāre, -secuī, -secutum, *cut off*.  
 dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum (dē + serō, *join*), *leave, DESERT, abandon*.  
 dēsertor -tōris (dēserō), m., *DESERTER*.  
 dēsertus, perf. part. of dēserō.  
 dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *long for, miss, desire*. (DESIDERATUM.)  
 dēsidia, -ae, f., *sloth, laziness*.  
 dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *mark out, DESIGNATE, mean*.  
 dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum (dē + saliō, *leap*), *leap down, dismount*. (DESULTORY.)  
 dē-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, fut. part. dēstitūrus, *leave off, cease, DESIST*.  
 dēspectus, perf. part. of dēspiciō.  
 dēspectus, -ūs (dēspiciō), m., *view*.  
 dēspērātiō, -tiōnis (dēspērō), f., *hopelessness, despair, DESPERATION*.  
 dēspērātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of dēspērō), adj., *hopeless, DESPERATE; rē dēspērātā, in a hopeless plight*.  
 dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give up hope of, DESPAIR of*.  
 dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum (dē + speciō, *look*), *look down; look down on, DESPISE*. (DESPICABLE.)  
 dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *DESPOIL, rob*.  
 dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make fast, fasten; assign to, DESTINE to*.

- dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (dē + statuō), *desert, abandon*. (DESTITUTE.)
- dēstrictus, perf. part. of dēstringō.
- dē-stringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, *unsheathe, draw*.
- dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —, *be wanting, be lacking*.
- dē-super, adv., *from above*.
- dēterior, -ius (dē), adj., comp., *worse, poorer, less valuable*. (DETERIORATE.)
- dē-terreo, -terrere, -terruī, -territum, *frighten off, DETER, prevent*.
- dētestor, -ārī, -ātus sum (dē + testor, *call to witness*), dep., *curse*. (DETEST.)
- dēțineō, -ținere, -tinui, -tentum (dē + teneō), *hold back, DETAIN*.
- dētrāctus, perf. part. of dētrahō.
- dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctum, *draw off, take off; take away, remove*. (DETRACT.)
- dērectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refuse*.
- dētrimentōsus, -a, -um (dētrimentum), adj., *injurious, DETRIMENTAL*.
- dētrimentum, -ī (dē + terō, *wear away*), *loss, injury, DETRIMENT; defeat*.
- dētuli, perf. of dēferō.
- dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *drive off*.
- de-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn down, burn up*.
- deus, deī, m., *god*. (DEIFY.)
- dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry away, remove, bring*.
- dē-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *come, arrive*.
- dēvexus, -a, -um (cf. dēvehō), adj., *sloping*; as subst., *dēvexa, -ōrum, n. pl., slopes*.
- dē-vincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *conquer thoroughly*.
- dē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call away*.
- dēvōtus, -a, -um (part. of dēvoveō), adj., *DEVOTED*; as subst., *dēvōti, -ōrum, m. pl., devoted followers*.
- dē-voveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *vow, DEVOTE*.
- dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right*; as subst., *dextra, -ae (sc. manus), f., right hand*. (DEXTERITY, DEXTEROUS.)
- Diablintēs, -um, m. pl., the Aulerci *Diablintes*, a division of the Aulerci.
- dicō, -ōnis (dicō, *appoint*), plur. and nom. sing. not in use, *f., power, sway, authority*.
- dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dedicate, devote, assign*.
- dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, speak, tell; plead a case; name, appoint; agree*. (DICTION.)
- dictiō -ōnis (dicō), *f., speaking, pleading*.
- dictum -ī (dicō), *n., saying, word; command, dictō audīens, obedient to an order*.
- didūcō, dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum (dis- + dūcō), *lead apart, divide, distribute*.
- diēs, diēi, m. and f., *day; time; multō diē, late in the day; in diēs, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day*.
- differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātum (dis- + ferō), *bear different ways; scatter, spread out; put off, delay; DIFFER*.

**difficilis**, -e. comp. **difficilior**, sup. **difficillimus** (dis- + **facilis**), **DIFFICULT**, *hard*.

**difficultās**, -tātis (**difficilis**), f., **DIFFICULTY**, *trouble*.

**difficulus** (**difficilis**), adv., *with difficulty*.

**diffidō**, -fidere, -fisis **sum** (dis- + **fidō**), semi-dep., *dis-trust; despair of*.

**diffisus**, perf. pass. part. of **diffidō**.

**diffuō**, -fluere, -flūxī. — (dis- + **fluō**), *flow in different directions, divide, separate*.

**diffundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum (dis- + **fundō**), *pour out, spread out*.

**digitus**, -ī, m., *finger*; as a measure, *finger's breadth*, one sixteenth of a Roman foot, .728 inches; **digitus pollex**, *thumb*. (**DIGIT**.)

**dignitās**, -tātis (**dignus**), f., *worth*, **DIGNITY**; *power, authority, prestige*.

**dignus**, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*.

**diūdicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dis- + **iūdicō**), *decide*.

**dilēctus**, perf. pass. part. of **diligō**.

**dilēctus**, -ūs (**diligō**), m., *levy*.

**diligenter**, -e. comp. **diligentius**, sup. **diligentissimē** (**diligēns**), adv., *carefully*, **DILIGENTLY**, *punctually*.

**diligentia**, -ae (**diligēns**), f., *care*, **DILIGENCE**, *punctuality*.

**diligō**, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum (dis- + **legō**), *choose out; love*.

**dimēnsus**, perf. part. of **dimētor**.

**dimētor**, -mētīrī, -mēnsus **sum** (dis- + **mētor**), dep., *measure off, measure; lay out*. (**DIMENSION**.)

**dimicātiō**, -ōnis (**dimicō**), f., *contest, fight*.

**dimicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dis- + **micō**, *move to and fro*), *fight, contend*.

**dimidius**, -a, -um (dis- + **medius**), adj., *half*; as subst., **dimidium**, **dimi'dī** n., *half*.

**dimittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum (dis- + **mittō**), *send different ways, send about; send away*, **DISMISS**; *let go, release, disband, lose*.

**dirimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (dis- + **emō**, *take*), *take apart; break up, end*.

**diripiō**, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptum (dis- + **rapio**), *plunder, pil-lage*.

**dis-**, inseparable prefix, *apart, asunder, in different direc-tions*;

also with negative force.

**Dis**, **Dītis**, m., **Dis**, god of the underworld, **Pluto**.

**dis-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-sum, *go apart, disperse; de-part, withdraw; leave, abandon*.

**disceptātor**, -tōris (**disceptō**, *decide*), m., *arbitrator, judge*.

**dis-cernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *distinguish*.

**discessus**, -ūs (**dis-cēdō**), m., *departure, withdrawal*.

**disciplīna**, -ae (**discipulus**, *pupil*), f., *training*, **DISCIPLINE**; *instruction, system*.

**dis-clūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *keep apart*.

**discō**, *discere*, **didici**, —, *learn*. (**DISCIPLE**.)

**discrimen**, -minis (**discernō**), n., *separation; crisis, peril*. (**DISCRIMINATE**.)

- discutiō**, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum (dis- + quatiō, *shake*), *shake apart; clear off.* (DISCUSS.)
- disiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (dis- + iaciō), *drive apart; scatter, rout.*
- disiectus**, perf. part. of **disiciō**.
- dis-pār**, disparis, adj., *unequal.* (DISPARITY.)
- dis-parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *separate, divide.*
- dispergō**, -speregere, -spersī, -spersum (dis- + spargō, *scatter*), *scatter, DISPERSE.*
- dispersus**, perf. part. of **dispergō**.
- dis-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place here and there, distribute, station.* (DISPOSE.)
- disputātiō**, -ōnis (disputō), f., *discussion.*
- dis-putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *discuss, DISPUTE.*
- dissēnsiō**, -ōnis (dissentiō), f., *disagreement, DISSENSION.*
- dis-sentiō**, -ire, -sēnsī, -sēnsū, *disagree, disagree, DISSENT from.*
- disserō**, -serere, —. — (dis- + serō, *sow*), *plant at intervals.*
- dis-simulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *conceal.* (DISSIMULATE.)
- dissipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *scatter, disperse.* (DISSIPATE.)
- dis-suādeō**, -suādere, -suāsī, —, fut. part. **dissuāsūrus**, *advise against, DISSUADE.*
- distineō**, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentum (dis- + teneō), *hold apart; prevent, hinder; distract, keep busy.*
- distō**, -stāre, —, — (dis- + stō), *stand apart, be apart, be DISTANT.*
- dis-trahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *tear apart.* (DISTRACT.)
- dis-tribuō**, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *DISTRIBUTE; divide, assign.*
- dītissimus**, sup. of **dīves**.
- diū**, adv., comp. **diūtius**, *for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as.*
- diurnus**, -a, -um (cf. **diēs**), adj., *by day, in the daytime.* (DIURNAL.)
- diūtinus**, -a, -um (**diū**), adj., *long, of long duration.*
- diūturnitās**, -tātis (**diūturnus**), f., *long duration, length.*
- diūturnus**, -a, -um, comp. **diūturnior** (**diū**), adj., *long, long continued.*
- diversus**, -a, -um (part. of **dīvertō**), adj., *separated, separate, apart, different, opposite.* (DIVERS, DIVERSE.)
- dīvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (dis- + vertō), *separate, (DIVERTE.)*
- dīves**, -vitis, sup. **dītissimus**, adj., *rich, wealthy.*
- Diviciācus**, -ī, m., *Diviciacus*, referring to: (1) a chief of the Aeduan; (2) a chief of the Suessiones.
- Dīvicō**, -ōnis, m., *Divico*, a chief of the Helvetians.
- dividō**, -videre, -visī, -visum, *DIVIDE, separate.* (DIVISION.)
- divīnus**, -a, -um (**divus**; cf. **deus**), adj., *DIVINE, sacred.*
- divīsus**, perf. part. of **dividō**.
- dō**, dare, dedi, datum, *give, grant, allow; offer, furnish; put.*
- doceō**, docere, docuī, doctum, *teach; show; inform, tell.* (DOCILE, DOCTOR.)



- documentum**, -ī (doceō), n., *lesson, warning, proof.* (DOCUMENT.)
- doleō**, dolēre, dolui, —, fut. part. **dolitūrus**, *suffer; be grieved.*
- dolor**, -ōris, m., *pain, grief, resentment, trouble, vexation of spirit.* (DOLOROUS.)
- dolus**, -ī, m., *deception, trick; trickery.*
- domesticus**, -a, -um (domus), adj., *of the home, DOMESTIC; internal, civil.*
- domicilium**, domici'lī (domus), n., *dwelling, habitation, DOMICILE.*
- dominor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (dominus, master), dep., *be master, rule.* (DOMINATE.)
- dominus**, -ī (domō, subdue), m., *master, lord.*
- Domitius**, Domi'ti, m., *Domitius*, gentile name of *L. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B.C.
- domus**, -ūs, loc. domī, f., *house, home; abl., domō, from home.*
- Donnotaurus**, -ī, m., *Donnotaurus*, surname of *C. Valerius Donnotaurus*, a leader of the Helvii.
- dōnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dōnum), *give, present.* DONATE.
- dōnum**, -ī (dō), n., *gift.*
- dorsum**, -ī, n., *back of an animal; ridge of ground.*
- dōs**, dōtis (dō), f., *dowry.*
- Druidēs**, -dum, m. pl., *the Druids.*
- Dubis**, -is, m., *the Dubis*, a river in Gaul, flowing into the Arar, modern Doubs.
- dubitātiō**, -ōnis (dubitō), f., *doubt, hesitation.*
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dubius), *doubt, hesitate.*
- dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain.* DUBIOUS.
- ducentī**, -ae, -a (duo + centum), num. adj., *two hundred.*
- dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead, guide; conduct, draw, drive; build, make a trench; put off, postpone, prolong; hold, believe, think; draw, obtain; in mātirimōnium dūcere, and dūcere (sc. in mātirimōnium), take to wife, marry.*
- ductus**, -ūs (dūcō), m., *leadership.*
- dum**, conj., *while; until.*
- Dumnorix**, -rīgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a chief of the Helvetians, brother of Diviciacus.
- duo**, duae, duo, num. adj., pl., *two.* (DUAL.)
- duodecim** (duo + decem), num. adj. indecl., *twelve.* (DUODECIMAL.)
- duodecim**, -a, -um (duo-decim), num. adj., *twelfth.*
- duodēni**, -ae -a (duodecim), num. adj. distrib., *twelve at a time, twelve apiece.*
- duo-dē-vīginti**, -ae, -a, adj., *eighteen.*
- duplex**, -icis (duo + plicō, fold), adj., *twofold, double.* (DUPLEX.)
- duplicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (duplex), *make double, double.* (DUPLICATE.)
- dūritia**, -ae (dūrus), f., *hardness; hardship.*
- dūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dūrus), *harden.* (ENDURE, DURATION.)
- Dūrocortorum**, -ī, n., *Durocortorum*, the chief city of the Remi, the modern Rheims.
- dūrus**, -a, -um, comp. dūrior, sup. dūrissimus, adj., *hard, severe, difficult.* (DURABLE.)

**dux, ducis** (cf. **dūcō**), *m.*,  
*leader, guide; commander.*

## E

**ē**, see **ex**.

**eā**, *adv.*, *there, that way.*

**Eburōnēs**, *-num*, *m. pl.*, *the Eburones*, a tribe of the Belgians.

**Eburovicēs**, *-cum*, *m. pl.*, *the Eburovices*, a division of the Aulerci, the Aulerci *Eburovices*.

**ēdiscō**, *-discere*, *-didici*, — (*ex + discō*), *learn by heart.*

**ēditus**, *-a*, *-um* (*perf. part. of ēdō*), *adj.*, *elevated, high.*

**ēdō**, *-dere*, *-didī*, *-ditum* (*ex + dō*, *put*), *put forth, show.* (**EDIT.**)

**ēdoceō**, *-docēre*, *-docuī*, *-doctum* (*ex + doceō*), *teach thoroughly, inform, show.*

**ēdūcō**, *-dūcere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum* (*ex + dūcō*), *lead forth, lead out; draw a sword.*

**effēmīnō**, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum* (*ex*, cf. *fēmīna*, *woman*), *make EFFEMINATE, weaken.*

**efferciō**, *-fercīre*, —, *-fertum* (*ex + farciō*, *stuff*), *fill full, fill up.*

**efferrō**, *efferre*, *extulī*, *ēlātum* (*ex + ferrō*), *take out, carry out, carry away; publish, make known; puff up, make elated.*

**efficiō**, *-ficere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum* (*ex + faciō*), *bring about, accomplish, cause, make, render, EFFECT, build, construct.*

**effodiō**, *-fodere*, *-fōdī*, *-fossum* (*ex + fodiō*, *dig*), *dig out.*

**effossus**, *perf. pass. part. of effodiō.*

**effugiō**, *-fugere*, *-fūgī*, — (*ex + fugiō*), *flee away, escape.*  
**egēns**, *-ntis* (*part. of egeō*), *adj.*, *needy.*

**egeō**, *egere*, *egui*, —, *need.*

**egestās**, *-tātis* (*egēns*), *f.*, *want, destitution.*

**ego**, *meī*, *pers. pron.*, *I*; *pl.*, *nōs*, *nostrum* or *nostrī*, *we.* (**EGOTISTIC.**)

**ēgredior**, *-gredi*, *-gressus sum* (*ex + gradior*, *step*), *go out, march out; disembark, land.*

**ēgregiē** (*ēgregius*), *adv.*, *excellently, admirably, wonderfully.*

**ēgregius**, *-a*, *-um* (*ē + grex*, *herd*), *adj.*, *eminent, excellent, admirable.* (**EGREGIOUS.**)

**ēgressus**, *perf. part. of ēgredior.*

**ēgressus**, *-ūs* (*ēgredior*), *m.*, *landing-place.* (**EGRESS.**)

**ēiciō**, *-icere*, *-iēcī*, *-iectum* (*ex + iaciō*), *throw out, drive out, expel, EJECT; sē ēicere, rush forth.*

**eius modī**, see **modus**.

**ēlābor**, *-lābī*, *-lāpsus sum* (*ex + lābor*), *slip away, escape.*

**ēlātus**, *perf. part. of efferrō.*

**Elaver**, *-eris*, *m.*, *the Elaver*, a river in the central part of Gaul, a tributary of the Liger (*Loire*), the modern *Allier*.

**ēlēctus**, *-a*, *-um* (*part. of ēligo*), *adj.*, *chosen, picked.* (**ELECT.**)

**elephantus**, *-ī*, *m.*, **ELEPHANT.**

**Eleutetī**, *-ōrum*, *m. pl.*, *the Eleutetī*, a people of central Gaul.

**ēliciō**, *-licere*, *-licuī*, *-licitum*, *draw out, entice, ELICIT.*

**Elusātēs**, *-tium*, *m. pl.*, *the Elusates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

**ēmigrō**, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum* (*ex + migrō*, *depart*), **EMIGRATE, move out.**

- ēmineō, -minēre, -minui, —**, stand out, project. (EMINENT.)  
**ēminus (ex + manus)**, adv., from a distance, at a distance.  
**ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (ex + mittō)**, send forth; let go, throw away; hurl, cast. (EMIT.)  
**emō, emere, emi, emptum**, buy, purchase; take.  
**enāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum (ē + nāscor)**, grow forth.  
**enim**, conj. postpos., for; neque enim, and indeed . . . not.  
**ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex + nūntiō)**, announce, report, reveal.  
**eō**, ablative of is; see is.  
**eō (is)**, adv., to that place, thither, there.  
**eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum**, go, march, proceed.  
**eōdem (idem)**, adv., to the same place, to the same end, to the same purpose.  
**ephippiātus, -a, -um (cf. ephippium)**, adj., with saddles.  
**ephippium, ephippi, n.**, saddle-cloth, saddle.  
**epistula, -ae, f.**, letter, EPISTLE.  
**Eperēdorix, -rīgis, m., Eperēdorix**, the name of two chiefs among the Aeduans.  
**epulae, -ārum, f. pl.**, banquet.  
**eques, -itis (equus)**, m., horse-man, cavalryman; knight.  
**equester, -tris, -tre (eques)**, adj., of cavalry, cavalry, EQUESTRIAN.  
**equitātus, -ūs (equitō, ride)**, m., cavalry.  
**equus, -i, m.**, horse. (EQUINE.)  
**Eratosthenēs, -nis, m.**, Eratosthenes, a Greek philosopher and geographer.  
**erēctus (part. of ērigō, raise up)**, adj., high, elevated. (ERECT).  
**ēreptus**, part. of **ēripiō**.  
**ergā**, prep. with acc., towards.  
**ergō**, adv., therefore.  
**ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum (ex + regō)**, raise up, raise, ERECT; **sē ērigere**, rise.  
**ēripiō, -ripere, -rīpiui, -reptum (ex + rapiō)**, snatch away; rescue, save.  
**errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, wander; be in ERROR, be mistaken, ERR.  
**ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum (ex + rumpō)**, break forth, rush forth.  
**ēruptiō, -ōnis (ērumpō)**, f., breaking forth, sally, sortie. (ERUPTION.)  
**essedārius, -dārī (essedum)**, m., fighter from a chariot, warrior who fights from a chariot.  
**essedum, -i, n.**, war-chariot, chariot.  
**Esubii, -ōrum, m. pl.**, the Esubii, a tribe of north-western Gaul.  
**et, conj.**, and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.  
**etiam (et + iam)**, conj., also, even; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.  
**et-si, conj.**, even if; although, though.  
**ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum (ex + vādō, go)**, escape, EVADE.  
**ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum (ex + vellō, pluck)**, pull out.  
**ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum (ex + veniō)**, come out, turn out.  
**ēventus, -ūs (ēveniō)**, m., outcome, EVENT, result; fate, mischance, accident.

**ēvocātus, -ī** (ēvocō), *m., a volunteer; volunteer.* See Intro. 25.  
**ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (ex + vocō), *call out, summon; invite.* (EVOKE.)  
**ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (ex + volō, *fly*), *fly out, rush out.*  
**ex, ē**, prep. with abl., *from, out of; from, of, in, on; unā ex parte, on one side; of time, from after, because of, on account of; in accordance with, according to.* See Intro. 142, 4. (Ex-president, etc.)  
**exāctus**, perf. part. of **exigō**.  
**ex-agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *disturb, harass.*  
**exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *weigh,* EXAMINE.  
**exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (exanimus, *from ex and anima, breath*), *deprive of life, kill; pass., be out of breath, be exhausted.*  
**ex-ardēscō, -ardēscere, -ārsī, —**, fut. part. **exārsūrus**, *be angry.*  
**ex-audiō, -ire, -īvi, -itum**, *hear clearly, hear.*  
**ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cesum**, *go out, go away, depart.*  
**ex-cellō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsum**, *raise; surpass,* EXCEL.  
**excelsus, -a, -um**, comp. **excelsior** (part. of **excellō**), *adj., raised, elevated, high; long.*  
**exceptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (intens. of **excipiō**), *catch up.*  
**excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum** (ex + caedō), *cut out; cut down, destroy.*  
**excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum**, *take out, take up, begin; receive, catch, withstand, en-*

*counter; follow, succeed.* (EXCEPT.)  
**excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (ex + citō, *set in motion*), *raise, construct, build; rouse,* EXCITE.  
**exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum** (ex + claudō), *shut out; keep from.* (EXCLUDE.)  
**ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *think out, devise.*  
**ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *torture.* (EXCRUCIATING.)  
**excubitor, -tōris** (excubō), *m., sentinel.*  
**ex-cubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubitum**, *keep watch; literally, lie outside the camp.*  
**exculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (ex + calcō, *trample*), *trample down.*  
**excursiō, -ōnis** (excurrō), *f., running out; sally.* (EXCURSION.)  
**excūsātiō, -tiōnis** (excūsō), *f., EXCUSE.*  
**excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (ex, cf. *causa*), EXCUSE.  
**exemplum, -ī** (eximō, *take out*), *n., EXAMPLE, precedent; sample, kind; punishment.*  
**ex-eō, -ire, -īvi or -īi, -itum**, *go out, go forth, withdraw, depart.* (EXIT.)  
**exerceō, -ercere, -ercui, -ercitum** (ex + arceō, *restrain*), EXERCISE, *train.*  
**exercitātiō, -ōnis** (exerceō), *f., practice, training,* EXERCISE.  
**exercitātus, -a, -um**, comp. **exercitātior**, sup. **exercitātissimus** (part. of **exercitō**, intens. of **exerceō**), *adj., trained, experienced; sup., highly trained.*

- exercitus**, -ūs (exerceō), m., *army*, as a trained body of men.
- ex-hauriō**, -haurire, -hausi, -haustum, *draw out, take out.* (EXHAUST.)
- exigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum (ex + agō), *drive out; of time, spend, finish.*
- exiguē** (exiguus), adv., *scarcely.*
- exiguitās**, -tātis (exiguus), f., *smallness, scantiness; fewness, small number; shortness of stature.*
- exiguus**, -a, -um (exigō), adj., *small, scanty.*
- eximius**, -a, -um (eximō, take out), adj., *uncommon, distinguished.*
- existimatiō**, -tiōnis (existimō), f., *opinion, judgment.*
- existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex + aestimō, reckon), *reckon, think, judge, suppose.*
- exitus**, -ūs (exeō), m., *way out, EXIT; outcome, issue.*
- expediō**, -pedire, -pedivī, -peditum (ex + pēs), *extricate; get ready.* (EXPEDITE.)
- expeditiō**, -ōnis, f., EXPEDITION.
- expeditus**, -a, -um, comp. **expeditior** (part. of expediō, disengage), adj., *unencumbered, easy, quick; light-armed, free from encumbrance; as subst., expeditus, -i, m., light-armed soldier.*
- ex-pellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out, EXPEL.*
- experior**, -periri, -pertus sum, *test, try.* (EXPERIMENT.)
- ex-piō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, EXPIATE, *atone for.*
- ex-pleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *fill out, complete.*
- explōrātor**, -tōris (explōrō), m., *scout, patrol.* (EXPLORER.)
- explōrātus**, -a, -um (part. of explōrō), adj., *EXPLORED, assured, certain, sure.*
- explōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *search out, investigate, ascertain; EXPLORE, reconnoiter.*
- ex-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *set out, array, draw up; put on shore, land.* (EXPOSE, EXPONENT.)
- ex-portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *carry away.* (EXPORT.)
- ex-poscō**, -poscere, -poposci, —, *demand eagerly.*
- exprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressum (ex + premō), *press out, extort.* (EXPRESS.)
- expugnātiō**, -ōnis (expugnō), f., *capture by storm or assault.*
- expugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *take by storm, capture.*
- expulsus**, perf. part. of expellō.
- exquirō**, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum (ex + quaerō), *search out, investigate; inquire into; ask for.* (EXQUISITE.)
- exquisitus**, perf. part. of exquirō.
- ex-sequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow up; maintain, enforce.* (EXECUTE.)
- ex-serō**, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *thrust out; bare.*
- exsertus**, perf. part. of exserō.
- ex-sistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *stand forth, appear; arise; project.* (EXIST.)
- ex-spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *look for, wait for, EXPECT.*
- ex-spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *rob, DESPOIL.*
- ex-stinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *put out, EXTINGUISH.*

ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, *stand out*.  
 ex-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *pile up; rear, build*.  
 exsul, -sulis, m., *EXILE*.  
 exter, or exterus, -a, -um (ex),  
 adj., *outer, outward; sup.*  
*extrēmus, farthest, last, at*  
*the end; ad extrēmum, at*  
*last, finally*.  
 ex-terreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, *frighten thoroughly*.  
 extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui,  
 —, *fear greatly, dread*.  
 ex-torqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, *wrest from, EXTORT from*.  
 extrā (ex), prep. with acc.,  
*outside of, beyond*. (EXTRA.)  
 ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *draw out*.  
 extrēmus, see *exter*.  
 ex-trūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *thrust out; shut out*.  
 exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *strip off, despoil, take away*.  
 ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up*.

## F

faber, fabri, m., *workman*.  
 Fabius, Fabī, m., *Fabius*, gentile  
 name of Q. *Fabius Maximus*  
*Allobrogicus*, who conquered  
 the Averni and the Allobroges  
 in 121 B.C.; and of C. *Fabius*,  
 one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
 facile, comp. *facilius*, sup.  
*facillimē* (*facilis*), adv.,  
*easily, readily*.  
 facilis, -e, comp. *facilior*, sup.  
*facillimus* (*faciō*), adj., *easy,*  
*convenient*. (FACILE, FACIL-  
 ITY.)  
 facinus, -noris (*faciō*), n., *deed;*  
*evil deed, crime*.

*faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do,*  
*make; prepare, cause, occasion;*  
*give, furnish; pass. fiō, fieri,*  
*factus sum, see fiō; certiōrem*  
*facere, inform*.  
 factiō, -ōnis (*faciō*), f., *FACTION;*  
*party*.  
 factū, supine of *faciō*.  
 factum, -ī (*faciō*), n., *act, deed;*  
*achievement*. (FACT.)  
 facultās, -tātis (*facilis*), f.,  
*ease, FACILITY, ability; opportu-*  
*nity, chance; abundance,*  
*supply; pl., resources, wealth.*  
 (FACULTY.)  
 fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree, beech*.  
 fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, de-  
*ceive, cheat, disappoint*. (FAL-  
 LACIOUS.)  
 falsus, -a, -um (perf. part. of  
 fallō), adj., *FALSE, unfounded*.  
 falx, falcis, f., *sickle; hook*  
*shaped like a sickle*.  
 fāma, -ae (for, fārī, *speak*), f.,  
*report; FAME, reputation*.  
 famēs, famis, f., *hunger, starva-*  
*tion*. (FAMINE.)  
 familia, -ae, f., *body of slaves;*  
*household, FAMILY; māter*  
*familiae, matron*.  
 familiāris, -e (*familia*), adj.,  
*of the family, private; rēs*  
*familiāris, private property;*  
*as subst., familiāris, -is, m.,*  
*friend*.  
 familiāritās, -tātis (*familiāris*), f.,  
*intimacy, FAMILIARITY, friend-*  
*ship*.  
 fās (for, *speak*), indecl. n.,  
*right; with est, it is right,*  
*lawful, allowed*.  
 fastigātē (*fastigātus*), adv.,  
*slanting*.  
 fastigātus, -a, -um (*fastigium*),  
 adj., *sloping, slanting*.

- fastigium, fastigĭ, n., *peak, height, top; slope, ridge.*  
 fātum, -ī (for, *speak, foretell*), n., *fate.*  
 faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable, FAVOR, support.*  
 fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.*  
 fēlicitās, -tātis (fēlix, *happy*), f., *happiness, good fortune. (FELICITY.)*  
 fēliciter (fēlix), adv., *happily, fortunately, favorably.*  
 fēmina, -ae, f., *woman; female. (FEMININE.)*  
 femur, femoris and feminis, n., *thigh. (FEMORAL.)*  
 fera, see ferus.  
 ferāx, -ācis, comp. ferācior, sup. ferācissimus (ferō), adj., *fertile.*  
 ferē, adv., *almost; about, nearly; as a rule, generally.*  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer; obtain; say, tell; propose, offer; pass, be borne, rush; graviter ferre, to be indignant.*  
 ferrāmentum, -ī (ferrum), n., *tool of iron.*  
 ferrāria, -ae (ferrum), f., *iron mine.*  
 ferreus, -a, -um (ferrum), adj., *of iron, iron.*  
 ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, 'steel'; sword.*  
 fertilis, -e, comp. fertilior, sup. fertilissimus (ferō), adj., *FERTILE, fruitful.*  
 fertilitās, -tātis. (fertilis), f., *FERTILITY.*  
 ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, savage; as subst., fera, -ae (sc. bēstia), f., wild beast.*  
 fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (ferveō + faciō), *make hot, heat.*  
 fervēns, part. of ferveō.  
 ferveō, fervēre, —, —, *be hot. (FERVID, FERVENT.)*  
 festūca, -ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*  
 fibula, -ae (figō, *fasten*), f., *clasp; bolt.*  
 fidēlis, -e (fidēs), adj., *faithful, trustworthy; loyal.*  
 fidēs, fideī, f., *trust, confidence; loyalty, FIDELITY; protection; promise, assurance, pledge.*  
 fidūcia, -ae (fidus), f., *confidence, reliance.*  
 figūra, -ae (figō), f., *shape, form, FIGURE.*  
 filia, -ae, f., *daughter.*  
 filius, fili, m., *son. (FILIAL.)*  
 fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *form, shape; invent; of the features, control. (FICTION.)*  
 finīō, -īre, -ivī, -itum (finis), *bound, limit; measure. (FINITE, INFINITIVE.)*  
 finis, finis, m. *end, boundary; pl., country, territory. (FINIS, FINISH.)*  
 finitimus, -a, -um (finis), adj., *bordering on, neighboring; as subst., finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.*  
 fiō, fieri, factus sum (used as pass. of faciō), *be made, be done; happen, take place; certior fieri, be informed.*  
 firmiter (firmus), adv., *solidly, FIRMLY.*  
 firmitūdō, -dinis (firmus), f., *FIRMNESS, strength.*  
 firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (firmus), *make strong, strengthen.*  
 firmus, -a, -um, comp. firmior, sup. firmissimus, adj., *strong, FIRM; powerful.*  
 Flaccus, -ī, m., *Flaccus, surname of C. Valerius Flaccus.*

- flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *demand, ask.*  
 flammā, -ae (flagrō, *burn*), f., *FLAME, fire.*  
 flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, *bend, turn.* (INFLECT.)  
 fleō, flere, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*  
 flētus, -ūs (fleō), m., *weeping.*  
 flō, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *blow.*  
 flōrēns, -ntis, comp. flōrentior, sup. flōrentissimus (flōrēō), adj., *blooming; FLOURISHING, prosperous.*  
 flōs, flōris, m., *flower.* (FLORAL, FLORIST.)  
 fluctus, -ūs (fluō), m., *wave.* (FLUCTUATE.)  
 flūmen, -minis (fluō), n., *river, stream; flūmine adversō, up stream.*  
 fluō, fluere, flūxi, flūxum, *flow.*  
 fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*  
 foedus, -deris (cf. fidēs), n., *treaty.*  
 fore, = futūrum esse, fut. inf. of sum.  
 forem, = essem, from sum.  
 foris (foris, *door*), adv., *out-of-doors; outside.*  
 fōrma, -ae, f., *shape, FORM.*  
 fors, fortis (cf. ferō), f., *chance, luck.* (FORTUITOUS.)  
 forte (fors), adv., *by chance.*  
 fortis, -e, comp. fortior, sup. fortissimus, adj., *strong, brave.*  
 fortiter, comp. fortius, sup. fortissimē (fortis), adv., *bravely.*  
 fortitūdō, -dinis (fortis), f., *bravery.* (FORTITUDE.)  
 fortuitō (fortuitus, -a, -um, *chance*), adv., *by chance.* (FORTUITOUSLY.)  
 fortūna, -ae (fors), f., *FORTUNE, chance, luck; good fortune; lot, condition; pl., fortunes, possessions.*  
 fortunātus, -a, -um (fortūna), adj., *FORTUNATE, prosperous.*  
 forum, -i, n., *market-place, FORUM.*  
 fossa, -ae (fodiō, *dig*), f., *ditch, trench.*  
 fovea, -ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*  
 frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctum, *break; wreck, shatter.* (FRACTURE, FRACTION.)  
 frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*  
 frāternus, -a, -um (frāter), adj., *of a brother, brotherly, FRATERNAL.*  
 fraus, fraudis, f., *FRAUD, deception, trickery.*  
 fremitus, -ūs (fremō, *roar*), m., *uproar, noise.*  
 frequēns, -ntis, sup. frequentissimus, adj., *in large numbers, numerous.* (FREQUENT.)  
 frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on.*  
 frigidus, -a, -um, sup. frigidissimus (frigeō), adj., *cold.* (FRIGID.)  
 frīgus, frigoris, n., *cold; cold weather.*  
 frōns, frontis, m., *forehead; FRONT.*  
 frūctuōsus, -a, -um, sup. frūctuōsissimus (frūctus), adj., *fruitful, fertile.*  
 frūctus, -ūs (fruor), m., *enjoyment; FRUIT, product; gain, profit, interest.*  
 frūgēs, -um, f. pl., *fruits, crops, produce.*  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um (frūmentum), adj., *pertaining to grain; abounding in grain, productive; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply.*  
 frūmentātiō, -tiōnis (frūmentor), f., *getting grain, foraging.*



**frumentor**, -āri, -ātus sum  
(frumentum), dep., *get grain, forage.*

**frumentum**, -ī (fruur), n., *grain; pl., crops of grain.*

**fruur**, frui, fruitus or fructus sum, dep., *enjoy.*

**frustrā** (fraus), adv., *in vain.* (FRUSTRATE.)

**Fūsius**, Fufi, m., *Fufius*, gentile name of *C. Fūsius Cila*, a Roman knight.

**fuga**, -ae, f., *flight.*

**fugiō**, fugere, fūgi, —, fut. part. **fugitūrus** (fuga), *flee; avoid, flee from.*

**fugitīvus**, -a, -um (fugiō), adj., *fleeing, FUGITIVE*; as subst., **fugitīvus**, -ī, m., *fugitive slave, runaway slave.*

**fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (fuga), *put to flight, rout.*

**fūmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (fūmus), *smoke.* (FUMIGATE.)

**fūmus**, -ī, m., *smoke.* (FUMES.)

**funda**, -ae (cf. fundō), f., *sling.*

**funditor**, -tōris (funda), m., *slinger.*

**fundō**, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, *pour; throw; scatter, rout.*

**fungor**, fungi, fūctus sum, dep., *fulfil, perform.* (FUNCTION.)

**fūnis**, fūnis, m., *rope; cable; pl., halyards.*

**fūnus**, -neris, n., FUNERAL; pl., *obsequies.*

**furor**, -ōris, m., *rage, madness, FURY.*

**fūrtum**, -ī (fūr, thief), n., *theft.* (FURTIVE.)

**fūsilis**, -e (fundō), adj., *molten, liquid.*

**futūrus**, fut. part. of sum.

## G

**Gabali**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gabali*, a tribe dwelling in the southeastern part of Gaul.

**Gabinus**, Gabini, m., *Gabinus*, gentile name of *A. Gabinus*, consul in 58 B.C.

**gaesum**, -ī, n., *a heavy javelin.*

**Gaius**, -ī, m., *Gaius*, a Roman first name, abbreviated *C.*

**Galba**, -ae, m., *Galba*: (1) surname of *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) The name of a king of the Sueiones.

**galea**, -ae, f., *helmet.*

**Gallia**, -ae (Gallus), f., *Gaul.*

**Gallicus**, -a, -um (Gallus), adj., *of Gaul, Gallic.*

**gallina**, -ae, f., *hen.*

**Gallus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*; as subst., **Gallus**, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

**Gallus**, -ī, surname of *M. Trebius Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

**Garumna**, -ae, m., *the Garumna*, a river in southwestern Gaul, the modern *Garonne*.

**Garumni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Garumni*, a tribe of Aquitania.

**Gatēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Gates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

**gaudeō**, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *rejoice, be glad.*

**gāvīsus**, perf. part. of **gaudeō**.

**Geidumni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Geidumni*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul.

**Genava**, -ae, f., *Genava*, a city of the Allobroges on Lake Lemannus, the modern *Geneva*.

**gener**, generi, m., *son-in-law.*

- generatim** (genus), adv., *by tribes.*
- gens, gentis** (root *gen-, beget*), f., *clan, tribe; nation.*
- genus, -eris** (root *gen-, beget*), n., *birth, descent; race; kind, character, nature; class, rank.* (GENUS.)
- Gergovia, -ae, f.,** *Gergovia, the principal stronghold of the Averni.*
- Germānia, -ae** (Germānus), f., *Germany.*
- Germānicus, -a, -um** (Germānus), adj., *German.*
- Germānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *German; as subst., Germāni, -orum, m. pl., the Germans.*
- gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum,** *bear; carry on, do, manage; perform, accomplish; of an office, fill; of war, wage; rem gerere, achieve, accomplish; male rem gerere, be unsuccessful; rēs gestae, achievements, exploits.*
- gestus, perf. part. of gerō.**
- gladius, gladi, m., sword.** (GLADIATOR.)
- glāns, glandis, f.,** *acorn; bullet thrown from a sling.*
- glēba, -ae, f.,** *clod of earth; mass.*
- glōria, -ae, f.,** *reputation, GLORY.*
- glōrior, -āri, -ātus sum** (glōria), dep., *boast, boast of, GLORY in.*
- Gnaeus, -i, m.,** *Gnaeus, a Roman first name, abbreviated Cn.*
- Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m.,** *Gobannitiō, one of the Averni.*
- Gorgobina, -ae, f.,** *Gorgobina, a town in the country of the Aeduans, held by the Boii.*
- Graecus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Greek; as subst., Graecus, -i, m., a Greek.*
- Graioceli, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Graioceli, a Gallic tribe, living among the Alps.*
- grandis, -e, adj.,** *large, great.* (GRAND.)
- grātia, -ae** (grātus), f., *favor; popularity, influence; gratitude; pl., thanks; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām referre, requite; grātiā, with preceding gen., for the sake of.* (GRACE.)
- grātulatiō, -ōnis** (grātulor), f., *rejoicing, CONGRATULATION.*
- grātulor, -āri, -ātus sum** (grātus), dep., *CONGRATULATE.*
- grātus, -a, -um, adj.,** *pleasing, GRATEFUL; as subst., grātum, -i, n., favor.*
- gravis, -e, comp. gravior, sup. gravissimus, adj.,** *heavy, burdensome; hard, severe, difficult; of age, advanced.* (GRAVE.)
- gravitās, -tātis** (gravis), f., *weight; importance, power.* (GRAVITY.)
- graviter, comp. gravius, sup. gravissimē** (gravis), adv., *heavily; severely, bitterly; seriously; graviter ferre, be indignant.*
- gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (gravis), *weigh down; pass., hesitate, be unwilling.*
- Grudii, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Grudii, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.*
- gubernātor, -tōris** (gubernō, *steer*), m., *helmsman, pilot.* (GUBERNATORIAL.)
- gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, taste.**
- Gutruātus, -i, m.,** *Gutruātus, a chief of the Carnutes.*

## H

**habeo**, **habere**, **habui**, **habitu**,  
have, possess; hold, consider;  
reckon, think; make; deliver.  
**haesitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in-  
tens. of **haereō**), stick fast.  
(**HESITATE**.)  
**hāmus**, -i, m., hook.  
**harpagō**, -gōnis, m., hook, grap-  
pling-iron.  
**Harūdēs**, -dum, m. pl., the *Ha-*  
*rudes*, a German tribe.  
**haud**, adv., not at all, not.  
**Helvēticus**, -a, -um (**Helvē-**  
**tius**) adj., *Helvetian*.  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, adj., *Helve-*  
*tian*; as subst., **Helvētīi**,  
-ōrum, m. pl., the *Helvetians*,  
the *Helvetii*.  
**Helvīi**, -ōrum, m. pl., the  
*Helvīi*, a Gallic people, living  
in the Roman Province.  
**Hercynius**, -a, -um, adj., *Her-*  
*cynian*, a name applied to a  
great forest in southern Ger-  
many.  
**hērēditās**, -tātis (**hērēs**, *heir*),  
f., inheritance. (**HEREDITY**,  
**HEREDITARY**.)  
**Hibernia**, -ae, f., *Hibernia*, the  
ancient name of Ireland.  
**hibernus**, -a, -um (**hiems**), adj.,  
of winter, winter; as subst.,  
**hiberna**, -ōrum (sc. *castra*),  
winter-quarters. (**HIBERNATE**.)  
**hic**, **haec**, **hōc**, gen. **huius**, dem.  
pron., this; he, she, it; the  
following.  
**hic** (**hic**), adv., here, in this  
place.  
**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**hiems**),  
winter, pass the winter.  
**hiems**, **hiemis**, f., winter;  
stormy season, storm.

**hinc** (**hic**), adv., hence, from  
here.  
**Hispānia**, -ae, f., Spain.  
**Hispānus**, -a, -um, adj., Spanish.  
**homō**, **hominis**, m. and f., hu-  
man being, man.  
**honestus**, -a, -um, comp. **hon-**  
**estior**, sup. **honestissimus**  
(**honōs**), adj., honored, honor-  
able, noble. (**HONEST**.)  
**honōrificus**, -a, -um (**honor** +  
**faciō**), adj., conferring honor,  
honorable.  
**honōs** or **honor**, -ōris, m., **HONOR**,  
respect; public office, office.  
**hōra**, -ae, f., **HOUR**, a twelfth  
part of the day from sunrise  
to sunset, varying according  
to the season of the year.  
**horreō**, **horrere**, **horruī**, —,  
tremble at, shudder at, dread.  
(**HORROR**.)  
**horribilis**, -e (**horreō**), adj.,  
awful, HORRIBLE.  
**horridus**, -a, -um (**horreō**), adj.,  
frightful, HORRID.  
**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,  
encourage, exhort, incite.  
**hospes**, -pitis, m., guest-friend,  
friend.  
**hospitium**, **hospitī** (**hospes**), n.,  
guest-friendship, friendship.  
(**HOSPITALITY**.)  
**hostis**, **hostis**, m., enemy. (**HOS-**  
**TILE**, **HOSTILITY**.)  
**hūc** (**hic**), adv., hither, here, to  
this place.  
**huius modī**, see **modus**.  
**hūmānitās**, -tātis (**hūmānus**),  
f., HUMANITY; refinement, cul-  
tivation.  
**hūmānus**, -a, -um, comp. **hū-**  
**mānior**, sup. **hūmānissimus**  
(cf. **homō**), adj., HUMAN; cul-  
tivated, civilized.

**humilis**, -e, comp. **humilior**, sup. **humillimus** (**humus**, *ground*), adj., *low; shallow; insignificant, weak.* (**HUMBLE.**)

**humilitās**, -tātis (**humilis**), f., *lowness; insignificance; HUMILITY.*

## I

**iaceō**, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —, fut. part. **iacitūrus**, *lie; be dead*; pres. part. as subst., **iacentēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the fallen, the dead.*

**iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactum**, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct; ancorās iacere, cast anchor.*

**iactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*intens. of iaciō*), *throw; toss about; discuss, agitate.*

**iactūra**, -ae (**iaciō**), f., *throwing away; loss, sacrifice.*

**iaculum**, -ī (**iaciō**), n., *javelin, dart.*

**iam**, adv., *already, now; at length; actually, even; nōn iam, no longer.*

**ibī** (*is*), adv., *in that place, there.*

**ibīdem** (**ibī**), adv., *in the same place.*

**Iccius**, **Iccī**, m., *Iccius*, a chief of the Remi.

**ictus**, -ūs (**icō**, *strike*), m., *stroke, blow.*

**Īd.**, abbreviation for **Īdūs**.

**idcircō**, adv., *therefore, on that account.*

**idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, gen. **eiusdem**, dem. pron., *the same.* (**IDENTITY.**)

**identidem** (**idem** + **itidem**), adv., *again and again.*

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, favorable.*

**Īdūs**, **Īduum**, f. pl., *the Ides, the fifteenth of March,*

*May, July, and October, and the thirteenth of the other months. See Introd. 140.*

**ignis**, **ignis**, m., *fire.* (**IGNITE.**)

**ignōbilis**, -e (**in** + (**g**)**nōbilis**), adj., *unknown, obscure.* (**IGNOBLE.**)

**ignōminia**, -ae (**in** + (**g**)**nōmen**), f., *disgrace, IGNOMINY.*

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cf. ignōscō*), *be IGNORANT of, not know, overlook:*

**ignōtus**, -a, -um (**in** + (**g**)**nōtus**), adj., *unknown.*

**illātus**, perf. part. of **inferō**.

**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, dem. pron., *that; he, she, it.*

**illic** (**ille**), adv., *there, in that place.*

**illigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**in** + **ligō**, *bind*), *bind, fasten.*

**illō** (**ille**), adv., *thither, to that place; to that end.*

**illūstris**, -e, comp. **illūstrior**, sup. **illūstrissimus** (**in**, *cf. lūx*), adj., *distinguished, IL-LUSTRIous.*

**Illyricum**, -ī, n., *Illyricum*, a country on the east side of the Adriatic Sea, forming a part of Caesar's province.

**imbēcillitās**, -tātis (**imbēcillus**, *weak*), f., *weakness.* (**IMBECILITY.**)

**imber**, **imbris**, m., *rain, rain-storm.*

**imitor**, -ārī, -ātus **sum**, dep., **IMITATE.**

**immānis**, -e (**in** + **mānus**, *good*), adj., *monstrous, huge, immense.*

**immēnsus**, -a, -um (**in** + **mētiōr**, *measure*), adj., **IMMENSE**, *huge.*

- immineo, -minēre, —, —** (in + mineō, *overhang*), *overhang; hang over, threaten.* (IMMINENT.)
- immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum** (in + mittō), *send in, send against; hurl; let down, let in.*
- immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (in, cf. mola, *meal* used in sacrifices), *sacrifice, IMMOLATE.*
- immortālis, -e** (in + mortālis), *adj., IMMORTAL.*
- immūnis, -e** (in + mūnus), *adj., free from burdens, free from taxes.* (IMMUNE.)
- immūnitās -tātis** (immūnis), *f., freedom from taxes, IMMUNITY.*
- imparātus, -a, -um** (in + parātus), *adj., unprepared.*
- impedimentum, -ī** (impediō), *n., hindrance, obstacle, IMPEDIMENT; pl., baggage.*
- impediō, -pedire, -pedivī, -peditum** (in, cf. pēs), *hinder, IMPEDE, block; embarrass.*
- impeditus, -a, -um, comp. impeditior** (part. of impediō), *adj., encumbered, hindered, embarrassed; difficult, impassable.*
- impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus** (in + pellō), *urge, induce, IMPEL.*
- impendeō, -pendēre, —, —**, (in + pendeō), *overhang.* (IMPEND.)
- impēnsus, -a, -um** (part. of impendō, *spend*), *adj., expensive, costly.*
- imperātor, -tōris** (imperō), *m., commander-in-chief, general, commander.*
- imperātum, -ī** (imperō), *n., command, order.*
- imperfectus, -a, -um** (in + perfectus), *adj., unfinished, incomplete, IMPERFECT.*
- imperitus, -a, -um** (in + perītus), *adj., inexperienced, unskilled, unacquainted.*
- imperium, impe'ri** (imperō), *n., command, order; authority, power, rule, government.* (IMPERIAL.)
- imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *command, order; make requisition, demand, levy; hold command.*
- impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (in + patrō, *perform*), *obtain a request, accomplish, bring to pass.*
- impetus, -ūs**, (in + petō), *m., attack, onset; violence, force.* (IMPETUS, IMPETUOUS.)
- impius, -a, -um** (in + pius), *adj., IMPIOUS.*
- implicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (in + plicō, *fold*), *entwine, enfold, unite.* (IMPLICATE.)
- implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (in + plōrō, *cry out*), *IMPLORE, beseech.*
- impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum** (in + pōnō), *place in, place on; mount.* (IMPOSE.)
- importātus**, *part. of importō.*
- importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (in + portō), *carry in, IMPORT.*
- improbus, -a, -um** (in + probus, *good*), *adj., bad, wicked.*
- imprōvisō** (imprōvisus), *adv., unexpectedly.*
- imprōvisus, -a, -um** (in + prōvisus, *from prōvideō*), *adj., unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly.*

- imprūdēns, -ntis** (in- + prūdēns, = prōvidēns), adj., *unforeseeing, unawares, off one's guard.* (IMPRUDENT.)
- imprudentia, -ae** (imprūdēns), f., *want of foresight, IMPRUDENCE, heedlessness, carelessness; ignorance.*
- impūbes, -beris** (in- + pūbēs, manhood), adj., *youthful; unmarried.*
- impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (in + pugnō), *attack, charge; fight.* (IMPUGN.)
- impulsus**, perf. part. of **impellō**.
- impulsus, -ūs** (impellō), m., *IMPULSE, instigation.*
- impūne** (impūnis, unpunished), adv., *without punishment, with IMPUNITY.*
- impūnitās, -tātis** (impūnis, unpunished), f., *freedom from punishment, IMPUNITY.*
- īmus**, sup. of **inferus**.
- in**, prep. (1) with acc., *into, to, on, upon; against, towards; of time, until, for; in altitudinem, in height.* See **Intro. 143, 1.** (2) with abl., *in, on, upon; among; of time, in, during.* See **Intro. 143, 1.**
- in-**, inseparable prefix with negative force, *un-*. (IN-ABILITY, etc.)
- inānis, -e**, ad., *empty; useless.*
- incautē** (incautus), adv., *INCAUTIOUSLY, carelessly.*
- incautus, -a, -um** (in- + cautus), adj., *careless, INCAUTIOUS.*
- incendium, incendiī** (incendō), n., *fire, burning.* (INCENDIARY.)
- incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -censum** (in, cf. candeō, shine), *set fire to, burn.*
- incēnsus**, perf. part. of **incendō**.
- inceptus**, perf. part. of **incipiō**.
- incertus, -a, -um** (in- + certus), adj., *UNCERTAIN; untrustworthy; in confusion.*
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —** (in- + cado), *fall upon; fall in with; happen, occur.* (INCIDENT.)
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum** (in + caedō), *cut into.* (INCISION.)
- incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum** (in + capiō), *begin, undertake.* (INCIPIENT.)
- incisus**, perf. part. of **incidō**.
- incitātus**, perf. part. of **incitō**.
- in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *urge on, drive forward; rouse, excite, INCITE; sē incitāre, rush on, rush in; equis incitātis, with horses at full speed.*
- in-cognitus, -a, -um**, adj., *unknown.* (INCOGNITO.)
- in-colō, -colere, -colui, —**, *inhabit; live, dwell.*
- incolumis, -e**, adj., *safe, unharmed.*
- incommodē** (incommodus), adv., *inconveniently, unfortunately.*
- incommodum, -ī** (incommodus), adj., *inconvenience, disadvantage; injury, damage, disaster, defeat.*
- in-crēdibilis, -e**, adj., *INCREDIBLE, remarkable.*
- increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (intens. of increpō, blame), *blame, rebuke; taunt.*
- in-cumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum**, *devote oneself to.*
- incursiō, -ōnis** (incurrō, run against), f., *inroad, attack.*
- incursus, -ūs** (incurrō, run against), m., *inroad, attack, INCURSION.*

- incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (in + causa), *find fault with, censure, rebuke.*
- inde, adv.,** *thence, from that place; thereupon, then.*
- indiciūm, indi'ci** (indicō, show), *n., information, evidence.* (INDICATION.)
- in-dicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum,** *declare; appoint.*
- indictus, perf. part. of indicō.**
- in-dictus, -a, -um, adj.,** *unsaid; untried.*
- indignē** (indignus), *adv., unworthily, shamefully.*
- indignitās, -tātis** (indignus), *f., disgrace, shame; INDIGNITY.*
- indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum** (indignus), *deem unworthy; be INDIGNANT.*
- indignus, -a, -um** (in + dignus), *adj., unworthy.*
- indiligēns, -ntis** (in + diligēns), *adj., negligent, careless, heedless.*
- indiligenter, comp. indiligentius** (indiligēns), *adv., carelessly.*
- indiligentia, -ae** (indiligēns), *f., carelessness, neglect.*
- in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *lead in; lead, INDUCE; cover.*
- inductus, perf. part. of inducō.**
- indulgentia, -ae** (indulgēns), *f., kindness, INDULGENCE, favor.*
- indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum,** *INDULGE, favor.*
- in-duō, -duere, -dūī, -dūtum,** *put on; sē induere, fall upon, impale oneself on. (INDUE.)*
- industriē** (industrius), *adv., energetically, actively. (INDUSTRIOUSLY.)*
- indūtiae, -ārum, f. pl.,** *truce.*
- Indutiomārus, -ī, m.,** *Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri.*
- in-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum,** *enter upon, begin, form a plan; secure, win.*
- inermis, -e** (in- + arma), *adj., unarmed.*
- iners, -ertis, comp. inertior** (in- + ars), *adj., without skill; indolent, INERT; unmanly.*
- infāmia, -ae** (in- + fāma), *f., disgrace, dishonor, INFAMY.*
- infāns, -ntis** (in- + for, fārī, speak), *adj., speechless; as subst., m. and f., young child, INFANT.*
- infectus, -a, -um** (in- + factus), *adj., undone, unfinished; rē infectā, with purpose unaccomplished.*
- inferior, comp. of inferus.**
- inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum,** *bring in, import; inspire, infuse; bring on, wage; inflict; bring forward, allege; signa inferre, advance; bellum inferre, make war.*
- inferus, -a, -um, adj.,** *found in Caesar only in the comp. inferior, and the sup. infimus or imus. (1) comp. lower, lower part of; INFERIOR. (2) sup. lowest, lowest part of, at the bottom.*
- infēstus, -a, -um** (in, cf. fendō, strike), *adj., hostile, ready for action.*
- inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (in + faciō), *stain. (INFECT.)*
- in-fidēlis, -e, adj.,** *unfaithful, untrustworthy. (INFIDEL.)*
- in-figō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum,** *fix in, fasten on. (INFIX.)*
- infimus, sup. of inferus.**
- in-finitus, -a, -um, adj.,** *unlimited, countless, INFINITE.*

- infirmiās, -tātis** (*infirmus*), *f.*, weakness; fickleness. (INFIRMITY.)
- in-firmus, -a, -um**, comp. **in-firmior**, *adj.*, weak; disheartened, timid. (INFIRM.)
- in-flectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum**, bend, bend down. (INFLECT.)
- inflexus**, perf. part. of **infectō**.
- in-fluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum**, flow into, empty into. (INFLUX.)
- in-fodiō, -fodire, -fōdī, -fossū**, bury.
- infrā** (*inferus*), *adv.* and *prep.* with acc., below.
- ingēns, ingentis**, *adj.*, huge, great.
- in-grātus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, displeasing, unwelcome.
- ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum**, (*in + gradior, step*), enter, go into.
- iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** (*in + iaciō*), throw on; lay on; strike into, inspire. (INJECT.)
- iniectus**, perf. part. of **iniciō**.
- inimicitia, -ae** (*inimicus*), *f.*, unfriendliness, enmity.
- inimicus, -a, -um** (*in + amicus*), *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile; as subst., **inimicus, -ī, m.**, personal enemy; cf. **hostis**, a public enemy.
- iniquitās, -tātis** (*iniquus*), *f.*, unevenness; unfairness, injustice; unfavorableness. (INIQUITY.)
- iniquus, -a, -um**, comp. **iniquior**, sup. **iniquissimus** (*in + aequus*), *adj.*, uneven; unfavorable, unfair; unjust.
- initium, ini'ti** (*ineō*), *n.*, beginning, origin; pl., elements, principles. (INITIATION.)
- initus, -a, -um**, perf. part. of **ineō**; **initā aestāte**, at the beginning of summer.
- in-iungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum**, join to, impose on. (INJOIN, INJUNCTION.)
- iniūria, -ae** (*in + iūs*), *f.*, INJURY, wrong, injustice.
- iniussū** (*abl.* of **in-iussus**), without the order of, without orders.
- in-nāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum**, dep., arise in, spring up in.
- innātus, -a, -um** (perf. part. of **innāscor**), *adj.*, inborn, INNATE.
- in-nitor, -niti, -nixus or -nīsus sum**, dep., be supported; lean on, rest on.
- innixus**, perf. part. of **innitor**.
- innocēns, -ntis** (*in- + nocēns*, from *noceō*), *adj.*, INNOCENT, guiltless.
- innocentia, -ae** (*innocēns*), *f.*, blamelessness, integrity. (INNOCENCE.)
- inopia, -ae** (*in-ops*, needy), *f.*, lack, want, need; scant supply.
- in-opināns, -ntis** (*opinor*), *adj.*, not expecting, off one's guard, unawares.
- inquam, inquis, inquit**, *def.*, say.
- in-sciēns, -ntis** (*sciō*), *adj.*, not knowing, ignorant; without the knowledge of.
- inscientia, -ae** (*insciēns*), *f.*, ignorance, lack of knowledge.
- inscius, -a, -um** (*in-*, cf. *sciō*), *adj.*, not knowing, ignorant, unaware.
- insecūtus**, perf. part. of **insequor**.
- in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, dep., follow up, pursue.
- in-sero, -serere, -seruī, -sertum**, bind together, INSERT, fasten in.



- insidiae, -arum** (insideō), f. pl., *ambush, ambushcade; stratagem, trick.* (INSIDIOUS.)
- insidior, -ārī, -ātus sum** (insidiā), *form an ambushcade, lie in wait for.*
- insignis, -e** (in, cf. signum), adj., *notable, remarkable, signal, conspicuous*; as subst., **insigne, -is, n., sign, signal; decoration, badge.**
- insiliō, -silire, -siluī, —** (in + saliō, leap), *leap upon.*
- in-simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, charge.**
- in-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, push in; sē insinuāre, force one's way in, INSINUATE oneself.**
- in-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, stand upon, stand, keep one's footing; press on, follow, pursue.** (INSIST.)
- insolenter** (insolēns), adv., *INSOLENTLY, arrogantly.*
- in-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look at; look on.** (INSPECT.)
- in-stabilis, -e, adj., unsteady.** (UNSTABLE.)
- instar, n., indecl. likeness; with preceding gen., like.**
- in-stigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, goad on, INSTIGATE.**
- instituo, -stituiere, -stitui, -stitūtum** (in + statuō), *set up; draw up, arrange; provide, procure; build, make; establish, undertake, begin, INSTITUTE; train, teach.*
- institūtum, -ī** (instituo), n., *arrangement, plan; custom; INSTITUTION.*
- in-stō, -stāre, -stitī, —, fut. part. instātūrus, press on; be near, approach.**
- instrūmentum, -ī** (instruo), n., *equipment.* (INSTRUMENT.)
- in-struō, -struere, -struxī, -strūctum, build; draw up; equip.** (INSTRUCT.)
- insuēfactus, -a, -uū** (insuēscō + faciō), adj., *trained, well-trained.*
- insuētus, -a, -um** (part. of insuēscō), adj., *unaccustomed.*
- insula, -ae, f., island.** (INSULAR.)
- in-super, adv., above, on top.**
- integer, -gra, -grum** (in-, cf. tangō, touch), adj., *untouched, whole; uninjured; fresh; as subst., integrī, -ōrum, m. pl., those (who were) not wearied, those (who were) fresh.* (INTEGER, INTEGRAL.)
- in-tegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover over.**
- intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum** (inter + legō), *perceive, understand, know.* (INTELLECT, INTELLIGENCE.)
- intentus, -a, -um** (part. of intendō, stretch), adj., *attentive, INTENT.*
- inter, prep. with acc., between, among; of time, within, during.** (INTERNATIONAL, etc.)
- inter-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go between, lie between; exist; intervene, pass.** (INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.)
- intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cepum, cut off, INTERCEPT; capture; pick up.**
- interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum** (inter + claudō), *shut off, cut off, blockade.*
- inter-dicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, forbid, exclude, INTER-DICT.**

- interdiū** (inter, cf. diēs), adv., *in the daytime.*
- inter-dum**, adv., *sometimes, for a time.*
- inter-eā**, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
- inter-eō**, -ire, -iī, —, fut. part. **interitūrus**, die, be killed.
- interficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (inter + faciō), *destroy, kill.*
- intericiō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (inter + iaciō), *throw between, place between, intersperse; of time, allow to pass; pass., lie between, intervene. (INTERJECT, INTERJECTION.)*
- interiectus**, perf. part. of **intericiō**.
- interim** (inter), adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
- interior**, -ius (inter), adj. comp., *inner, INTERIOR.*
- interitus**, -ūs (intereō), m., *death.*
- inter-mittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, *place between; of time, let pass; pass., be vacant, stop, cease; lie between. (INTERMITTENT, INTERMISSION.)*
- interneciō**, -ciōnis (internecō, kill), f., *destruction, slaughter, annihilation.*
- inter-pellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *interrupt, interfere with, disturb.*
- inter-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place between, INTERPOSE; with fidem, pledge; pass., let pass.*
- interpres**, interpretis, m., **INTERPRETER.**
- interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (interpretēs), dep., **INTERPRET**, *explain.*
- inter-rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *ask, INTERROGATE, question.*
- inter-rumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break down.*
- inter-scindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *cut down, tear down.*
- inter-sum**, -esse, fui, —, *be between; take part in; impers. interest, it concerns, it is of importance.*
- inter-vāllum**, -ī, n., *space between two palisades; INTERVAL, distance.*
- inter-veniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *come between; arrive, appear. (INTERVENE.)*
- interventus**, -ūs (interveniō), m., *coming between, INTERVENTION.*
- in-texō**, -texere, -texuī, -textum (in + texō), *weave in, weave together.*
- intoleranter** (intolerāns), adv., *violently. (INTOLERANTLY.)*
- intrā** (in), prep. with acc., *within, inside of; before.*
- in-tritus**, -a, -um (terō, rub), adj., *unwearied, fresh.*
- intrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intrō, within), *enter.*
- intrō**, adv., *used only in composition, within, into.*
- intrō-ducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead into, INTRODUCE.*
- intro-eō**, -ire, -ivi, —, *go in, enter into.*
- introitus**, -ūs (introeō), m., *entrance.*
- intrōmissus**, perf. part. of **intrōmittō**.
- intrō-mittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, *send in, let in.*
- intrōrsus** (intrō + versus), adv., *turned inward; into the interior, into; within, inside.*
- intrō-rumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break in.*

- in-tueor, -tuēri, -tuitus, *look upon.*  
 intuli, perf. of inferō.  
 intus (in), adv., *within.*  
 in-ūsītātus, -a, -um, comp. in-ūsītātior (ūsitor intens. of ūtor), *unusual, strange.*  
 in-ūtilis, -e, adj., *useless.*  
 in-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *come upon, find, discover; find out, learn.* (INVENT, INVENTION.)  
 inventor, -tōris (inveniō), m., INVENTOR, *originator.*  
 in-veterāscō, -veterāscere, veterāvi, — (cf. vetus, old), *grow old, become established.* (INVETERATE.)  
 invicem, *in turn; see vicis.*  
 in-victus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered, invincible.*  
 in-videō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *look askance at, envy.*  
 invidia, -ae (invidus, *envious*), f., *envy, jealousy.* (INVIDIOUS.)  
 in-violātus, -a, -um, adj., *uninjured, INVIOLETE, sacred.*  
 invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, INVITE, *attract.*  
 invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant; eō invitō, against his will.*  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsius, dem. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself; pl., themselves; very.*  
 irācundia, -ae (irācundus), f., *anger.*  
 irācundus, -a, -um (ira, *anger*), adj., *passionate, IRASCIBLE.*  
 irrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum (in + rideō), *laugh at, ridicule.*  
 irridiculē (in- + ridiculē, from rideō), adv., *without wit.*  
 irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum (in + rumpō), *break into, rush into.*  
 irruptiō, -tiōnis (irrumpō), f., *incursion, attack.* (IRRUPTION.)  
 is, ea, id, gen., eius, dem. pron., *that, this; he, she, it; such a.*  
 iste, ista, istud, gen., istius, dem. pron., *that of yours, that.*  
 ita (cf. is), adv., *so, thus, in such a way; to such an extent.*  
 Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*  
 ita-que, adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*  
 item, adv., *also; likewise, in the same manner.* (ITEM, ITEMIZE.)  
 iter, itineris (eō, ire), n., *journey, march; way, route, road.* (ITINERARY.)  
 iterum, adv., *again, a second time.* (ITERATE.)  
 Itius, Iti, m., *Itius*, used with Portus, the name of a harbor from which Caesar set sail for Britain, probably the modern Boulogne.  
 iuba, -ae, f., *mane.*  
 iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order, command.*  
 iudiciū, iūdi'cī (iūdex, *judge*; cf. iūs), n., *JUDGMENT, decision; trial, court; opinion, JUDGMENT.*  
 iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (iūdex, *judge*), *JUDGE, decide, determine; think, believe.*  
 iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, summit of a hill or mountain.*  
 iumentum, -ī (cf. iungō), n., *beast of burden.*  
 iūctūra, -ae (iungō), f., *joint, JUNCTURE.*  
 iūctus, perf. part. of iungō.

**iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum,**  
*join, connect. (JUNCTION.)*  
**Iūnius, Iūnī, m.,** *Junius*, a Roman gentile name; see **Brūtus**. Also the name of *Q. Iūnius*, a Spaniard in Caesar's army.  
**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.,** *Jupiter*, the principal god of the Romans.  
**Iūra, -ae, m.,** *the Jura*, a range of mountains in Gaul, between the Rhine and the Rhone.  
**iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (iūs),**  
*lake oath, swear. (JURY.)*  
**iūs, iūris, n.,** *right, law, justice, authority; legal rights.*  
**iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n.,**  
*oath.*  
**iussus, -ūs (iubeō), m.,** found only in the abl. sing. *iussū*, *by order of.*  
**iūstītia, -ae (iūstus), f.,** *JUSTICE, fairness.*  
**iūstus, -a, -um, comp. iūstior,**  
*sup. iūstissimus (iūs), adj., JUST, fair; proper, suitable; regular, legitimate.*  
**iuvenis, -e, adj.,** *young (JUVENILE);* as subst. in comp., **iūniōrēs, -um, m. pl.,** *younger men, fit for military service.*  
**iuventūs, -tūtis (iuvenis), f.,**  
*youth; as collective, young men.*  
**iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtum, help, aid.**  
**iūxtā (cf. iungō), adv.,** *near by, near. (JUXTAPOSITION.)*

## K

**Kal.,** abbreviation for **Kalendae.**  
**Kalendae, -arum, f. pl.,** *the Kalends, the first day of the month. See Intro. 140.*

## L

**L.,** abbreviation for **Lūcius**, a Roman praenomen or first name.  
**Laberius, Labēri, m.,** *Laberius*, gentile name of *Q. Laberius Dūrus*, one of Caesar's tribunes.  
**Labiēnus, -i, m.,** *Labienus*, surname of *T. Labiēnus*, Caesar's ablest lieutenant.  
**lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, dep.,**  
*slip; be disappointed; revolt. (LAPSE, ELAPSE.)*  
**labor, labōris, m.,** *work, toil, LABOR; hardship.*  
**labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (labor),**  
*toil, strive, LABOR; be hard pressed.*  
**labrum, -i, n.,** *lip; edge, rim.*  
**lac, lactis, n.,** *milk. (LACTEAL.)*  
**laccessō, -sere, -sivi, -sītum,**  
*attack, harass, provoke.*  
**lacrima, -ae, f.,** *tear. (LACRIMOSE.)*  
**lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (lacrima),** *weep.*  
**lacus, -ūs, m.,** *LAKE.*  
**laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum,**  
*injure, hurt; break.*  
**laetitia, -ae (laetus), f.,** *joy.*  
**laetus, -a, -um, adj.,** *joyful, glad.*  
**languidē (languidus), adv.,**  
*feebly. (LANGUIDLY.)*  
**languidus, -a, -um, comp. languidior (languēō), adj.,**  
*weak, exhausted. (LANGUID.)*  
**languor, languōris (languēō), m.,**  
*weakness, LANGUOR, exhaustion.*  
**lapis, -pidis, m.,** *stone. (LAPIDARY, DILAPIDATE.)*  
**laqueus, -i, m.,** *noose.*  
**largior, -iri, -itus sum (largus),**  
*dep., give freely, bestow; bribe.*

- largiter** (*largus*), adv., abundantly, richly; **largiter posse**, have great power.
- largitiō**, -tīōnis (*largior*), f., generosity; bribery.
- lassitūdō**, -tūdinis (*lassus*), f., weariness, exhaustion. (**LASSITUDE**.)
- lātē**, comp. *lātius*, sup. *lātissimē* (*lātus*), adv., widely, broadly; **longē lātēque**, far and wide.
- latebra**, -ae (*lateō*), f., hiding-place.
- lateō**, *latēre*, *latuī*, —, be hidden; escape notice. (**LATENT**.)
- lātitūdō**, -tūdinis (*lātus*), f., width, breadth, extent. (**LATITUDE**.)
- Latobrigi**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Latobrigi*, a tribe living near the Helvetians.
- lātrō**, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand.
- lātrōcinium**, *lātrōcīnī* (cf. *lātrō*), n., robbery, brigandage.
- lātūrus**, fut. part. of *ferō*.
- lātus**, -a, -um, comp. *lātior*, sup. *lātissimus*, adj., broad, wide, extensive.
- latus**, -teris, n., side; flank of an army. (**LATERAL**.)
- lātus**, perf. part. of *ferō*.
- laus**, *laudis*, f., praise, glory. (**LAUD**, **LAUDABLE**.)
- lavō**, -āre, *lāvī*, *lautum* and *lōtum*, wash; pass., bathe. (**LAVE**, **LAVATORY**.)
- laxō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, extend, open up. (**RELAX**.)
- lēctus**, part. of *legō*.
- lēgatiō**, -tīōnis (*lēgō*, appoint), f., embassy. (**LEGATION**.)
- lēgātus**, -ī, (*lēgō*, appoint), m., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant. (**LEGATE**.) See *Intro.* 19.
- legiō**, -ōnis (*legō*, collect), f., **LEGION**.
- legiōnārius**, -a, -um (*legiō*), adj., of a legion, **LEGIONARY**.
- Lemannus**, -ī, m., Lake *Lemannus*, Lake *Leman*, the modern Lake Geneva.
- Lemnovicēs**, -um, m., pl., the *Lemnovices*, a tribe of central Gaul.
- lēnis**, -e, adj., gentle, smooth. (**LENIENT**.)
- lēnitās**, -tātis (*lēnis*), f., smoothness, gentleness. (**LENITY**.)
- lēniter** (*lēnis*), adv., gently, mildly. (**LENIENTLY**.)
- Lepontii**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Lepontii*, a tribe dwelling in the Alps.
- lepus**, *leporis*, m., hare.
- Leuci**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Leuci*, a tribe living in central Gaul.
- Levacī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Levacī*, a tribe of the Belgians.
- levis**, -e, adj., comp. *levior*, sup. *levissimus*, light, slight.
- levitās**, -tātis (*levis*), f., lightness; fickleness. (**LEVITY**.)
- leyō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lighten, relieve; **ALLEVIATE**.
- lēx**, *lēgis*, f., law, decree. (**LEGAL**.)
- Lexovii**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Lexovii*, a tribe dwelling in Gaul near the mouth of the *Sequana* (*Seine*).
- libenter** (*libēns*), adv., willingly, gladly.
- liber**, -era, -erum, adj., free, independent; unrestricted. (**LIBERAL**.)
- liberalitās**, -tātis (*liberālis*), f., generosity, **LIBERALITY**.
- liberaliter** (*liberālis*), adv., generously, **LIBERALLY**, graciously, kindly.

- liberē**, comp. **liberius**, sup. **liberrimē** (**liber**), adv., *freely, readily, openly*.
- liberī**, -ōrum (**liber**), m. pl., *children*.
- liberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**liber**), *free, set free; release, LIBERATE*.
- libertās**, -tātis (**liber**), f., *freedom, LIBERTY, independence*.
- librilis**, -e (**libra**, *pound*), adj., *weighing a pound*.
- licentia**, -ae (cf. **licet**), f., *LICENSE, lawlessness*.
- liceor**, **licērī**, **licitus sum**, dep., *bid at an auction*.
- licet**, **licēre**, **licuit** and **licitum est**, impers., *it is permitted, it is lawful. (LICENSE.)*
- Liger**, **Ligeris**, m., *the Liger, the principal river of central Gaul, the modern Loire*.
- lignātiō**, -tīōnis (cf. **lignum**, *wood*), f., *getting wood*.
- lignātor**, -tōris (cf. **lignum**, *wood*), m., *wood-cutter*.
- lilium**, **lili**, n., *LILY, a military device, called from the name of the flower*.
- linea**, -ae, f., *LINE*.
- Lingonēs**, -num, m. pl., *the Lingones, a people of central Gaul, neighbors of the Sequani*.
- lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue; LANGUAGE*.
- lingula**, -ae (dim. of **lingua**), f., *tongue of land*.
- linter**, **lintris**, m., *boat, skiff*.
- linum**, -ī, n., *flax. (LINEN.)*
- lis**, **litis**, f., *strife, damages*.
- Liscus**, -ī, m., *Liscus, chief magistrate of the Aeduans*.
- Litaviccus**, -ī, m., *Litaviccus, a chief of the Aeduans*.
- littera**, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet; pl., writing, letter, despatch. (LITERAL, LITERARY, etc.)*
- litus**, **litoris**, n., *shore, coast*.
- locus**, -ī, m., pl., **loca**, -ōrum, n., *place; region; part, position, rank; opportunity, occasion. (LOCAL, LOCALITY, LOCATION.)*
- locūtus**, perf. part. of **loquor**.
- longē**, comp. **longius**, sup. **longissimē** (**longus**), adv., *at a distance, far off, far; by far*.
- longinquus**, -a, -um, comp. **longinquior** (**longus**), adj., *far off, remote, distant; long continued*.
- longitūdō**, -tūdinis (**longus**), f., *length. (LONGITUDE.)*
- longurius**, **longu'ri** (**longus**), m., *long pole*.
- longus**, -a, -um, comp. **longior**, sup. **longissimus**, adj., *LONG; distant, late; nāvis longa, ship of war*.
- loquor**, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, dep., *speak, say. (LOQUACIOUS.)*
- lōrica**, -ae (**lōrum**, *thong*), f., *coat of mail; fortification. See Introd. 23.*
- Lūcānius**, **Lūcānī**, m., *Lucanius, name of Q. Lūcānius, a Roman centurion*.
- Lūcius**, **Lūcī**, m., *Lucius, Roman praenōmen or first name, abbreviated L.*
- Lucterius**, **Lucte'ri**, m., *Lucterius, name of one of the Cadurci*.
- Lugotorix**, -rigis, m., *Lugotorix, the name of one of the Britons*.
- lūna**, -ae, f., *the moon; as a proper name, Luna, a goddess of the Germans. (LUNAR.)*
- Lutetia**, -ae, f., *Lutetia, a city of the Parisii, the modern Paris.*

**lūx, lūcis**, f., *light, daylight*; **prīmā lūce**, *at dawn*. (LUCID.)  
**lūxuria**, -ae, f., LUXURY, *luxurious living*.

## M

**M.**, abbreviation for **Mārcus**, a Roman *praenōmen*, or first name.

**M.**, abbreviation for **mille**, 1000.  
**māceria**, -ae, f., *wall*.

**māchinātiō, -tiōnis** (*māchinor*), f., *contrivance, engine*. (MACHINATION.)

**maestus**, -a, -um, adj., *sad*.

**magis**, sup. **maximē** (*magnus*), adv., *more, rather*.

**magistrātus, -ūs** (*magis*), m., MAGISTRACY, *office*; MAGISTRATE, *official*.

**magnificus, -a, -um** (*magnus*, cf. *faciō*), adj., MAGNIFICENT, *splendid*.

**magnitūdō, -tūdinis** (*magnus*), f., *greatness, size*; MAGNITUDE, *importance*.

**magnopere** (= *magnō opere*), adv., *greatly; urgently, earnestly; thoroughly*.

**magnus, -a, -um**, comp. **maior**, sup. **maximus**, adj., *great, powerful, important*; **magnis itineribus**, *by forced marches*. (MAGNATE.)

**maiestās, -tātis** (*maior*), f., *greatness*, MAJESTY.

**maiōrēs, -rum**, with or without **nātū**, m. pl., *ancestors, forefathers*.

**malacia, -ae, f.**, *calm at sea*.

**male** (*malus, bad*), adv., *badly, unsuccessfully*.

**malefīcium, malefī'cī** (cf. *male*

and *faciō*), m., *mischievous, harm, damage*.

**mālō, mälle, mālui**, — (cf. *magis* and *volō*), *prefer*.

**malus, -a, -um**, comp. **peior**, sup. **pessimus**, adj., *bad, ill*.

**mālus, -ī, m.**, *mast*.

**mandātum, -ī** (*mandō*), n., *commission, order, command*. (MANDATE.)

**mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (cf. *manus* and *dō*), *commit, entrust; order, command*; **sē fugae mandāre**, *to take flight*.

**Mandubiī, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the Mandubiī*, a Gallic tribe, living near the Aeduians.

**Mandubracius, Mandubra'cī**, m., *Mandubracius*, a chief of the Britons.

**māne, adv.**, *in the morning*.  
**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**, REMAIN, *stay, continue*. (MANSION.)

**manipulāris, -e** (*manipulus*), adj., *of a manipule*; as subst., **manipulāris, -is, m.**, *soldier of a manipule*; pl., *soldiers of the same manipule*. See *Introd.* 46.

**manipulus, -ī** (cf. *manus* and *pleō*, *fill*), m., *a handful of straw, the original standard of a manipule; company, MANIPULE*. See *Introd.* 46.

**Mānlius, Mānli**, m., *Manlius*, surname of *L. Mānlius*, a Roman proconsul of Gaul.

**mānsuē-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum**, *make tame, tame*.

**mānsuētūdō, -tūdinis** (*mānsuētus, tame*), adj., *kindness, gentleness*.

**manus, -ūs, f.**, *hand; band of troops, force; ā manū, art-*

- ficially*; *manūs dare*, *give up*, *surrender*. (MANUAL.)
- Marcomannī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Marcomanni*, a Germanic people.
- Mārcus**, -ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman *praenōmen* or first name.
- mare**, *maris*, n., *the sea*.
- maritimus**, -a, -um (*mare*), adj., *belonging to the sea, on the sea, sea*. (MARITIME.)
- Marius**, *Mari*, m., *Marius*, gentile name of C. *Marius*, who defeated the Cimbri and Teutones in 102 and 101 B.C.
- Mārs**, *Mārtis*, m., *Mars*, the Roman god of war; used figuratively for *battle*. (MARCH.)
- mās**, *maris*, m., *a male, male*. (MASCULINE.)
- matara**, -ae, f., *javelin, spear*.
- māter**, *mātris*, f., *mother*; *māter familiae*, *matron*. (MATERIAL.)
- māteria**, -ae (*māter*), f., MATERIAL; *timber, wood*.
- māterior**, -ārī, -ātus sum (*māteria*), dep., *get timber*.
- Matiscō**, -cōnis, m., *Matisco*, a city of the Aeduans, the modern *Mâcon*.
- mātrimōnium**, *mātrimō'nī* (*māter*), n., *marriage*, MATRIMONY; in *mātrimōnium dūcere*, *to marry*.
- Matrona**, -ae, m., *the Matrona*, modern *Marne*, a tributary of the *Sequana* (*Seine*).
- mātūrē**, comp. *mātūrius*, sup. *mātūrrimē* (*mātūrus*), adv., *early*.
- mātūrēscō**, -ēscere, *mātūrui*, — (*mātūrus*), *grow ripe*.
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*mātūrus*), *hasten*.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early, MATURE*.
- maximē** (*maximus*, sup. of *magnus*), adv., *most, especially, very*.
- maximus**, -a, -um (sup. of *magnus*), adj., *very great; quam maximus, the greatest possible*. (MAXIMUM.)
- Maximus**, -ī, m., *Maximus*, surname of Q. *Fabius Maximus*, who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C.
- medeor**, *medēri*, —, dep., *heal, relieve*. (MEDICINE, REMEDY.)
- mediocris**, -cre (*medius*), adj., *middling; ordinary, common; slight, MEDIOCRE*.
- mediocriter** (*mediocris*), adv., *moderately, to a moderate degree*.
- Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, or *Mediomatricēs*, -um, m. pl., *the Mediomatrici* or *Mediomatrices*, a tribe living in central Gaul.
- mediterrāneus**, -a, -um (*medius* + *terra*), adj., *inland*. (MEDITERRANEAN.)
- medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle, middle of; medius utriusque, midway between each*. (MEDIUM.)
- Meldī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Meldi*, a Gallic tribe, living on the *Matrona* (*Marne*).
- melior**, *melius*, comp. of *bonus*. (AMELIORATE.)
- melius**, comp. of *bene*.
- membrum**, -ī, n., *limb*. (MEMBER.)



**memini, meminisse, def., re-**  
*member.*

**memoria, -ae (memor), f.,**  
MEMORY, *recollection.*

**Menapii, -orum, m. pl., the**  
*Menapii*, a tribe of the  
Belgians.

**mendacium, mendāci (mendāx),**  
n., *falsehood, lie.* (MENDACIOUS.)

**mēns, mentis, f., mind, spirit;**  
*thought.* (MENTAL.)

**mēnsis, mēnsis, m., month.**

**mēnsūra, -ae (mētior), f.,**  
MEASURE.

**mentio, -ōnis (cf. memini), f.,**  
MENTION.

**mercātor, -tōris (cf. mercēs),**  
m., *trader, MERCHANT.*

**mercātūra, -ae (cf. mercēs),**  
f., *trade.*

**mercēs, -cēdis, f., pay, hire.**  
(MERCENARY.)

**Mercurius, Mercūrī (cf. mercēs), m., Mercury, god of**  
gain and trade, among other  
attributes.

**mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum,**  
and **mereor, merērī, meritus**  
sum, *earn, deserve, MERIT.*

**meridiānus, -a, -um (meridiēs),**  
adj., *of mid-day, mid-day.*  
(MERIDIAN.)

**meridiēs, -ēi (cf. medius and**  
**dies), m., mid-day; south.**

**meritum, -ī (mereō), n., desert,**  
MERIT; *service, favor.*

**meritus, part. of mereō.**

**Messāla, -ae, m., Messāla, sur-**  
name of *M. Valerius Messāla*,  
consul in 61 B.C.

**mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum,**  
dep., MEASURE, *measure out,*  
METE *out, distribute.*

**Metiosēdum, -ī, m., Metiosēdum,**

a town of the Senones, situated  
on an island in the *Sequana*  
(*Seine*).

**Metius, Metī, m., gentile name**  
of *M. Metius*, who was sent  
as an envoy to Ariovistus by  
Caesar.

**metō, metere, messui, messum,**  
*reap.*

**metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread.**

**meus, -a, -um (mē), poss. adj.,**  
*my, mine.*

**miles, militis, m., soldier.**

**militāris, -e (miles), adj., of sol-**  
diers, MILITARY; *rēs militāris*,  
*military affairs, the art of war.*  
**militia, -ae (miles), f., military**  
*service.* (MILITIA.)

**mille, indec. adj., one thousand;**  
pl., as subst., *mīlia, milium*,  
n., *mille passūs, a thousand*  
*paces, a MILE; duo mīlia*  
*passuum, two miles.*

**Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, god-**  
dess of wisdom and patron  
of the arts.

**minimē, sup. of parum, adv.,**  
*least; by no means.*

**minimus, -a, -um, sup. of**  
**parvus, adj., smallest, least.**  
(MINIMUM.)

**Minucius, Minu'ci, m., Minu-**  
*cius*, gentile name of *L.*  
*Minucius Basilus*, one of  
Caesar's officers.

**minor, minus, comp. of parum,**  
adj., *smaller, less.* (MINOR.)

**minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum (minus),**  
*lessen, DIMINISH; of the tide,*  
*fall, ebb.*

**minus, comp. of parum, adv.,**  
*less; with force of a negative,*  
*not.* (MINUS.)

**mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,**  
*wonder, wonder at; ADMIRE.*

- mīrus**, -a, -um (**mīror**), adj., *wonderful, marvellous.* (**MIRACLE**.)
- miser**, **misera**, **miserum**, comp. **miserior**, sup. **miserrimus**, adj., *wretched, pitiful*; **MISERABLE**.
- misericordia**, -ae (cf. **miser** and **cor**), f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*
- miseror**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**miser**), dep., *bewail.* (**COMMISERATE**.)
- missus**, -ūs (**mittō**), m., used only in the abl. sing. **missū**, *sending.*
- mītissimē** (**mītis**, *mild*), adv., sup., *in a very friendly way.*
- mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, *send; let go, release; throw, hurl.* (**MISSION**.)
- mōbilis**, -e (**moveō**), adj., *changeable, fickle.* (**MOBILE**.)
- mōbilitās**, -tātis (**mōbilis**), f., *quickness, speed; fickleness.* (**MOBILITY**.)
- mōbiliter** (**mōbilis**), adv., *quickly, easily.*
- moderor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**modus**), dep., *hold in check, control.* (**MODERATE**.)
- modestia**, -ae (**modestus**), f., *self-control; obedience, subordination.* (**MODESTY**.)
- modo** (**modus**), adv., *only, merely; just now, recently; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*
- modus**, -ī, m., *measure; kind, manner, way.* (**MODE, MOOD**.)
- moenia**, -ium, n. pl., *walls, fortifications.*
- mōlēs**, **mōlis**, f., *mass, massive structure; dam, MOLE.*
- molestē** (**molestus**, *troublesome*), adv., *with difficulty; molestē ferre, be vexed.* (**MOLEST**.)
- mōlimentum**, -ī (**mōlior**), n., *effort, exertion.*
- molitus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of **molō**), adj., *ground.*
- molliō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (**mollis**), *make soft, make easy.*
- mollis**, -e, adj., *soft, gentle; weak.* (**MOLLIFY**.)
- mollitia**, -ae, and **mollitiēs**, -ēī (**mollis**), f., *softness; weakness.*
- molō**, **molere**, **molui**, **molitum**, *grind.*
- mōmentum**, -ī (cf. **moveō**), n., *movement; weight, importance; effect, influence.* (**MOMENTUM**.)
- Mona**, -ae, f., *Mona*, now the Isle of Man, in the Irish Sea.
- moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *advise, warn; remind, admonish; direct, order.*
- mōns**, **montis**, m., *mountain height, MOUNT; mountain range.*
- mora**, -ae, f., *delay.*
- morbus**, -ī (cf. **morior**), m., *disease, sickness.* (**MORBID**.)
- Morini**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Morini*, a tribe of the Belgians.
- morior**, **morī**, **mortuus sum**, fut. part. **moritūrus**, dep., *die.* (**MORTUARY**.)
- Moritasgus**, -ī, m., *Moritasgus*, a chief of the Senones.
- moror**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**mora**), *delay, stay; check.*
- mors**, **mortis**, f., *death.* (**MORTAL**.)
- mortuus**, perf. part. of **morior**.
- mōs**, **mōris**, m., *custom; usage, habit; pl., customs; manners, character.*
- Mosa**, -ae, m., *the Mosa*, modern Meuse,

**mōtus, -ūs (moveō), m.,** MOTION, movement; *uprising, tumult.*

**moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum,** MOVE; *influence.*

**mulier, -ieris, f.,** woman.

**mūliō, -ōnis (mūlus), m.,** mule-driver.

**multitūdō, -tūdinis (multus), f.,** large number, MULTITUDE; *populace.*

**multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (multa, fine), fine, MULCT, punish.**

**multum (multus), adv.,** much.

**multus, -a, -um, comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, adj.,** much; pl., many. **multō diē,** late in the day.

**mūlus, -ī, m.,** MULE.

**Mūnātius, Mūnāti, m.,** Munatius, gentile name of L. Mūnātius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**mundus, -ī, m.,** the world, universe. (MUNDANE.)

**mūnimentum, -ī (mūniō), n.,** fortification, defense.

**mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -itum (moenia),** fortify, protect, strengthen; of a road, make, build.

**mūnitiō, -ōnis (mūniō), f.,** fortifying; fortification, works, defenses. (MUNITIONS.)

**mūnitus, perf. part. of mūniō.**

**mūnus, mūneris, n.,** duty, service; gift, present. (REMUNERATION.)

**mūrālis, -e (mūrus), adj.,** of a wall, wall. (MURAL.)

**mūrus, -ī, m.,** wall.

**mūsculus, -ī (dim. of mūs), m.,** little mouse; shed for protecting soldiers, mantlet.

**mutilus, -a, -um, adj.,** MUTILATED; lacking.

## N

**nactus, perf. part. of nancīscor.**

**nam, conj.,** for; as enclitic with interrogative words, possible, in the world; as **quibusnam manibus,** with what possible strength; **quisnam,** who in the world.

**Nammeius, Nammēi, m.,** Nammeius, name of a Helvetian envoy.

**Namnetēs, -um, m. pl.,** the Namnetes, a Gallic tribe.

**nam-que, conj.,** and . . . for, for.

**nanciscor, nancīscī, nactus and nactus sum, dep.,** find, obtain.

**Nantuātēs, -um, m. pl.,** the Nantuates, a Gallic tribe living among the Alps.

**Narbō, Narbōnis, m.,** Narbo, chief city of the Roman Province of Gaul, modern Narbonne.

**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep.,** be born; arise, be found. (NASCENT.)

**Nasua, -ae, m.,** Nasua, a chief of the Suebi.

**nātālis, -e (nātus), adj.,** of birth, NATAL; **diēs nātālis,** birthday.

**nātiō, -ōnis (nāscor), f.,** birth; people, tribe, NATION.

**nātivus, -a, -um (nātus), adj.,** natural, NATIVE.

**nātūra, -ae (nāscor), f.,** NATURE, character; current of a river.

**nātus, -ūs (nāscor), m. (found only in the abl. sing. nātū),** birth; **maiōrēs nātū,** older by birth, older; elders, ancestors.

- nauta**, -ae (cf. **nāvis**), m., *sailor*.
- nauticus**, -a, -um (**nauta**), adj., NAUTICAL, *naval*.
- nāvis**, -e (**nāvis**), adj., NAVAL, *of the sea, sea*.
- nāvicula**, -ae (dim. of **nāvis**), f., *small boat, skiff*.
- nāvigātiō**, -ōnis (**nāvigō**), f., *sailing, NAVIGATION; voyage*.
- nāvigium**, **nāvi'gī**, (**nāvigō**), n., *vessel, boat, ship*.
- nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**nāvis** + **agō**), *sail*. (NAVIGATE.)
- nāvis**, **nāvis**, f., *ship, vessel*; **nāvis longa**, *ship of war, warship*; **nāvis onerāria**, *ship of burden, transport*.
- nāvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ((g)**nāvus**, *active*), *do with energy*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best, distinguish oneself*.
- nē**, adv., *not*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*.
- nē**, conj., *that . . . not, lest*; after words of fearing, *lest, that*; **nē quis**, *lest any one, that no one*.
- ne**, inter. adv., *whether*; often translated merely by the interrogative form of the 'sentence.
- ne-** (used only in compound words), *not*.
- nec**, conj., see **neque**. In composition = **nōn**.
- necessāriō** (**necessārius**), adv., NECESSARILY, *of necessity*.
- necessārius**, -a, -um (**necesse**), adj., NECESSARY; *pressing, urgent*; as subst., **necessārius**, **necessārī**, m., *relative, kinsman, connection, friend*.
- necesse** (**ne**, cf. **cēdō**), adj., indecl., NECESSARY, *inevitable*.
- necessitās**, -tātis (**necesse**), f., NECESSITY, *need*.
- necessitūdō**, -tūdinis (**necesse**), f., *relationship, friendship*.
- nec-ne**, conj., *or not*.
- necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *kill, put to death*.
- nēcubi** (**nē** + **cubi**, old form of **ubi**), adv., *that nowhere, lest anywhere*.
- nefārius**, -a, -um (**nefās**), adj., *wicked, abominable*, NEFARIOUS.
- nefās** (**ne** + **fās**), indecl. n., *wrong in the sight of the gods, unrighteous*.
- neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum (**nec** + **legō**), NEGLECT, *disregard, overlook*; *omit*.
- negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *say no, say . . . not*. (NEGATIVE.)
- negōtiōr**, -āri, -ātus sum (**negōtium**), dep., *do business, be busy*. (NEGOTIATE.)
- negōtium**, **negōti** (**nec** + **ōtium**), n., *business, affair, matter*; *trouble, difficulty*; **negōtium dare**, *commission, command, direct*.
- Nemetēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Nemetes, a Germanic tribe, living west of the Rhine*.
- nēmō**, —, dat., **nēmīnī** (**nē** + **hemō**, an old form of **homō**), m., *no one, nobody*. For the gen. and abl., **nūllius** and **nūllō** are commonly used.
- nē-quāquam**, adv., *by no means*.
- ne-que**, or **nec**, adv., *and . . . not, nor*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.
- nē-quīquam**, adv., *in vain, to no purpose*; *without reason*.
- Nervicus**, -a, -um (**Nervius**), adj., *of the Nervii, with the Nervii*.

- Nervius**, **Nervī**, m., a *Nervian*, one of the *Nervii*, a tribe of the Belgians; pl., the *Nervii*.
- nervus**, -ī, m., *muscle, sinew*; pl., *power, strength*. (NERVE.)
- neu**, see **nēve**.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrius** (nē + uter), pron. adj., *neither of two*. (NEUTER, NEUTRAL.)
- nē-ve**, or **neu**, conj., and *not*, and *that not, nor*.
- nex**, **necis**, f., *death by violence*.
- nihil** (**nihilum**), n., indecl., *nothing*; adverbially, *in no respect, not at all, not*. (ANNIHILATE.)
- nihilō**, see **nihilum**.
- nihilum**, -ī (nē-, + hīlum, *trifle*), m., *nothing*; **nihilō** minus, *none the less*.
- nimius**, -a, -um (**nimis**), adj., *excessive, too great*.
- nisi** (nē- + sī), conj., *if not, unless, except*.
- Nitiobrogēs**, -um, m. pl., the *Nitiobroges*, a tribe in Aquitania.
- nitor**, **niti**, **nixus** and **nīsus** sum, dep., *strive, endeavor; rely on*.
- nix**, **nivis**, f., *snow*.
- nōbilis**, -e, comp. **nōbilior**, sup. **nōbillissimus** (nōscō), adj., *well known, eminent*, NOBLE; as subst., **nōbilēs**, -ium, m. pl., the NOBLES, the NOBILITY.
- nōbilitās**, -tātis (**nōbilis**), f., *fame, eminence*; collectively the NOBLES, the NOBILITY.
- nocēns**, -ntis (part. of **noceō**), adj., *guilty*.
- noceō**, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, —, fut. part., **nocitūrus**, *harm, injure, damage*. (INNOCENT.)
- noctū** (cf. **nox**), adv., *by night*.
- nocturnus**, -a, -um (**nox**), adj., *of the night; by night, at night*. (NOCTURNAL.)
- nōdus**, -ī, m., **NODE**, the swelling about the joints of an animal.
- nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, — (nē- + volō), *be unwilling*.
- nōmen**, **nōminis** (nōscō), n., *name, title; renown*; **suō nōmine**, *on his own account*. (NOMINAL.)
- nōminātim** (**nōmen**), adv., *by name*.
- nōminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**nōmen**), *name; mention*. (NOMINATE.)
- nōn**, adv., *no, not*.
- nōnāgintā**, num. adj., indecl., *ninety*. (NONAGENARIAN.)
- nōn-dum**, adv., *not yet*.
- nōn nihil**, or **nōnnihil**, adv., *somewhat*.
- nōn nullus**, or **nōnnullus**, -a, -um, adj., *some, a few*.
- nōn numquam** or **nōnnumquam**, adv., *sometimes, often*.
- nōnus**, -a, -um (**novem**), adj., *ninth*.
- Nōreia**, -ae, f., *Noreia*, a town of Noricum.
- Nōricus**, -ī, m., *of the Noricans, of Noricum*, a country between the Danube River and the Alps; *Norican*; as subst., **Nōrica**, -ae, f., *a Norican woman*.
- nōs**, pl. of **ego**, *we, us*.
- nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvi**, **nōtum**, *become acquainted with*; in the perf. system, *know*.
- nōsmet**, an emphatic form for **nōs**, *we ourselves, even us*.
- noster**, -tra, -trum (**nōs**), pron. adj., *our*; as subst., **nostrī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *our men, our soldiers*. (NOSTRUM.)

**nōtus**, -a, -um, comp. **nōtior**, sup. **nōtissimus** (part. of **nōscō**), adj., *known, well known, familiar*; NOTED.

**novem**, num. indecl., *nine*.

**Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., *Noviodunum*, a city in the country of the Suessiones, on the river Axona (modern *Aisne*); later called *Augusta Suessionum*, whence the modern name *Soissons*. Also the name of a town of the Aeduans, and of one of the Bituriges.

**novitās**, -tātis (**novus**), f., *newness, NOVELTY, strangeness*.

**novus**, -a, -um, sup. **novissimus**, adj., *new; unusual, strange; novae rēs, a change of government, revolution*; sup. **novissimus**, *in the rear*; **novissimum agmen**, *the rear, rear guard*; as subst., **novissimī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *those in the rear*.

**nox**, noctis, f., *night*.

**noxia**, -ae (**noceō**), f., *crime, offence*. (NOXIOUS.)

**nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, marry; literally, "veil oneself." (NUPTIAL.)

**nūdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**nūdus**), lay bare, expose; strip, deprive. (DENUDE.)

**nūdus**, -a, -um, adj., *bare, NUDE; unprotected*.

**nūllus**, -a, -um (**ne** + **ūllus**), adj., *none, no*; as subst., *no one*.

**num**, interrogative particle, expecting a negative answer, translated only by the interrogative form of the English sentence.

**nūmen**, -minis (**nuō**, *nod*), n., *will, power (of the gods)*.

**numerus**, -ī, m., NUMBER, amount, quantity; account, consideration, importance; **obsidum numerō**, *as hostages*. (NUMERAL, NUMEROUS.)

**Numidae**, -ārum, m. pl., the Numidians, a people of northern Africa, used by the Romans as auxiliary troops.

**nummus**, -ī, m., *coin; money*.

**numquam** (**ne** + **umquam**), adv., *never*.

**nunc**, adv., *now*.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**nūntius**), ANNOUNCE, report; order.

**nūntius**, **nūnti** (cf. **novus**), m., messenger; message, ANNOUNCEMENT.

**nūper**, adv., *lately, recently*.

**nūsqum** (**ne** + **ūsqum**), adv., *nowhere*.

**nūtus**, -ūs (**nuō**, *nod*), m., *nod; command*; ad **nūtum**, *at a nod, promptly, instantly*.

## O

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of, for*.

**ob-aerātus**, -a, -um (cf. **aes**), adj., *in debt*; as subst., **ob-aerātus**, -ī, m., *debtor*.

**ob-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in front of; of a trench, extend, construct.

**ob-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to meet; go through with, perform.

**obiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (**ob** + **iaciō**), throw before; throw in the face of, put in the way of. (OBJECT.)

**obiectus**, perf. part. of **obiciō**.

- obitus, -ūs (obeō), m., *destruction, death*. (OBITUARY.)
- oblātus, perf. part. of offerō.
- obliquē (obliquus), adv., *obliquely, slanting*.
- obliquus, -a, -um, adj., *oblique*.
- ob-liviscor, -livisci, -lītus sum, dep., *forget*. (OBLIVION.)
- obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob + sacrō), *beseech, implore*.
- obsequentia, -ae (obsequēns), f., *compliance*.
- ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *watch*, OBSERVE, *heed*.
- obses, obsidis (obsideō), m. or f., *hostage*.
- obsessiō, -ōnis (obsideō), f., *blockade, siege*. (OBSESSION.)
- obsessus, perf. part. of obsideō.
- obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum (ob + sedeō), *besiege, beset, occupy*.
- obsidiō, -ōnis (obsideō), f., *siege, blockade; oppression*.
- ob-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seal*.
- ob-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *resist*.
- obstinātē (obstinātus), adv., *stubbornly*, OBSTINATELY.
- obstrictus, perf. part. of obstringō.
- ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind, lay under obligation*.
- ob-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *obstruct, block, blockade*.
- ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obey*.
- ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *entreat, implore*.
- obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (ob + teneō), *hold, occupy; secure*, OBTAIN.
- ob-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *fall in with, meet*.
- ob-viam, adv., *in the way of, to meet*. (OBVIOUS.)
- occāsiō, -ōnis (occidō), f., *opportunity*, OCCASION.
- occāsus, -ūs (occidō), *falling, setting; occāsus sōlis, sunset; the west*.
- occidēns, -ntis (part. of occidō), adj., with sōl, *the setting sun, the west*. (OCCIDENTAL.)
- occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, fut. part. occāsūrus (ob + cadō), *fall, perish*.
- occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum (ob + caedo), *kill, slay*.
- occisus, perf. part. of occidō.
- occultātiō, -ōnis (occultō), f., *concealment*.
- occultē (occultus), adv., *secretly*.
- occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of occultō), *conceal, hide*.
- occultus, -a, -um (part. of occultō), adj., *concealed, hidden, secret*; as subst., occultum, -ī, n., *concealment, ambush*. (OCCULT.)
- occupātiō, -ōnis (occupō), f., *OCCUPATION, employment; pl., business*.
- occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob, cf. capiō), *seize, take possession of; OCCUPY; engage, OCCUPY one's attention*.
- occurrō, -currere, -curri or -curri, —, fut. part. occursūrus (ob + currō), *run against, run to meet, meet, encounter; fall in with, find; of the mind, come to, OCCUR*.
- Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the OCEAN*.
- Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum, a town of the Graecioli*.
- octāvus, -a, -um (octō), num. adj., *eighth*. (OCTAVE.)

octingenti, -ae, -a (octō + centum), num. adj., *eight hundred*.  
 octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight*. (OCTOBER.)  
 octōdecim (octō + decem), num. adj. indecl., *eighteen*.  
 Octodūrus, -ī, m., *Oclodurus*, a town of the Veragri, a people living near the Rhone.  
 octōgēnī, -ae, -a (octō), distr. num. adj., *eighty apiece, eighty at a time*. (OCTOGENARIAN.)  
 octōgintā (octō), indecl. num. adj., *eighty*.  
 octōnī, -ae, -a (octō), distr. num. adj., *eight apiece, eight at a time*.  
 oculus, -ī, m., *eye*. (OCULIST.)  
 ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., *hate*.  
 odium, odī (cf. ōdī), n., *hatred*. (ODIUM, ODIIOUS.)  
 offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum (ob + fendō), *strike against, injure*; OFFEND, *wound*.  
 offēnsiō, -ōnis (offendō), f., *wounding*; OFFENCE, *affront*.  
 offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum (ob + ferō), OFFER, *present, put in the hands of, deliver*; sē offerre, *put oneself in the way of; expose oneself to*.  
 officium, offīcī (cf. ops and faciō), n., *sense of duty, duty; allegiance, obligation, service*. (OFFICE.)  
 Ollovicō, Ollovicōnis, m., *Ollovico*, a king of the Nitobroges.  
 omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (ob + mittō), *let go, pass by, neglect*. (OMIT, OMISSION.)  
 omninō (omnis), adv., *entirely, wholly, in all*; with negatives, *at all*.

omnis, omne, adj., *all, the whole of; every*; as subst., omnēs, -ium, m. pl., *all men*; omnia, -ium, n. pl., *all things, everything*. (OMNIPRESENT, OMNISCIENT, etc.)  
 onerārius, -a, -um (onus), adj., *of burden*; nāvīs onerāria, *ship of burden, transport*.  
 onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (onus), *load, burden*.  
 onus, oneris, n., *burden, load, weight*. (ONEROUS.)  
 opera, -ae (opus), f., *effort, pains*; service, *help, work*; dare operam, *take pains*. (OPERA.)  
 opiniō, -ōnis (opinor), f., *notion, opinion*; reputation, *impression; expectation*.  
 oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., *it behooves, one ought, it is necessary*.  
 oppidānus, -a, -um (oppidum), adj., *of a town*; as subst., oppidānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *townspeople, people of the town*.  
 oppidum, -ī, n., *walled town, town*.  
 oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (ob + pōnō), *place opposite*, OPPOSE.  
 opportunē (opportūnus), adv., *opportunately, advantageously*.  
 opportunitās, -tātis (opportūnus), f., *favorableness, opportunity, advantage*.  
 opportūnus, -a, -um, comp. opportūnior, sup. opportūnissimus, adj., *favorable, advantageous*, OPPORTUNE.  
 opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum (ob + premō), *press upon; overwhelm, defeat; surprise*. (OPPRESS.)



**oppugnātiō, -ōnis** (oppugnō), f., *storming, attack, siege.*

**oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (ob + pugnō), *attack, assault; besiege.*

**(ops), opis** (nom. and dat. sing. not in use), f., *help, assistance; pl., resources, power.* (OPULENCE.)

**optātus, -a, -um** (part. of optō), *adj., desired; welcome.*

**optimē**, sup. of bene, *well.*

**optimus**, sup. of bonus, *good.* (OPTIMIST.)

**opus, operis**, n., *work; works, structure, fortification.*

**opus (ops)**, n. (used only in the nom. and acc.), *necessity, need; opus est, there is need, it is necessary.*

**ōra, -ae**, f., *shore, coast.*

**orātiō, -ōnis** (orō), f., *speech, address, ORATION; words, plea.*

**orātor, -tōris** (orō), m., *speaker; messenger, envoy.* (ORATOR.)

**orbis, orbis**, m., *circle; orbis terrārum, the world.* (ORB, ORBIT.)

**Orcynia, -ae**, f., another form for Hercynia, the name of a great forest in southern Germany.

**ōrdō, ōrdinis**, m., *row, rank; ORDER, arrangement.*

**Orgetorix, -rigis**, m., *Orgetorix*, a chief of the Helvetians.

**oriēns, -ntis** (part. of orior), *adj., rising; oriēns sōl, the rising sun, the east.* (ORIENT, ORIENTAL.)

**orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, dep., *rise; begin, spring from, be descended from.*

**ōrnāmentum, -ī** (ōrnō), n., *decoration, ORNAMENT, honor.*

**ōrnātus, -a, -um**, comp. **ōrnātior**, sup. **ōrnātissimus** (part. of **ōrnō**), *adj., equipped.*

**ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *furnish, equip; ADORN, honor.*

**ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (ōs, *moult*), *beg, entreat.*

**ortus**, perf. part. of orior.

**ortus, -ūs** (orior), m., *rising.*

**ōs, ōris**, n., *mouth; face.* (ORAL.)

**Osismi, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the Osismi*, a tribe living in the northwestern part of Gaul.

**ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum** (obs, from ob + tendō), *show; point out, declare.*

**ostentātiō, -ōnis** (ostentō), f., *display, OSTENTATION; pride.*

**ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (intens. of ostendō), *display.*

**ōtium, ōtī**, n., *repose, quiet, leisure.*

**ōvum, -ī**, n., *egg.* (OVAL.)

## P

**P.**, abbreviation for Pūblius, a Roman *praenōmen*, or first name.

**pābulātiō, -ōnis** (pābulor), f., *foraging.*

**pābulātor, -tōris** (pābulor), m., *forager.*

**pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum** (pābulum), *obtain fodder, forage.*

**pābulum, -ī**, n., *fodder.*

**pācātus, -a, -um** (part. of pācō), *adj., subdued, peaceful.*

**pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (pāx), *pacify, subdue.*

**pactum, -ī** (paciscor), n., *agreement, COMPACT; manner, way.*

**Padus, -ī**, m., *the Padus, modern Po*, a river in northern Italy.

- Paemānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Paemani,** a tribe of the Belgae.
- paene, adv., almost, nearly.** (PENINSULAR.)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., it causes regret; with an accusative, eōs paenitet, they regret.** (PENITENT, PENITENTIARY.)
- pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton.** (PAGAN.)
- palam, adv., openly.**
- palma, -ae, f., PALM** of the hand, hand.
- palūs, palūdis, f., swamp, marsh.**
- palūster, -tris, -tre (palūs), adj., marshy, swampy.**
- pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, spread, stretch out; passis manibus, with outstretched hands.** (EXPAND.)
- pār, paris, adj., equal, like, a match for.** (PAR.)
- parātus, -a, -um, comp. parātor, sup. parātissimus (part. of parō), adj., ready, prepared, equipped; comp. better prepared.**
- parcē (parcus), adv., sparingly.**
- parcō, parcere, pepercī and parsi, —, fut. part. parsūrus, spare; use sparingly.** (PARSIMONY.)
- parēns, -ntis (pariō), m. and f., PARENT.**
- parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (parēns), offer sacrifice in honor of the dead, avenge.**
- pārēō, pārēre, pārui, —, fut. part. pāritūrus, obey; be subject.**
- pariō, parere, peperī, partum, bring forth; win, gain.**
- Parisii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Parisii,** a tribe living in Gaul on the river *Sēquana* (*Seine*). The name *Paris* is from *Lutetia Parisiōrum*, their chief city.
- parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare, get ready, get ready for; gain, purchase.**
- pars, partis, f., PART, share; division, quarter, region; side, direction; ad utramque partem, at each end, at both ends.**
- partim (acc. of pars), adv., PARTLY, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others.**
- partior, partiri, partitus sum (pars), dep., divide, PART, share.**
- partus, perf. part. of pariō.**
- parum (cf. parvus), adv., too little; comp. minus, less, not; sup. minimē, least, very little; by no means, not at all.**
- parvulus, -a, -um (dimin. of parvus), adj., very small; young; unimportant, trifling.**
- parvus, -a, -um, comp. minor, sup. minimus, adj., small; unimportant.**
- passim (passus, part. of pandō), adv., in all directions.**
- passus, -ūs (pandō), m., PACE, double step; mille passūs, pl., milia passuum, a mile.**
- passus, perf. part. of pandō, and of patior.**
- patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, pass. patefiō, -fierī, -factus sum (pateō + faciō), open, lay open.**
- patēns, -ntis (part. of pateō), adj., open.** (PATENT.)
- pateō, patēre, patuī, —, be open; extend.**
- pater, patris, m., father; pl. forefathers, ancestors.** (PATER-  
TERNAL.)

**pator, patī, passus sum, dep.,**  
*suffer, endure; allow, permit.*  
 (PASSIVE, PATIENT.)

**patrius, -a, -um (pater), adj.,**  
*of a father, father's; of one's*  
*ancestors.*

**patrōnus, -ī (pater), m., PATRON,**  
*protector.*

**patruus, -ī (pater), m., father's**  
*brother, uncle.*

**paucitās, -tātis (paucus), f.,**  
*fewness, small number. (PAU-*  
*CITY.)*

**paucus, -a, -um, adj., rarely used**  
*in the singular, few.*

**paulātim (paulum), adv., little**  
*by little, gradually.*

**paulis-per (cf. paulum), adv.,**  
*for a little while.*

**paulō (abl. of paulus, little),**  
*adv., by a little, a little.*

**paululum (paulus, little), adv.,**  
*a very little, slightly.*

**paulum (acc. of paulus, little),**  
*adv., a little, somewhat.*

**pāx, pācis, f., PEACE.**

**peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, do**  
*wrong, sin.*

**pectus, -toris, n., breast.**  
 (PECTORAL.)

**pecūnia, -ae (pecus), f., prop-**  
*erty, money. (PECUNIARY.)*

**pecus, -oris, n., cattle; flesh of**  
*cattle, meat.*

**pedālis, -e (pēs), adj., a foot**  
*thick.*

**pedes, peditis (pēs), m., foot-**  
*soldier; pl., infantry.*

**pedester, -tris, -tre (pēs), adj.,**  
*on foot, foot-, of foot-soldiers;*  
*pedestre proelium, battle on*  
*land. (PEDESTRIAN.)*

**peditātus, -ūs (pedes), m.,**  
*infantry.*

**Pedius, Pedī, m., Pedius, gentile**

name of *Q. Pedius*, Caesar's  
 grand-nephew, who served  
 as a lieutenant in Caesar's  
 army.

**peior, comp. of malus, bad.**

**pellis, pellis, f., skin, hide.**

**pellō, pellerē, pepulī, pulsum,**  
*drive out, EXPEL; defeat, rout.*

**pendō, pendere, pependī, pēn-**  
*sum, weigh out, pay. (EX-*  
*PENSE.)*

**penes, prep. with acc., in the**  
*possession of.*

**penitus, adv., far within.**

**per, prep. with acc., through,**  
*along, over; through the agency*  
*of; by means of; with respect*  
*to; on account of. See Introd.*  
*144, 4. In composition, thor-*  
*oughly, very.*

**per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum,**  
*do thoroughly, finish.*

**per-angustus, -a, -um, adj.,**  
*very narrow.*

**perceptus, perf. part. of per-**  
*cipiō.*

**percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum**  
*(per + capiō), receive, gain;*  
*learn. (PERCEPTION.)*

**percontātiō, -ōnis (percontor,**  
*inquire into), f., inquiry.*

**per-currō, -currere, -cucurrī, or**  
*-curri, -cursum, run through,*  
*run along.*

**percussus, perf. part. of per-**  
*cutiō.*

**percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cus-**  
*sum (per + quatiō), strike*  
*through, pierce. (PERCUSSION.)*

**per-discō, -discere, -didici, —,**  
*learn thoroughly, learn by*  
*heart.*

**perditus, -a, -um (part. of**  
*perdō, destroy), adj., aban-*  
*doned, desperate.*

- per-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *lead through, conduct, convey; construct, extend, prolong.*
- perendinus**, -a, -um (perendiē, *day after to-morrow*), adj., *of the day after to-morrow; per-endinō diē, on the day after to-morrow.*
- per-eō**, perire, perii, —, fut. part., peritūrus, PERISH, die.
- per-equitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ride through; ride about.*
- per-exiguus**, -a, -um, adj., *very small.*
- per-facilis**, -e, adj., *very easy.*
- perfectus**, perf. part. of perficiō.
- per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring; report; endure, bear, suffer; pass., arrive at, reach.*
- perficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (per + faciō), *do thoroughly; accomplish, perform, carry out, bring about; finish, complete.* (PERFECT.)
- perfidia**, -ae (perfīdus, *faithless*), adj., *faithlessness, PER-FIDY, treachery.*
- perfringō**, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum (per + frangō), *break through.*
- perfuga**, -ae (perfugiō), m., *deserter.*
- per-fugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee for refuge, desert.*
- perfugium**, perfūgī (perfugiō), n., *place of refuge.*
- pergō**, pergere, perrēxī, per-rēctum (per + regō, *direct*), *proceed, advance.*
- periclitōr**, -ārī, -ātus sum (peri-culum), dep., *make trial; try, make trial of; be in danger.*
- periculōsus**, -a, -um (pericu-lum), adj., *dangerous, PERIL-IOUS.*
- periculum**, -ī (perior, *try*), n., *trial, test; danger, risk, PERIL.*
- perītus**, -a, -um, comp. peritior, sup. perītissimus, adj., *experienced, skilled; familiar with.*
- perlātus**, perf. part. of perferō.
- perlēctus**, perf. part. of perlegō.
- per-legō**, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *read through.*
- per-luō**, -luere, -luī, -lūtum, *wash; in the pass., bathe.*
- per-magnus**, -a, -um, adj., *very great, very large.*
- per-maneō**, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm, *remain, continue; abide by.* (PERMANENT.)
- per-misceō**, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, *mix thoroughly, mingle.*
- per-mittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *intrust, commit; PERMIT, allow.*
- permixtus**, perf. part. of per-misceō.
- permōtus**, perf. part. of per-moveō.
- per-moveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum, *move deeply, influence; excite, arouse; alarm.*
- per-mulceō**, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *soothe, calm.*
- permulsus**, perf. part. of per-mulceō.
- perniciēs**, perniciēī (per, cf. nex), f., *destruction, ruin.*
- per-pauci**, -ae, -a, adj., pl., *very few.*
- perpendicularum**, -ī (perpendō), n., *plumb-line; ad perpendi-culum, straight down, PER-PENDICULARLY.*

- perpetior, -peti, -pessus sum** (per + patior), dep., bear to the end, bear patiently, endure.
- perpetuō (perpetuus), adv., per-**manently, PERPETUALLY.
- perpetuus, -a, -um (per + petō), adj., continuous, un-**interrupted, PERPETUAL; whole, unbroken; in perpetuum, forever.
- perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum (per + quaerō), in-**quire about carefully.
- per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break, break through.**
- per-scribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, write, describe, re-**port.
- per-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, dep., follow up, pursue; at-**tack. (PERSECUTE.)
- persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (persevērus, very stern), con-tinue, persist, PERSEVERE.
- per-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -so-**lūtum, pay in full, pay.
- perspectus, perf. part. of per-**spectiō.
- perspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-**tum (per + speciō, look), see through; see, observe, notice; learn, become acquainted with, understand. (PERSPICACITY, PERSPECTIVE.)
- per-stō, -stāre, -stiti, —, fut.** part. perstātūrus, stand firm, persist.
- per-suādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsum, PERSUADE, induce.**
- per-terreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territum, TERRIFY, greatly**frighten.
- perterritus, perf. part. of per-**terreō.
- pertinācia, -ae (pertināx, stub-**born), f., stubbornness, PER-TINACITY.
- pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, — (per** + teneō), extend, stretch; tend, tend to; PERTAIN to, concern.
- perturbātiō, -ōnis (perturbō), f.,**disturbance, commotion. (PERTURBATION.)
- per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,**throw into confusion, disturb, agitate. (PERTURB.)
- per-vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,**roam about, rove.
- per-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-**tum, come to, reach, arrive at.
- pēs, pedis, m., foot. (PEDAL.)**
- petitus, perf. part. of petō.**
- petō, petere, petivī, petitum,**seek, try to reach; attack; beg, ask, request. (COMPETE.)
- Petrocorii, -ōrum, m. pl., the**Petrocorii, a tribe in central Gaul, living north of the Garumna (Garonne).
- Petrōnius, Petrōnī, m., Pe-**tronius, name of M. Petrōnius, a Roman centurion.
- Petrosidius, Petrosīdī, m., Pe-**trosidius, name of L. Petrosidius, one of Caesar's stand-ard-bearers.
- phalanx, -angis, f., PHALANX, a**body of troops.
- Pictionēs, -um, m. pl., the Pic-**tones, a Gallic people living on the Atlantic coast, south of the Liger (Loire).
- pietās, -tātis (pius), f., loyalty;**patriotism. (PIETY.)
- pilum, -ī, n., javelin, pike.**
- pilus, -ī (pilum), m., manipule;**primus pilus, a manipule of the triarii; primī pili centuriō, or primus pilus, chief centurion.

- pinna**, -ae, f., *feather*; in military language, *battlement*.
- Pirustae**, -ārum, m. pl., *the Pirustae*, a tribe of Illyria.
- piscis**, piscis, m., *fish*. (PISCATORIAL.)
- Pisō**, -ōnis, m., *Piso*, surname of (1) *L. Calpurnius Pisō Caesōnīnus*, consul in 112 B.C.; (2) *L. Calpurnius Pisō*, consul in 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar; (3) *M. Pupius Pisō Calpurniānus*, consul in 61 B.C.; (4) *Pisō*, an Aquitanian.
- pix**, picis, f., *PITCH*.
- placeō**, placēre, placuī, placitum, PLEASE; used in Caesar only impersonally; **placet**, *it pleases*; *it is determined*.
- placidē** (placidus), adv., *quietly*. (PLACIDLY.)
- plācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, PLACATE, *appease*.
- Plancus**, -ī, m., *Plancus*, surname of *L. Mūnātius Plancus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- plānē** (plānus), adv., PLAINLY, *clearly*.
- plānitēs**, -ēī (plānus), f., *level ground*, *plain*.
- plānus**, -a, -um, comp. plānior, sup. plānissimus, adj., *level*, *flat*. (PLAIN.)
- plēbs**, plēbis, or plēbēs, plēbei, f., *common people*, *populace*. (PLEBEIAN.)
- plēnē** (plēnus), adv., *fully*, *entirely*.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, comp. plēnior, sup. plēnissimus, adj., *full*.
- plērumque** (plērusque), adv., *generally*, *for the most part*, *as a rule*.
- plērusque**, -raque, -rumque (plērus, *very many*), adj., commonly pl., *very many*, *most*.
- Pleumoxii**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Pleumoxii*, a tribe of the Belgians.
- plumbum**, -ī, n., *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin*. (PLUMBER.)
- plūrimus**, sup. of multus.
- plūrimum** (cf. multus), adv., sup., *very much*; **plūrimum posse**, *to have very great power*, *be the most powerful*.
- plūs**, plūris, comp. of multus. (PLUS.)
- pluteus**, -ī, m., *shed* for protecting advancing besiegers; *breastwork*.
- pōculum**, -ī, n., *drinking-cup*, *cup*.
- poena**, -ae, f., *punishment*, *PENALTY*.
- pollex**, -licis, m., *thumb*; **digitus pollex**, *thumb*.
- polliceor**, -licēri, -licitus sum (por = prō + liceor, *offer*), dep., *promise*, *offer*.
- pollicitātiō**, -ōnis (pollicitor intens. of polliceor), f., *promise*, *offer*.
- pollicitus**, perf. part. of polliceor.
- Pompeius**, Pompēi, m., *Pompeius*, surname of *C. Pompeius Magnus*, *Pompey the Great*, and of *C. Pompeius*, an interpreter.
- pondus**, ponderis (cf. pendō), n., *weight*. (PONDEROUS.)
- pōnō**, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*, *set*, *put*; *lay down*, *lay aside*; pass., *be situated*, *lie*; *depend on*. (POSITION.)
- pōns**, pontis, m., *bridge*. (PONT-TOON.)

- populatiō, -ōnis** (populor), f., *plundering, pillaging.* (DEPOPULATION.)
- populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,** *lay waste, ravage, devastate,* (DEPOPULATE.)
- populus, -ī, m.,** *people, tribe, nation.* (POPULACE.)
- porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** (por = prō + regō), *stretch out, extend.*
- porrō, adv.,** *further, furthermore.*
- porta, -ae, f.,** *gate.* (PORTAL.)
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry,** *bring.* (PORTER.)
- portōrium, portōrī, n.,** *toll, customs duty.*
- portus, -ūs, m.,** *harbor, PORT.*
- poscō, poscere, poposci, —,** *demand.*
- positus, perf. part. of pōnō.**
- possessiō, -ōnis** (possideō), f., *POSSESSION, pl., possessions, lands, property.*
- possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum** (por = prō + sedeō), *hold, POSSESS, occupy.*
- possidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum** (por = prō + sidō), *take POSSESSION of.*
- possum, posse, potui, —,** *be able, can; have influence, be powerful; plūrimum posse, be most powerful, have very great power; minimum posse, have very little power; etc.*
- post, adv. and prep. with acc.,** *after, afterwards; behind; since.* (POST-MORTEM, etc.)
- post-eā, adv.,** *afterwards.*
- postea-quam, conj.,** *after.*
- posterus, -a, -um (post), adj.,** *nom. sing., not in use, following; as subst., posterī, -ōrum, m. pl., descendants.*
- post-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place after, consider less valuable.** (POSTPONE.)
- postpositus, perf. part. of post-pōnō.**
- pōst-quam, conj.,** *after; often written post quam.*
- postrēmō (postrēmus), adv.,** *at last, finally.*
- postridiē** (locative of posterus diēs), *adv., the following day; postridiē eius diēi, the following day.*
- postulātum, -ī (postulō), n.,** *demand.*
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand, request.** (EXPOSTULATE.)
- potēns, -ntis, comp. potentior, sup. potentissimus (possum), adj.,** *powerful.* (POTENT.)
- potentātus, -ūs (potēns), m.,** *chief power.* (POTENTATE.)
- potentia, -ae (potēns), f.,** *power, influence.* (POTENCY.)
- potestās, -tātis (potis, able), f.,** *power, opportunity; permission, privilege.*
- potior, potiri, potitus sum** (potis, able), *dep., get possession of, secure.*
- potissimum, sup. of potius.**
- potius (potis, able), adv., comp.,** *rather; sup. potissimum, especially.*
- prae, prep. with abl.,** *in comparison with; on account of. In composition, before; very.*
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj.,** *sharpened at the end, pointed; very sharp.*
- praebeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum** (prae + habeō), *furnish, afford, give; show, cause, occasion.*

**prae-caveō**, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *take PRECAUTIONS*; **mag-nopere praecavēre**, *take great precautions.*

**prae-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go before, PRECEDE*; *surpass, excel.*

**praeceps**, -cipitis (*prae + caput*), adj., *headlong*; **PRECIPITOUS.**

**praecipio**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*prae + capiō*), *anticipate; order, command.* (**PRECEPT, PRECEPTOR.**)

**praecipitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*praeceps*), *throw headlong, PRECIPITATE.*

**praecipuē** (*praecipuus*), adv., *especially.*

**praecipuus**, -a, -um (*prae*, cf. *capiō*), adj., *special, especial.*

**praeccludō**, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum (*prae + claudō*), *shut up, block up.* (**PRECLUDE.**)

**praecō**, -cōnis, m., *herald, crier.*  
**Praeconinus**, -ī, m., *Praeconinus*, surname of *C. Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman officer.

**prae-currō**, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, *run ahead, anticipate.* (**PRECURSOR.**)

**praeda**, -ae, f., *booty, plunder.*

**prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *assert, declare, claim; boast.*

**praedor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (*praeda*), dep., *plunder, pillage.*

**prae-dūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *extend, prolong; construct.*

**praefectus**, perf. part. of *praeficiō*.

**praefectus**, -ī (*praeficiō*), m., *commander, PREFECT.*

**prae-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *put before, PREFER*; *sē prae-ferre, outdo; excel.*

**praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*prae + faciō*), *place before, put in command of.*

**prae-figō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten in front, set in front.* (**PREFIX.**)

**prae-metūō**, -metuere, —, —, *apprehend, be anxious.*

**prae-mittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *send before, send ahead.* (**PREMISE.**)

**praemium**, *praemī* (*prae + emō*), n., *reward, honor.* (**PREMIUM.**)

**prae-occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize beforehand, PREOCCUPY.*

**prae-optō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prefer.*

**prae-parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *get ready, PREPARE.*

**prae-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place before; place over, put in command of.* (**PREPOSITION.**)

**prae-rumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break off.*

**praeruptus**, -a, -um (part. of *praerumpō*), adj., *steep.*

**prae-saepiō**, -saepire, -saepsī, -saeptum, *hedge in, barricade, block.*

**prae-scribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *direct, PRESCRIBE, dictate.*

**praescriptum**, -ī (*praescribō*), n., *command, order.* (**PRESCRIPTION.**)

**praesēns**, -ntis (*praesum*), adj., *PRESENT, in person.*

**praesentia**, -ae (*praesēns*), f., *PRESENCE; PRESENT; in praesentiā, at present, for the present.*

**prae-sentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *perceive beforehand.*



**praesertim** (*prae + serō, join*),  
adv., especially, particularly.

**praesidium, praesidī** (*praeses, guard*), n., protection, guard, garrison; troops; post, station; fortification.

**prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum**,  
surpass, be superior, excel; exhibit, show; perform, do; impers. *praestat, it is better*.

**praestō, adv.**, present, at hand; *praestō esse, be ready for, meet*.

**prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, —**, be before, be at the head of, be in command of, have charge of.

**praeter, prep. with acc.**, past, beyond; contrary to; except. (PRETERNATURAL.)

**praeter-eā, adv.**, besides, moreover.

**praeter-eō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -itum**, pass over.

**praeteritus, -a, -um** (part. of *praetereō*), adj., past; as subst. *praeterita, -ōrum*, n. pl., the past; lit., "past things." (PRETERITIVE, PRETERIT.)

**praeter-mittō, -mittēre, -misi, -misum**, pass by, let pass, neglect.

**praeter-quam, adv.**, other than, besides.

**praetor, -tōris** (for *praeitor* from *praeō*), m., general, commander, PRAETOR.

**praetōrius, -a, -um** (*praetor*), adj., of the general, PRAETORIAN; *praetoria cohors, praetorian cohort*, the general's body-guard.

**praeustus, -a, -um** (part. of *praeūrō*), adj., burnt at the end.

**prae-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, —**, anticipate, prevent.

**prāvus, -a, -um, adj.**, bad; poor, inferior. (DEPRAVED.)

**premō, premere, pressi, pressum**, PRESS, press hard, oppress, weigh down; pass., be hard pressed, be distressed.

**prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm** (for *prehendō*), take, seize, grasp.

**pretium, preti, n.**, PRICE. (PRECIOUS.)

**prex, precis, f.**, found generally in the pl., prayers, entreaties.

**pridīe, adv.**, the day before; *pridīe eius diēi, the previous day, the day before*.

**prīmipilus, -ī** (*primus + pilus*), m., chief centurion, first centurion of the first cohort.

**prīmō** (abl. of *primus*), adv., at first.

**prīmum** (acc. of *primus*), adv., first, at first; *quam primum, as soon as possible*.

**primus, -a, -um, sup. of prior**, adj., first, first part of, beginning of. (PRIME, PRIMARY.)

**prīnceps, -cipis** (*primus, cf. capiō*), adj., first, chief; as subst., m., chief, leader, head. (PRINCIPLE, PRINCIPAL.)

**prīncipātus, -ūs** (*princeps*), m., headship, leadership. (PRINCIPATE.)

**prior, prius** (cf. *prō*), comp., adj., sup. *primus, former, first*; as subst. *priōrēs, -um*, m. pl., those in front. (PRIOR, PRIORITY.)

**prīstinus, -a, -um** (cf. *prius*), adj., former, previous, PRISTINE.

- prius** (prior), adv., *before, sooner, earlier.*
- prius-quam**, conj., *before*; often written **prius . . . quam.**
- privatim** (privātus), adv., **PRIVATELY**, *personally.*
- privātus**, -a, -um (part. of **privō**, *set apart*), **PRIVATE**; as subst. **privātus**, -ī, m., *a private individual.*
- prō**, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; in behalf of; instead of; considering, in proportion to, in comparison with; as, as if.* See **Introd.** 142, 7.
- pro-**, another form of **prō** used only in composition.
- probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**probus**, *good*), *approve of; prove, show, represent.* (**APPROBATION.**)
- prō-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward*, **PROCEED.**
- Procillus**, -ī, m., *Procillus*, surname of **C. Valerius Procillus**, a Roman officer.
- prōclīnātus**, see **prōclīnō.**
- prō-clīnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bend forward*; perf. pass. part., *desperate*; **rēs prōclīnāta**, *desperate plight.*
- prō-cōnsul**, -cōnsulis, m., **PROCONSUL**, an ex-consul appointed to govern a province.
- procul**, adv., *far off, at a distance, from afar.*
- prō-cumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lie down, sink down, lean forward, slope.*
- prō-cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *care for, manage, administer, attend to.*
- prō-currō**, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, *run forward.*
- prōdeō**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -itum (**prō(d) + eō**), *come forward, come forth, advance.*
- prōdesse**, infin. of **prōsum.**
- prōditiō**, -ōnis (**prōdō**), f., *betrayal, treason, treachery.*
- prōditor**, -ōris (**prōdō**), m., *traitor.*
- prōditus**, perf. pass. part. of **prōdō.**
- prō-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *give up, betray; hand down, transmit.*
- prō-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth, lead out; prolong, extend.* (**PRODUCE, PRODUCE.**)
- proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**proelium**), *fight.*
- proelium**, **proeli**, n., *battle, fight.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis (**proficiscor**), f., *departure, setting out.*
- prōfectus**, perf. part. of **prōficiō.**
- profectus**, perf. part. of **proficiscor.**
- prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring forth, produce.*
- prōficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (**prō + faciō**), *effect, accomplish, make.* (**PROFICIENT.**)
- proficiscor**, -ficiscī, -fectus sum (**pro-**, cf. **faciō**), *set out, depart, proceed.*
- profiteor**, -fitērī, -fessus sum (**pro- + fateor**), *promise, offer, volunteer.* (**PROFESS.**)
- prō-fligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overthrow, overcome.* (**PROFLIGATE.**)
- prō-fluō**, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *flow forth, flow.*
- pro-fugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, — (**pro- + fugiō**), *flee, escape.*
- prōfui**, perf. ind. of **prōsum.**

- prō-gnātus**, adj., descended, sprung.
- prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (prō + gradior, *step*), advance, proceed. (PROGRESS.)
- prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum (prō + habeō), hold in check, restrain, hinder; defend, protect; shut off, keep off, repel. (PROHIBIT.)
- prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (prō + iaciō), throw, cast; throw down, throw away, abandon. (PROJECT.)
- pro-inde**, adv., therefore.
- prō-mineō**, -minēre, -minuī, —, bend forward, project. (PROMINENT.)
- prōmiscuē** (prōmiscuus), adv., PROMISCUOUSLY; in common.
- prōmissus**, -a, -um (prōmittō), adj., allowed to grow, long, flowing.
- prō-moveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move forward, advance. (PROMOTE.)
- prōmptus**, -a, -um (prōmō, bring forth), adj., ready, quick, PROMPT.
- prōmunturium**, promuntūrī (prō-mineō, jut forth), n., PROMONTORY.
- prōnē** (prōnus), adv., bending forward, inclined. (PRONE.)
- prō-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, declare; PRO-NOUNCE.
- prope**, adv., comp. propius, sup. proximē, near, almost.
- prō-pellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive away, repel. (PROPEL, PROPULSION.)
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (properus, quick), hasten, hurry.
- propinquitās**, -tātis (propinquus), f., nearness, PROPINQUITY; relationship.
- propinquus**, -a, -um (prope), adj., near, neighboring; related; as subst. propinquus, -ī, m., relative.
- propior**, propius (prope), adj., comp., nearer.
- propius**, comp. of prope, adv., nearer.
- prō-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain, describe; offer, PROPOSE; show, display.
- proprius**, -a, -um (prope), adj., one's own, peculiar, characteristic. (PROPER.)
- propter**, prep. with acc., on account of.
- propter-eā**, adv., on that account, on this account; propterea quod, because.
- prōpugnātor**, -tōris (prōpugnō), m., defender (one who fights for, or in front of).
- prō-pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight on the defensive, defend oneself.
- prō-pulsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (intens. of prōpellō), drive away, ward off. (PROPULSION.)
- prōra**, -ae, f., PROW; bow of a ship.
- prō-ruō**, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tear down, cast down.
- prō-sēquor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep., follow, pursue. (PROSECUTE.)
- prōspectus**, -ūs (prōspiciō), m., view, PROSPECT.
- prōspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum (prō + speciō, look), look forward, look out for, provide for. (PROSPECT.)

- prō-sternō**, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *destroy, ruin.* (PROSTRATE.)
- prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfui, — (prō and earlier form prōd + sum), *be serviceable, help.*
- prō-tegō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, PROTECT.
- prō-terreō**, -terrere, -terrui, -territum, *frighten off.*
- prōtinus** (prō + tenus, *as far as*), adv., *at once, immediately.*
- prō-turbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *drive off, repulse.*
- prōvectus**, perf. part. of prōvehō.
- prō-vehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry forward; pass, put out to sea, set sail.*
- prō-veniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *come forth, grow out.*
- prōventus**, -ūs (prōveniō), m., *outcome; success (successful outcome).*
- prō-videō**, -videre, -vidī, -vīsum, *foresee, PROVIDE for, look out for.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, f., PROVINCE; *often the Province, referring to the Roman province of Gaul.*
- prōvinciālis**, -e (prōvincia), of the province, PROVINCIAL, referring to the Roman province of Gaul.
- prōvīsus**, perf. part. of prōvideō.
- prō-volō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *fly forth, rush forth.*
- proximē**, sup. of prope, adv., *nearest, next; lately, recently.*
- proximus**, -a, -um, sup. of propior, adj., *nearest, next, following; last.* (PROXIMITY.)
- prūdētia**, -ae (prūdēns for prōvidēns, *foreseeing*), f., *fore-sight, PRUDENCE.*
- Ptiānii**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ptiānii, an Aquitanian tribe.*
- pūber** or **pūbes**, pūberis, adj., *adult, grown up.*
- pūblicē** (pūblicus), adv., PUBLICLY, *as a state.*
- pūblicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pūblicus), *make PUBLIC property, confiscate.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um (pūbēs, *youth, citizens*), adj., *of the people, of the state, PUBLIC; rēs pūblica, public affairs, the commonwealth, the REPUBLIC.*
- Pūblius**, Pūbli, m., *Publius, a Roman praenōmen, or first name.*
- pudor**, -dōris, m., *shame.*
- puer**, pueri, m., *boy; ā pueris, from boyhood.*
- puerilis**, -e (puer), adj., *of a boy, young.* (PUERILE.)
- pugna**, -ae, f., *fight, battle.* (PUGNACIOUS.)
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pugna), *fight, engage in battle.*
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful; noble.*
- Pullō**, -ōnis, m., *Pullo, the name of a Roman centurion.*
- pulsus**, perf. part. of pellō.
- pulsus**, -ūs (pellō), m., *stroke; rēmōrum pulsus, handling of the oars, rowing, stroke.* (PULSE.)
- pulvis**, -veris, m., *dust.* (PULVERIZE.)
- puppis**, puppis, f., *stern of a ship.*
- pūrgātus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of pūrgō), adj., *blameless.*
- pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cf. pūrus and agō), *make clean, excuse, exonerate.* (PURGE.)
- putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *think, regard, consider, believe.*

**Pyrænaeus**, -a, -um, adj., **PYRENEAN**; **Pyrænaei montēs**, the *Pyrenees*, a range of mountains between Spain and Gaul (France).

## Q

**Q.**, abbreviation for **Quintus**, a Roman first name.

**quā** (abl. of **quī**), adv., *where, by which way.*

**quadrāgēni**, -ae, -a (**quadrāgintā**), distr. num. adj., *forty each, forty apiece.*

**quadrāgintā** (**quattuor**), num. adj., indecl., *forty.*

**quadringenti**, -ae, -a (**quattuor + centum**), adj., *four hundred.*

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *seek; ask, inquire.*

**quaestiō**, -ōnis (**quaerō**), f., **QUESTION**, *investigation, trial.*

**quaestor**, -tōris (**quaerō**), m., **QUAESTOR**, a Roman official; in the army, *quartermaster and paymaster.*

**quaestus**, -ūs (**quaerō**), m., *gain.*

**quālis**, **quāle** (cf. **quī**), interrog. adj., *of what kind.* (**QUALITY**.)

**quam** (acc. of **quī**), adv. and conj., *how; than, as; quam diū*, *as long as*; with a superlative, *as possible.*

**quam diū**, see **quam**.

**quam ob rem**, used interrogatively and relatively, *on account of which thing, for which reason, wherefore, why.*

**quam-vīs**, adv., *as much as you wish, however much, however.*

**quandō**, adv., *at any time, ever.*

**quantopere** (= **quantō opere**), adv., *how greatly, how much.*

**quantus**, -a, -um (**quam**), adj., interrog. and rel., *how great? how much? as great as, as much as; with tantus, as.*

**quantus-vīs**, -avis, -umvīs, adj., *as great as you wish or please, however great.*

**quārē**, or **quā rē**, adv., *wherefore? why? on account of which.*

**quārtus**, -a, -um (**quattuor**), num. adj., *fourth.* (**QUARTER**.)

**quasi** (**quam + si**), adv., *as if.*

**quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four.*

**quattuordecim** (**quattuor + decem**), num. adj., indecl., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.*

**quemadmodum**, or **quem ad modum**, adv., *in what way, how? as.*

**queror**, **querī**, **questus sum**, dep., *complain; complain of, bewail.* (**QUERULOUS**.)

**questus**, perf. part. of **queror**.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, gen. **cuius**, rel. and interrog. pron.; *as rel., who, which.* See **Introductio**.

158. **As** interrog., *what? what kind of a?*

**quicquam**, see **quisquam**.

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. pron. and adj., *whocver, whatever, whichever.*

**quid**, see **quis**.

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. adj. and pron., *a certain, a certain one.*

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, at least; nē . . . quidem*, *not even.*

**quiēs**, **quiētis**, f., **rest**, **QUIET**; *sleep.*

- quiētus**, -a, -um (*quiēs*), f., QUIET, *peaceful*.
- quīn** (*quī*, abl., + *ne*, *not*); conj.; *why not, by which not; that not, that, but that; from, without; quīn etiam, moreover, nay more.*
- quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, *what in the world? what possible?*
- quīncūnx**, -ūncis, f., *five-spot on dice; in quīncūncem, an arrangement by fives, thus:—*  
 . . . . .  
 . . . . .
- quīndecim** (*quīnque* + *decem*), num. adj., indecl., *fifteen*.
- quīngentī**, -ae, -a (*quīnque* + *centum*), num. adj., *five hundred*.
- quīnī**, -ae, -a (*quīnque*), distr. num. adj., *five apiece, five each*.
- quīnquāgintā** (*quīnque*), num. adj., indecl., *fifty*.
- quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five*.
- quīntus**, -a, -um (*quīnque*), num. adj., *fifth*.
- Quīntus**, -ī (*quīntus*), *Quintus*, a Roman praenomen or first name, abbreviated Q.
- quis**, **quid**, gen. *cuius*, interrog. pron. *who? what? quid, why?*
- quis** or **quī**, **quae** or **qua**, **quid** or **quod**, gen. *cuius*, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything, any*.
- quisnam**, **quaenam**, **quidnam**, gen. *cuiusnam*, interrog. pron., *who, pray? what in the world?*
- quispiam**, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam**, and as adj., **quodpiam**, gen. *cuiuspiam*, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything; as adj., any*.
- quisquam**, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.
- quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, or **quodque**, gen. *cuiusque*, indef. pron. and adj., *each, each one, each man*.
- quisquis**, **quicquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.
- quī-vīs**, **quae-vīs**, **quid-vīs** or **quod-vīs**, gen. *cuius-vīs*, indef. pron. and adj., *any one you wish, anything you wish*.
- quō** (*quī*), rel., interrog., and indef. adv., *whither, to which place, where, anywhere*.
- quō** (*quī*), conj., *in order that, that, used especially with comparatives; quō minus, that not; often best translated by from with a participle*.
- quoad** (*quō* + *ad*), conj., *as long as; until, till*.
- quod** (*quī*), conj., *because; as to the fact that, that*.
- quōminus**, see **quō**.
- quoniam** (*quom* = *cum* + *iam*), conj., *since, because; inasmuch as*.
- quoque**, adv., *also, too*.
- quōqueversus**, or **quōque ver-**  
**sus**, adv., *in all directions*.
- quot**, indecl. adj., *as many as*.
- quotannis** (*quot*, cf. *annus*), adv., *every year, yearly*.
- quotiēns** (*quot*), interrog. adv., *how often? as often as*.

## R

- rādix**, **rādīcis**, f., *root; of a mountain, foot, base*. (RADICAL.)
- rādō**, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, *shave*. (RAZOR, ERASE.)

- raeda**, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels.  
**rāmus**, -ī, m., branch, bough. (RAMIFICATION.)  
**rapiditās**, -tātis (rapidus, swift), f., swiftness, RAPIDITY.  
**rapina**, -ae (rapiō), f., pillaging, plundering, RAPINE.  
**rārus**, -a, -um, adj., scattered, here and there; RARE.  
**rāsus**, perf. part. of **rādō**.  
**ratiō**, -ōnis (reor, reckon), f., reckoning, account; way, means, plan, arrangement; regard, consideration; knowledge, theory; reason, ground. (RATIONAL.)  
**ratis**, **ratis**, f. raft.  
**Rauraci**, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rauraci, a people living on the Rhine.  
**re-** and **red-**, used in composition, back, again.  
**rebelliō**, -ōnis (rebellis, from **re-** and **bellum**), f., renewal of fighting, uprising, revolt, REBELLION.  
**re-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, —, fut. part. **recessūrus**, draw back, withdraw; RECEDE.  
**recēns**, **recentis**, adj., fresh, new; RECENT.  
**re-cēnsēō**, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, —, review.  
**receptāculum**, -ī (receptō, intens. of **recipiō**), n., place of refuge, retreat. (RECEPTACLE.)  
**receptus**, perf. part. of **recipiō**.  
**receptus**, -ūs (recipiō), m., retreat.  
**recessus**, -ūs (recēdō), m., retreat; means of retreat.  
**recidō**, -cidere, **recidī**, —, fut. part. **recāsūrus** (**re-** + **cadō**), fall back; be reduced.  
**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**re-** + **capiō**), take back, recover; admit, receive; sē **recipere**, retreat; recover oneself. (RECEPTION.)  
**recitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, read aloud, RECITE.  
**re-clinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bend back; pass. and reflexive, sē **reclināre**, lean back (bend oneself back), RECLINE.  
**rēctē** (rēctus), adv., rightly, bravely.  
**rēctus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of **regō**), adj., straight. (RECTIFY.)  
**recuperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**re-**, cf. **capiō**), recover, regain. (RECUPERATE.)  
**recūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**re-**, cf. **causa**), refuse, reject; object.  
**redāctus**, perf. part. of **redigō**.  
**redditus**, perf. part. of **reddō**.  
**red-dō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return; render, make; appoint.  
**redēptus**, perf. part. of **redimō**.  
**red-eō**, **redire**, **redīi**, **reditum**, go back, return; sink back, slope back; be referred; be reduced.  
**redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (**red-** + **agō**), drive back; reduce; render, make.  
**redimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (**red-** + **emō**), buy, purchase; buy up, farm (of revenues). (REDEEM, REDEMPTION.)  
**redintegrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**red-** + **integer**, whole), renew, restore.  
**reditiō**, -ōnis (redeō), f., returning, return.  
**reditus**, -ūs (redeō), m., returning, return.

- Redonēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Redones*, a tribe living in north-western Gaul.
- re-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back; draw back, extend back.* (REDUCE, REDUCTION.)
- refectus**, perf. part. of **reficiō**.
- re-ferō**, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back, bring, carry back; announce, report; REFER; pedem referre, retreat; grātiām referre, return gratitude, make requital.* (RELATE.)
- reficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (re- + faciō), *make over, repair; refresh.* (REFECTORY.)
- refrāctus**, perf. part. of **refringō**.
- refringō**, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum (re- + frangō), *break down, break.*
- re-fugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee back, flee.* (REFUGE.)
- Rēginus**, -ī, m., *Reginus*, surname of *C. Antistius Rēginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- regiō**, -ōnis (regō, *direct*), f., *direction; REGION, territory; rēctā regiōne, in a direct line; parallel to.*
- rēgius**, -a, -um (rēx), adj., *royal.*
- rēgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (rēgnū), *reign, be king.*
- rēgnum**, -ī (cf. regō), n., *royal power; kingdom, REIGN; absolute authority.*
- regō**, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *DIRECT; control, manage.*
- rēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, (re- + iaciō), *throw back, hurl back; drive back, repulse; throw away.* (REJECT.)
- re-linguēscō**, -linguēscere, -linguī, —, *become feeble.*
- relātus**, perf. part. of **referō**.
- re-lēgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *banish.* (RELEGATE.)
- relictus**, perf. part. of **relinquō**.
- religiō**, -ōnis, f., *RELIGION, religious observance; superstition; scruple.*
- re-linguō**, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum (re- + linguō), *leave behind, leave, RELINQUISH; desert, abandon; leave off, give up; in pass. be left, remain.*
- reliquus**, -a, -um (relinquō), adj., *left, remaining, the remaining, the rest of.*
- re-maneō**, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *REMAIN behind, remain.*
- rēmex**, rēmigis (rēmus + agō), m., *rower.*
- rēmigō**, -āre, —. — (rēmex), *row.*
- re-migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *move back, go back.*
- re-miniscor**, -minisci, — (cf. me-min-i), dep., *remember, recollect.* (REMINISCENCE.)
- remissus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of **remittō**), adj., *relaxed, mild.* (REMISS.)
- re-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *send back, hurl back; relax, diminish, REMIT; set free.*
- re-mollēscō**, **re-mollēscere**, —, — (cf. mollis), *become soft, become weak or effeminate.*
- remōtus**, -a, -um (part. of **removeō**), adj., *distant, REMOTE.*
- re-moveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *move away, send away; REMOVE, dismiss.*
- re-mūneror**, -ārī, -ātus sum (cf. mūnus), dep., *reward, REMUNERATE.*



rēmus, -ī, m., *oar*.

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi*;  
pl., Rēmī, -ōrum, *the Remi*,  
a Belgian tribe.

rēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer hide*.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (re-  
+ novus), *RENEW*.

re-nūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
*bring back word, report, an-  
nounce*.

re-pellō, -pellere, reppuli, re-  
pulsum, *drive back, REPEL*.  
REPULSE.

repente (repēns, *sudden*), *adv.*,  
*suddenly*.

repentinus, -a, -um (repēns.  
*sudden*), *adj.*, *sudden, un-  
expected*.

reperiō, -perire, repperi, re-  
pertum, *find out, find; dis-  
cover, learn; invent, originate*.

re-petō, -petere, -petivī or -petiī,  
-petitum, *ask back, ask again;*  
*exact punishment*.

re-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,  
*fill full*. (REFLETE.)

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry  
back*. (REPORT.)

re-poscō, -poscere, —, —, *de-  
mand back, demand*.

re-praesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(cf. praesēns), *do at once*,  
*do immediately*.

re-prehendō, -prehendere, -pre-  
hendī, -prehensum, *hold back*;  
*chide, criticise, blame*. (REP-  
REHEND, REPREHENSIBLE.)

repressus, *perf. part. of re-  
primō*.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pres-  
sum (re- + primō), *hold in  
check, restrain*. (REPRESS.)

re-pudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf.  
pēs), *reject, scorn*. (REPUDI-  
ATE.)

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
*fight against, resist, oppose*;  
*be opposed to*. (REPUGNANT.)

repulsus, *perf. part. of repellō*.

requirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -qui-  
situm (re- + quaerō), *seek, de-  
mand; long for*. (REQUIRE.)

rēs, rēi, f., *thing, matter, affair*;  
*transaction, business, dealing*;  
rēs militāris, *warfare, art of  
war*; rēs novae, *a revolution*;  
rēs pública, *REPUBLIC, state*,  
*commonwealth*; rēs gestae,  
*deeds, exploits*.

re-scindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scis-  
sum, *cut down, tear down, de-  
stroy*. (RESCIND.)

re-sciscō, -sciscere, -scivī or  
-scii, -scitum, *find out, learn*.

re-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi,  
-scriptum, *enroll; transfer*.

re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *keep  
back, RESERVE, keep*.

re-sideō, -sidere, -sēdī, — (re-  
+ sedeō), *remain behind, be  
left; reside in, be vested in*.

re-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, —, *settle  
down, become quiet*.

re-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *re-  
main behind, stay*; RESIST,  
*withstand, oppose*.

respi-ciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-  
tum (re- + speciō, *look*), *look  
back; consider, regard*. (RES-  
PECT.)

re-spondeō, -spondere, -spondī,  
-spōnsum, *answer, reply*, RE-  
SPOND.

respōnsum, -ī (respondeō), n.,  
*reply, answer, RESPONSE*.

rēs pública, *see rēs*.

re-spuō, -spuere, -spuī, —,  
*reject*.

re-stinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi,  
-stinctum, *put out, quench*.

re-stituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *restore, renew; rebuild.* (RESTITUTION.)  
 retentus, perf. part. of retineō.  
 retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (re- + teneō), *hold back, restrain, RETAIN.*  
 re-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctum, *drag back, bring back.* (RETRACT.)  
 re-vellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsū, *pull back, pull up.* (REVULSION.)  
 reversus, perf. part. of revertor.  
 re-vertor, -verti, perf. act. re-verti, fut. part. reversurus, dep., except in the perfect stem, *turn back, return.* (REVERT, REVERSE.)  
 re-vinciō, -vincire, -vinxi, vinctum, *bind fast, bind, fasten.*  
 re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call back, recall.* (REVOKE.)  
 rēx, rēgis, m., *king.* (REGAL.)  
 Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*  
 Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone.*  
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank of a river.*  
 rīvus, -ī, m., *stream, brook.* (RIVULET.)  
 robur, roboris, n., *oak.*  
 rogo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, beg, request.*  
 Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um (Rōma), adj., *Roman; as subst., Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman; pl., the Romans.*  
 Rōscius, Rōsci, m., *Roscius, gentile name of L. Rōscius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*  
 rōstrum, -ī (rōdō, gnaw), n., *beak of a ship.*  
 rota, -ae, f., *wheel.* (ROTATE, ROTATION.)  
 rubus, -ī, m., *bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, -ī, m., *Rufus, surname of P. Sulpicius Rūfus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*  
 rūmor, -ōris, m., *RUMOR, report.*  
 rūpēs, rūpis (rumpō), f., *cliff, rock.*  
 rūrsus (for revorsus from revertō), adv., *again, anew; in turn, on the other hand.*  
 Rutēni, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ruteni, a tribe of central Gaul.*  
 Rutilus, -ī, m., *Rutilus, surname of M. Semprōnius Rutilus, one of Caesar's officers.*

## S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus, surname of Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*  
 Sabis, Sabis, m., *the Sabis (modern Sambre), a river in Belgic Gaul, a tributary of the Mosa (Meuse).*  
 sacerdōs, -dōtis (sacer, cf. dō), m. and f., *priest, priestess.* (SACERDOTAL.)  
 sacrāmentum, -ī (sacrō), n., *oath.* (SACRAMENT.)  
 sacrificium, sacrifici (sacra, cf. faciō), n., *SACRIFICE.*  
 saepe, comp. saepius, sup. saepissimē, adv., *often, frequently.*  
 saepenumerō, or saepe numerō, adv., *often, frequently.*  
 saepēs, saepis, f., *hedge.*  
 saeviō, saevire, saevii, saevitum (saevus, fierce), *rage, be violent.*  
 sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*  
 sagittārius, sagittāri (sagitta), m., *archer, bowman.*  
 sagulum, -ī (dim. of sagum), n., *military cloak.*

- saltus**, -ūs, m., *a wood; pass through mountains.*
- salūs**, salūtis, f., *safety, welfare; health.* (SALUTARY.)
- Samarobrīva**, -ae, f., *Samarobriva*, a town of the Ambiani.
- sanciō**, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, *make sacred; ordain, enact.* (SANCTION.)
- sānctus**, -a, -um (sanciō), adj., *sacred, solemn.* (SANCTIFY.)
- sanguis**, -guinis, m., *blood.* (SANGUINARY.)
- sānitās**, -tātis (sānus, sound), f., *soundness; SANITY; good sense.*
- sānō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (sānus), *make sound, remedy.*
- Santonēs**, -um, or **Santoni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Santones or Santoni*, a tribe of central Gaul.
- sānus**, -a, -um, adj., *sound, SANE.*
- sapiō**, sapere, sapivi, —, *taste; have taste; be sensible, understand.*
- sarcina**, -ae (sarciō), f., *pack; pl., baggage.*
- sarciō**, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, *patch; mend, repair.* (SARTORIAL.)
- sarmentum**, -i, n., *twig; pl. bundle of twigs, fagot.*
- satis**, adv. and indecl. noun: as adv., *enough, sufficiently, somewhat*; as noun, *sufficiency, enough.*
- satis-faciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *SATISFY, give satisfaction; make restitution; apologize.*
- satisfactiō**, -ōnis (satisfaciō), f., *SATISFACTION, apology.*
- saucius**, -a, -um, adj., *wounded*; as subst., *saucius, sauci*, m., *wounded man.*
- saxum**, -i, n., *rock.*
- scālae**, -ārum (scandō, climb), f. pl., *ladder*, in military language, *scaling-ladder.*
- Scaldis**, Scaldis, m., *the Scaldis*, a river in Belgic Gaul, modern *Scheldt.*
- scapha**, -ae, f., *skiff, small boat.*
- scelerātus**, -a, -um (cf. scelus), adj., *wicked.*
- scelus**, -leris, n., *crime, wickedness.*
- scienter** (sciēns), adv., *skilfully.*
- scientia**, -ae (cf. sciō), f., *knowledge, skill, SCIENCE.*
- scindō**, scindere, scidi, scissum, *tear; tear down, break down.* (RESCIND.)
- sciō**, scire, scīvi, scitum, *know, understand.*
- scorpiō**, -ōnis, m., *SCORPION*, in military language applied to a hurling-engine.
- scribō**, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write.* (INSCRIBE, INSCRIPTION.)
- scrobis**, scrobis, m. and f., *pit, pitfall.*
- scūtum**, -i, n., *shield, buckler.*
- sē**, sēsē, see sui.
- sē**, sēd-, particle used in composition, *apart from, apart, without.*
- sēbum**, -i, n., *tallow, fat.*
- secō**, secāre, secui, sectum, *cut.* (SECTION.)
- sēcrētō** (sēcrētus), adv., *privately, in SECRET.*
- sectiō**, -ōnis (secō), f., *booty.*
- sector**, -āri, -ātus sum (intens. of sequor), dep., *pursue, hunt for.*
- sectūra**, -ae (secō), f., *cutting, digging; quarry, mine.*

- secundum** (sequor), prep. with acc., *following, along; according to; besides.*
- secundus**, -a, -um, comp. **secundior**, sup. **secundissimus** (sequor), adj., *following, next, SECOND; favorable, successful.*
- secūris**, **secūris** (secō), f., *axe; metaphorically, power, authority.*
- sed**, conj., *but; but yet.*
- sēdecim** (sex + decem), num. adj. indecl., *sixteen.*
- sēdēs**, **sēdis** (sedeō), f., *seat; place of abode, dwelling, home.*
- sēditiō**, -ōnis (sēd-, cf. eō), f., *dissension, revolt, SEDITION.*
- sēditiōsus**, -a, -um (sēditiō), adj., *SEDITIONOUS, rebellious.*
- Sedulius**, **Sedu'li**, m., *Sedulius, a chief of the Lemnovies.*
- Sedūnī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Seduni, a tribe living among the Alps.*
- Sedusii**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sedusii, a tribe of the Germans.*
- seges**, **segetis**, f., *crop, grain-field.*
- Segnī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segni, a German tribe, living in Belgic Gaul.*
- Segontiāci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segontiaci, a tribe of Britain.*
- Segovax**, -vactis, m., *Segovax, the name of a Briton.*
- Segusiāvī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segusiavi, a tribe living in central Gaul.*
- semel**, adv., *once; semel atque iterum, again and again.*
- sēmentis**, -ntis (sēmen, seed), f., *sowing, planting.*
- sēmita**, -ae, f., *path.*
- semper**, adv., *always, continually.*
- Semprōnius**, **Semprōnī**, m., *Sempronius, gentile name of M. Semprōnius Rutilus, an officer in Caesar's army.*
- senātor**, -tōris (senex), m., *SENATOR.*
- senātus**, -ūs (senex), m., *SENATE.*
- senex**, **senis**, m., *old man. (SENIOR.)*
- sēnī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., *six each, six apiece.*
- Senonēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Senones, a tribe living in central Gaul, near the Sequana (Seine).*
- sententia**, -ae (sentīō), f., *opinion, view; decision, judgment; purport. (SENTENCE.)*
- sentīō**, **sentire**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsū**, *perceive, think, judge, know. (SENSE.)*
- sentis**, **sentis**, m., *thorn-bush, bramble-bush.*
- sēparātīm** (sēparātus), adv., *SEPARATELY, apart, privately.*
- sēparātus**, -a, -um (part. of sēparō), adj., *SEPARATE.*
- sē-parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *SEPARATE.*
- septem**, num. adj. indecl., *seven.*
- septentriō**, -ōnis (septem + triō, plough-ox), m., *usually used in the pl. septentriōnēs, -um, the seven plough-oxen, a name applied to the constellation of the Great Bear, or "Dipper"; the north.*
- septimus**, -a, -um (septem), num. adj., *seventh.*
- septingenti**, -ae, -a (septem + centum), num. adj., *seven hundred.*
- septuāgintā** (septem), num. adj., indecl. *seventy.*
- sepultūra**, -ae (sepeliō), f., *burial.*

**Sēquana**, -ae, f., the *Sequana* river, modern *Seine*.

**Sēquanus**, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian*; as subst., *Sēquanus*, -ī, a *Sequanian*; pl., the *Sequanians*, the *Sequani*, a people living in the eastern part of Gaul.

**sequor**, **sequi**, **secūtus sum**, dep., follow, attend; pursue; take advantage of; select, choose; attach oneself to. (SEQUENCE.)

**Ser.**, abbreviation for **Servius**, a Roman first name.

**sermō**, -ōnis, m., conversation, talk. (SERMON.)

**sērō** (**sērus**), adv., too late, late.

**serō**, **serere**, **sēvi**, **sātum**, sow, plant.

**Sertōrius**, **Sertōri**, m., *Sertorius*, gentile name of Q. *Sertorius*, a Roman leader of the popular party.

**servilis**, -e (**servus**), adj., servile, of the slaves.

**serviō**, -īre, -ī, -ītum (**servus**), be slave of, follow, SERVE.

**servitūs**, -tūtis (**servus**), f., slavery, SERVITUDE.

**servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, save, keep, maintain; keep watch. (PRESERVE.)

**servus**, -ī, m., slave, SERF. (SERVANT.)

**sescentī** = **sexcentī**.

**sēsē**, see **sui**.

**sēsqui-pedālis**, -e, adj., a foot and a half in thickness.

**sētius**, adv, comp., otherwise, less; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless.

**seu**, see **sive**.

**sevēritās**, -tātis (**sevērus**), f., strictness, SEVERITY.

**sē-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call apart, call aside.

**sex**, num. adj. indecl., six. (SEXTETTE.)

**sexāgintā** (**sex**), num. adj. indecl., sixty.

**sexcentī**, -ae, -a (**sex** + **centum**), num. adj., six hundred.

**Sextius**, **Sextī**, m., *Sextius*, gentile name of P. *Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army; and of T. *Sextius*, one of Caesar's legatī.

**Sextus**, -ī, m., *Sextus*, a Roman first name.

**sī**, conj., if, whether; **quod sī**, but if, and if.

**Sibuzātēs**, -um, m. pl., the *Sibuzates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

**sīc**, adv., thus, so, in this way; as follows.

**siccitās**, -tātis (**siccus**, dry), f., dryness, drouth.

**sīc-ut**, or **sīc-utī**, adv., just as, as.

**sīdus**, **sīderis**, n., constellation.

**signifer**, **signiferī** (**signum** + **ferō**), m., standard-bearer.

**significātiō**, -ōnis (**significō**), f., sign, signal. (SIGNIFICATION.)

**significō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**signum**, cf. **faciō**), make a sign; show, indicate. (SIGNIFY.)

**signum**, -ī, n., SIGN, signal; standard.

**Sīlānus**, -ī, m., *Silanus*, surname of M. *Sīlānus*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

**silentium**, **silentī**, n., SILENCE.

**Sīlius**, **Sīli**, m., *Silius*, gentile name of T. *Sīlius*, one of Caesar's tribunes.

**silva**, -ae, f., wood, forest. (SYLVAN.)

- silvestris**, -e (silva), adj., *wooded*.
- similis**, -e, adj., *like*, SIMILAR.
- similitūdō**, -tūdinis (similis), f., *similarity, resemblance*. (SIMILITUDE.)
- simul**, adv., *at the same time, at once*; **simul atque** (and simul), *as soon as*; **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and*; **partly . . . partly**. (SIMULTANEOUS.)
- simulācrum**, -ī (simulō), n., *likeness, image*.
- simulatiō**, -ōnis (simulō), f., *pretence, deceit*. (SIMULATION.)
- simul atque**, see simul.
- simulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (similis), *pretend*, SIMULATE.
- simultās**, -tātis (simul), f.,  *rivalry, hostility*.
- sīn** (sī + ne), conj., *but if*.
- sincērē** (sincērus), adv., *SINCERELY*.
- sine**, prep. with abl., *without*. (SINECURE.)
- singillatim** (singulī), adv., *one by one, individually, singly*.
- singulāris**, -e (singulī), adj., *single, one by one*; SINGULAR, *extraordinary*.
- singulī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., *one each, one by one; separate*, SINGLE.
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*; as subst., **sinistra**, -ae (sc. manus), f., *left hand*. (SINISTER.)
- sinistra**, see sinister.
- sinistrōrsus** (sinister + vorsus = versus), adv., (turned) *to the left*.
- situs**, -ūs (sinō), m., *situation, location*, SITE.
- sive** or **seu** (sī + ve), conj., *or if; sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), if . . . or if, whether or, either . . . or*.
- socer**, socerī, m., *father-in-law*.
- societās**, -tātis (socius), f., *alliance*. (SOCIETY.)
- socius**, sociī (cf. sequor), m., *follower, ally*; pl., *allies*.
- sōl**, sōlis, m., *sun*. (SOLAR.)
- sōlācium**, sōlācī (sōlor, console), n., *consolation, SOLACE*.
- soldurius**, soldu'rī, m., *follower, retainer*.
- soleō**, solēre, solitus sum, *semi-dep., be accustomed*.
- sōlitudo**, -tūdinis (sōlus), f., *SOLITUDE, wilderness, waste*.
- sollertia**, -ae (sollers, skilful), f., *skill*.
- sollcitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (sollcitus), *excite, arouse; tempt*, SOLICIT.
- sollcītūdō**, -tūdinis (sollcitus), f., *anxiety, SOLICITUDE*.
- solum**, -ī, n., *ground, soil*; of a ditch, *bottom*.
- sōlum** (sōlus), adv., *only*; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, gen., sōlius, adj., *only, alone*. (SOLE.)
- solvō**, solvere, solvī, solūtum (sē + luō, loose), *loose; cast off, set sail*. (DISSOLVE, SOLUTION.)
- sonitus**, -ūs (sonō), m., *sound*.
- sonus**, -ī, m., *sound*.
- soror**, sorōris, f., *sister*. (SORORITY.)
- sors**, sortis, f., *lot, chance*.
- Sōtiātēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Sotiates, a tribe of Aquitania*.
- spatium**, spatī, n., *SPACE, distance; space of time, interval; duration*.

- speciēs, -ēi** (speciō), *f.*, *sight, appearance, show, pretence; ad speciem, for show; kind, sort.* (SPECIES.)
- spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (intens. of speciō), *look at, regard; face.* (SPECTATOR.)
- speculātor, -tōris** (speculor), *m.*, *spy, scout.*
- speculātōrius, -a, -um** (speculātor), *adj.*, *spying, scouting; speculātōrium nāvigium, spy-boat.*
- speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum** (specula, *watch-tower*), *dep.*, *spy.*
- spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (spēs), *hope, expect.*
- spēs, spēi, f.**, *hope, expectation.*
- spiritus, -ūs** (spīrō), *m.*, *breath, SPIRIT; pl., arrogance, pride, haughtiness; confidence.*
- spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (spoliū), *strip, DESPOIL.*
- sponte, abl.**, of obsolete noun **spōns, adv.**, used with *suā*, of one's own accord, voluntarily; by one's own efforts.
- stabiliō, -ire, -ivī, -itum** (stabilis), *make steady; fix.*
- stabilitās, -tātis** (stabilis), *f.*, *steadiness, firmness, STABILITY.*
- statim** (old acc., cf. stō), *adv.*, *on the spot, at once, immediately.*
- statiō, -ōnis** (stō), *f.*, *STATION, post; picket, guard; in statione, in stationibus, on guard.*
- statuō, statuere, statui, statutum** (status, *position*), *place; determine, resolve; judge, think; decide, pass judgment.* (STATUTE.)
- statūra, -ae** (stō), *f.*, *STATURE; height.*
- status, -ūs** (stō), *m.*, *condition, STATUS.*
- stimulus, -ī, m.**, *goad; in military language, applied to sharp points fastened in blocks of wood, which were sunk in the ground, caltrops.* (STIMULUS.)
- stipendiārius, -a, -um** (stipendium), *adj.*, *tributary; as subst., stipendiārius, -diārī, m., tributary, dependent, subject.* (STIPENDIARY.)
- stipendium, -pendi** (stips, *coin + pendō, pay*), *n.*, *tribute.* (STIPEND.)
- stipes, stīpitis, m.**, *trunk of a tree; stake.*
- stirps, stirpis, f.**, *stem; race, stock.*
- stō, stāre, steti, statum, stand; stand by.**
- strāmentum, -ī** (sternō, *strew*), *n.*, *straw; pack-saddle.*
- strepitus, -ūs** (strepō), *noise, uproar.*
- studeō, studēre, studui, —, be eager, be desirous; give attention to, desire. (STUDY, STUDENT.)**
- studiōsē** (studiōsus), *adv.*, *eagerly, busily.* (STUDIOUSLY.)
- studium, studi** (studeō), *n.*, *eagerness, desire, diligence; good-will; pursuit.* (STUDY.)
- stultitia, -ae** (stultus), *f.*, *folly.*
- sub, prep. with acc. and abl.**, (1) with acc., *under, up to; towards, near, just before;* (2) with abl., *under, at the foot of.* See *Introd.* 143, 2. (SUBMASTER, etc.)
- subāctus, perf. part. of subigō.**

- sub-dolus, -a, -um, adj., *crafty, cunning.*
- sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead up, lead off; draw up on shore, (of ships) beach.*
- subductiō, subductionis (sub-dūcō), f., *hauling up of ships on land.*
- sub-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go under; come up to, approach; undergo, suffer.*
- subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (sub + iaciō), *hurl from below; place underneath; make SUBJECT, expose to.*
- subiectus, -a, -um (part. of subiciō), adj., *lying near, adjacent.* (SUBJECT.)
- subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (sub + agō), *drive under, reduce, subject.*
- subitō (subitus), adv., *suddenly.*
- subitus, -a, -um (part. of subeō), adj., *sudden.*
- sublātus, see tollō.
- sub-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *lift up, support; relieve, aid.*
- publica, -ae, f., *pile, stake.*
- sub-luō, -luere, —, -lūtum, *wash.*
- sub-ruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *undermine.*
- sub-sequor, -sequī, secūtus sum, *follow after, follow up, follow closely; succeed.* (SUBSEQUENT.)
- subsidiū, subsi'di (cf. subsi-dō), n., *reserve, reinforcement; aid, help, resource.* (SUBSIDY.)
- sub-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *remain behind.*
- sub-sistō, -sistere, -stīti, —, *cause to stand, make a stand, halt.* (SUBSIST.)
- sub-sum, -esse, —, —, *be near, be at hand.*
- sub-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *withdraw, take away secretly.* (SUBTRACT.)
- subvectiō, -tioniis (subvehō), f., *transportation.*
- sub-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring up.*
- sub-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come under, come to the help of.*
- suc-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *come up, approach; SUCCEED to, take the place of, come next to.*
- succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsūm (sub + candeō), *set fire to (from below), kindle, set on fire.*
- succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum (sub + caedō), *cut down.*
- suc-cumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, — (sub + cumbō), *yield, SUC-CUMB.*
- succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum (sub + currō), *run under, run to the help of.* (SUCCOUR.)
- sudis, sudis, f., *stake.*
- sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat; hard labor.*
- Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Suebi, Swabian; as subst., Suēba, -ae, f., a Swabian woman; Suēbi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Suebi, the Swabians.*
- Suessiōnēs, -um, m. pl., *the Suessiones, a tribe of the Belgians.*
- sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (sub + faciō), *SUFFICE, endure.*
- suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum (sub + fodiō), *stab underneath, stab in the belly.*
- suffrāgīum, suffrāgī, n., *vote.* (SUFFRAGE.)



- Sugambri, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Sugambri, a tribe of the Germans.*
- suggestus, -ūs (suggerō, build up), platform.**
- suī, sibi, sē or sēsē (nom. wanting), reflex. pron.,** *himself, herself, itself; pl., themselves; him, her, it; pl., them, they.*
- Sulla, -ae, m.,** *Sulla, surname of L. Cornēlius Sulla, dictator from 81 to 79 B.C.*
- Sulpicius, Sulpi'ci, m.,** *Sulpicius, gentile name of P. Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- sum, esse, fui, —. fut. part. futūrus, be, come to pass.**
- summa, -ae (summus), f.,** *SUM, total; control, management, conduct.*
- sumministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub + ministrō, serve), supply, furnish.**
- summittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (sub + mittō), let down; send as aid, help; intrans., aid, help. (SUBMIT.)**
- summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (sub + moveō), move back, remove, repulse.**
- summus, -a, -um (see superus).**
- sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptum, take; take to oneself, assume; undertake; supplicium sūmere, inflict punishment.**
- sūmptuosus, -a, -um (sūmptus), adj., expensive, costly, SUMPTUOUS.**
- sūmptus, -ūs (sūmō), m., expense.**
- superbē (superbus, proud), adv. proudly, arrogantly. (SUPERB, SUPERBLY.)**
- superior, superius, see superus. (SUPERIOR.)**
- superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (super), be superior; surpass; conquer, defeat, rise above; survive.**
- super-sedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum, refrain from.**
- super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, be over, remain, be left; survive.**
- superus, -a, -um (super), adj., high, above. Comp. superior, higher, upper, superior; former; more powerful. Sup. suprēmus or summus, highest, greatest, very great, most important; as subst., summum, -i, n., top, end.**
- suppetō, -petere, -petivi or -petii, -petitum (sub + petō), be at hand.**
- supplēmentum, -i (supplēō), n., reinforcement. (SUPPLEMENT.)**
- supplex, -plicis (cf. supplicō, kneel), adj., used as subst., m. and f., SUPPLIANT. (SUPPLICANT.)**
- supplicātiō, -ōnis (supplicō, kneel), f., thanksgiving.**
- suppliciter (supplex), adv., SUPPLIANTLY, humbly.**
- supplicium, suppli'ci (supplex), n., punishment, execution.**
- supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub + portō), bring, provide. (SUPPORT.)**
- suprā, adv. and prep. with acc.:** (1) as adv., *above; before, previously;* (2) as prep., *above; before.*
- suscipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (subs + capio), undertake, begin; take on oneself, assume.**
- suspectus, -a, -um, adj., SUSPECTED.**

**suspiciō, -ōnis** (sub + speciō), f.,  
SUSPICION.  
**suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum** (cf.  
suspiciō), *suspect*.  
**sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
(intens. of sustineō), *hold out,*  
*sustain, endure*.  
**sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-**  
**tum** (subs + teneō), *hold out,*  
*bear, endure; check; hold out*  
*against, withstand.* (SUSTAIN.)  
**sustulī, perf. of tollō.**  
**suus, -a, -um** (cf. suī), poss.  
adj., *his, her, its, one's,*  
*their; his own, etc.; with*  
*locus, favorable, advantageous;*  
*with clementia, customary;*  
*as subst., suī, -ōrum, m. pl.,*  
*his men, their men; sua, -ōrum,*  
*n. pl., his property, their prop-*  
*erty, etc.*

## T

**T.,** abbreviation for Titus, a  
Roman first name.  
**tabernāculum, -ī** (dim. of ta-  
berna, *shelter*), n., *tent*. (TAB-  
ERNACLE.)  
**tabula, -ae, f.,** *board, tablet; list.*  
(TABLE.)  
**tabulātum, -ī** (tabula), n., *floor;*  
*story*.  
**taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum, be**  
*silent, be silent about*.  
**tacitus, -a, -um** (part. of taceō),  
adj., *silent*. (TACIT, TACI-  
TURN.)  
**tālea, -ae, f.,** *rod, bar*.  
**tālis, tāle, adj.,** *such*.  
**tam, adv.,** *so, so very*.  
**tamen, adv.,** *yet, still, neverthe-*  
*less, however*.  
**Tamesis, Tamesis, m., the**  
*Tamesis, modern Thames*.

**tametsī** (tamen + etsī), conj.,  
*although, though*.  
**tandem** (tam), adv., *at length;*  
*in questions, pray*.  
**tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum,**  
*touch; border on.* (TANGIBLE.)  
**tantopere** (tantō + opere), adv.,  
*so greatly, so much, very greatly*.  
**tantulus, -a, -um** (dim. of  
tantus), adj., *so small, so*  
*slight, so unimportant*.  
**tantum** (acc. of tantus), adv.,  
*only; tantum modō, only*.  
**tantum modō,** see tantum.  
**tantundem** (tantusdem), adv.,  
*so much, so far*.  
**tantus, -a, -um** (tam), adj.,  
*so great, so much; tantus*  
*. . . quantus, as great . . .*  
*as, as much . . . as; tanti*  
*esse, be of so great value*.  
**Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. pl., the**  
*Tarbelli, a people of Aquitania*.  
**tardē, comp. tardius, sup. tar-**  
**dissimē** (tardus), adv., *slowly,*  
*TARDILY*.  
**tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (tardus),  
*hinder, stop, RETARD, check*.  
**tardus, -a, -um, adj.,** *slow.*  
(TARDY.)  
**Tarusātēs, -um, m. pl., the**  
*Tarusates, a people of Aquit-*  
*ania*.  
**Tasgetius, Tasge'ti, m., Tasge-**  
*tius, a chief of the Carnutes*.  
**taurus, -ī, m.,** *bull*.  
**Taximagulus, -ī, m., Taximag-**  
*ulus, a chief of the Britons*.  
**taxus, -ī, f.,** *yew-tree*.  
**Tectosagēs, -um, m. pl., the**  
*Tectosages, a Gallic tribe,*  
*living in the Roman province*  
*of Gaul*.  
**tēctum, -ī** (tegō), n., *roof;*  
*dwelling, house*.

tegimentum, -i (tegō), n., *covering*.

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover*; PROTECT.

tēlum, -i, n., *dart, spear, javelin*.

temerarius, -a, -um (temere), adj., *rash, reckless*.

temere, adv., *blindly, rashly*; without good reason.

temeritas, -tatis (temere), f., *rashness, TEMERITY*.

tēmō, -mōnis, m., *pole of a chariot*.

temperantia, -ae (cf. temperō), f., *moderation, self-control*. (TEMPERANCE.)

temperatus, -a, -um (perf. part. of temperō), adj., TEMPERATE, *mild*.

temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (tempus), *control oneself, refrain from*. (TEMPER.)

tempestas, -tatis (tempus), f., *weather; bad weather, storm*. (TEMPEST.)

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intens. of tendō), *try, attempt; attack; solicit*, TEMPT.

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season; occasion, opportunity; ad tempus, on time, promptly*. (TEMPORARILY.)

Tencteri, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tencteri, a tribe of the Germans*.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum, *stretch*, EXTEND; *pitch a TENT*.

tenebrae, -arum, f. pl., *darkness*.

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold, keep; restrain; bind; extend; memoriā tenēre, retain in memory, remember; sē tenēre, keep oneself, remain*.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., TENDER, *young*.

tenuis, tenue, sup. tenuissimus, adj., *thin; slight; feeble*. (EXTENUATE.)

tenuitas, -tatis (tenuis), f., *thinness, weakness; poverty*.

tenuiter (tenuis), adv., *thinly*.

ter, num. adv., *three times*.

teres, teretis (terō, rub), adj., *smooth; tapering*.

tergum, -i, n., *back; ā tergō, post tergum, in the rear*.

terni, -ae, -a (ter), distr. num. adj., *three each, three apiece*.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, ground; land, country, region*. (TERRESTRIAL.)

Terrasidius, Terrasi'di, m., *Terrasidius, gentile name of T. Terrasidius, a tribune in Caesar's army*.

terrēnus, -a, -um (terra), adj., *of earth*.

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, *frighten, alarm*, TERRIFY.

territō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intens. of terreō), *terrify greatly*.

terror, -ōris (terreō), m., *fear*, TERROR.

tertius, -a, -um (ter), num. adj., *third*. (TERTIARY.)

testāmentum, -i (testor, testify), n., *will*, TESTAMENT.

testimōnium, testimōni (testis), TESTIMONY, *proof*.

testis, testis, m. and f., *witness*.

testūdō, -dinis (testa, shell), f., *tortoise; testudo, a formation of a body of troops so that their shields overlapped; shed, for protecting besiegers*.

Teutomatus, -i, m., *Teutomatus, a king of the Nitiobroges*.

Teutoni, -ōrum, or Teutonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Teutoni or Teutones, a Germanic people*.

tignum, -ī, n., *beam, timber.*

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., *Tigurinus*, of the *Tigurini*, the name of one of the four cantons of the *Helvetii*; as subst., *Tigurinī*, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Tigurinī*, inhabitants of the canton called *Tigurinus*.

timeō, timēre, timui, —, *fear, be afraid, be apprehensive; be afraid of.*

timidē (timidus), adv., *TIMIDLY*.  
timidus, -a, -um (timeō), adj., *TIMID, fearful.*

timor, -ōris (timeō), m., *fear, alarm, apprehension.* (*TIMOROUS*.)

Titūrius, Titūri, m., *Titurius*, gentile name of *Q. Titūrius Sabinus*, a lieutenant in *Cæsar's* army.

Titus, -i, m., *Titus*, a Roman first name, abbreviated *T*.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *bear, endure, sustain.* (*TOLERATE*.)

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, weigh anchor; take, carry; take away, remove, destroy, break off; pass., be elated.*

Tolōsa, -ae, f., *Tolosa*, a town in the Roman province of *Gaul*, modern *Toulouse*.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m. pl., the *Tolosātes*, the inhabitants of *Tolosa*.

tormentum, -ī (torqueō), n., *engine for hurling missiles; missiles.*

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *roast, scorch.* (*TORRID*.)

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem (tot), indecl. adj., *just as many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius, adj., *the whole, all, all the.* (*TOTAL*.)

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

trāctus, perf. part. of *trahō*.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), *hand over, deliver, surrender; commit, entrust; transmit, hand down, teach.* (*TRADITION*.)

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum (trāns + dūcō), *lead across, lead past, lead over, transfer.*

trāgula, -ae, f., *spear, javelin.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag, drag along.*

trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (trāns + iaciō), *throw across; pierce.*

trāiectus, perf. part. of *trāciō*.

trāiectus, -ūs (trāciō), m., *passage, journey.*

trānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (trāns + nō, *swim*), *swim across.*

tranquillitās, -tātis (tranquillus, *quiet*), f., *calm, stillness.* (*TRANQUILLITY*.)

trāns, prep. with acc., in composition also *trā-*, *across, over; on the other side of.* (*TRANSGRESS, etc.*)

Trāns-alpinus, -a, -um, adj., *transalpine, beyond the Alps, i.e. north of the Alps.*

trānscondō, -scendere, -scendi, — (trāns + scandō, *climb*), *climb across, climb over; board a ship.* (*TRANSCEND*.)

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, —, fut. part. *trānsitūrus*, *go across, cross, pass over, march across; of time, pass, elapse.* (*TRANSIT*.)

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry across, TRANSFER.*

trāns-figō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *TRANSFIX, pierce.*

- trānsfixus**, perf. part. of **trānsfigō**.
- trāns-fodiō**, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *transfix, pierce*.
- trānscredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (trāns + gradior, *step*), *step over, go across, cross*. (TRANSGRESS.)
- trānsitus**, -ūs (trānseō), m., *crossing, passage*. (TRANSIT.)
- trānslātus**, perf. part. of **trānsferō**.
- trānsmarīnus**, -a, -um (trāns, cf. mare), adj., *across the sea*, TRANSMARINE.
- trānsmisus**, -ūs (trānsmittō), m., *crossing, passage; distance*.
- trāns-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *send across, set across*. (TRANSMIT.)
- trāns-portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *carry across, bring over*, TRANSPORT.
- Trāns-rhēnānus**, -a, -um, adj., *across the Rhine*; as subst., **Trānsrhēnāni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *dwellers across the Rhine*.
- trānstrum**, -ī (trāns), n., *cross-piece, cross-beam; thwart*.
- trānsversus**, -a, -um (part. of **trānsvertō**), *crosswise, oblique*. (TRANVERSE.)
- Trebius**, **Trebi**, m., *Trebius*, gentile name of M. *Trebius Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- Trebōnius**, **Trebōni**, m., *Trebonius*, gentile name of two men in Caesar's army named C. *Trebonius*.
- trecenti**, -ae, -a (trēs + centum), num. adj., *three hundred*.
- trepidō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (trepidus), *rush about, be agitated*.
- trēs**, **tria**, gen. **trium**, num. adj., *three*.
- Trēveri**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Treveri*, a tribe of the Belgians.
- Tribocēs**, -um, or **Triboci**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Triboces or Triboci*, a German people living in the territory of the Belgians.
- tribūnus**, -ī, m., **TRIBUNE**, see **Introd. 19**.
- tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, allot*; **ATTRIBUTE**, *ascribe; bestow*.
- tribūtum**, -ī (tribuō), *tax*, **TRIBUTE**.
- triduum**, -ī (cf. trēs and diēs), n., *period of three days, three days*.
- triennium**, **triennī** (cf. trēs and annus), *period of three years, three years*. (TRIENNIAL.)
- trigintā** (cf. trēs), indecl. adj., *thirty*.
- trīni**, -ae, -a (cf. trēs), num. adj., *three each, three apiece*.
- Trinobantēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Trinobantes*, a tribe of Britain.
- tripertitō** (tri-, cf. ter + partitus), adv., *in three divisions*.
- triplex**, -plicis (cf. trēs and plicō, *fold*), adj., *threefold*, **TRIPLE**.
- triquetrus**, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular*.
- trīstis**, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful*.
- tristitia**, -ae (trīstis), f., *sadness*.
- Troucillus**, -ī, m., *Troucillus*, surname of C. *Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul, employed by Caesar as an interpreter.
- truncus**, -ī, m., **TRUNK** of a tree.
- tūi**, tui, pers. pron., **THOU, you**.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*. (TUBE.)  
 tueor, tuēri, —, dep., *watch; maintain, guard, defend*.  
 tulī, perf. of ferō.  
 Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tulingi, a tribe of the Germans*.  
 tum, adv., *then, at that time; besides, moreover*; cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also*.  
 tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum (tumultus), dep., *make a TUMULT*.  
 tumultuōsē (tumultuōsus), adv., *in disorder, in confusion, noisily*. (TUMULTUOUSLY.)  
 tumultus, -ūs (tumeō, *swell, rise up*), m., *uprising, revolt; TUMULT, confusion*.  
 tumulus, -ī (tumeō, *swell, rise up*), m., *mound, hillock*.  
 tunc, adv., *then*.  
 turma, -ae, f., *troop, squad of cavalry*.  
 Turonī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Turoni, a tribe of central Gaul, living on the Liger (Loire)*.  
 turpis, -e, adj., comp. turpior, sup. turpissimus, *ugly; disgraceful, shameful*.  
 turpiter (turpis), adv., *disgracefully, shamefully*.  
 turpitūdō, -tūdinis (turpis), f., *shame, disgrace*. (TURPITUDE.)  
 turris, turris, f., *tower*, TURRET.  
 tūtō, comp. tūtius, sup. tūtissimē (tūtus), adv., *safely, in safety*.  
 tūtus, -a, -um, comp. tūtior, sup. tūtissimus (tueor), adj., *protected, safe, secure*.  
 tuus, -a, -um (tū), poss. adj., *thy; your*.

## U

ubi (ubi), adv., *where; when, as; ubi primum, as soon as*.  
 ubique (ubi + -que), adv., *anywhere, everywhere*. (UBIQUITOUS.)  
 Ubius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Ubii*; as subst., Ubii, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ubii, a people of Germany*.  
 ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, dep., *take vengeance on; avenge; punish*.  
 ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllius (dim. of ūnus), adj., *any, any one*.  
 ulterior, ulterius (cf. ultrā), adj., comp. farther, *more remote, beyond; Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul, with reference to Italy and Rome; ulterior provincia, the farther part of the Roman province; sup. ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote; last, in the rear*. (ULTERIOR, ULTIMATE.)  
 ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*. (ULTRA-CONSERVATIVE, etc.)  
 ultrō, adv., *beyond; in addition, besides; of one's own accord, voluntarily; actually*; ultrō . . . citrōque, *to and fro, back and forth*.  
 ultus, perf. part. of ulciscor.  
 ululātus, -ūs, m., *yell, shriek, cry*.  
 umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder*.  
 umquam, adv., *at any time, ever*.  
 ūnā (ūnus), adv., *together; ūnā cum, together with*.  
 unde, adv., *whence, from which*.  
 ūndecim (ūnus + decem), num. adj., indecl., *eleven*.  
 ūndecimus, -a, -um (ūndecim), adj., *eleventh*.  
 ūn-dē-quadrāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty-nine*.

**ūn-dē-vigintī**, num. adj., indecl.,  
*nineteen.*

**undique** (unde + -que), adv.,  
*from all sides, on all sides,*  
*everywhere.*

**ūniversus**, -a, -um (ūnus +  
versus), adj., *all together,*  
*whole, entire.* (UNIVERSE,  
UNIVERSAL.)

**ūnus**, -a, -um, gen. ūnius, num.  
adj., *one; only one, alone,*  
*sole, single; one and the same.*  
(UNIQUE, UNILATERAL, etc.)

**urbānus**, -a, -um (urbs), adj.,  
*of the city of Rome.* (URBAN,  
SUBURBAN.)

**urbs**, urbis, f., *city; the city of*  
*Rome.*

**urgēō**, urgēre, ursī, —, *press;*  
*press hard, oppress.* (URGE.)

**ūrus**, -ī, m., *wild ox.*

**Usipitēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Usipi-*  
*tes, a tribe of the Germans.*

**ūsītātus**, -a, -um (perf. part.  
of ūsitor, intens. of ūtor), adj.,  
*customary.*

**ūsque**, adv., *as far as, even;*  
**ūsque ad**, *up to, until; right*  
*up to.*

**ūsus**, perf. part. of ūtor.

**ūsus**, -ūs (ūtor), m., *USE, em-*  
*ployment; experience, practice,*  
*familiarity, skill; advantage,*  
*profit; need, necessity; ex*  
**ūsū**, *to the advantage of.*

**ut**, utī, adv. and conj.: (1) *inter-*  
*rog. adv., how; (2) rel.*  
*adv., as, just as; as if; (3)*  
*conj., when, as; that, in order*  
*that; so that; although.*

**uter**, *utra, utrum*, gen. *utrius*,  
adj., *which of the two, which.*

**uterque**, *utraq̃ue, utrumque*,  
gen. *utriusque*, adj., *each,*  
*both.*

**utī**, see **ut**.

**ūtīlis**, -e (ūtor), adj., *useful,*  
*serviceable.*

**ūtīlītās**, -tātīs (ūtīlis), f., *use-*  
*fulness, advantage, expediency.*  
(UTILITY.)

**ūtor**, utī, ūsus sum, dep., *use,*  
*employ, avail oneself of; ac-*  
*cept; possess, enjoy; exhibit,*  
*show.*

**utrimque** (uterque), adv., *on both*  
*sides.*

**utrum** (uter), conj., *whether;*  
**utrum . . . an, whether . . .**  
**or; utrum . . . necne,**  
*whether . . . or not.*

**uxor**, uxōris, f., *wife.*

## V

**Vacalus**, -ī, m., *the Vacalus*  
*river, a branch of the Rhine;*  
*modern, Waal.*

**vacātiō**, -tiōnis (cf. **vacō**), f.,  
*freedom from, exemption.* (VA-  
CATION.)

**vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be empty,*  
*be VACANT, be unoccupied.*

**vacuus**, -a, -um (vacō), adj.,  
*empty, unoccupied; destitute*  
*of.* (VACUOUS.)

**vadum**, -ī, n., *shallow place,*  
*ford.*

**vāgīna**, -ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

**vagor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,  
*wander about, wander, roam,*  
*range.* (VAGRANT.)

**valeō**, **valēre**, **valui**, —, fut.  
part. **valitūrus**, *be strong;*  
*have power, have influence;*  
*plūrimum valēre, have great*  
*power.* (VALID, VALIDITY.)

**Valerius**, **Vale'ri**, m., *Valerius*,  
*gentile name of the following:*  
(1) *C. Valerius Flaccus, a*

- governor of Gaul; (2) *L. Valerius Praecōninus*, a Roman officer, defeated and killed in Aquitania about 56 B.C.; (3) *C. Valerius Cobūrus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship from 1; (4) *C. Valerius Procillus*, son of 3; (5) *C. Valerius Donnotaurus*, son of 3; (6) *C. Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul employed by Caesar as an interpreter.
- Valetiācus**, -ī, m., *Valetiacus*, the name of one of the Aeduans.
- valētūdō**, -tūdinis (*valeō*), f., *health*; *ill health*. (VALETUDINARIAN.)
- vallēs**, **vallis**, f., **VALLEY**.
- vāllum**, -ī (*vāllus*), n., *WALL of stakes, palisade, wall, rampart*.
- vāllus**, -ī, m., *stake*.
- Vangionēs**, -um, m. pl., *the Vangiones*, a tribe of the Germans.
- varietās**, -tātis (*varius*), f., **VARIETY**; *mottled appearance*.
- varius**, -a, -um, adj., **VARIOUS**, *diverse*.
- vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*vāstus*), *lay waste, DEVASTATE, ravage*.
- vāstus**, -a, -um, sup. **vāstissimus**, adj., *waste, wild*; **VAST**.
- vāticinātiō**, -tiōnis (*vāticinor*), f., *prophecy*.
- ve**, conj., *enclitic, or*.
- vectigal**, -gālis (*vehō*), n., *tax on goods carried, tribute, revenue*.
- vectigālis**; -e (**vectigal**), n., *tributary*.
- vectōrius**, -a, -um (*vehō*), adj., *for carrying*; **vectōrium nāvium**, *transport ship*.
- vehementer**, comp. **vehementius**, sup. **vehementissimē** (*vehemēns*), adv., *eagerly, earnestly, VEHEMENTLY*; *greatly, very greatly*.
- vel** (*volō*), conj., *or*; **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*.
- Velānius**, **Velāni**, m., *Velaninus*, gentile name of Q. *Velaninus*, a Roman tribune.
- Veliocassēs**, -ium, or **Veliocassī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Veliocasses*, a tribe of the Belgians.
- Vellaunodūnum**, -ī, n., *Vellau-nodunum*, a city of the Senones.
- Vellavī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Velavī*, a tribe of central Gaul.
- vēlōcitās**, -tātis (*vēlōx*), f., *swiftness*. (**VELOCITY**.)
- vēlōciter**, comp. **vēlōcius**, sup. **vēlōcissimē** (*vēlōx*), adv., *swiftly*.
- vēlōx**, **vēlōcis**, comp. **vēlōcior**, sup. **vēlōcissimus**, adj., *swift*. (**VELOCIPED**.)
- vēlum**, -ī, n., *sail*.
- vel-ut**, adv., *just as*.
- vēnātiō**, -tiōnis (*vēnor*, *hunt*), f., *hunting*.
- vēnātor**, -tōris (*vēnor*, *hunt*), *hunter*.
- vēndō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum (*vēnum*, *sale + dō*), *offer for sale, sell*. (**VENDER**.)
- Venelli**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Venelli*, a tribe living in the northwestern part of Gaul.
- Venetī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Veneti*, a tribe living in northwestern Gaul.
- Venetia**, -ae, f., *Venetia*, *the country of the Veneti*.
- Vēneticus**, -a, -um (**Venetia**), adj., *of the Veneti*.



- venia**, -ae, f., *indulgence, pardon, permission.* (VENIAL.)  
**veniō, venīre, venī, ventum**, *come, approach.*  
**ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (intens. of **veniō**), *keep coming, come frequently, resort.*  
**ventus, -i, m., wind.** (VENTILATE.)  
**vēr, vēris, n., spring.** (VERNAL.)  
**Veragrī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Veragri**, a tribe living among the Alps.  
**Verbigenus, -i, m., Verbigenus**, the name of a canton of the Helvetians.  
**verbum, -i, n., word; verba facere, speak.** (VERB, VERBAL.)  
**Vercassivellaunus, -i, m., Vercassivellaunus**, a chief of the Arverni.  
**Vercingetorix, -rigis, m., Vercingetorix**, a chief of the Arverni, commander-in-chief of the united forces of Gaul.  
**vereor, verēri, veritus sum, dep., fear, be afraid of, dread, stand in awe of.** (REVERENCE.)  
**vergō, vergere, —, —, slope, extend; lie, be situated.** (VERGE.)  
**vergobretus, -i, m., vergobret**, the name of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.  
**veritus, perf. part. of vereor**  
**vērisimilis**, see **vērus**.  
**vērō (vērus), adv., in truth, truly; but in truth, but.**  
**versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (intens. of **vertō**), *turn about; treat, deal with; pass. as dep., be turned about; move about, be busy, be engaged, be involved in; remain, be.*  
**versus, -ūs (vertō), m., line of writing.** (VERSE.)  
**versus (vertō), adv. and prep., turned, facing; quōque versus, in every direction; as prep., towards.**  
**Verticō, Verticōnis, m., Vertico**, one of the Nervii.  
**vertō, vertere, verti, versum, turn; terga vertere, flee.**  
**Verucloetius, Verucloeti, m., Verucloetius**, an envoy of the Helvetians.  
**vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; right, fitting; as subst., vērum, -i, n., the truth; vēri similis, or vērisimilis, probable.** (VERITABLE, VERISIMILITUDE.)  
**verūtum, -i, n., javelin, dart.**  
**Vesontio, Vesontionis, m., Vesontio**, a town of the Sequani, the modern Besançon.  
**vesper, vesperi, m., evening.** (VESPER.)  
**vester, -tra, -trum (vōs), poss. adj., your, yours.**  
**vēstīgium, vēstīgī, n., footprint, track; place, spot, moment; in vēstīgīō, on the spot, immediately.** (VESTIGE.)  
**vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum (vestis), clothe.**  
**vestis, vestis, f., clothing.** (VESTMENT, VEST.)  
**vestitus, -ūs (vestiō), m., clothing.**  
**veterānus, -a, -um (vetus), adj., old, VETERAN.**  
**vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitum, forbid.** (VETO.)  
**vetus, veteris, adj., old, former, ancient, long-standing.**  
**vēxillum, -i (cf. vēlum), n., flag, banner.**  
**vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass, ravage.** (VEX.)

- via**, -ae, f., *way, road, route; march, journey.* (VIA, by way of.)
- viātor**, -tōris (via), *traveller, wayfarer.*
- vicēni**, -ae, -a (cf. vīgintī), num. adj., *twenty each.*
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um (cf. vīgintī), num. adj., *twentieth.*
- vicēs** (cf. vīgintī), num. adv., *twenty times.*
- vicīnitās**, -tātis (vicīnus, *near*), f., *neighborhood, vicinity; coll. pl. neighbors.*
- vicis**, vicis, f., *def., change, alternation; in vicem, or invicem, in turn.* (VICE-president, etc.)
- victima**, -ae, f., VICTIM.
- victor**, -tōris (vincō), m., VICTOR, *conqueror; as adj., victorious.*
- victōria**, -ae (victor), f., VICTORY.
- victus**, perf. part. of vincō.
- victus**, -ūs (vivō), m., *living, manner of life; food.* (VICTUALS.)
- vicus**, -ī, m., *village.*
- videō**, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem; seem best.* (VISIBLE.)
- videor**, *see videō.*
- Vienna**, -ae, f., *Vienna, a town of the Allobroges, the modern Vienne.*
- vigilia**, -ae (vigil, *watchman*), f., *watching, being awake, wakefulness, VIGIL; watch, one of the four divisions of the night.* See Introd. 59, 140.
- vīgintī**, num. adj., indecl., *twenty.*
- vimen**, -minis, n., *twig, osier.*
- vinciō**, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
- vincō**, vincere, vicī, victum, *conquer, be victorious; defeat, subdue; prevail, have one's way.*
- vinculum**, -ī (vinciō), n., *bond, chain, fetter.*
- vindicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (vindex, *champion*), *claim, maintain, assert; punish.* (VINDICATE.)
- vīnea**, -ae, f., *vine arbor; shed.*
- vīnum**, -ī, n., WINE.
- violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf. vīs), *injure, VIOLATE; lay waste.*
- vir**, viri, m., *man.* (VIRILE, VIRILITY.)
- virēs**, *see vīs.*
- virgō**, virginis, f., *maiden, VIRGIN.*
- virgultum**, -ī (virga, *twig*), n., *brushwood.*
- Viridovix**, -vīcis, m., *Viridovix, a chief of the Venelli.*
- viritim** (vir), adv., *man by man, to every man.*
- Viromandui**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Viromandui, a tribe of the Belgians.*
- virtūs**, -tūtis (vir), f., *manliness, character; bravery, courage; worth, goodness; pl., manly qualities, VIRTUES.*
- vīs**, gen. wanting, acc. vim, *defective, f., power, strength; violence, force; number, multitude; pl., virēs, -ium, strength.*
- vīsus**, perf. part. of videō.
- vīta**, -ae (vivō), f., *life.* (VITAL, VITALITY.)
- vītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid, escape.*
- vitrum**, -ī, n., *woad, a blue dye used by the Britons.*
- vivō**, vivere, vixī, victum, *live; live on.*
- vīvus**, -a, -um (vivō), adj., *living, alive.* (VIVID.)
- vix**, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*

- Vocātēs, -ium, m. pl.,** *the Vocates, a people of Aquitania.*
- Vocciō, Vocciōnis, m.,** *Voccio, a king of the Norici.*
- vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cf. vōx),** *call, summon. (VOCATION, VOCATIVE.)*
- Vocontii, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Vocontii, a Gallic tribe, living in the Roman province of Gaul.*
- Volcae, -ārum, m. pl.,** *the Volcae, a Gallic tribe, living in the Roman province of Gaul.*
- Volcātius, Volcāti, m.,** *Volcatius, gentile name of C. Volcātius Tullus, an officer in Caesar's army.*
- volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, wish, desire; intend.**
- voluntārius, -a, -um (volō), adj.,** *willing, VOLUNTARY; as subst., voluntārius, -tārī, m., VOLUNTEER.*
- voluntās, -tātis (volō), f.,** *wish, desire; permission; goodwill, devotion.*
- voluptās, -tātis (volō), f.,** *pleasure.*
- Volusēnus, -ī, m.,** *Volusenus, gentile name of C. Volusēnus Quadrātus, a tribune in Caesar's army.*
- Vorēnus, -ī, m.,** *Vorenius, name of a centurion in Caesar's army, L. Vorēnus.*
- Vosegus, -ī, m.,** *Vosegus, the name of a mountain range in eastern Gaul, now called the Vosges.*
- voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow.**
- vōx, vōcis, f.,** *VOICE, utterance, word.*
- Vulcānus, -ī, m.,** *Vulcanus, or Vulcan, god of fire.*
- vulgō (vulgus), adv.,** *commonly, generally, everywhere.*
- vulgus, -ī, n.,** *the common people, multitude. (VULGAR.)*
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (vulnus),** *wound, hurt. (VULNERABLE.)*
- vulnus, -neris, n.,** *wound.*
- vultus, -ūs, m.,** *look, expression; face, features.*







